



*Conservation of this  
volume was made  
possible through the  
generous support of  
PETER WARRIAN  
and the Friends  
of the Library*



**PIMS**

PONTIFICAL INSTITUTE OF MEDIAEVAL STUDIES

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
University of Toronto



RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDII ÆVI  
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN  
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.



**THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS**  
OF  
**GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND**  
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER  
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

---

ON the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished ; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

*Rolls House,*  
*December 1857.*

---



THE  
C H R O N I C L E  
OF  
PIERRE DE LANGTOFT,  
IN FRENCH VERSE,

FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF KING  
EDWARD I.

E D I T E D

BY

THOMAS WRIGHT, ESQ., M.A., F.S.A., &c.,

CORRESPONDING MEMBER OF THE IMPERIAL INSTITUTE OF FRANCE,  
(ACADÉMIE DES INSCRIPTIONS ET BELLES-LETTRES).

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S  
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

L O N D O N :  
LONGMANS, GREEN, READER, AND DYER:

---

1868.



JAN 12 1950

15426

## CONTENTS.

---

	Page
PREFACE - - - - -	- vii
THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT - - - - -	- 1
APPENDICES - - - - -	- 385
INDEX - - - - -	- 471

---



---

P R E F A C E .

---

DA  
25  
.B8  
V.47



## P R E F A C E.

---

I HAVE a few remarks to add to what has been said in the Preface to the first volume of this book, chiefly on the subject of different manuscripts containing copies of the text of the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft. The number of them still existing prove that this work was extremely popular during the first half of the fourteenth century. How far this popularity extended beyond the northern counties it would be difficult to say, as we can trace none of these manuscripts back to the places where they were written. Of one of them, the second manuscript in the College of Arms, which I have called E., I wish especially to speak.

This fine manuscript was evidently made for some man of wealth, who wished to have a consecutive series of what were considered to be the best Chronicles of English history in French or Anglo-Norman verse, and the choice is not an injudicious one. First, we have the Brut, or translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth's history into Anglo-Norman verse, by the trouvère Wace. Next, we have Gaimar's history of the Anglo-Saxon kings; followed by the Lai of Haveloc, one of the incidents told more briefly in Gaimar's work. These are followed by Pierre de Langtoft's history of the reign of Edward I., which forms the fourth article in the volume. It was only when I came to collate with it the text of this part of the work for the present volume, that I found this

The manuscripts of Pierre de Langtoft.

The manuscript belonging to the Herald's College.

not to be a copy of Pierre de Langtoft's text, but Pierre de Langtoft very much altered by another hand. Some writer, probably of the earlier part of the reign of Edward III., had found that Langtoft wanted improving, both in substance, and somewhat also in style, and he had undertaken the task, and the result is a revision or new edition so different from the first, that I found it was useless to go on giving the various readings, and that the only way to treat this new text would be to print it entire as a separate work. For examples of these readings I need only refer the reader to the notes to the present volume, pp. 162-170, and add that the variation between the two texts increases as we go on. I have, therefore, thought it advisable to abstain from collating it any further than the mere introductory matter.

A manu-  
script in  
the Uni-  
versity Li-  
brary,  
Cambridge.

I have omitted in my former preface to mention among the existing manuscripts a good copy found in the University Library, Cambridge, bearing the press-mark Gg. I. i. I edited from this manuscript so far back as 1839, at the end of a volume of "Political Songs" printed by the Camden Society, that part of the text of the history of the reign of Edward I. which contains so many fragments of what appear to have been popular songs on the events of the day, and especially on those of the Scottish wars. The exact character of these fragments is a rather curious question which might perhaps admit of some discussion. They are all composed in the same form of metre, which seems to have been very fashionable at that time, and which was called *ryme cowée*, meaning literally, tailed rhyme. It consists of two lines rhyming together, and then a shorter line with a different rhyme, then two lines rhyming together again, followed by another short line which rhymes with the preceding short line. These short lines were the tails; they most commonly rhymed in pairs, so as to form a series of verses formed of stanzas of

The popu-  
lar songs  
introduced  
by Lang-  
toft.



six lines each, resembling some of our old ballad poetry ; but we find sometimes in this form of verse several tail-lines rhyming together. As this is invariably the form of the fragments of English song found in Pierre de Langtoft, and as the author not unfrequently in introducing them changes his own long lines into the same form of verse, we might be led to suspect that they are all part of his own composition, and not old songs taken from popular recitation. But the words with which some of them are introduced leave little doubt as to their real character. Thus, in one place, we are told that Edward fortified Berwick, “in reproof of the Scot, who had sung of him and in mockery made rhymes upon him in English,”<sup>1</sup> and immediately follows the English song in *ryme cowée*. A similar fragment on the battle of Dunbar is introduced by a line evidently intimating that it was a popular song of a satirical description:—“Their deed has turned them to mockery as long as the world shall last.”<sup>2</sup> The Cambridge manuscript of which I am speaking gives some additional lines of the English fragments, which are not found in the other manuscripts which I have examined, and which seem to leave no doubt of their true character. Thus, at the end of the six lines of English verse given in the present volume, p. 258, the Cambridge adds the following:—

“ He loghe wil him liked,  
 “ His paclir es thurck piked,  
 “ He wende e were liale ;  
 “ Begkot an bride,  
 “ Rede him at ride  
 “ In the dismale.”

Again, at p. 278, l. 10, of the present volume, the scribe who wrote the manuscript apparently, has changed

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 234 of the present volume.

<sup>2</sup> See the present volume, p. 252.

the wording of the line, in order to insert some verses of an English song.

“ Cum avaunt estaint, Dunbar les achascait.

“ For thar wer thai brend,

“ He kauged ham thidre kend,

“ Ant dreved to dote.

“ For Scottes at Dunbar

“ Haved at thayre gau char

“ Schame of thar note.

“ Wer never dogges there

“ Hurlid out of herne

“ Fro coylthe ne cotte.”

In this case we can hardly doubt that the alteration in the French line was made merely for the purpose of introducing these English verses, which are very obscure, and probably corrupt.

Manu-  
scripts of  
Pierre de  
Langtoft  
at Paris.

Since writing the preface to the first volume, I have had the opportunity of examining hastily the manuscript of Pierre de Langtoft preserved in the Imperial Library in Paris, and I am now able, through the kindness of my excellent friend M. Paulin Paris, so well known for his valuable labours on the literature of the middle ages, to give a more particular description of it. It would be more correct to call it two manuscripts bound in one volume, for there are two copies of part of the text of Langtoft written by different hands, and of different dates. The handwriting of both is English, and, as the French Library came into possession of them at the time of the suppression of the religious orders in France and the confiscation of the goods of the emigrants, M. Paulin Paris supposes them to have been brought from some one of the abbeys in Normandy. The volume was formerly known as *Supplément Français*, No. 262, but now, since all the different collections have been combined into one, it is numbered as *Fonds Français*, No. 12,154.

The text begins as follows, on the first page of the manuscript; it will be seen at once that it is the second

part of the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, and that the first part, the translation of the Brut, is here wanting.

“ En les livers Bede des Antiquités,  
 “ Sis cens et iiii. vinz et iii. auns sunt comptez  
 “ Après ke de la Virge Jhesu Crist fu neez,  
 “ Quant le rey Kadvaldrus lessa ses regnez  
 “ De la Grant Bretayne, dount feust engetez  
 “ Par les Saxonays, ke sunt enheritez.  
 “ Vers Bretayne la Mayndre en (*sic*) Cadvaldrus passez,  
 “ Al riche rays Alaun et à ses parentez;  
 “ De ilokes alait ad Rome cum il fust consaillez.  
 “ Sergius la pape le assout de ses pechez,  
 “ Cadvardrus en la curt à Deu est comandez.  
 “ Le an secund après à le my estez,  
 “ Ivor et Hinny, ke furent seus neez,  
 “ Sunt venus de Irlande, en Gales arivet,” etc.

In this manuscript each new set of monorimes is headed by a title in Latin, as *De rege Adelelpho*, on fol. 3, or by a date, as at fol. 4, *Anno Domini ccccc*. I presume, from the description of M. Paulin Paris, that this manuscript does not contain all the fragments of English

verse. At fol. 35, the song of the Scots at the siege of Berwick is given as follows:—

English  
songs given  
in the  
French  
MS.

“ Li Balyole ad perdu le issue et le entré  
 “ De la plus noble vile ke feust en sa poesté.  
 “ Le rays Eduard le tent conquise par l’espé,  
 “ La fet environner de fosse large et lé,  
 “ En reprovant l’Escoce, k’ad de ly chaunté,  
 “ Et par moquerye en Englays rymayé :  
     “ Pyket him,  
     “ And dyket him,  
     “ In scoren sayden he ;  
     “ He dykes hit,  
     “ He pikes hit,  
     “ His sal hit be,  
     “ Scatered here the Scotés,  
     “ Hodred in hoytes,  
     “ Never thay ne the.

“ Rytht if I rede,  
 “ Thay touble in Twede,  
 “ That woned by the se.”

This part of the manuscript ends, on fol. 38, with the line which represents line 10 on page 278 of the present volume,—

“ Cum avaunt estaynt; escotés ke ceo dait.”

Fol. 39 begins, in a hand which M. Paulin Paris considers to be a quarter of a century more modern than the other, with the prophecies of Merlin in French, and on the verso of fol. 40 commences (in this same hand) the first division of the work, the translation of the Brut, beginning with the Latin couplet which is found at the end of the poem attributed to Langtoft in MS. A.,<sup>1</sup> written in red:—

“ *Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto,*  
 “ *Culpa datur Petro deficiente metro.*”

“ Deu le tut puisseant, ke cel e tere creayt,  
 “ Adam nostre pere que homme de terre formayt,  
 “ Naturement porveust quant il ordinayt  
 “ Qe home de tere venuz à tere renterayt,  
 “ Cil Deu le beny qe bien escoter dayt  
 “ Coment Engleterre primes comencayt,  
 “ Et pur quoy primes Bretaygne home l'appellayt.”

This part ends with the verso of fol. 68, with the same series of monorimes as given in our text.<sup>2</sup>

“ Puis le heure que Brettan Albyon conquist,  
 “ E la terre avayt, et les giauns occist,  
 “ Et Bretaygne l'apellayt, e habiter le fit,  
 “ Jeskes à cel heure que Cadwallain perdist  
 “ Le honur de Bretaygne, e nul Bretton remist,  
 “ Piers de Langetost trove nient plus par dit

---

<sup>1</sup> See the Appendix in the present volume, p. 446.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 26 of the present volume.

“ K'il n'ad coplye et mys en cel escrit.  
 “ Les troffes ad lessé, à verité seprist.  
 “ Nul autre trovera home que le list,  
 “ Si noun il latiners en son fet mentist.”

This is followed by the Latin verses, given in the note to page 264 of our first vol., beginning,—

“ Finito Bruto, Britones fugiunt religati.”

On fol. 69, r<sup>o</sup>, begins another copy of the second division of Langtoft's Chronicle, which had been given before in a different hand on the first page of the manuscript; and after this, at fol. 100, r<sup>o</sup>, the third part of Langtoft, or the history of the reign of Edward I., is continued, and ends on fol. 108, with the same lines which conclude the text in the present volume (p. 382):—

Second  
French  
copy of  
Pierre de  
Langtoft.

“ Ly roys sire Edward resceyve en sa mercye,  
 “ Relesse face de forpez en sa vye,  
 “ En regal mansion la mene à compaygnie,  
 “ Oû servise n'y ad fors joye et melodie. Amen.”

It will be well to remark that the Cottonian manuscript, from which my text is taken, is not all written by one uniform hand. With the line,—

Variations  
in the  
writing of  
MS. A.

“ Après la batayle ly rays retornait,”

on fol. 159, v<sup>o</sup>, (p. 316 of the present volume), the colour of the ink changes, but the hand seems still to be the same, until we come to fol. 161, v<sup>o</sup>. (p. 328 of the present volume), when, with the line,—

“ La Pasche après li reys fist assembler,”

the hand changes altogether, and there is at the same time an evident change in the orthography also. The original hand seems to have returned to it again at the beginning of folio 165, r<sup>o</sup>, (p. 346), with the line—

“ Les meyns luy cospeit,”

and it continues to the beginning of folio 171, when it changes again, and continues changed to the end.

Appen-  
dices to  
the present  
volume.

When we compare together the contents of the different manuscripts in which we find the Chronicle of Pierre de Langtoft, we cannot avoid being convinced that most of them were written more or less under political feelings,—that they were made for men who were interested in the great agitation of the Scottish claims and Scottish wars of the first half of the fourteenth century. Hence, several of the manuscripts contain, at the end, after the chronicle documents of a rather miscellaneous character connected with this agitation. As some of these are very curious, I have thought it desirable to print a selection of such of them as are written in verse by way of appendix in the present volume. I have arranged these documents in the form of four separate appendices, according to their different characters and subjects.

Appendix?  
I.—Docu-  
ments re-  
lating to  
the inter-  
ference of  
the pope in  
the affairs  
of Scot-  
land.

*Appendix I.*—The first of these appendices relates to a curious phase in the Scottish wars under the reign of Edward I. In the year 1300, when king Edward had invaded Scotland with a formidable army, the Scots attempted to ward off the danger by obtaining the protection of the pope, Boniface VIII., and they set up the plea that sovereignty of Scotland belonged absolutely to the Holy see, having been given to it by St. Andrew himself. The pope at first took up the question with warmth; he is pretended to have been influenced in some degree by a considerable advance of Scottish money; he wrote an expostulatory letter to Edward I., setting forth at length his own claims to the sovereignty of Scotland, accused him of setting them at defiance, and admonishing him to desist. Edward called a parliament, which met at Lincoln on the 31st of January 1301, at which the nobles joined in an expostulatory reply to pope Boniface, in which they declared the

justice of king Edward's claims and their unanimous resolution to defend them. The king himself wrote a letter to the pope, in which he gave a long string of historical evidence to show the antiquity and justice of his own claims. The result was that the pope interfered no further in the matter, under the influence, probably, of other political interests. The Latin texts of these documents are given, perhaps somewhat abridged, in the Chronicle of Matthew of Westminster; and some contemporary or near contemporary of the events to which they relate turned them into French verse in a measure and style similar to those of Pierre de Langtoft. The scribe of the manuscript which I call B. (MS. Reg. 20 A. xi.) has inserted it at the end of Langtoft's work as a continuation of it, and from this, as the only copy with which I am acquainted, I have printed it as the first appendix. Unfortunately this scribe was a very careless one, and besides corruptions of the text which cause obscurity, a line or two are evidently omitted in several places.

*Appendix II.*—The two poems given in my second appendix are of a somewhat different character, and are inserted here merely because they are the only two other compositions which there appears to be any reason for ascribing to the author of the chronicle, which they immediately follow in MS. A. They have at the end the Latin verses relating to the literary labours of Pierre de Langtoft, so that it is evident that the scribe of this manuscript, which is one of very good authority, believed him to be the author of them. An account of them will be found in the preface to my first volume, p. xiv. I need say no more than that they are very curious examples of a class of literature which was very popular in the middle ages.

*Appendix III.*—Every man who has studied diligently and minutely the history of the period to which this

Appendix  
II.—Poems  
ascribed to  
Langtoft.

Appendix  
III.—Pro-  
phesies.

chronicle belongs is aware of the important role which pretended prophecies, put forth under the names of Merlin, the Sibyls, &c., played in the political struggle. Pierre de Langtoft has inserted the Latin text of the prophecies of Merlin between the first and second divisions of his chronicle, and in most of the manuscripts the work is preceded or followed by a French version of it. Besides this, single prophecies, much more brief in extent, and generally written in a metrical form in order to be more easily carried in the memory, are found scattered not only through these manuscripts, but through many others. They were no doubt used for political purposes. Those which I have printed in this appendix, taken from MS. B., are very curious examples of such prophecies and political verses, but accompanied with translations into French. Their original composition in Latin shows that they were primarily contrived and used by the clergy, and the French translations were intended to facilitate their circulation among the higher classes of the laity.

Appendix  
IV.—English prophetic  
poem.

*Appendix IV.*—The longer and more elaborately designed poem in English which forms the last of these appendices belongs to the same class as the scraps given in that which precedes. It was intended of course to be sung by the wandering minstrels, so as to spread the influence of these prophecies among the middle and somewhat lower classes of contemporary society. It is composed in a north country dialect, and is in some places so difficult and obscure that I have not been able to translate them with any confidence.

---



---

THE CHRONICLE  
OF  
PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

---

VOL. II.

A

## THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

*Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>. c<sup>o</sup>. quinquagesimo quinto.*

Corona-  
tion of  
Henry II.

Henry fiz l'emperyce à Loundres est venu,  
De trestut le pople curtaysement resceu,  
Le jour saint Leogere<sup>1</sup> Henry est rays conu.  
De la terre tute cel heure primat fu  
[Thebaud de Canterbire ercevesque tenu ;]<sup>2</sup>  
Ad<sup>3</sup> Henry la coroune et le anel est rendu.<sup>4</sup>

Names  
of his  
children.

Henry fiz l'emperyce, duk de Aquitayne,  
Quatre fiz avayt, deus fylles<sup>5</sup> en demayne,  
Henry, Richard, et Geffray counte de Brettayne,  
Jon<sup>6</sup> fust sun fiz pusnez, sovent jolis en bayne ;<sup>7</sup>  
Alyenore sa fillye fū rayne de Yspayne ;  
Rayne de Cecylle Johanna la fillye darayne.  
Icesty<sup>8</sup> ray Henry fu tuz jours en wayne ;<sup>9</sup>  
Plus riche prince n'estayt<sup>10</sup> deça<sup>11</sup> la mountayne.

Henry le seconde est cesty ray nomez,  
Ke tu[te]<sup>12</sup> Engleterre tent<sup>13</sup> en ses poustez ;  
Angou et Normendye sunt à ly liverez,  
De Aquitayne est duk, dount est enheritez ;

<sup>1</sup> *sein Leger*, B. *saynt Legger*, C. The day of St. Ledger (Leodgarius) was the 2nd of October.

<sup>2</sup> This line, given here from B., is omitted in A. C. and D.

<sup>3</sup> *Q'à Henri*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *ad rendu*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *dous fitz*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Johan*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *baigne*, B. D.

<sup>8</sup> *E cesti*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *en vayne*, C. *en waygne*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *prince estait*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *de cy à la*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *tote*, B. *trestut*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *tint*, B. *teent*, C.

## THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT.

*Anno Domini 1155.*

Henry son of the empress is come to London  
And courteously received by all the people ;  
On the day of St. Ledger Henry is acknowledged  
king.

At that time of all the land was primate  
Held Theobald archbishop of Canterbury ;  
To Henry is given the crown and the ring.

Henry son of the empress, duke of Aquitaine,  
Had four sons and two daughters in his family,  
Henry, Richard, and Geoffrey count of Britany,  
John was his youngest son, often gay in his living ;  
Eleanor his daughter was queen of Spain ;  
Joan, his youngest daughter, queen of Sicily.  
This king Henry was always gaining ;  
There was not a richer prince on this side the mountain.

This king is named Henry the Second,  
Who holds all England under his authority ;  
Anjou and Normandy are delivered to him,  
He is duke of Aquitaine, which is his inheritance ;

Chualers et clers sunt à ly jorez.  
 Sun chaunceler cel heure fu Thomas appelez,  
 Erceden<sup>1</sup> de Kaunterbyre, et de Loundres neez;  
 Fiz fu Thomas Beket, estret des melz vanez  
 De la cyté de Loundres, et riche home assez.  
 En chascune cause enquyst les veritez.  
 L'erceveske pur veir<sup>2</sup> à Deu est comaunde; ;  
 Del digneté Thomas est en sun lu sacrez;<sup>3</sup>  
 Ben sustynt saynt Eglyse et ses dignetez;  
 Par drait<sup>4</sup> lay escryt mayntint les ordynez.  
 Mès ke par layes estaynt attaynt des<sup>5</sup> malvestez,  
 Ne suffry pas k'il fussent par alliours jugez  
 Fors en court de clerk; le ray, cum ws orrez,  
 Vers Thomas se corouce, la cause ore escotez.

Thomas  
 Beket  
 made  
 Arch-  
 bishop.

Disputes  
 with the  
 clergy.

Clers sunt sovent hastifs, les uns<sup>6</sup> fount volentez,  
 Passent drait sovent,<sup>7</sup> n'esparnent [en] lay fez;<sup>8</sup>  
 Ke sentent la grevaunce al ray sunt alez,  
 Et de cel outrage<sup>9</sup> amendes ount priez.  
 Le ray parmy sa terre ses lettres ad maunde;  
 Ke entre clers et lays sa pes sait gardez;  
 Et si clerk mespreygne en ses regaltez  
 Par homycyde ou playe, de larcyne aretteez,  
 En la court le ray ly sayt agardez  
 A porter jugement de ses iniquytez.  
 Ly erceveske Thomas al ray ad moustrez<sup>10</sup>

Beket's  
 obstinacy.

<sup>1</sup> *Erceciaken*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *pur voirs*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *L'ercediaien Thomas Beket est en son see sacrez*, B. *Le erceden Thomas est en son see sacrez*, C. *L'erceden Thomas est en son se sacrez*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Par droite*, B. Robert of Brunne translates this line, "With the lawe to wirke mayntend the ordiné."

<sup>5</sup> *par heez estoient attenuz de*, B. *par hoës*, C. *Mès qe par hoës estaynt ataynt de malveytez*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *et les uns*, C. *e fount volentez*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this as follows:—

"Clerkes often tide misdo blithely,  
 "For deynoushede and pride, and  
 "for ther state is hy;"

and adds some further remarks upon the conduct of the clergy.

<sup>7</sup> *sovent droit*, B. C.

<sup>8</sup> *en lai feez*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *de tel utrage*, C. *de tele*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *est moustrez*, C.

Knights and clergy are sworn to him.  
His chancellor at that time was called Thomas,  
Archdeacon of Canterbury, and a native of London ;  
He was son of Thomas Beket, descended of the most  
distinguished  
Of the city of London, and rich man enough.  
In every case which came before him he sought the  
truth.

The archbishop in truth is despatched to God ;  
Thomas is consecrated in his place to the dignity.  
Well he sustained Holy Church and her dignities ;  
Maintained the clergy by right written law.  
But those who were accused by laymen of offences,  
He did not suffer that they should be judged else-  
where  
But in ecclesiastical court ; the king, as you will  
hear,  
Takes anger against Thomas ; now hearken to the cause.

Ecclesiastics are often hasty, some of them act  
wilfully,  
Often exceed justice, spare not in lay fiefs ;  
Those who feel aggrieved are gone to the king,  
And have prayed for amends for that injury.  
The king has sent his letters through his land,  
That his peace be kept between ecclesiastics and  
laymen ;  
And if a clergyman commit an offence in his regalities  
By manslaughter or wound, being accused of theft,  
That it be appointed to him in the king's court  
To receive judgment of his iniquities.  
The archbishop Thomas has represented to the king

Quel serement il fist kant il fu coronez ;  
 Par Deu ly defend ke klerk sait chalangez,  
 Si noun par saint eglyse, dount membre est clamez.  
 Co fu à Claringdoun où Thomas ad parlez.  
 Et ad Norhauntoun vynt-il altre fez,  
 Deliverer ses clers, mès rens ly fu grauntez.<sup>1</sup>  
 A la court de Rome ad Thomas appelez.

Corona-  
tion of  
Prince  
Henry.

Thomas devers la court va la mer passer ;  
 Et le ray Henry fet mayntenaunt maunder  
 Le erceveske de Everwyk, sun<sup>2</sup> [noun] fu Roger,  
 Et sun fiz Henry le fyst<sup>3</sup> corouner  
 Et oynder en rays le regne gouverner.<sup>4</sup>  
 Tort fist à Thomas, ke fust outre mer,  
 Ke pur veir<sup>5</sup> à ly appent cel<sup>6</sup> myster.  
 Kaunt Thomas le seet, fet escomenger  
 Le ercevesk par noun, ke ne put ministrer,<sup>7</sup>  
 Et tuz ke oveske ly dayvent communer,  
 Forspriz le rays Henry, ses fiz, et sa mulier.<sup>8</sup>  
 Sachez Thomas ne volt à sun repairer

Cause of  
Becket's  
exile.

Le ercevesk assoldre pur nuly prier.<sup>9</sup>  
 Les causes ws ay dit, ws les devez saver,  
 Pur quai<sup>10</sup> le ray Henry fist Thomas exyller ;<sup>11</sup>  
 Al ray ne devez pas sa mort aretter.  
 Nent plus dist<sup>12</sup> le ray à sun chualer,  
 “ Ay-jo<sup>13</sup> nule gent ke me pount<sup>14</sup> venger  
 “ Sur un tel clergoun, ke fu moun chaunceler ?”

Becket's  
death.

Quatre chualers, saunz plus comaunder,  
 Sunt alez en l'eglyse saynt Thomas tuer.

<sup>1</sup> *ly est grauntez*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *son noun*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *se fist*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *le regne pur g.*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Qar pur voir*, B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *tel*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *q'il ne pout mustrer*, B

<sup>8</sup> *se fiz sa mulyer*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *pur nul prier*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Par quei*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *exillyer*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Qar nient plus dit*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *Fors a ge nule*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *porrunt*, B. *qe me peut*, C.

What oath he took when he was crowned ;  
On God's part he forbids him that an ecclesiastic be  
brought to trial  
Except by Holy Church, by which he is claimed as a  
member.

It was at Clarendon that Thomas has spoken.  
And at Northampton he came another time  
To deliver his clergy, but nothing was yielded to him.  
Thomas has appealed to the court of Rome.

Thomas proceeds to cross the sea on his way to the  
court ;  
And king Henry now causes to be summoned  
The archbishop of York, his name was Roger,  
And his son Henry he caused him to crown  
And anoint, as king to govern the kingdom.  
He did wrong to Thomas, who was beyond sea  
For in truth to him belongs this duty.  
When Thomas knows it, he excommunicates  
The archbishop by name, who has no power to admi-  
nistrate,  
And all who may hold communication with him,  
Except king Henry, his sons, and his wife.  
Know that Thomas will not, on his return,  
Absolve the bishop for anybody's prayer.  
The causes I have told you, you ought to know them,  
Why king Henry banished Thomas ;  
You must not ascribe his death to king Henry.  
The king said no more to his knight but,  
" Have I no people who can avenge me  
" Of such an ecclesiastic, who was my chancellor ?"  
Four knights, without further command,  
Are gone into the church to slay saint Thomas.

The life of  
Becket  
referred to.

Ki volt saver coment saint Thomas vesquit,  
Coment le ray de Fraunce honurer ly fist;  
Coment le apostoylle par bulle ly transmyst<sup>1</sup>  
Legat en Engleterre, coment se<sup>2</sup> entremyst,  
Coment à Pountyné<sup>3</sup> le aungel à ly dist,  
Coment sun lynage hors de terre fuist,  
Coment l'apostoylle la payne à cels purvyst  
Pur quels<sup>4</sup> en sainte eglyse playe et mort suffryst,  
Saunz agarde de court,<sup>5</sup> coment il parfist  
Par sa passioun ke pur Deu emprist,<sup>6</sup>  
Et coment Deu pur ly ovre où il gist;  
Regarde [ben] sun lyvre,<sup>6</sup> ke n'est pas petyt,  
Et là la verité trovera tut escryt.

Mort est le erceveske, et nostre<sup>7</sup> joven rays  
Est la mer passé, et sur ly quens<sup>8</sup> curtays,  
Sir William de Albemarle,<sup>9</sup> par aide des Englays,  
Pris ad deus chastels, engettez les Fraunçays.<sup>10</sup>  
[A] le chastel de Albemarle<sup>11</sup> barouns prist-il trays,  
En Engleterre les meyne; cels sunt<sup>12</sup> les deus Flan-  
drays

Ke morent en prisoun pur lur fez malvays.

Henry's  
grief for  
Becket.

Pur la mort<sup>13</sup> Thomas le ray avaunt nomé,  
Henry fiz<sup>14</sup> l'emperyce, est molt angussé.

<sup>1</sup> *tramist*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *s'en*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "And how, or he went, he serched alle the state."

<sup>3</sup> *Pounteneye*, B. D. *al Pontenye*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *Par quels*, B. C.

<sup>5</sup> *du court*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Regardez bien son livere*, B. C. *Regarde bien son livere*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *à nostre*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *li quent*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Aumarle*, B. *de Abmemarle*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *le Fraunceys*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Al chastel d'Aumarle*, B. C. *Al chastel de Albemarle*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *ses sunt*, B. This passage is translated by Robert of Brunne, in language not very intelligible, by the following lines:—

"Of Almarle in the castelle thre

"lordes he toke,

"Of messengers fulle snelle he sent

"hider to loke,

"Untille Ingland, of Flanders men

"fulle ille,

"In warde or in bond in prison leve

"thei stille."

<sup>13</sup> *Puis la mort*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *le fitz*, C.



Who desires to know the life St. Thomas led,  
How the king of France caused him to be honoured ;  
How the pope by bull sent to him  
A legate in England, how he interfered,  
How at Pontigny the angel spoke to him,  
How his kindred fled out of the land,  
How the pope provided punishment for those  
Through whom he suffered in holy church wound and  
    death,  
Without judgment of court, how he completed,  
By his passion, that which he undertook for God's sake,  
And how God performs miracles for him where he lies,  
Look well into his book, which is not small,  
And there you will find the truth all written.

Dead is the archbishop, and our young king  
Has crossed the sea, and from the courteous count,  
Sir William de Albemarle, with the aid of the English,  
Has taken two castles, and expelled the French.  
In the castle of Albemarle he captured three barons,  
He brings them into England ; these are the two  
    Flemings  
Who remain in prison for their evil deeds.

For the death of Thomas the king before named,  
Henry son of the empress, was much chagrined.

War with Scotland. William ray de Escoce de plus est conforté,  
 Et sur le ray Henry guere ad comencé.  
 Le chastel de Burge ad pris en sa pousté,  
 Malgarde fu par ly perduz, Prudhowe<sup>1</sup> salvé.  
 The king of Scotland taken. S'en va vers Alnewyk, où pris est et mené  
 Tut drait à Richemund, où il est gardé.  
 Richard de Morvyle, chivaler renomé,  
 Et Richard Comyn, of ly sunt herbe[r]gé.<sup>2</sup>  
 De bons fez des Norays<sup>3</sup> le rays Henry est lé;  
 Des riches douns les ad si ben rewerdoné,  
 Ke trestuz ly altres parmy sun regné  
 Peace restored. Sunt al rays venuz<sup>4</sup> à sa volunté.  
 Contek entre countes de tot est relessé,  
 Barayt des barouns par tut<sup>5</sup> oblyé.  
 Ore est Engleterre en pees et charyté;  
 Ço fist le ray Henry par sa [grant] bounté.<sup>6</sup>  
 Le xix. an le ray Henry<sup>7</sup> regnayt,  
 Henry le joven rays, ke sun fiz estayt,  
 La sore le ray de France esposé avait.  
 The young king raises war against his father. Phelippe counte de Flaundes, ke durement amait  
 Henry le joven rays, sovent ly consaillait,  
 Et Thebald de Blesence,<sup>8</sup> ke Henry molt creait,<sup>9</sup>  
 Et le ray de France sun poer donait  
 A Henry le joven, dount il començait  
 Suspendre sun pere, où il ne avayt<sup>10</sup> drayt.  
 Kaunt sun pere le seet, tost maunder fesayt  
 William ray d'Escoce, ke vynt of graunt<sup>11</sup> esplayt,  
 Et David sun frere William of ly<sup>12</sup> menayt.  
 Le counte de Leycestre cel heure<sup>13</sup> ben guyait.

<sup>1</sup> *Proudhowe*, C. Robert of Brunne says, "Mulgard thorgh him was lorn, Prudhow saved welle."

<sup>2</sup> *od li sunt herbergé*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *les Norays*, C. *Des bons fetz de Norays*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *à li venuz*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *de tote*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *grant* is omitted in A.

<sup>7</sup> *Le dise neefme an qe Henri*,

B. C. *Le dys et le noefyme an ke Henry*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Ethelmud de Plesence*, B. *Ke Thebald*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *croit*, B. *crat*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *où n'avoit*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *od grant*, B. *oue grant*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *od le*, B. *oue ly*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *cel ost*, B. *cel host*, C. *Le count de Gloucestre cel host*, D.

William king of Scotland is the more encouraged,  
 And has commenced war against king Henry.  
 He has taken into his power the castle of Burgh ;  
 Mulgarde was lost through him, Prudhoe saved.  
 He proceeds towards Alnwick, where he is captured  
     and carried  
 Straight to Richmond, where he is kept in guard.  
 Richard de Morville, a knight of renown,  
 And Richard Comyn, are lodged with him.  
 King Henry is glad of the good deeds of the men of  
     the North ;  
 He has so well rewarded them with rich gifts,  
 That all the others throughout his kingdom  
 Are come to the king to be at his will.  
 Strife among earls is entirely appeased,  
 Discord of the barons everywhere forgotten.  
 Now is England in peace and charity ;  
 King Henry effected that through his great goodness.

In the nineteenth year that king Henry reigned,  
 Henry the young king, who was his son,  
 Had espoused the sister of the king of France.  
 Philip count of Flanders, who loved extremely  
 Henry the young king, often counselled him,  
 And Theobald of Blois, in whom Henry had great  
     faith,  
 And the king of France gave his power  
 To Henry the young, with which he began  
 To supersede his father, where he had not right.  
 When his father knew it, he immediately sent for  
 William king of Scotland, who came with great retinue,  
 And William brought with him David his brother.  
 The earl of Leicester commanded well that army.

The siege  
of Rouen  
raised.

Henry of cele gent en Normendye alayt,  
La cyté de Roanne<sup>1</sup> assegé trovayt ;  
Henry par poer sun fiz enchascayt,  
Et le ray de Fraunce ses tentes i lessayt ;  
Phelippe quens de Flaundes le dos ly tornayt ;  
La cyté de Roan<sup>2</sup> Henry par là salvayt.

Le primer mays<sup>3</sup> de May le ray volt repairer  
Of sa compaygnye en Engleterre arer.  
Sun fiz Henry le joven, le duk de Payter,

The king  
and his son  
reconciled.

Richard fiz Alayn, vayllaun[t] chevaler,  
Le counte de Brettayne Geffray, lur counsailler,  
Sunt venuz à Loundres et fount messager  
Le counte de Brettayne,<sup>4</sup> ke va le ray prier  
Ke sun fiz à ly se peuse<sup>5</sup> affayter,  
Et ad sa volunté sun trespas amender.

Ataunt le joven rays ly vent<sup>6</sup> mercy cryer.  
Le pere le fiz rescayt de molt gentil quer,  
Et sun maltalent le volt pardonner ;  
Par serement, par escryt, le fet<sup>7</sup> obliger,  
Ke jamès après fra guere sur ly mover,

Submission  
of the king  
of Scot-  
land.

Ne sa pes enfrayndre par terre ne par mer.  
Kaunt sunt accordez ly fiz et ly per,  
Vent le ray d'Escoce grace demaunder ;  
Et ly ray Henry ses chastels fet liverer,  
Et fraunchement li soffre Escoce gouverner.  
Al ray Henry estut en Fraunce rethorner,  
Et parmy Normendye ses terres visiter ;  
Of le ray de Fraunce ad<sup>8</sup> à Parys parlementer ;

<sup>1</sup> *de Reme*, B. C. D. Of course the writer means the city of Rouen, but Robert of Brunne translates it, rather naively, "That reame was biseged with the power of France."

<sup>2</sup> *Reme*, B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *le primer jour*, B.

<sup>4</sup> All that precedes, from *Geffray* in the second line before, is omitted in B.

<sup>5</sup> *se puisse*, B. *se puis*, C. *se peusse*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *reys veent*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Par serment e escrit li fet*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ad* omitted in B. C. D.

Henry with that people went into Normandy,  
He found the city of Rouen besieged ;  
Henry by force put his son to flight,  
And the king of France left his tents there ;  
Philip count of Flanders turned his back upon him ;  
Henry thereby saved the city of Rouen.

The first day of May the king would repair  
Back to England with his company.  
His son Henry the young, the duke of Poitiers,  
Richard fitz Alan, a knight of worth,  
Geoffrey count of Britany, their counsellor,  
Are come to London, and make their messenger  
The count of Britany, who goes to solicit the king  
That his son may be reconciled to him,  
And make amends for his trespass at his will  
And then the young king comes to solicit forgiveness  
of him.

The father receives the son with very gentle heart,  
And is willing to pardon his perverse conduct ;  
He makes him enter into obligation by oath and  
writing,

That he will never afterwards cause war to be moved  
against him,

Nor his peace to be broken, by land or water.

When the son and the father are reconciled,  
The king of Scotland comes to demand grace ;  
And king Henry causes his castles to be restored to  
him,

And suffers him freely to govern Scotland.

It was necessary for king Henry to return into France,  
And visit his lands throughout Normandy ;

He has to hold a conference at Paris with the king  
of France ;

Ne seet si il dait par la guere comencer,  
 Ou par les xij. peres du tut amouner.<sup>1</sup>  
 Ben set ke il ne poet<sup>2</sup> ray tuz jours regner ;  
 Pur quai sun tresor comence diviser,<sup>3</sup>  
 Saver put la summe ky volt<sup>4</sup> escoter.

Cessaunt myl<sup>5</sup> mars de blauns esterlyns  
 Maunda le rays en Acre par marchauns de Provyns,<sup>6</sup>  
 Encountre sa venue sur les Sarazyns ;  
 Cynkaunte mil mars, dount payn<sup>7</sup> aver et vyns,  
 Prestayt as abbays ke furent en ruyns ;<sup>8</sup>  
 De l'avoyr ke demort en cofres et coffyns  
 Fist sunt testament, cum funt les pelryns.

*Cel si est le testament le rays Henry secounde.*

King  
 Henry's  
 will.

A Waltham va le rays fere sun testament ;  
 Partye de sun aver devysa bonement :  
 Al Temples en Acre v. mil mars d'argent ;  
 Autaunt à l'Hospital al sustenement.  
 As genz ke demorent Acre à defendre,  
 Cynk mil mars lour donne<sup>9</sup> en ayde à despendre ;  
 Al mesouns de la terre de altre religyoun,  
 As hermytes et malades, v. mil mars de doun ;  
 As moynes et chanoynes,<sup>10</sup> et altre compaynye<sup>11</sup>  
 Ke sunt en Engleterre en habite de sainte vye,  
 V. mil mars dona de sa tresorye ;  
 Et ad tuz cels ke en Normendye estaynt,  
 Del testament le rays iij. mil mars avaynt ;<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *de tut en amouner*, B. *de tut amouner*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *ne put*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *devyser*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *qe veut*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Sexsaunte mil marz*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne makes it only "Sex thousand marke." A reads *myl mil*.

<sup>6</sup> *par marchaundys de Province*, C. *par marchaunz de Provynce*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *payns*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *enruinez*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *en aide lour doune*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Al moignes et al chanoynes*, C.

<sup>11</sup> Robert of Brunne translates *et altre compaynye* by "and other of suilk raf."

<sup>12</sup> *v. mil mars aveit*, B. Robert of Brunne follows this reading, "Five thousand mark unto ther tresorie."

Does not know if he ought to begin with war,  
Or by making love altogether to the twelve peers.  
He knows well that he cannot reign king for ever,  
Wherefore he begins to dispose of his treasure,  
Who will listen, may know the sum.

Sixty thousand marks in white sterlings  
The king sent into Acre by merchants of Provyns,  
Against his coming to war upon the Saracens ;  
Fifty thousand marks, with which to have bread and  
wines,  
He lent to the abbeys which were in ruin ;  
Of the property which remains in chests and baskets  
He makes his will, as the pilgrims do.

*This is the will of king Henry the Second.*

To Waltham goes the king to make his will :  
Part of his wealth he disposed of worthily :  
To the Temple in Acre, five thousand marks of money ;  
As much to the Hospital for its support.  
To the people who remain to defend Acre,  
He gives them in aid five thousand marks to spend ;  
To houses in the land of other orders of monks,  
To hermits and sick people, five thousand marks of gift ;  
To monks and canons, and other company  
Which are in England in garb of holy life,  
He gave five thousand marks from his treasury ;  
And to all those who were in Normandy,  
They had three thousand marks by the king's will ;

King  
Henry's  
bequests.

Al mesuns de meseals<sup>1</sup> de mesme le pays  
 Trays cens mars d'esterlyns dona de sun devys;  
 As dames de habite<sup>2</sup> de Mortayne et Vilers<sup>3</sup>  
 Devysa ij. c. mars d'esterlyns en deners;  
 Et as religiouns ke sunt en Aquitaine<sup>4</sup>  
 Devisa mil mars, le tenent ben pur<sup>5</sup> gayne;  
 Et ad cels<sup>6</sup> ke Fount Ebrarde à lour mesun<sup>7</sup> delà  
 Le ray par sun devys ij. mil mars dona;  
 As dames de Brettayne, de saynt Supplice nomez,  
 De mesme le testament ount .c. mars coverez;  
 Les mesouns de Kartouse<sup>8</sup> ij. mil<sup>9</sup> mars en ount;  
 Et iij. mil mars le ordre de Graunt Mount;  
 Le ordre de Cystels<sup>10</sup> ij. mil mars avayt;  
 Le ordre de Clunye<sup>11</sup> mil mars rescayt;  
 Le ordre de Premoustre ij. c. mars d'esterlyns;  
 Les dames de Markayne c. mars ount<sup>12</sup> à vyns;  
 Al mesouns de Artoys,<sup>13</sup> ke sunt delà la mer  
 Devisa ij. c. mars, ne failly nul dener;  
 Al femmes<sup>14</sup> de Engleterre, de gentil lynage,  
 Trays c. mars d'or<sup>15</sup> à lour maryage;  
 A femmes<sup>16</sup> gentils et povers ke sunt en Normendye,  
 C. mars de fyn or devysait en aye;  
 C. mars d'or al darayn gentil femmes avaynt,  
 K'en la terre de Angeou descounsaylés estaynt.  
 Tut saunz le testament<sup>17</sup> ke le ray fesait,  
 Et saunz le graunt avoyr ke en Acres avait,

<sup>1</sup> *des mesals*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *A dames en habit*, B. *As dames en habit*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *de Mortayn en Vilers*, C.

<sup>4</sup> This line and the preceding are transposed in C. Robert of Brunne translates, "to tho religiouses."

<sup>5</sup> *le tienent pur gayne*, B. *ke tenent*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *A ceus qe*, B. *A cels de*, C. *A cels del*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *mesons*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *de Charnise*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ij. mil*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *Cisteaus*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Clony*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *ount* omitted in D.

<sup>13</sup> *de Arroys*, B. C. *As mesouns de Arroys*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *As femmes*, D.

<sup>15</sup> "A hunderth mark of gold," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>16</sup> *As femmes*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *le grant testament*, B.



To the houses of lepers of the same country  
He gave by his will three hundred marks sterling;  
To the ladies of the habit of Mortain and Villers  
He left two hundred marks sterling in money,  
And to the convents which are in Aquitaine  
He left a thousand marks, they hold it well for gain;  
And to those of Fontevraud, to their house beyond sea,  
The king by his will gave two thousand marks,  
The ladies of Britany, named of St. Supplice,  
By the same will have received a hundred marks;  
The houses of Chartreux have a thousand marks by it;  
And the order of Grandmont three thousand marks;  
The order of Citeaux had two thousand marks;  
The order of Cluny receives a thousand marks;  
The order of Premonstratenses two hundred marks in  
sterlings;  
The ladies of Markayne have a hundred marks for  
wines;  
To the houses of Artois, which are beyond the sea,  
He left two hundred marks, not a penny was wanting;  
To the women in England of gentle lineage  
He left three hundred marks of gold for their marriage;  
To the women, gentle and poor, who are in Normandy  
He left for an aid a hundred marks of fine gold;  
A hundred marks of gold finally had gentle women,  
Who in the land of Anjou were without friends.  
Besides the will which the king made,  
And besides the great wealth which he had in Acre,

A les religiouns, as quels<sup>1</sup> avaunt prestait,  
Quaraunte mil mars pur Deu pardonait.

Henry's  
visit to  
Paris.

Kaunt le ray Henry ad fet sun testament,  
Al parlement de Fraunce demaunde amendement.<sup>2</sup>  
Tuz les melz vanez de Dovre à Derwent  
Sunt of le ray alez atyrez richement ;  
Dunt parmy Parys est dit communement,  
Ke unkes virent rays of si bele gent.  
Henry du ray de Fraunce demaunde<sup>3</sup> amendement.  
Les .xij. pers se levent,<sup>4</sup> et vount parler ent,  
Et<sup>5</sup> entre les .ij. rays fount acordement.  
Le ray Henry revent kaunt fet ad sun talent.

En l'an suaunt après, à la my esté,  
Countes et barouns le ray ad<sup>6</sup> maundé,  
Parlement tenir volt à sa cyté,

The king  
of Scotland  
goes to the  
parliament  
at Oxford.

Cel houre en Oxenforde ; par bres<sup>7</sup> l'ad nouncyé  
Al ray William d'Escoce, et cyl i vynt de gré ;<sup>8</sup>  
Devaunt le ray Henry ilokes ad joré  
Ke à Everwyk vendrayt, of klers, of barné,<sup>9</sup>  
A l'Assumpcioun Marye la mere Dé.

Sun serement ad tenuz de fraunche voluté ;  
Ses clers et sun barnage<sup>10</sup> à Everwyk ad mené.

Al rays et ad sun fiz,<sup>11</sup> par lettre confirmé,  
Ount els trestuz fet homage et fealté,

Arrange-  
ments be-  
tween the  
two coun-  
tries.

Et ke le eglyse d'Escoce serrait obligé  
Al mouster de Engleterre, cum al primalté.<sup>12</sup>

Et si le ray d'Escoce sait jammès trové  
Encountre sun seynur Henry avaunt nomé,  
Les clers et les barouns d'Escoce ount graunté,

<sup>1</sup> *Al religions à quels*, C. *As re-  
ligiouns as quels*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *du France son chemin emprent*,  
B. C. and D., which has *de Fraunce*.  
The reading of the three MSS.  
probably the correct one.

<sup>3</sup> *maunde*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *ge levent*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Et* omitted in B.

<sup>6</sup> *ad le rei*, B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *par bref*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *e od barné*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *of clers et ouf barné*, C. *oue  
clers, od barné*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *son barné*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *e son fitz*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *de l'Ançleterre com à primalté*  
C.

To the abbeyes, to which he before advanced loans,  
He forgave for God's sake a thousand marks.

When king Henry had made his testament  
He demands amends of the parliament of France.  
All the men of most worth from Dover to Derwent  
Are gone with the king, in rich attire,  
Of which it is commonly said in Paris,  
That they never saw a king with such a fair retinue.  
Henry demands amends of the king of France.  
The twelve peers rise, and go to confer on it,  
And effect an agreement between the two kings.  
King Henry returns when he has done his will.

In the year following after, at Midsummer,  
The king has sent for earls and barons,  
He will hold a parliament at his city,  
This time in Oxford; he has announced it by writs  
To king William of Scotland, and he came there  
willingly;  
There before king Henry he has sworn  
That he would come to York, with clergy and barons,  
At the Assumption of Mary the mother of God.  
He has kept his oath by free will;  
He has brought his clergy and his barons to York.  
To the king and his son, by letter confirmed,  
They have all performed homage and fealty,  
And that the church of Scotland should be subject  
To the church of England, as to the primacy.  
And if the king of Scotland be ever found  
Against his lord Henry before named,  
The clergy and the barons of Scotland have granted,

Ke al ray<sup>1</sup> de Engleterre serrount touz doné,  
 Et le ray d'Escoce serrait<sup>2</sup> defyé;  
 Et ke nul felun Englays eschapé  
 Sait en la terre [le ray] d'Escoce<sup>3</sup> recetté;  
 Si, en la court le rays de Engleterre clamé,  
 Ne veygne et preygne agarde, sait-il appelé.<sup>4</sup>  
 Ausint de gent d'Escoce<sup>5</sup> est la pes tayllé,  
 Ke nul en Engleterre felount sait herbe[r]gé,  
 Si al bayllyf du pays ne face seureté,  
 Ke al ray d'Escoce, kaunt serra<sup>6</sup> chalengé,  
 Irra saunz debat, et là serra jugé.

The sove-  
 reignty of  
 England  
 acknow-  
 ledged.

Le ray Henry est sage, et doute gylerye,  
 Il volt ke ço<sup>7</sup> covenaut sait ben establye,  
 V. chastels ad resceu par taunt en sa ballye;  
 Quatre countes hostage<sup>8</sup> sunt en sa mercye,  
 Et xvj. chivalers, chascun ad baronye.<sup>9</sup>  
 Kaunt Henry est seur de cel seygnurye,  
 Et le fet conuz par tut Albanye,<sup>10</sup>  
 Les chastels, les hostages, rend par curtaisys.  
 Par chartre enselé le ray d'Escoce se lye,  
 Et ly et ses hairs en successerye,  
 A tenir Escoce of la manauntye  
 Par homage et servise, taunt cum homme ad vye,  
 Du ray de Engleterre; or est la pes fynye,  
 Et ly joven rays alez en Normendye.

The Scot-  
 tish king's  
 homage.

Kaunt xxviii. aunz du tut<sup>11</sup> sunt passez  
 Ke le ray Henry ad tenu les regnez,  
 En le mayns de August<sup>12</sup> à Kardoyl est alez;  
 Le seygnur de Galwaye, ke Rouland fu nomez,<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Et al ray*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *ferra*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *la tere le ray d'Escoce*, B. C.  
 D.

<sup>4</sup> *s'il soit appelé*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *des genz d'Escoce*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *serrayt*, B. *serreit*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *qe ceste*, B. *qe cel*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *ostagers*, B. *hostagez*, C. *hos-  
 tages*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *od baronie*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *parmy tot Albanye*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *de tut*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *de Haust*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *est nomez*, B.

That to the king of England they shall be all given,  
And the king of Scotland should be defied ;  
And that no fugitive English felon  
Be received into the land of the king of Scotland ;  
If, cited in the king of England's court,  
He come not and take his judgment, be he appealed.  
Similarly is the peace of the people of Scotland shaped,  
That no felon be harboured in England,  
Unless he make surety to the bailiff of the district,  
That to the king of Scotland, when he shall be claimed,  
He shall go without dispute, and there shall be judged.

King Henry is wise, and fears deceit,  
He wills that this covenant be well established ;  
For this reason he has received into his keeping five  
castles,  
Four earls are in his hands as hostages,  
And sixteen knights, each has barony.  
When Henry is assured of that lordship,  
And the fact known through all Albany,  
He restores by courtesy the castles and the hostages.  
By charter sealed the king of Scotland binds himself,  
Both him and his heirs who shall succeed,  
To hold Scotland with the lordship  
By homage and service, all their lives,  
Of the king of England ; now is the peace completed,  
And the young king gone into Normandy.

When twenty-eight years are entirely past  
That king Henry has held the kingdoms,  
In the month of August he is gone to Carlisle ;  
The lord of Galway, who was named Rouland,

Et David, frere le ray [d'Escoce avant nomez,]<sup>1</sup>  
 Sunt venuz à ray<sup>2</sup> Henry le senez,  
 Galway clayment tenir, cum lur herytez,  
 De ly et de ses hairs par homage<sup>3</sup> et fealtez,  
 Al ray Henry le fount; sa pes loure [est]<sup>4</sup> grauntez.  
 Henry sun [fitz]<sup>5</sup> cel heure fu mort, et enterrez  
 A Roanne<sup>6</sup> en Normendye, à Nostre Dame de prez.

Death of  
 Henry the  
 young  
 king.

*Après la mort Baldewyn le Mesel, ray de Jerusalem,  
 vynt sun successour en Engleterre quere ayde.*

Kaunt le joven ray Henry mort estait,  
 Baldewyn le Mesel, ke une feylle avait,  
 En Jerusalem noblement regnait,  
 Enaynt<sup>7</sup> et coroné, unkes sur ly gaynait  
 Sarazyn plain pé de terre k'il guyait.  
 Si orde fu en lepre à nul ne communait;  
 En bataille kaunt il vint, les Sarazyns chascait.  
 Chuvaler estraunge of ly demorait,  
 William de Aquitayne home ly appelait;  
 Kant Baldewyn fu mort, sa fillye esposait,  
 Et de Jerusalem fu rays par tel drait.  
 Après la mort Baldewyn, la guere començait,  
 Et la descomfiture sur Krystyens tornait.  
 Le ray William ilokes<sup>8</sup> demorer ne poait,  
 Mès vent en Engleterre, où aide aver quidait;  
 Et al ray Henry pytousement parlayt,<sup>9</sup>  
 Coment la Terre Sainte le soldan destruit,

Death of  
 Baldwin  
 king of  
 Jerusalem,  
 and misfor-  
 tunes of the  
 Holy Land.

<sup>1</sup> frere le rei d'Escoce avaunt par-  
 lez, B. frere le reys d'Escoce  
 avant nomez, C. The line is omitted  
 in D. frere le ray Henry le senez, A.

<sup>2</sup> al reys, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> par home, B.

<sup>4</sup> lur est grantez, B. D. lour ad  
 grantez, C.

<sup>5</sup> sun fitz, B. C. D. frere, A.

<sup>6</sup> A Rohan, B. A Reme, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> Enoynt B. C. D. Quaynt et  
 coroné, A.

<sup>8</sup> de illoque, B.

<sup>9</sup> pitousement moustreit, B. D. Et  
 le rey Henri pitusement priayt, C.

And David, brother of the king of Scotland before  
named,

Are come to king Henry the wise ;  
They claim to hold Galway, as their inheritance,  
Of him and of his heirs by homage and fealty ;  
They perform it to king Henry ; his peace is granted  
them.

Henry his son at this time was dead, and buried  
At Rouen in Normandy, in Notre Dame des Prés.

*After the death of Baldwin the Leper, king of Jeru-  
salem, his successor came into England to seek  
aid.*

When the young king Henry was dead,  
Baldwin the Leper, who had one daughter,  
Reigned nobly in Jerusalem,  
Anointed and crowned, never from him gained  
The Saracen a full foot of land which he ruled.  
So foul was he in leprosy that he held communion  
with nobody ;  
When he came into battle, he put the Saracens to  
flight.

A foreign knight dwelt with him,  
People called him William of Aquitaine ;  
When Baldwin was dead, he married his daughter,  
And was king of Jerusalem by that right.  
After the death of Baldwin, war began,  
And defeat turned upon the Christians.  
King William could not remain there,  
But came into England, where he thought to have  
aid ;  
And told king Henry feelingly,  
How the soldan was destroying the Holy Land,

Henry pro- Ly priast k'yl venist,<sup>1</sup> si noun Akres serrait  
 mises to En main de Sarazyn, ke à l'oure l'assegait.<sup>2</sup>  
 assist Acre. Le rays ly respount, et du dolur<sup>3</sup> lermait,  
 " Moun fiz ayné [est mort],<sup>4</sup> à ky ma terre devait<sup>5</sup>  
 " Après ma mort descendre, coroune pur ço<sup>6</sup> portait,  
 " Si jo fus<sup>7</sup> hors de terre, la guere se moverait;  
 " Si jo i alasse, mon fiz Richard irrait,  
 " Et sun<sup>8</sup> heritage par aventure perdrat;  
 " Mès ayde purveroums ke Akres salvé sait."  
 Le ray William repaire of molz riche douns,  
 Et vent al ray de Fraunce, et moustre<sup>9</sup> ses resuns;  
 Et ly ray Phelippe ad chargé ses baroums,  
 Ke al ray William facent le respoums.<sup>10</sup>  
 Les xij. pers<sup>11</sup> ount fet loure discucioums,  
 Dyent al ray Phelippe, " Escotez nos sermoums,  
 The French " Deçà la mere de Grece<sup>12</sup> sunt deus regioums,  
 king's an- " Engleterre et Fraunce, en divers<sup>13</sup> baundoums.  
 swer. " Henry, rays Englays, tent argent à fusoums;  
 " Ses deus fiz,<sup>14</sup> Richard et Jon, sunt forz et feluns;  
 " Si en la Terre Sainte ws et nous<sup>15</sup> fussions,  
 " Par cas pussoums perdre terre<sup>16</sup> et mesoums.  
 " Mès kaunt le ray Henry, ses fiz, et ses Gascoums  
 " Irroumt cele part, nous serroums<sup>17</sup> compaynoums."  
 Le ray William retorne à ses possessioums.  
 Henry at Henry fiz l'emperyce fet molt graunt honurs  
 Becket's Al fertre saint Thomas, où sovent gist en plus.  
 shrine. Vj. auns après vesquit<sup>18</sup> en paynes et dolours;  
 En Normendye s'en va, et chet en langours.

<sup>1</sup> *Li pria q'il venit*, B. D.<sup>2</sup> *qe à l'oure le segait*, C.<sup>3</sup> *et de dolour*, D.<sup>4</sup> *Mon fitz ainez est mort*, B. C.  
D.<sup>5</sup> *donait*, C.<sup>6</sup> *cornu pur ceo*, C.<sup>7</sup> *Si j'eo fusse*, B. D.<sup>8</sup> *A son*, B.<sup>9</sup> *de Fraunce, ly moustrer*, C. D.<sup>10</sup> *les respoums*, C. D.<sup>11</sup> *Les xij. peres*, D.<sup>12</sup> *Dekes al mere de Grece*, C.<sup>13</sup> *endevers*, C.<sup>14</sup> *Ses fitz*, B.<sup>15</sup> *nous et vous*, C.<sup>16</sup> *terres*, C.<sup>17</sup> *vus serrunt compaynoums*, B.  
C. D.<sup>18</sup> *vesquit après*, C.



Prayed him that he would come, otherwise Acre would be  
In the hand of the Saracen, who at that time was  
besieging it.

The king replied to him, and shed tears of grief:

“ My eldest son is dead, to whom my land ought  
“ To descend after my death, wherefore he bore crown,  
“ If I were out of the land, war would be stirred up ;  
“ If I went there, my son Richard would go,  
“ And by chance would lose his heritage ;  
“ But we will provide aid that Acre be saved.”

King William returns with very rich gifts,  
And comes to the king of France, and explains his  
mission ;

And king Philip has charged his barons

That they should make the reply to king William.

The twelve peers have concluded their discussions,

Say to king Philip, “ Hear our advice,

“ On this side the sea of Greece are two kingdoms,

“ England and France, under different powers.

“ Henry, the English king, possesses money in abun-  
“ dance ;

“ His two sons, Richard and John, are strong and  
“ wicked ;

“ If you and we were in the Holy Land,

“ Perhaps we might lose land and houses.

“ But when king Henry, his sons, and his Gascons

“ Shall go thither, we will be companions.”

King William returns to his possessions.

Henry son of the empress does very great honours  
To the shrine of St. Thomas, where he often lies in tears.

He lived six years after in pains and griefs ;

He goes into Normandy, and falls into weakness.

Richard, sun fiz, ly vent<sup>1</sup> pur solaz et socours ;  
 Le pere ly charge et prie, pur Deu et ses honurs,  
 Ke en la Terre Sainte use ses valours ;  
 Aver ly doune assez dount porra fere le cours.<sup>2</sup>  
 Richard dit " Volenters, par saynt Martyn<sup>3</sup> de Tours."  
 Après xxxiiij. aunz, vj. mays, et xij. jours,  
 Del regalté ray Henry cessaynt les labours ;  
 Il gist al Fount-Ebrarde à l'abbaye<sup>4</sup> des sorours.

Death of  
 Henry II.

*Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>. centesimo octogesimo nono.*

En le mays<sup>5</sup> de Septembre, le dymaynge primer,  
 Le primat de Caunterbyre, Baldwyn, vint corouner  
 Le bon ray Richard tut drait à Westmouster.  
 L'elyt de Everwyk le ray fet maunder,<sup>6</sup>  
 Vynt à cele feste, Geffray le day nomer,<sup>7</sup>  
 Sun frere fu par pere, et plus<sup>8</sup> le dait amer ;  
 Saunt quere l'apostoyle ly fist<sup>9</sup> confermer.  
 Le pallyoun<sup>10</sup> de Rome ly vint par messenger.  
 Venuz sunt al rays ly counte et ly baroun,  
 Chuvaler et sergaunt parmy la regioun,  
 Cytayn et burgays, cum ben fu<sup>11</sup> resoun ;  
 Il prent les homages<sup>12</sup> les fealtez en soun,  
 Establye sa pes, se purvait garnysount  
 Devers la Terre Sainte, pur la capcioun  
 De Akre, ke fu prise par Sarazyn feloun.  
 Englays et Normaunz, chivalers en guerdoun,  
 Demorent of le ray par convencioun.<sup>13</sup>

He pre-  
 pares his  
 journey to  
 the Holy  
 Land.

<sup>1</sup> *son fiz, i vcent, D.*  
<sup>2</sup> *fere les thours, C.*  
<sup>3</sup> *Martyn, omitted in B.*  
<sup>4</sup> *en l'abbay, C.*  
<sup>5</sup> *en mois, B. C. D.* Richard I.  
 was crowned on Sunday, Sept. 3,  
 1189.  
<sup>6</sup> *le rei le fet maunder, B. C. D.*  
<sup>7</sup> *qe Geffrai doi nomer, B. C. D.*

<sup>8</sup> *en plus, C. D.*  
<sup>9</sup> *Sanz quere l'apostoylle li fet, C.*  
*Saunz quere le apostoyle ly fist, D.*  
<sup>10</sup> *Le pallium, C.*  
<sup>11</sup> *cum fu bien reson, B. D.*  
<sup>12</sup> *ses homages, B. Ly prent les*  
*homages, D.*  
<sup>13</sup> *en convencioun, D.*

Richard, his son, comes to him there for solace and succour ;

The king charges and prays him, for the sake of God and his honours,

That he employ his valour in the Holy Land ;

He gives him wealth enough, with which he may execute the expedition.

Richard says, " Willingly, by St. Martin of Tours."

After thirty-three years, six months, and twelve days,

The labours of the royalty of king Henry ceased ;

He lies at Fontevraud in the abbey of the sisters.

*Anno Domini 1189.*

On the first Sunday in the month of September,  
The primate of Canterbury, Baldwin, came to crown  
The good king Richard straight at Westminster.

The king sent for the elect of York,

He came to that feast, I must name him Geoffrey.

He was his brother by the father, the more he ought  
to love him ;

Without going to the pope, he caused him to be confirmed.

The pallium came to him from Rome by a messenger.

To the king are come the earls and barons,  
Knights and serjeants throughout the kingdom,  
Citizens and burgesses, as it was quite right.

He takes all their homages and their fealties,  
Establishes his peace, and provides forces

Towards the Holy Land, for the capture

Of Acre, which was taken by the wicked Saracen.

English and Normans, knights in pay,

Remain with the king by agreement.

Sun pere ly lessa deners à fusoun ;  
La aler ly comaunde sur benyçon.<sup>1</sup>

The suspi-  
cions of the  
king of  
France.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce fust à Saynt Dynye <sup>2</sup>  
En privé parlement, où il ad oye  
[K]e le ray <sup>3</sup> Richard of sa chualerye  
Bye quere sur Sarazyn la terre de Solye.  
A Parys s'en va, et barnez et clergie  
Fet là venir à ly, devotement les prie  
De aide et [de] counsail <sup>4</sup> sur la paenerye ;  
Et dist, "Le ray Richard,<sup>5</sup> par sa surquiderye,  
" Volt embler cel vayage saunz ma compaynye."  
Escotez ore coment le ray <sup>6</sup> Phelippe dist folye.

Al parlement de Fraunce sunt venuz messagers  
A ly ray Phelippe et à les xij. pers <sup>7</sup>  
Par le ray Richard, counte de Payters,  
Le counte de Albemarle,<sup>8</sup> et ly quens Roger,  
Sir Lucas de Lucye, et Robert de Coyners,<sup>9</sup>  
Saluent sire Phelippe et ses counsaillers.

Richard's  
message to  
him.

Dist ly quens de Albemarle,<sup>10</sup> " Sir, en graunt  
amurs  
" Te salut nostre rays, cum fere dait <sup>11</sup> sun seygnur.  
" Te maunde ke la noyse et tut le graunt <sup>12</sup> clamour  
" Ke de Akre est venuz, à tuz est dolour ;  
" Mort sunt les Kristiens, nul i vist cel <sup>13</sup> jour ;  
" Pur quai le ray Richard te prie, pur l'amour  
" Ke morust en la croyce humayne Salveour,  
" Aydez as Kristyens <sup>14</sup> en ço graunt <sup>15</sup> tristour.

<sup>1</sup> *Aler li manda sur sa benisçon,*  
B. *L'aler ly comaunda sur sa benis-*  
*çon,* C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *Dionie,* B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *Qe le rey,* B. D. *De,* A.

<sup>4</sup> *e de conseil,* B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Et le rey Richard,* C.

<sup>6</sup> *coment rei P.,* B.

<sup>7</sup> *e à ses xij. peres,* B. *et al xii.*  
*peers,* C.

<sup>8</sup> *Aumarle,* B. *Almarle,* D.

Robert of Brunne has here, "Of  
" Almarle erle William, and an erle  
" Rogers."

<sup>9</sup> *de Coigners,* B. *Coygners,* C. D.  
"de Coynguers," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *Aumarle,* B.

<sup>11</sup> *com sire dait,* C.

<sup>12</sup> *et le grant,* C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *nul n'i vist ceo,* B. *ceo,* D

<sup>14</sup> *au Cristiens,* C.

<sup>15</sup> *en cel grant,* D.

His father left him money in abundance ;  
Enjoins him the expedition on his blessing.

King Philip of France was at St. Denis  
In private conference, where he has heard  
That king Richard, with his knights,  
Is designing to seek the land of Syria from the  
Saracen.

He proceeds to Paris, and barons and clergy  
He summons to him there, prays them earnestly  
For aid and for advice against the pagans ;  
And says, " King Richard, through his presumption,  
" Will steal this voyage without my company."  
Hear now how king Philip talked foolishness.

To the parliament of Paris are come, as messengers  
To king Philip and to the twelve peers  
From king Richard, the earl of Poitiers,  
The earl of Albemarle, and the earl Roger,  
Sir Lucas de Lucy, and Robert de Coniers,  
They salute sire Philip and his councillors.

Says the earl of Albemarle, " Sire, in great love  
" Our king salutes thee, as he ought to do his lord.  
" He sends thee word that the rumour and all the  
" great outcry  
" That is come from Acre, is grief to all ;  
" The Christians are dead, not one is alive there at  
" this day ;  
" Wherefore king Richard prays thee, for the love  
" Of him who died on the cross the Saviour of man-  
" kind,  
" Help the Christians in this great sorrow.

“ Le ray Richard s’atyre, ne volt aver sojour :  
 “ Si tu as de ly et il de tay succour,  
 “ La terre est regayné, molt serrayt graunt honur.”  
 Les xij. pers de Fraunce al ray Phelippe ount dit,  
 “ Sir, le duk Richard n’est pas ray petit ;  
 “ Plus vaillaunt seynur huy ne port habit.  
 “ Larges sunt les terres ke sun pere conquist ;  
 “ Argent ad saunz noubre, chuvalers par escrit  
 “ Sunt à ly lyez, as quels<sup>1</sup> saunz countredit  
 “ Akres ert renduz par Richard ray elyt ;  
 “ Lesser sa compaynye à Deu serrait despyt.”

Philip joins  
Richard in  
the Cru-  
sade.

Le ray Phelippe remaunde molt curtaysement,  
 Et al ray Richard mercy<sup>2</sup> molt sovent  
 Sa bone volunté et sun maundement ;  
 Ly maunde k’il bye passer à Marsyl verrayment  
 Le primer jour de Marce, si Deu prest le vent ;<sup>3</sup>  
 Et prie a[l ray] Richard<sup>4</sup> et à sa bone gent,  
 Ke cel aler ne lessent pur nuly<sup>5</sup> prechement.

The latter  
collects  
money for  
the under-  
taking.

Kaunt le ray Richard les respouns<sup>6</sup> savait  
 De Phelippe ray<sup>7</sup> de Fraunce, sun counsail assemblait,  
 Et trestut le mobile ke en Engleterre avait  
 Et partye de ses terres vendre comaundait,  
 Ne cyté, ne burge, ne marchaunt taillayt,  
 Ne disme, ne vyntyme, à clers<sup>8</sup> demaundait.  
 Le evesk de Dureme Sadberge<sup>9</sup> achatait,

Sells lands.

Of le wapentak, pur avoyr k’il donayt.  
 Le eveske de Wyncestre issi<sup>10</sup> barganayt,

<sup>1</sup> *ad quel*, C. à *quels*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *mercyst*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *si Dieu li preste vent*, B. *ly prest vent*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *al rey Richard*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *pur nul*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *le respons*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Du rei Philip de*, B. *De Philipp rey de F.*, C. A. reads *Ke Phelippe*,

which is evidently incorrect.

<sup>8</sup> *de clers*, B. D. *de vytteime des clers* C.

<sup>9</sup> *Saberg*, B., and Robert of Brunne. *Sagberge*, D. It has been supposed to be Sedgfield in the county of Durham.

<sup>10</sup> *issint*, B. C.

" King Richard is preparing, he will not have delay ;  
 " If thou hast of him, and he of thee, assistance,  
 " The land is regained, it would be very great honour."

The twelve peers of France have said to king Philip,  
 " Sire, duke Richard is no little king ;  
 " No more valiant lord wears the garb at this day.  
 " Broad are the lands which his father conquered ;  
 " Money he has without count, knights by writing  
 " Are bound to him, to whom without contradiction  
 " Acres will be rendered through Richard the king  
     " elect ;  
 " To leave his company would be an affront to God."

King Philip sends back very courteously,  
 And thanks king Richard very often  
 For his good will and his message ;  
 He says he intends to proceed to Marseilles truly  
 On the first day of March, if God grant the wind ;  
 And prays king Richard and his good people,  
 That they abandon not this expedition for anybody's  
     preaching.

When king Richard knew the reply  
 Of Philip king of France, he assembled his council,  
 And all the goods that he had in England  
 And part of his lands commanded to be sold,  
 Nor taxed either city, or borough, or merchant,  
 Nor asked of the clergy either tenth or twentieth.  
 The bishop of Durham bought Sadberg,  
 With the wapentake, for the wealth which he gave.  
 The bishop of Winchester similarly bargained,

Ke le ray Richard pur argent ly feffait  
 De deus bons maners, of kaunt ke aportenait.<sup>1</sup>  
 De tel entendement le ray Richard estait,  
 Ke de autry avoyr esplaiter se dotait  
 En la Terre Sainte, où aller beayt.  
 Partaunt al ray d'Escoce tost maunder fesait  
 Venir fere sa pes, de kaunt ke ly devait.<sup>2</sup>  
 En le mays de Novembre<sup>3</sup> à Caunterbyre tut drait  
 William ray d'Escoce vint of graunt esplait,  
 Et of le ray Richard taun[t] bel là parlayt,  
 Ke le ray Richard sun homage là rescait  
 Pur terres ke de ly en Engleterre tenait ;  
 Et sur ço fist sa pes, et countez ly liverayt  
 Xvj. mil lyvres<sup>4</sup> pur le graunt surfait  
 Ke le ray Richard à William pardonait,  
 Salve les servises ke Malcolm solait  
 Fere al rays Englays, et devait de drayt,  
 En venaunt, en alaunt,<sup>5</sup> kaunt maundeze serrait  
 Al parlement de Loundres, et sa livré prendrait,  
 Cum covenaunt taillé entre els volait.  
 Et le ray Richard, saunz contek et saunz plait,  
 Rokesburge et Berwik al ray William rendait,  
 La une part et l'altre ottraye ke si<sup>6</sup> sait.  
 William ray d'Escoce ad pris ses congez,  
 Repaire en sun pais à ses parentez.  
 Le ray Richard demort entre ses barnez,  
 Establye deus gardayns de tut<sup>7</sup> ses regnez ;  
 Hige de Durem<sup>8</sup> eveske renomez,

Obtains  
 money  
 from the  
 king of  
 Scotland.

William  
 comes to  
 London.

Richard  
 appoints  
 guardians  
 of the  
 kingdom.

<sup>1</sup> *ouf quanque portenait*, C. *pur-tenayt*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *de quantq'il deveit*, B.

<sup>3</sup> Robert of Brunne has it, "The moneth of Novembre, after Al-halwemesse."

<sup>4</sup> Robert of Brunne has, "sexti thousand pounde." According to

Roger de Hoveden king William paid ten thousand marks sterling.

<sup>5</sup> *En venaunt et en alaunt*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *La une parte à l'autre outrahe si*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Establi gardeyms à touz ses r. B. de tuz*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *Hugo de Dureme*, D.



That king Richard for money enfeoffed him  
With two good manors, and all that pertained to them.  
Of such sentiment was king Richard,  
That he was afraid of making use of other people's  
property

In the Holy Land, whither he designed to go.  
For this cause he sent immediately to call the king of  
Scotland

To come and make his peace, of all that he owed him.  
In the month of November, direct to Canterbury  
William king of Scotland came with great retinue,  
And spoke so fair there with king Richard,  
That king Richard received his homage there  
For the lands which he held of him in England ;  
And thereupon he made his peace, and delivered him  
counted

Sixteen thousand pounds for the great misdeed  
Which king Richard pardoned to William,  
Save the services which Malcolm used  
To do to the king of England, and ought by right,  
In coming and going, when he should be summoned  
To the parliament of London, and should take his  
livery,

As the agreement concluded between them willed ;  
And king Richard, without strife and without dispute,  
Delivered up Roxburgh and Berwick to king William,  
One part and the other grants that it be so.

William king of Scotland has taken his leave,  
Returns into his country to his kindred.  
King Richard remains among his barons,  
Appoints two guardians of all his kingdoms ;  
Hugh the renowned bishop of Durham,

Et William le evesk<sup>1</sup> de Ely, sunt chargez  
 Garder la regioun of les dignetez.  
 Chualers justises les sunt associez,  
 Huge<sup>2</sup> Bardolf, et William le Mareschal clamez,  
 Geffray le fiz Pers, chuvaler avisez,  
 William de la Bruere fu le quarte nomez,  
 Al plez de la coroune et maintenir les feez.  
 Kaunt le ray Richard sa terre ad establye,  
 La garde comaundé<sup>3</sup> et la justiserye,  
 Se mette en mer à Dover devers Normendye,  
 Oû fet sa purveaunce de aler en Solye.<sup>4</sup>  
 En sa cité de Roanne,<sup>5</sup> of sa chuvalerye,  
 Tint ses Noelez of trop graunt noblye.  
 Le Lundy primer après la Tiphanye<sup>6</sup>  
 Le ray de Fraunce et ly<sup>7</sup> al Gué de Saint Remye<sup>8</sup>  
 Tindrent parlement dount fere la compaynye  
 Ferme<sup>9</sup> pur conquere sur la paenerye.  
 Ly un et ly altre par escrit se lye  
 Fere le pelrinage saunz fraude et boydye.  
 Freres sunt jorez, pur quai la clerye  
 Ad doné la sentence sur la flechaunt partye.  
 Le ray Phelippe s'en va de ilokes à Saint Dynye.<sup>10</sup>  
 Le ray Richard s'en va purver sa navye  
 Des tutes les countrez<sup>11</sup> parmy sa seygnurye,  
 Et guiors<sup>12</sup> de sun host, les nouns noun ay oblye.  
 Li ercevesk de [Aneus]<sup>13</sup> daun Gerard par noun,  
 Et li bon eveske Bernard de Bayoun,  
 Richard de Camevile, et Robert de Sabloun,<sup>14</sup>

Justices  
appointed.

Richard's  
departue

Union  
between  
the two  
kings.

Com-  
manders of  
the fleet.

<sup>1</sup> *William evesqe*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *Hugo*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *ad comaundé*, C.

<sup>4</sup> à *Sulie*, B. *Sully*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *de Rome*, C. *de Rone*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *le Teopinné*, C. Robert of Brunne translates it, "The Monen-day that felle to be next after the tuelft day."

<sup>7</sup> à *ly*, C.

<sup>8</sup> Robert of Brunne says, "at the river of S. Rymay."

<sup>9</sup> *Freine*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Dionie*, B. C.

<sup>11</sup> *De tote les countés*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *les quiburs*, C.

<sup>13</sup> Omitted in A.; here supplied from B. *Auyns*, C. D. *Anrus*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>14</sup> *de Gobloun*, C. *de Sabloun*, Robert of Brunne.

And William bishop of Ely, are charged  
 To guard the kingdom with the dignities.  
 Knights justices are associated with them,  
 Hugh Bardolf, and William entitled the Marshal,  
 Geoffrey fitz Peter, a prudent knight,  
 William de la Bruyere the fourth was named,  
 To the pleas of the crown and to maintain the fees.

When king Richard has settled his land,  
 Has ordered the guardianship and the administration  
 of justice,  
 He puts to sea at Dover towards Normandy,  
 Where he makes his provision for going into Syria.  
 In his city of Rouen, with his knights,  
 He held his Christmas with very great nobility.  
 The first Monday after the Epiphany  
 The king of France and he at Vé St. Remy  
 Held conference, in order to make their company  
 Powerful for conquest over the pagans.  
 One and the other binds himself by writing  
 To perform the pilgrimage without fraud and deceit.  
 They are sworn brothers, wherefore the clergy  
 Has pronounced the curse on the party which fails.  
 King Philip departs thence to St. Denys.  
 King Richard goes to provide his navy  
 From all the countries throughout his lordship,  
 And commanders of his host, I have not forgotten  
 their names.

The archbishop of Auxienne, named dan Gerard,  
 And the good bishop Bernard of Bayonne,  
 Richard de Camville, and Robert de Sabul,

Et William de Forz,<sup>1</sup> sire de Oleroun,  
Ount les nefz le rays en proteccioun,  
A guyer par mer of sa garnisoun  
En la Terre Sainte sur Sarazyn feloun.  
Le ray Richard comaunde ke<sup>2</sup> sanz evasioun  
Aryvent en Marsil.<sup>3</sup> sur sa benyçoun.<sup>4</sup>

They sail. La primer semayn de la Passioun  
Al sigle ount le vent li clerk et ly baroun.<sup>5</sup>  
Des ore les condye<sup>6</sup> Deus et Saint Symoun.  
Parmy cel halte mer siglent al raundoun,  
Cent et x. graunz nefz, defalte de avyroun<sup>7</sup>  
N'ad nul endroit de sai, ne<sup>8</sup> mestre de garçoun ;  
Chascun a gens assez ke sevent lur lesçoun.<sup>9</sup>

Overtaken by a storm. Le quinte jour après se<sup>10</sup> chaunga le vent,  
La mer de Brettayne ount vayné quitement ;<sup>11</sup>  
En la mer d'Espayne sunt chascez par tourment  
Entre Saracyns, mès Deu omnipotent  
Les salva molt ben de lur encombrement.  
X. nefz de la route sunt desavisement  
Forsvées des altres, ly mestres est dolent.  
Une fu là naé,<sup>12</sup> de Depe<sup>13</sup> verrement ;  
Les ix. sunt de Loundres,<sup>14</sup> ke cryent durement  
Sur Deu et sur sa mere, priaunt devotement  
Ke salver les voile, les garde, et les defent,  
Pur l'amour Thomas,<sup>15</sup> ke martirement  
Suffrist pur sainte<sup>16</sup> eglise ; et Deu certainement  
Oyst la priere, escotez ore coment.

Are saved  
by a  
miracle.

<sup>1</sup> *William de Fortez*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *he*, omitted in B.

<sup>3</sup> *Arivent à Marsile*, B. C.

<sup>4</sup> *sur la benyçoun*, D. Robert of Brunne translates here,

“ Richard said tham his wille,

“ ‘Mariners, if ze moun,

“ ‘Aryves in to Marsille, with

“ ‘Godes benisoun.’ ”

<sup>5</sup> *e clerk e baroun*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *les comaunde*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *defaut avyroun*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *ne*, omitted in B. *de se, ne mestre ne garçoun*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *lour escoun*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *si*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *unt wainé cointement*, B. *ount waigné quitement*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *naeez*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *de Cepe*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *Les x. sont à Londres*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *Sein Thomas*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *par saint*, C.

And William de Fortz, lord of Oleron,  
Have under their charge the king's ships,  
To lead by sea with his host  
Into the Holy Land against the wicked Saracen.  
King Richard commands that, without fail,  
They arrive at Marseilles, on his blessing.  
The first week of the Passion  
The clergy and barons have the wind in their sails.  
Henceforth be their guide God and St. Simon.  
Through that high sea they sail rapidly,  
A hundred and ten great ships, want of oar  
No one had in regard of itself, nor need of hands ;  
Each has men enough who know their business.

The fifth day afterwards the wind changed ;  
They have gained in safety the sea of Britany ;  
They are driven by tempest into the sea of Spain,  
Among Saracens, but God Almighty  
Saved them very well from their danger,  
Ten ships of the company are by mismanagement  
Separated from the others, the master is in grief.  
One was there sunk, a ship of Dieppe truly ;  
The nine belong to London, who cry earnestly  
On God and on his mother, praying devoutly  
That he will save them, keep them, and defend them,  
For the love of Thomas, who martyrdom  
Suffered for holy church ; and God certainly  
Listened to the prayer, hear now how.

En une nef de Loundres de ryche atiffement  
 The vision. Sunt deus bons cytayns, ke jovencels ount cent,  
 Prest pur Deu servir cum à pelryn apent.  
 Encost du governaille apparust bonement<sup>1</sup>  
 Un bon erceveske<sup>2</sup> en revestement;  
 Un rays corouné près de ly s'estent,  
 Et pus un eveske,<sup>3</sup> veaunt cele gent.  
 Lors dist ly ercevesk à Loundrays verrayment,<sup>4</sup>  
 " Jo suy cyl sur ky ws cryez sovent,  
 " Thomas de Caunterbyre, Loundrays,<sup>5</sup> ne dotez ent;  
 " Saint Emoun<sup>6</sup> le Martir of may cy est present,<sup>7</sup>  
 " Et saint Nicolas, ky touz jours prestement  
 " Est aide al mariners,<sup>8</sup> les meyne salvement.  
 " Nous trays de Deu là sus<sup>9</sup> avoums comaundement  
 " Gaiter<sup>10</sup> les nefz Richard, et ws ensement."  
 Tost cessa le tempest<sup>11</sup> après le prechement.  
 Departure Taunt cum les nefz le rays Richard sunt en mer,<sup>12</sup>  
 of the king Et ne sevent<sup>13</sup> quel part dayvent aryver,  
 of France. Le ray de Fraunce et ly se fount assembler  
 A Lyouns sur la Roanne,<sup>14</sup> purveer et ordiner,  
 Oû al quel<sup>15</sup> port porrount la mer entrer.  
 Leur hoste fu si graunde, ne poaint herberger  
 En cité, burge, ne vile, ensemble ne passer.  
 Felipe devers Gene<sup>16</sup> sun hoste fet aler;  
 Richard à Marsil passa<sup>17</sup> saunz targer.  
 Ilokes kant devaynt tromper à manger,<sup>18</sup>  
 Bataunt de Cecille vint un messenger.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *verrayment*, C.<sup>2</sup> *Un bel ercevesqe*, B. C. *Un bele ercevesqe*, D.<sup>3</sup> *un altre eveske*, B.<sup>4</sup> *doucement*, B. D. à *Loundrès doucement*, C.<sup>5</sup> *Loundre*, C.<sup>6</sup> *Edmoun*, B.<sup>7</sup> *ou moy est à present*, B.<sup>8</sup> *as mariners*, B. C. à *maryners*, D.<sup>9</sup> *de Deu le roys*, C.<sup>10</sup> *garder*, C. D.<sup>11</sup> *la tempeste*, D.<sup>12</sup> *le neifs Richard sunt entre mer*, B.<sup>13</sup> *ne sovent*, C.<sup>14</sup> *A Bouns sur le Rone*, C. *la Rone*, D.<sup>15</sup> *à quel*, C. D.<sup>16</sup> *Geuen*, C.<sup>17</sup> *de Marsille passe*, C. *passe*, D.<sup>18</sup> *al manger*, D.<sup>19</sup> *vint messenger*, B.

In a ship of London richly equipped  
Are two good citizens, who have a hundred youths,  
Ready to serve God as is a pilgrim's duty.  
Beside the helm appeared truly  
A good archbishop in his robes ;  
A crowned king stands near him,  
And then a bishop, in the sight of these people.  
Then said the archbishop in a low tone to the Londoners,  
" I am he upon whom you call often,  
" Thomas of Canterbury, Londoners, do not doubt it,  
" St. Edmund the martyr is with me here present,  
" And St. Nicholas, who always at hand  
" Is an aid to the seamen, leads them safely.  
" We three from God there above have command  
" To watch over Richard's ships, and you likewise."  
Immediately after the preaching the tempest ceased.

While the ships of king Richard are at sea,  
And know not on what side they are to arrive,  
The king of France and he hold a meeting  
At Lyons on the Rhône, to provide and order  
Where and at what port they will be able to put to  
sea.

Their army was so great, they could not lodge  
In city, borough, or town, or pass together.  
Philip causes his army to go towards Genoa ;  
Richard passed to Marseilles without delay.  
There when they were on the point of sounding the  
horn for dinner,  
A messenger came in haste from Sicily.

Changes  
in Sicily  
affecting  
king  
Richard.

La lettre la rayne de Cecille va doner  
Al Richard<sup>1</sup> sun frere, et le<sup>2</sup> va counter,  
Mort est le ray William, ke solait regner<sup>3</sup>  
En Cecille of Jone, sore le riche<sup>4</sup> Richer ;  
Et ke le counte<sup>5</sup> Tancrede, combataunt chuvaler,  
Cosyn le ray William, se fist coruner,  
Et Jone la rayne en prisoun là fist<sup>6</sup> garder.  
Pur quai le ray Richard se comence<sup>7</sup> coroucer ;  
Ses busces, ses galayes, fet<sup>8</sup> tost aprester,  
Et pense al primour sa soer deliverer.  
Avys<sup>9</sup> ly est k'il ad genz dount conquerer  
Cecille sur Tancrede, et vaindre<sup>10</sup> sun poer,  
Si par pees ne voylle en resun acorder.

[*Anno Domini millesimo c. nonagesimo. Rex Ricardus  
transfretavit versus Terram Sanctam.*]<sup>11</sup>

Richard  
hastens  
thither.

Le seine jour en August de l'an entytelé,<sup>12</sup>  
Le bon rays Richard est en mer entré,  
Tost s'en va vers Gene,<sup>13</sup> où il ad trové  
Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce malade en lyt coché.  
Richard li confort, après prent congé,<sup>14</sup>  
Et va devers Cecille of tute sa mesné.  
Ad Tibre kant il vent, la pape l'ad maundé  
Octave<sup>15</sup> sun cardinal, ke of ly ad parlé.

<sup>1</sup> *Au rei Richard*, B. *Al ray Richard*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *ele va counter*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *là regner*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *le rei R.*, B. *soer le rey*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *qe counqe*, B. *qe count*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *en prison fist g.*, B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *se comenca*, B. D.

<sup>8</sup> *fist*, B. *tost fet*, D.

<sup>9</sup> Instead of this and the following line, D. has one line :

*Et Cecylle sur Tancrede par poer conquerer.*

<sup>10</sup> *reindre*, B. *reindre*, C.

<sup>11</sup> This rubric is inserted from B. and C.

<sup>12</sup> *entillé*, B. *de August de l'an entytelé*, C. *en Aust de l'an encyclé*, D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "The sevent day of hervest, in that ilk yer."

<sup>13</sup> *en Gene*, B. *vers Genen*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *le rei confort, après il prent cunqé*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *Octone*, B. *Octave son chardman*, C. "Sir Octobone," Robert of Brunne. Hoveden calls him Octavianus cardinal-bishop of Ostia.



He goes and gives the letter of the queen of Sicily  
 To Richard her brother, and proceeds to tell him,  
 King William is dead, who used to reign  
 In Sicily with Joan, the sister of king Richard,  
 And that earl Tancred, a warlike knight,  
 Cousin of king William, had caused himself to be  
     crowned,  
 And caused Joan the queen to be kept there in prison.  
 Wherefore king Richard begins to be wroth;  
 Causes quickly to be put in readiness his busses and  
     his galleys,  
 And thinks in the first place of delivering his sister.  
 It is his opinion that he has people enough to conquer  
 Sicily from Tancred, and to subdue his power,  
 Unless he will peacefully agree to reason.

*Anno Domini 1190.*

*King Richard passed the sea towards the Holy Land.*

The seventh day of August of the year given in the  
     title,  
 The good king Richard has entered on the sea,  
 He goes immediately towards Genoa, where he has  
     found  
 King Philip of France ill and confined to bed.  
 Richard comforts him, afterwards takes leave,  
 And goes towards Sicily with all his attendance.  
 When he comes to the Tiber, the pope has sent to  
     him  
 Octavian his cardinal, who has conversed with him.

Illness of  
king  
Philip.

Le ray par taunt i est trays jours demoré,  
[E le rey Philippe du lit relevé.]<sup>1</sup>  
A Meschine en Cecylle est Phelippe aryvé;  
Et le ray Richard après i vint de gré.  
Le jour de la croyce en aust renomé<sup>2</sup>  
La navye Richard, dount fu desperé,<sup>3</sup>  
Al port de Meschynes ly vint en salveté;  
Forpris une de Depe,<sup>4</sup> ke fu forvayé.  
Le terce jour après le ray ad sojorné,

Queen  
Joan set  
at liberty.

Ad ray de Cecille ad Richard prié  
Delivrer ly<sup>5</sup> sa soer Jone en amysté.  
Le ray Tankrede fu sage, dotait adversité,  
Deliverait<sup>6</sup> la rayne of graunt honesté,  
Et convayer la fist of tut sun barné  
Tot draît à Meschines, sa principale cyté.  
Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce encountre l'est alé,  
Of le ray Richard, ke cele ount mené  
Al palays sun frere, où ele fust herbergé.

Richard  
reduces  
the isle of  
La Bani-  
are.

Le ray Richard si tost en avaunt<sup>7</sup> estaît,  
En le floum de [la] Fare rychement entrayt;<sup>8</sup>  
Le ylle de Labaniare,<sup>9</sup> ke un paen avait,  
Et tynt des Cristyens pur [rent] k'il<sup>10</sup> donait,  
Conquist le ray Richard, le paen<sup>11</sup> en chascayt.  
Cel ylle à sa soer of gardayns assignait.  
Un ylle i fu decost,<sup>12</sup> ke ly Griffoun gardayt,

<sup>1</sup> Omitted in A.; supplied from B. C. and D.

<sup>2</sup> *en haut renomé*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *dount fu feré*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *un depe*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *li* omitted in B.

<sup>6</sup> *Delivera*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *com avant estaît*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *En le flum de la Fare derechef entroit*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne has translated this rather clumsily, "A water that closed it in that flum " was de la Fare."

<sup>9</sup> *Le ylle de Albemarle*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *pur rentes q'il*, B. *pur rent q'il*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *les paens*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *de costé*, B. D. *yllé fu de costé*, C. Robert of Brunne singularly misunderstood this, and supposes that the isle was called Griffonie, "men cald it Griffonie," whereas Pierre de Langtoft says that Griffons, or Greeks, inhabited it. Griffonie would mean the empire of Greece.

The king on that account has remained there three  
days,  
And king Philip is risen from his bed.  
Philip is arrived at Messina in Sicily ;  
And king Richard afterwards came there willingly.  
The day of the Cross highly renowned  
Richard's navy, of which he had lost hope,  
Came in safety to him in the harbour of Messina ;  
Except one of Dieppe, which was lost.  
The third day after the king had abidden there,  
Richard has prayed the king of Sicily  
To deliver to him in friendship his sister Joan.  
King Tancred was wise, feared adversity,  
Gave up the queen with great courtesy,  
And caused her to be conveyed with all his barons  
Direct to Messina, his principal city.  
King Philip of France is gone to meet him,  
With king Richard, who have brought her  
To the palace of her brother, where she was lodged.

King Richard immediately came forward,  
Entered the river of the Faro in rich array.  
The isle of La Baniare, which a pagan possessed,  
And held of the Christians for rent which he paid,  
King Richard conquered, and drove the pagan out  
of it.  
This isle he assigned with guardians to his sister.  
There was an island beside it, which the Greeks held ;

Disputes  
with the  
city of  
Messina. Le ray Richard la prist,<sup>1</sup> ly Griffoun la voydait.<sup>2</sup>  
Ly citayn de Meschine le ray Richard dotait,  
La porte de la cyté encountre ly fermayt;  
Le contek en taunt entre els levait.  
Par quai le ray Richard sun serement fesait,  
Ke si le ray Tankrede amender ne volait<sup>3</sup>  
Le outrage de ses cytayns, si com il durait,<sup>4</sup>  
Et parfere sa demaunde, cum resun chaunterayt,<sup>5</sup>  
Del testament le rays ke devaunt ly regnayt,  
De chose<sup>6</sup> ke ad sa soer de dowerye appendait,  
Si en amours<sup>7</sup> ne pust, par guere conquerait.

Conduct of  
the king of  
France. Kaunt le ray de Fraunce entendist coment  
Entre cels deus rays estait descordement,  
De l'amur se entremyst, pur veirs molt faintement.<sup>8</sup>  
Nun pur<sup>9</sup> ço le rays Tankrede curtaysement  
Vint al ray Richard, of molz de bone gent,  
Ly dist ke prest estait complir<sup>10</sup> sun talent,  
Pur le ray William parfere<sup>11</sup> sun testament,  
Et de tuz conteks pur ly et pur sa gent  
A fere<sup>12</sup> sun assez, en ore ou en argent;  
Et dist ke à sa soer avait<sup>13</sup> plainement  
Fet ke fere dust,<sup>14</sup> par tesmoynement  
De la dame mesme, ke tost vint present,<sup>15</sup>  
Et dist, "Le ray Tankrede m'ad fet verrayment  
" Taunt cum fere devait,<sup>16</sup> de kaunt ke à may appent;  
" Mès à tay, moun frere, respoudre ly covent

Behaviour  
of king  
Tancred,  
And of  
queen  
Joan.

<sup>1</sup> *Le rei tost le prist*, B.<sup>2</sup> *le Griffun voidait*, C.<sup>3</sup> *ne vodreit*, B. C. *ne voudrait*, D.<sup>4</sup> *il disoit*, B. *il dirrait*, C. *Le outrage des cytayns sicum ly dirrait*, D.<sup>5</sup> *voleit*, B.<sup>6</sup> *Des choses*, B. *Ces choses qe soer sa soer de dowere*, C. *de dower*, D.<sup>7</sup> *en amour*, B.<sup>8</sup> *feytement*, D.<sup>9</sup> *Nounpas pur*, B. *Noun pur ce*,

D.

<sup>10</sup> *acomplit*, B.<sup>11</sup> *pur fere*, C.<sup>12</sup> *Affere*, C.<sup>13</sup> *fet avoit*, B.<sup>14</sup> *Quange fere deit*, B. *Fet qe feere daït*, C. D.<sup>15</sup> *vient en present*, B. C.<sup>16</sup> *fere doit*, B.

King Richard took it; the Greek abandoned it.  
The citizen of Messina feared king Richard,  
Shut against him the gate of the city;  
Consequently strife arose between them.  
Through which king Richard made his oath,  
That if king Tancred would not make amends  
For the insolence of his citizens, as he ought,  
And comply with his demand, as reason would sing,  
Concerning the will of the king who reigned before  
    him,  
Of things which belonged to his sister of dowry,  
If he could not by love, he would obtain it by war.

When the king of France understood how  
There was disagreement between these two kings,  
He interfered to reconcile them, in truth very insin-  
    cerely.

Nevertheless king Tancred courteously  
Came to king Richard, with many good people,  
Told him that he was ready to fulfil his desire  
Of carrying out the will of king William,  
And in all causes of strife for him and for his people  
To do his best, in gold or in silver;  
And said that he had to his sister fully  
Done what he ought to do, by testimony  
Of the lady herself, who soon came forward,  
And said, " King Tancred has truly done for me  
" As much as he ought to do, in all that relates to  
    " me ;  
" But to thee, my brother, he has to answer

“ De un graunt pavillyoun de ryche atyffement,  
 “ De une table de or, de tresteles<sup>1</sup> ensement,  
 “ De vessal argentays endorrez richement,  
 “ Dount servir l’emperour à sun parlement.  
 “ Mon seygnur le rays, à sun finement,  
 “ A tay, Richard mon frere, devis[a]<sup>2</sup> seurement  
 “ Les choses avaunt dites, dount tesmoyne ne ment.”  
 “ Dame,” dist Tankrede, “ de son devisement  
 “ Of mon seygnur le rays fray accordement.”  
 XI. mil ounces d’or le ray Tankrede ly tent.  
 Et le ray Richard, saunz plus dire, les prent,  
 Issi ke sun nevou Arthur, par descent<sup>3</sup>  
 Quens serrait de Brettayne, prendrait solempnement  
 La fillye Tankrede à femme, hair de sun tenement,  
 De pees perpetuel, d’amur<sup>4</sup> enterement.  
 Et de ço maryage ount fet conferment.  
 Taunt cum ço ij. rays sunt sur cele<sup>5</sup> dalyement,  
 La mere le ray Richard prent aryvement  
 Al port de Meschynes, de busces avait trent,  
 Estorez de vitaylle, à sun fiz les present.<sup>6</sup>  
 Phelippe quens de Flaundre, gentil ber et sage,  
 Fu dustre la rayne<sup>7</sup> of cele vesselage,<sup>8</sup>  
 Alyanore sa mere Richard de halt corage<sup>9</sup>  
 Une damoisele i mene, ky pere<sup>10</sup> par heritage  
 Fu rays de Naverne<sup>11</sup> de gentil lynage,  
 Berneger ad à noun,<sup>12</sup> plus bel de sun age  
 Fu nule part trové, ne de greignur parage.  
 De cele estait en Cypre fet le maryage  
 Of le ray Richard, par counsail sun<sup>13</sup> barnage.

Tancred  
makes his  
peace with  
Richard.

Arrival of  
queen  
Eleanor.

<sup>1</sup> *des trestels*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *devisa*, B. *devise*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *qe par descent*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *de amour*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *cel ii. rays son sur tel*, C. *cels*  
ij. *reis sount sur tele*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *les prent*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *je la reygne*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *vasselage*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *la mere . . . de fer corage*, B.  
*la mere*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *juvene, qe pere*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *de Naverre*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Berngere ad noun*, B. *a noun*,  
C. *Bernege ad noun*, D. *Beren-*  
*gere*, in Robert of Brunne.

<sup>13</sup> *de son*, B.

“ For a great pavillion of rich equipments,  
 “ For a table of gold, with trestles likewise,  
 “ For vessel of silver richly gilt,  
 “ With which to serve the emperor at his parliament.  
 “ My lord the king, at his end,  
 “ Bequeathed surely to thee, Richard my brother,  
 “ The things before named, of which witness lies not.”  
 “ Lady,” said Tancred, “ of his will  
 “ I will make agreement with my lord the king.”

King Tancred offered him forty thousand ounces of gold,

And king Richard, without more talk, accepts them,  
 On condition that his nephew Arthur, by descent  
 He would be count of Britany, should take solemnly  
 The daughter of Tancred to wife, the heir of his pos-  
 sessions.

For perpetual peace and love entirely.  
 And of that marriage they have made a confirmation.  
 While these two kings are in this business,  
 The mother of king Richard arrives  
 In the port of Messina; she had thirty busses  
 Laden with victuals, and presents them to her son.

Philip count of Flanders, a gentle baron and wise,  
 Was the queen's leader with that fleet.  
 Elianor, the mother of Richard, of high spirit,  
 Brings there a damsel, whose father by inheritance  
 Was king of Navarre of gentle lineage;  
 She was named Berengaria, a fairer of her age  
 Was found nowhere, nor of greater family.  
 Of her was made the marriage in Cyprus  
 With king Richard, by the advice of his barons.

Kaunt affyiez estayent et purvou l'esposage,<sup>1</sup>  
 L[a] rayne Elianore<sup>2</sup> rethorne of sun menage  
 Pur<sup>3</sup> sun fiz Richard à Rome<sup>4</sup> en message.  
 Bernerger demort, ne pas cum hostage ;  
 La rayne de Cecille vers ly la prent en gage,  
 Et venent<sup>5</sup> ensemble cum oysels en cage.

Kant le ray Richard assez ad sojornez,  
 Et le ray Tankrede ad fet ses voluntez,  
 King Richard at Catania. Ad Katayne<sup>6</sup> la cyté est Richard alez,  
 La toumbe saint Agate ad molt honurez.  
 Le ray Tankrede i est, of molz de ses barnez,  
 Et fet al ray [Richard reverenz assez].<sup>7</sup>  
 Ilokes of Tankrede ad trais jours demorez,  
 Tancred's cordiality. De aler sun vayage après<sup>8</sup> ad pris congez.  
 Tankrede ly convaye de ilokes à deus jornez,  
 Et en amour graunt de doun ad<sup>9</sup> presentez  
 Quatre nefz chargez de deus maners de blez,  
 Quinz graunt galayes<sup>10</sup> pur guere apparayliez,  
 Et plusurs autre choses ke cy ne sunt nomez.  
 Le ray Richard saunz plus à ly ad redonez  
 La meyllur espeye ke unkes fu forgez,  
 Qo fu Kaliburne, dount Arthur le senez  
 [Sei] solait<sup>11</sup> guyer en gueres et [en] mellez.<sup>12</sup>  
 He warns king Richard of the falseness of the king of France. Lors ly dist Tankrede, "Deus, en ky poestez  
 " Les riches et les povers sunt abaundonez,  
 " Te salve,<sup>13</sup> ray Richard, et garde des enemystez<sup>14</sup>  
 " Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, et<sup>15</sup> de ses falsetez.

<sup>1</sup> *et purveez les passage, C. pur- reuz, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *Alienore, B.*

<sup>3</sup> *Par, D.*

<sup>4</sup> *Rohan, B.*

<sup>5</sup> *vivent, B. C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *A Catayn, C. A Katayne, D.*

<sup>7</sup> The words within brackets are omitted by A., and are supplied from B.

<sup>8</sup> *après* omitted in D.

<sup>9</sup> *en grant amour des douns l'ad, B. en grant amour du doun l'ad, C. en graunt amour de doun l'ad, D.*

<sup>10</sup> Robert of Brunne has "and five "other galies." But the French text is correct.

<sup>11</sup> *Sei soleit, B. C. D.*

<sup>12</sup> *en gwere et en medlez, C.*

<sup>13</sup> *Te sauve, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *de enemytz, D.*

<sup>15</sup> *et* omitted in B.



When they were affianced and the wedding provided,  
Queen Elianor returns with her household  
To Rome on a message for her son Richard.  
Berengaria remains, not as hostage ;  
The queen of Sicily takes her to herself in pledge,  
And they live together like birds in cage.

When king Richard has dwelt long enough,  
And king Tancred has conformed with his wishes,  
Richard is gone to the city of Catania,  
And has much honoured the tomb of St. Agatha.  
King Tancred is there, with many of his barons,  
And makes to king Richard reverence enough.  
There he has dwelt three days with Tancred,  
Afterwards he has taken leave to go his voyage.  
Tancred conducts him thence two days,  
And in great love has presented to him in gift  
Four ships charged with two kinds of wheat,  
Fifteen great galleys equipped for war,  
And several other things which are not named here.  
King Richard without more has given him in return  
The best sword that ever was forged ;  
That was Caliburn, with which Arthur the wise  
Used to guide himself in wars and in battles.  
Then Tancred said to him, " God, in whose power  
" The rich and the poor are left,  
" Preserve thee, king Richard, and guard thee from the  
" enmity  
" Of king Philip of France, and from his falseness.

“ Par Hüge <sup>1</sup> de Burgoyne, ke duk est clamez,  
 “ Me maunda par sun <sup>2</sup> bref, sicom ws orrez,  
 “ Ke trahy serray par tes <sup>3</sup> iniquitez;  
 “ Et si guere entre nous fust continuez,  
 “ En aide me serrait pur ws <sup>4</sup> mettre suz pez.  
 “ Et, cher amy Richard, ke <sup>5</sup> jo dye veritez,  
 “ Prenez, <sup>6</sup> sir, le bref, à ly le moustrez;  
 “ Si il le volt dedire, <sup>7</sup> sur ly serra provez.”  
 Le ray Richard le prent, ke devient irez,  
 Et le ray Tankrede à Deu l’ad comaundez.

Richard  
accuses  
Philip.

Le ray Richard repaire par molt graunt hatye  
 Arere à Meschines à sa chualerye;  
 Ilokes trové ad <sup>8</sup> sa soer et sa amye.  
 Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce daillier [ne] volt-il mye. <sup>9</sup>  
 Phelippe en ad mervaille, et quaintement espye,  
 Et maunde à Richard, <sup>10</sup> en noun de compaynye,  
 Quel heure et kaunt vodrait <sup>11</sup> aprester sa navye  
 Devers le sege de Akre, ke trop est saunz aye.  
 Richard respount et dit, molt serrait graunt folye,  
 [Mustrer consail à cil qi n’est pas amie;] <sup>12</sup>  
 Et par sun bref demene sur ço ly certifye,  
 Par quai <sup>13</sup> de cel heure de ly ne se affye. <sup>14</sup>

The excuse  
of the king  
of France.

“ Ben say,” dist Phelippe, “ ke ço signifye,  
 “ Ke ço bref [fu] forgé <sup>15</sup> par graunt felonye  
 “ Et pur ma soer Alyse, ke issint est guerpye <sup>16</sup>  
 “ Pur cele de Nauverne; par Deu le fiz Marye,  
 “ Ne serra pas issint, si Dé me preste vye.”

<sup>1</sup> Hugo, D.

<sup>2</sup> Me manda son, B.

<sup>3</sup> par vos i., B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> dont vous, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> E, mon cher ami, qe jeo, B.

<sup>6</sup> Pernez, D.

<sup>7</sup> S’il veut dedire, C. S’il volt dedire, D.

<sup>8</sup> ad trové, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> ne voet-il mie, B.

<sup>10</sup> à rai Richard, B. al rey Richard, D.

<sup>11</sup> vodra, B. D.

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in A., and supplied here from B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> Pur quay, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> This line is omitted in B.

<sup>15</sup> fu forgé, B.

<sup>16</sup> Est pur ma soer Aleyse q’ensi est guerpie, B. Est pur ma soer Alice h’ensynt est guerpye, C. D.

“ By Hugh of Burgundy, who is called duke,  
 “ He sent me word by his letter, as you shall hear,  
 “ That I should be betrayed by thy wickedness ;  
 “ And, if war were continued between us,  
 “ He would give me assistance to put you under foot.  
 “ And, dear friend Richard, that I tell truth,  
 “ Take, sir, the letter, show it to him ;  
 “ If he seek to contradict it, it shall be proved upon  
 “ him.”

King Richard takes it, who becomes angered ;  
 And king Tancred has bid him adieu.

King Richard returns with very great haste  
 Back to Messina to his chivalry ;  
 There he has found his sister and his sweetheart.  
 With king Philip of France he will have no dealing.  
 Philip has wonder at it, and cunningly watches,  
 And sends to ask Richard, in the name of companion-  
 ship,  
 At what hour and when he would make ready his  
 navy  
 Towards the siege of Acre, which is too long without  
 aid.

Richard replies and says, it would be very great folly  
 To show council to him who is not a friend ;  
 And he certifies him thereupon by his own letter,  
 Wherefore from that time he puts no trust in him.  
 “ I know well,” said Philip, “ what that signifies,  
 “ That that letter was forged through great wicked-  
 “ ness,  
 “ And for my sister Alice, who is thus deserted  
 “ For her of Navarre ; by God the son of Mary,  
 “ It shall not be so, if God lend me life.”

King  
Richard's  
explana-  
tion.

Respouns le ray<sup>1</sup> Phelippe kaunt Richard [ad] oye,<sup>2</sup>  
Al matyn ly prove devaunt la clergye  
Ke le ray sun pere, duk de Normendye,  
Avait conu Alys kaunt le avait en ballye,  
Et fillye engendrait, ke mort est et sevelye ;  
La lay de saint eglise trop serrait blemye,  
Et Richard et Alyse<sup>3</sup> de Dampnedeu maldye,  
Si en maryage Richard par là se lye.

“ O,”<sup>4</sup> dist le ray Phelippe à ses<sup>5</sup> gens de Fraunce,  
“ En le ray Richard ne quiday descaivaunce,  
“ Gisors ly dona[y]<sup>6</sup> of le apurtenaunce,  
“ Et x. mil mars, pur fere le alyaunce  
“ De ly et de ma sor, dount est ore destaunce.  
“ Des ore est moun avoyr et ma terre en balaunce,  
“ Et jo par tut trahi ; par Deu et sa pussaunce,  
“ Si de mes covauntes n'en ai restoraunce,  
“ Jo frai al ray Richard, en fet e en parlaunce,  
“ Desçà mer et delà, of moun poer grevaunce.”  
“ Nai, sir,” dist Richard, “ lesset<sup>7</sup> ta manaunce ;  
“ Tu averas tun avoyr, ta vile, of l'apendaunce.”

The two  
kings are  
reconciled.

Les clers et les barnez ne soffrent<sup>8</sup> descordaunce  
Entre cels .ij. rays, vount fere accordaunce ;<sup>9</sup>  
Richard de sun avoyr ly fet asseuraunce,  
Et Gisors ly rend par bone tesmoniaunce ;  
Sa soer ly quite clayme, et prent aquitaunce,  
Ke marier ly pusse saunz sa disturbaunce.

Philip pro-  
ceeds to  
Acre.

Phelippe après l'acord ne fet [là]<sup>10</sup> demoraunce,  
Prent congé de Richard, et vers la mer se launce,  
En Akres kaunt il veent, poy valt l'apparaunce,  
Avaunt ke Richard i veent<sup>11</sup> ren i fet par chaunce.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *du rei*, B. *de rey*, C. *del rey*,  
D.

<sup>2</sup> *ad oie*, B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *de Aleyse*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *O*, omitted in C.

<sup>5</sup> *e ses*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *donay*, B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *lessez*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *ne soeffrunt*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *l'accordaunce*, B. C.

<sup>10</sup> *ne fait là*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Richard veent*, C. *Richarde*  
*vint*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *rien n'i fait*, B.

When Richard has heard the reply of king Philip,  
 In the morning he proves to him before the clergy  
 That the king his father, duke of Normandy,  
 Had been intimate with Alice when he had her in ward,  
 And had begotten a daughter, who is dead and buried;  
 The law of holy church would be too much stained,  
 And Richard and Alice accursed of the Lord,  
 If Richard binds himself in marriage in that quarter.

“ Oh,” says king Philip to his people of France,  
 “ I did not look for deceit in king Richard;  
 “ I gave him Gisors with the appurtenance,  
 “ And ten thousand marks, to make the alliance  
 “ Of him and of my sister, of which there is now a breach.  
 “ Henceforward my wealth and my land are in balance,  
 “ And I everywhere betrayed; by God and his power,  
 “ If I have not a restoration of my covenants,  
 “ I will do to king Richard, in fact and in talk,  
 “ On this side the sea and beyond, grievance to  
 “ my power.”  
 “ Nay, sire,” said Richard, “ leave thy threat;  
 “ Thou shalt have thy wealth, thy town, with the  
 “ appurtenance.”

The clergy and the barons suffer not discord  
 Between those two kings; they go to make accord;  
 Richard makes him assurance of his money,  
 And restores Gisors to him by good witness;  
 His sister cries him quit, and takes acquittance,  
 That she can marry without his interference.  
 Philip, after the agreement, makes no stay,  
 Takes leave of Richard, and hurries towards the sea,  
 When he comes to Acre, little worth is his appearance;  
 Before Richard comes there, he does nothing there as  
 it happens.

Richard's  
departure  
for Syria.

Après le ray Phelippe, le ray Richard remist,  
Et hors de Meschines sun chastel abatist,  
Ke, avaunt<sup>1</sup> Tankrede sa pes deservyst,  
Pur recette avoyr ilokes lever fist;<sup>2</sup>  
Et kaunt amys estayent, abatre le promist,<sup>3</sup>  
Ke nul enemy après ly tenist.<sup>4</sup>

Encounters  
a great  
tempest,

Pur quai<sup>5</sup> al ray Tankrede damage avenist.<sup>6</sup>  
Après de jour en altre sa navye purvist  
Devers le sege d'Akre, et servir Jhesu Kryst.  
Sa soer et sa amye en une busce assist,  
Et Roger Maukaele sun chuvaler suyst,<sup>7</sup>  
Of busces et galayes et gens ke les sufyst.<sup>8</sup>  
Cum en cele halte mer la navye venist,  
Tempest trop horrible les busces surprist;

and is  
driven to  
Cyprus.

Ly mariner al sigle encountre combatist.  
Dame Jone la rayne Deus issint<sup>9</sup> requist  
Ke salvement à porte<sup>10</sup> en Cypre descendist,  
Et dame Berneger,<sup>11</sup> ke poy se joyst,  
Pur ço ke sun seigneur de nul part i vist.  
Deus busces i morirent, le chaunceler i peryst,<sup>12</sup>  
Et le sel le rays entur sun col pendist.

Behaviour  
of the  
emperor  
Isaac.

Isake, ray de Cypre, les bens des morz<sup>13</sup> saysist,  
Et kaunt ke furent vifs en sa prisoun mist.  
Kaunt le ray Richard la meschaunce oyst,  
Of tote sa navye i vint saunz respit,  
Et al rays Ysake devotement escrit,  
Ke, pur l'amur cely ke mort pur ly suffrit,  
Les bens de ses genz rendre ly vousist.

<sup>1</sup> *Ke veaunt Tankrede, A.*

<sup>2</sup> *lever le fist, B.*

<sup>3</sup> *abatre le fist, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *après la tenist, B. après le tenist, C.*

<sup>5</sup> *Par quei, B. C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *damage en avenist, C. D.*

<sup>7</sup> *fuist, C. son chaunceler suist, D.*

<sup>8</sup> *This line is omitted in C.*

<sup>9</sup> *issi, B.*

<sup>10</sup> *al port, C. D.*

<sup>11</sup> *Berengere, B.*

<sup>12</sup> *le chaunceler perist, B. C. D.*

<sup>13</sup> *de morz, C.*

After king Philip, king Richard remained,  
And threw down his castle outside Messina,  
Which, before Tancred made his peace,  
He caused to be raised there to have a refuge ;  
And when they were friends, he promised to throw it  
down,

That no enemy might hold it after him,  
Whereby injury might come to king Tancred.  
Afterwards from day to other he provided his navy  
Towards the siege of Acre, and to serve Jesus Christ.  
His sister and his sweetheart he placed in one busse,  
And Roger Mankael his knight followed,  
With busses and galleys, and people who were suffi-  
cient for them.

When the navy came into that high sea,  
A very terrible tempest overtook the busses ;  
The mariner contended against it with his sail.  
Then Lady Joan the queen supplicated God  
That she might safely land in a haven in Cyprus,  
And lady Berengaria, who was little joyful,  
Because she saw her lord there on no side.  
Two busses were lost there, the chancellor there pe-  
rished,

And the king's seal hung round his neck.  
Isaac, king of Cyprus, seized the goods of the dead,  
And put all who were alive in his prison.  
When king Richard heard of the misfortune,  
He came there with all his navy without delay,  
And wrote to king Isaac earnestly,  
That, for the love of him who suffered death for him,  
He would restore the goods of his people.

Isake, ray de Cypre, tost ly countredit<sup>1</sup>  
 Deliverer les prisouns, les bens ke là conquist;<sup>2</sup>  
 Retenir les volt, et fere ent sun profit.<sup>3</sup>  
 Kaunt le ray Richard sa duresce entendist,  
 [Coment à sa prier iij. fiez fist despist.]<sup>4</sup>  
 Sun aler devers Akre cel heure suspendit,  
 Et sur le ray de Cypre à la guere se prist.

King  
 Richard  
 invades  
 Cyprus.

*Eodem anno applicuit rex Ricardus Cipriam, et cepit eam.*<sup>5</sup>

Isake, ray de Cypre, emperour de Griffouns,<sup>6</sup>  
 Kaunt vist le ray Richard en mer of ses barouns  
 Aprochaunt la terre, sun pople ad somouns  
 De Griffonnye et Cypre, tuz venent al sablouns,<sup>7</sup>  
 La rivaille en long bataillent envirouns,  
 Se profrent à defendre de launces et bastouns.  
 Richard les regard, escrye sur les Gascouns,<sup>8</sup>  
 "Mettez-vus à terre,<sup>9</sup> confoundoums cels brecons!"<sup>10</sup>  
 Et les maryners par les avirouns  
 Aryvent à la terre, tresbuchent les felouns.  
 Isake se mette al fute, ne put aver fuscouns,  
 Et jekes à lendemayn<sup>11</sup> se tent en tapisouns.  
 Le ray Richard escrie les c. Londrais par noun,  
 "Desore mey suez tuz, en noun de graunt guerdoun!"<sup>12</sup>  
 "Parnoums cest emperour,<sup>13</sup> deliveroums nos prisouns."

Forces a  
 landing  
 and defeats  
 Isaac.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following line are transposed in C. and D.

<sup>2</sup> *et plus les ne tensit, C. et plus ne les tenist, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *e fere son profit, B. et fere en son profist, C. D.*

<sup>4</sup> This line is omitted in A. and B., and given here from C. and D.

<sup>5</sup> Omitted in A., given here from B. and C. *Anno prædicto rubricato, C.*

<sup>6</sup> *des Griffouns, C. D.*

<sup>7</sup> *De G., de Cipre, t. v. à sablons, B. C. D.*

<sup>8</sup> *sur les garscons, B. sur ses Gascouns, C. D.*

<sup>9</sup> *Mettom-nus à terre, B. Mettez nous, C.*

<sup>10</sup> *bretouns, C.*

<sup>11</sup> *jesqe lendemayn, B. jekes lendemayn, C.*

<sup>12</sup> *Des ore me suez touz, en noun de g[ra]ntz guerdons, B. D.*

<sup>13</sup> *cel emperour, C.*



Isaac, king of Cyprus, immediately refused him  
 To deliver the prisoners and the goods he obtained  
     there ;  
 He resolved to retain them, and make his profit thereof.  
 When king Richard heard of his harshness,  
 How he had three times treated his prayer with con-  
     tempt,  
 He suspended his journey towards Acre at that time,  
 And prepared himself for war against the king of  
     Cyprus.

*The same year king Richard landed in Cyprus, and  
     captured it.*

Isaac, king of Cyprus, emperor of the Greeks,  
 When he saw king Richard at sea with his barons  
 Approaching the land, has summoned his people,  
 Of Greece and Cyprus, all come to the sands,  
 Draw up in battle order along the shore,  
 Offer to defend it with lances and clubs.  
 Richard looks at them, shouts to the Gascons,  
 “ Put yourselves on the land, let us confound these  
     “ rascals !”  
 And the mariners by their oars  
 Reach the land, overthrow the wretches.  
 Isaac takes to flight, he cannot have many followers,  
 And he holds himself in hiding places till the next day.  
 King Richard calls to the hundred Londoners by name,  
 “ After this all follow me, in the name of great re-  
     “ wards !  
 “ Let us take this emperor, let us deliver the prisoners !”

Isake par ses espyes<sup>1</sup> entendist lour resouns,  
 Se prist<sup>2</sup> à les mountaynes, se tynt en les boscouns.  
 La nout survynt, Richard se dota de tresouns,  
 Retorne à la ryve, estent ses pavillouns,  
 Du gayne à la jorné fist<sup>3</sup> ses larges douns,  
 Enportaunt<sup>4</sup> la praye tuz sunt compaynouns.

Boasts of  
Isaac.

Isake ad fet sun vou à Deu et saint Symouns,  
 Ke al matyn vendra saunz evasiouns,  
 Of lance en poyng,<sup>5</sup> eskeu al col, pur ses regions  
 Encountre<sup>6</sup> les Englays, ke fount destrucciouns  
 Sur ly et sur ses gens ke sunt en ces<sup>7</sup> baundouns.  
 Et si le ray Richard veygne en ses laçouns,<sup>8</sup>  
 Ou counte ou baroun de ses naciouns,  
 Jammès [n']eschaperount<sup>9</sup> saunz grevouse raunçouns,  
 Pur pape ne patriarke, pur tuz lur<sup>10</sup> sermons.

Richard  
takes pos-  
session of  
Limesun,  
where his  
sister and  
Berengaria  
arrive.

Le ray Richard la nout en tentes reposait,  
 Le jour après suaunt à Lymesçoun alayt,  
 Cyté riche et graunde, ke guerpy estait  
 Des Gryffouns ke la tyndrent; le ray Richard entrayt,  
 Sa soer et sa amye aryvez i trovait.  
 Isake l'emperour estoré la avait<sup>11</sup>  
 De vitaille pur ij. aunz, de reen i faudrait.<sup>12</sup>  
 Le ray Richard ses barges de furment chargait;  
 Repaire à sun hoste, et privéement parlait,  
 Ke à l'estaille jornal mover se volait,  
 Coure sur l'emperour, où trovez serrait.  
 Chascun des barouns tost se apparayllait;  
 Le ray fu ly primer ke se myst laundrait,  
 De trestut sun host nes un demorait,

<sup>1</sup> *par espyes*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *Et prist*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *fet*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Enportaunt*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *lance en point*, B. *poygne*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *En countres*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *en ses*, B. *les genz ke sount en ses*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *vienge en ses lasçons*, B. *veent en ses lasçouns*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *n'eschaperunt*, B. *ne eschaperent*, C. *ne eschaperount*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *lur* omitted in B.

<sup>11</sup> *estorez la avait*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *de rien ne faulleit*, B.

Isaac by his spies heard of their designs,  
Took to the mountains, held himself in the bushes.  
Night came on, Richard was apprehensive of treachery,  
Returns to the shore, spreads his tents,  
Makes his large gifts of the plunder taken in the day;  
In carrying off the prey all are companions.  
Isaac has made his vow to God and St. Simon,  
That he will come in the morning without fail,  
With spear in fist, shield at his neck, for his kingdom  
Against the English, who make destruction  
Upon him and his people who are under his power.  
And if king Richard come into his nets,  
Or earl or baron of his nations,  
They shall never escape without heavy ransoms,  
For pope nor patriarch, for all their talking.

King Richard reposed the night in tents ;  
The day following after he went to Limesun,  
A rich and great city, which was abandoned  
By the Greeks who held it ; king Richard entered,  
He found his sister and his sweetheart arrived there.  
Isaac the emperor had stored it  
With victuals for two years, there was want of nothing.  
King Richard loaded his barges with wheat ;  
Returns to his army, and privately talked,  
That he would move with the morning star  
To attack the emperor, wherever he should be found.  
Each of the barons immediately made him ready ;  
The king was the first who put himself in position ;  
Of all his army not one remained behind,

Fors Bernard de Bayoun, ke la mer gardait.  
 Richard of ses barouns l'emperour aprochait,  
 Et trop horriblement Isake escryait,  
 Ses tentes abatist, Ysake avylait;  
 En chemys et brays<sup>1</sup> fuyaunt eschapaït,  
 Ses chuvals, ses armes, al ray Richard lessait.<sup>2</sup>  
 La baner de l'empire<sup>3</sup> Richard ilokes waynait.  
 La partye del pople ke encountre<sup>4</sup> se donait  
 Le rays en la bataylle trop malement menait,  
 Les uns pris-il vifs, les uns i tuait,<sup>5</sup>  
 Et à graunt<sup>6</sup> nobleye victor repairait.  
 Marriage of king Richard and Berengaria. Sa feste à Lymesçoun cryer lors fesait,<sup>7</sup>  
 Et dame Bernerger ilokes esposait.  
 Le terce jour de sa feste,<sup>8</sup> le ray comaundayt  
 Ke Bernard de Bayoun la dame corounayt.  
 En cel halte feste tut drait à Lymesçoun  
 Sunt venuz à court<sup>9</sup> par graunt affeccioun  
 Arrival of Guy king of Jerusalem and others. De Jerusalem le gentil ray Guyoun,  
 Et Galfray sun frere,<sup>10</sup> et Aumfry de Turoun,<sup>11</sup>  
 Raymoun de Antyoche, prince de graunt renoun,  
 Bomound counte de Triple, et le duk Leoun,  
 Frere Ruffyn des mounz,<sup>12</sup> trop vaillaunt baroun,  
 Offrent lur homages et<sup>13</sup> lur servyse en soun  
 Al gentil ray Richard, à morir en le noun  
 De cyl ke suth Pylate suffry passiouun.  
 Richard les resçait of graunt devocioun,  
 Par ount chascun se lye par obligacioun  
 Ke leals ly serrount suth<sup>14</sup> sa proteccioun,

<sup>1</sup> *En chemise e en brais*, B.  
*En chemyse, en brayes*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *à Richard lessait*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *La banere de Cypre*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *qe countre*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *e les uns tueit*, B. *les uns il tuayt*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *al grant*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *hors fesoit*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *de la feste*, B. D.

<sup>9</sup> *a la courte*, B. *al court*, C.

<sup>10</sup> Geoffrey de Lusignan.

<sup>11</sup> *Amfray de Turon*, C. He is called by Hoveden, Amfrid de Tours.

<sup>12</sup> In Robert of Brunne, it is: "Frere Ruffyn Delmount." Rupin de la Montaigne, in Hoveden.

<sup>13</sup> *et omitted in C.*

<sup>14</sup> *sur sa*, C.

Except Bernard of Bayonne, who guarded the sea.  
Richard with his barons approached the emperor,  
And shouted upon Isaac very terribly,  
Threw down his tents, reviled Isaac ;  
He escaped by flight in his shirt and breeches,  
Left his horses and arms to king Richard.  
Richard there won the banner of the empire.  
The part of the people who made resistance  
The king in the battle treated very evil ;  
Some were taken alive, others slain there.  
And with great nobleness he returned conqueror.  
He then caused his feast to be proclaimed at Limesun,  
And there he espoused lady Berengaria.  
The third day of his feast, the king commanded  
That Bernard of Bayonne should crown the lady.

In this high feast direct to Limesun  
Are come to the court through great affection  
The gentle king Guy of Jerusalem,  
And Geoffrey his brother, and Amfrid de Tours,  
Raimond of Antoch, a prince of great renown,  
Boamond count of Tripoli, and the duke Leo,  
Brother of Rupin of the Mountain, a very valiant  
    baron,  
They offer their homages and their service wholly  
To the gentle king Richard, to die in the name  
Of him who under Pilate suffered passion.  
Richard receives them with great devotion,  
Whereupon each binds himself by bond  
That they will be loyal to him under his guidance,

Et sa seynurye par nul evasioun  
Lerrount pur altrye, dount aver guerdoun.

They pursue Isaac.

Le ray Richard si tost as armes fet cryer,  
Sun hoste en deus partyes comaunde deviser ;  
De sa chivalrye partye fet lyverer<sup>1</sup>  
Al gentil ray Guyoun,<sup>2</sup> ke ben les seet guyer.  
L'emperour Ysake en oyst parler<sup>3</sup>  
Quels gens sunt venuz al ray Richard aider,  
Se doute durement de lur encombrer ;  
Par les melz vanez de tut sun poer  
Prye al ray Richard k'il pussent accorder,<sup>4</sup>  
Et venir devaunt ly la forme recorder  
Coment il purra son trespas amender.

Submission of the Emperor Isaac.

Le ray Richard<sup>5</sup> respount, et dist "Volenter."<sup>6</sup>  
L'emperour i vent, et dist al ray Richer,  
" Sir, moun trespas te prie pardonner ;  
" Ton homme devendray par terre et par mer,  
" Et tendray ma terre de tay à toun voler.  
" Tes gens, ke fesay cum fol enprisoner,  
" Te rendray saunz demore, of trestut le aver  
" Ke tes genz naez perdirent l'altr'er.  
" En toun pelrymage of tay voyl aler,  
" Of cent caynt d'espaye, chascun chivaler,  
" Quaraunte c. mountés al foer d'esquyer,<sup>7</sup>  
" Et à v. c. à pé,<sup>8</sup> as quels fray payer  
" Solde pur deus aunz of tay demorer.  
" Ma fyllye, hair de mes terres, te durray à garder,  
" Taunt cum ço covenant<sup>9</sup> te averay fet enter."

<sup>1</sup> *partie fet lever*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Au rey sire Guyon*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *en oi de ceo parler*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *q'il puis acorder*, C. *q'il pusse acorder*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Le rey, rey Richard*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Volenters*, B. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Richard ansuerd therto, 'I grante it blithely.'"

<sup>7</sup> *Quatre cenz mountz, à foer d'esquier*, B. *Quatre cent moutez*, C. Robert of Brunne has similarly translated it, "And four hundreth to bote, squieres of gode aray."

<sup>8</sup> *Od cink cenz à pé*, B. *Et ouf v. cent au pée al quels*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *ceste covenant*, B.

And his seigneury by no evasion  
Will they leave for that of another, from which to  
have reward.

King Richard immediately orders to cry "As armes!"  
He causes his army to be divided into two parts;  
A part of his chivalry he commits  
To the noble king Guy, who knows well how to lead them.  
The emperor Isaac heard talk of it,  
What people are come to aid king Richard,  
Fears greatly their attack;  
By the men of most renown of all his power  
He prays king Richard that they may be reconciled,  
And to come before him to record the form  
How he shall be able to make amends for his offence.  
King Richard replies, and says, "Willingly."  
The emperor comes there, and says to king Richard,  
" Sir, I pray thee to pardon my offence;  
" I will become thy man by land and by sea,  
" And will hold my land of thee at thy will.  
" Thy people, whom like a madman I caused to be  
" imprisoned,  
" I will restore to thee without delay, with all the  
" property  
" Which thy drowned people lost the day before  
" yesterday.  
" I will go with thee on thy pilgrimage,  
" With a hundred men girt with sword, each a knight,  
" Four hundred mounted in the manner of a squire,  
" And with five hundred on foot, to whom I will cause  
" to be paid  
" Pay for two years to remain with thee.  
" My daughter, heir to my lands, I will give thee in ward,  
" Until I shall have entirely performed that covenant  
" to thee."

Richard's  
indulgence  
towards  
Isaac.

Lors le ray Richard, de molt gentil quer,  
Pardoune le trespas, se acorde à l'emperer,<sup>1</sup>  
Pavylloun et tente le fet assigner,  
Et taunt com ly mesme ly comaunde honurer.  
Isake mesme le jour, kaunt tuz<sup>2</sup> vount reposer,  
Repentir se comence de sun dayller,  
Hors de ses pavyllouns eschapez est cum leer,<sup>3</sup>  
Maunde al ray Richard par sun messenger  
Isaac  
repents.

Ke à ço covenaunt ne volt obliger  
Terre ne tenement,<sup>4</sup> ne sun cors lyer,  
Ne pur sa terre<sup>5</sup> rendre à ly un dener,  
Ne par tel servage ses hairs desheriter.  
" O Deus !" dist Richard, " cum cestuy est fol beer,  
" Kaunt quide nus Englays issint tregetter."  
Ore va le ray Richard ordiner coment  
Il purra l'emperour suspendre vistement.  
A Guyoun et Raymound, et à cele gent,  
Assigne xx. galayes, et graunt busces cent,  
Ke vount queraunt Isake par vers le orient.<sup>6</sup>  
Richard  
proceeds  
against  
him.

Il mesme va par terre en graunt hardement;  
Des viles et cytez<sup>7</sup> chascun à ly se rend.  
Robert de Tur[n]ham<sup>8</sup> se mene noblement,  
La terre suth maryne<sup>9</sup> ad conquys nettement,  
Revent à sun seygnur, et vount vers le occydent.  
La cyté de Nychoise<sup>10</sup> estoré richement  
Ount pris, et la vile de Cheryn<sup>11</sup> ensement;  
Del chastel dedeynz la fyllye Isake descent,  
Et cheet devant le rays ploraunt tendrement,

<sup>1</sup> *s'acorde l'emperer*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *tuz* omitted in C.

<sup>3</sup> *Hors des pavillons eschapez cum leer*, B. C. *Hors des pavilliouns*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Tere et tenement*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *terre* omitted in B.

<sup>6</sup> *par mer vers l'orient*, B. D.

*quere Isak par mere vere l'orient*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *et des citez*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *Turnham*, B. D.

<sup>9</sup> *sur marine*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Nichocie*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *de Cheryng*, C. *Cheryne*, D.

Hoveden calls it Cherin.



Then king Richard, with very generous heart,  
Pardons the offence, becomes reconciled with the em-  
peror,  
Causes pavilion and tent to be assigned to him,  
And orders him to be honoured as much as himself.  
Isaac the same day, when all go to repose,  
Begins to repent of his proceeding,  
Is escaped from his pavilions like a thief.  
He sends to king Richard by his messenger  
That to that covenant he will not oblige  
Land nor tenement, nor bind his body,  
Nor pay him for his land a penny,  
Nor disinherit his heirs through such slavery.  
“ Oh God ! ” said Richard, “ what a mad baron this is,  
When he thinks thus to enchant us Englishmen ! ”

Now goes king Richard to arrange how  
He will be able to suspend the emperor quickly.  
To Guy and Raimond, and to that people,  
He assigns twenty galleys and a hundred great busses,  
Who go seeking Isaac towards the East.  
He himself goes by land in great boldness,  
Every one of the towns and cities surrenders to him.  
Robert de Turnham behaves himself nobly,  
The land on the coast he has conquered clean,  
Returns to his seigneur, and they go towards the West.  
The city of Nicosia, richly stored,  
They have taken, and the town of Cherin likewise ;  
From the castle within the daughter of Isaac descends,  
And falls before the king tenderly weeping,

Richard's  
proceedings  
in Cyprus. De mercy ly prie pur Deu omnipotent ;  
Et le ray l'ottrye assez cortaisement.  
Le chastel et les bens dedenz trovez<sup>1</sup> prent,  
La pucele à sa femme fet maunder gentement.  
Guyoun et Raymound revenent uniement,<sup>2</sup>  
Pur ço ke il ne ount conquis terre ne tenement.

Robert de Tur[n]ham<sup>3</sup> lors pria sun seygnur  
Aler à Buffenet asseger<sup>4</sup> la thour ;  
En tote Gryffonye n'ad chastel meyllur.  
Le [ray]<sup>5</sup> Richard i va, ilokes ne prent sojour.  
Taunt com le ray Richard est en cel errour,<sup>6</sup>  
Adresce ses engyns, i gette<sup>7</sup> nout et jour.

The story  
of the em-  
peror Isaac  
and Statin. Statyn le seneskal dist à l'emperour,  
Al manger où il sist<sup>8</sup> en regal honur,  
" Sir ray Isake,<sup>9</sup> jo suy toun vavasour,  
" Et gardayn de tes terres, jo vay ke deshonor  
" Tai aproche durement par cel<sup>10</sup> conquerour,  
" Ke rays est des Englays, et sage guerraieur.  
" Va et faz sa pes, ke par<sup>11</sup> ton errour  
" Ne sait perdu le regne, dount ton auccessour<sup>12</sup>  
" Ad tenuz jekes en sça cum bon gouvernour."  
Isake se corouce vers tel counsaillour,  
Du cotel l'esena gettaunt en tel errour,<sup>13</sup>  
Le colpoun de sun nees coupait del trenchour.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *trovez*, omitted in C.

<sup>2</sup> *nuement*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates it, " Sir Guy and Bumund thei com as thei zede."

<sup>3</sup> *Turnham*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *et asseger*, B.

<sup>5</sup> This word, evidently wanting to complete the line, is only given by B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *cel estour*, B. D. *tel estour*, C. This and the following line are transposed in B. and C.

<sup>7</sup> *il gette*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *où il seet*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Isakins*, B. C. D. and Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *ceste*, B. *ceo*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *qe pur*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *antecessour*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *l'essena gettant en errour*, B. C. D. *le sena*, A.

<sup>14</sup> Robert of Brunne has translated this rather freely:—

" Fulle brotherly and brim he  
" kept up a trenchour,

" And kast it at Statin, did him a  
" schamfulle schoure,

" His nese and his ine he carfe at  
" misaventoure."

Prays him for mercy for the sake of God Almighty ;  
And the king grants it very courteously.  
He takes the castle and the goods found inside,  
Causes the maiden to be sent in gentle manner to his  
wife.

Guy and Raimond return empty handed,  
Because they have neither conquered land nor tene-  
ment.

Robert de Turnham then prayed his lord  
To go to Buffenet to lay siege to the tower ;  
There is not a better castle in all Greece.  
King Richard goes thither, there he makes no delay,  
He directs his engines, and throws there night and day.  
While king Richard is occupied in this assault,  
Statin the steward says to the emperor,  
Where he is seated at his meal in royal honour,  
“ Sire king Isaac, I am thy vavator,  
“ And keeper of thy lands, I see that dishonour  
“ Approaches thee greatly through this conqueror,  
“ He is the king of the English, and a wise warrior.  
“ Go and make his peace, that by thy error  
“ The kingdom be not lost, which thy ancestor  
“ Has held till now like a good governor.”  
Isaac becomes angry against such a counsellor,  
With the knife he struck him, throwing it carelessly,  
A slice off his nose he cut with the carving-knife.

Statin sur- Statyn s'en fuyst en hounte et dolour,<sup>1</sup>  
 renders the Et vent al ray Richard of molt graunt<sup>2</sup> clamour.  
 towns of Le ray prent sun homage; kaunt Statyn ad soccour,  
 Cyprus to Il rent al ray Richard saunz plus de labour  
 king Baffe et Buffenet, Candare et Dendamur,  
 Richard. Et totes les cytez dount Ysake fu gyour.  
 Trestuz les graunz seygnurs ke sunt demorez  
 Of le ray Richard, sunt ben confortez  
 Ke Cypre of le honur est si tost waynez.  
 Ad cape<sup>3</sup> Saint Andreu, abbay fort assez,  
 Est le ray Isake privément muscez.<sup>4</sup>  
 Le ray Richard l'oyt dire, laundrayt est alez;  
 Capture of Isak ly vent encountre, en croyz ly chet al pez,<sup>5</sup>  
 Isaac. Ly dist, "Sire, pur Deu, ayez de may pitez,  
 "Grauntez may vie et membre, en prisun me mettez,<sup>6</sup>  
 "Saunz ferges de fer pur hounte de parentez."  
 "Tu averas ta priere," dist ly rays, "levez."  
 Et pur ço ke ly sot<sup>7</sup> en taunt fu forsenez,  
 Ke mencion ne fist de raunçoun ne de regnez,<sup>8</sup>  
 Desore sunt les manicles [et] ses anels forgez<sup>9</sup>  
 De plus pur argent en tresor<sup>10</sup> trovez;  
 The go- A les deus raynes sun cors est comaundez,  
 vernment of Cyprus Johanne et Berneger<sup>11</sup> ly ount en lur poestez.  
 entrusted to Et le ray Richard ad maintenaunt donez  
 Statin. Al seneskal de Cypre la garde des cytez;  
 Pur taunt ke il estait<sup>12</sup> si vilement mahaynez,  
 Statyn le Naes<sup>13</sup> desore est surnomez.

<sup>1</sup> *et en dolour, C.*

<sup>2</sup> *en mult grant, C.*

<sup>3</sup> *A cape, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *mouzez, D.*

<sup>5</sup> *en croice chiet à peez, B. en croice cheet al peez, C. en croyce chet as peez, D. To fall on the ground with the arms stretched out in form of a cross was the most humble mode of supplication.*

<sup>6</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>7</sup> *ly sez, C.*

<sup>8</sup> *ne regnez, B. D.*

<sup>9</sup> *ses manicles e ses forges, B. ses manicles, ses anels, C.*

<sup>10</sup> *en tresorie, B.*

<sup>11</sup> *Johane e Berengere, B. Jone et Bernegere, D.*

<sup>12</sup> *cum il estoit, B. C. Partaunt com il estait, D.*

<sup>13</sup> *le nasée, B. le nasé, D.*

Statin flies thence in shame and grief,  
 And comes to king Richard with very great outcry.  
 The king takes his homage ; when Statin has succour,  
 He delivers to king Richard without more ado  
 Baffa and Buffenet, Candare and Dendamur,  
 And all the cities of which Isaac was ruler.

All the great lords who are remained  
 With king Richard, are well comforted  
 That Cyprus with the honour is so soon won.  
 At Cap St. Andrew, a very strong abbey,  
 King Isaac is secretly concealed.  
 King Richard hears it, is gone thither ;  
 Isaac is come to meet him, falls suppliant at his feet,  
 Says to him, " Sire, for God's sake have pity on me ;  
 " Grant me life and limb, put me in prison  
 " Without fetters of iron for shame of my kindred."  
 " Thou shalt have thy prayer," said the king, " rise."  
 And because the fool was so far devoid of sense,  
 That he made no mention of ransom or of the king-  
 dom,  
 Henceforward are his manacles and his fetters forged  
 Of the finest silver found in his treasury ;  
 To the two queens his body is entrusted.  
 Joan and Berengaria have him in their power.  
 And king Richard has now given  
 The keeping of the cities to the steward of Cyprus ;  
 Because he was so foully wounded,  
 Henceforth he is named Statin le Nasé.

Cypre est perdue par Ysake le tyraunt,  
 Et gayné par l'espeye<sup>1</sup> Richard ly vaillaunt,  
 A ky le pople tut vent mercy cryaunt,  
 A tenir de ly par servise fesaunt.  
 " Sir," dist Statyn, " fa venir ly marchaunt,  
 " Chuvaler, esquyer, cytayn, et sergaunt,  
 " De burges et de viles chascun terre tenaunt,  
 " Et preigne tes homages<sup>2</sup> cum novel conqueraunt."  
 Le ray fet issint, et les gens par taunt  
 La moyté de lour bens ly vount presentaunt,  
 Pour tenir les lays ke tenuz<sup>3</sup> ount avaunt,  
 Ke Manuel<sup>4</sup> le rays, of seal<sup>5</sup> pendaunt,  
 Confermait<sup>6</sup> en Cypre kaunt il fu governaunt<sup>7</sup>  
 L'empyre de Griffonye ; le ray Richard le graunt.  
 Ore ad le ray Richard parfet sa mestrye,  
 Et par graunt conqueste Cypre ad saisye.  
 Al Statyn<sup>8</sup> le Nasé fet graunt cortaisye ;  
 Cypre l'ad doné à tenir par l'espeye  
 De ly et de ses heirs, salve la seygnurye  
 Ad tuz les rays Englays taunt cum homme ad vye.  
 Statyn l'ad resceu, et le rays empire<sup>9</sup>  
 De Robert de Thurnham en soccour et aye,<sup>10</sup>  
 Tant ke la pes en Cypre sait melz establye.  
 Robert i demort, le [ray]<sup>11</sup> Richard l'ottrye.  
 Kaunt le ray Richard ad fet sun voler  
 En la terre de Cypre, et pris ad<sup>12</sup> par poer  
 Isake l'emperour, Johanne et Berneger  
 Sunt alez vers Triple Isake ilokes mener.  
 Le ray Richard après ne volt<sup>13</sup> demorer,

King  
 Richard  
 establishes  
 his rule in  
 Cyprus.

Leaves it in  
 charge of  
 Statin and  
 Robert de  
 Turnham.

<sup>1</sup> *par espeie*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *E prenez les homages*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *qe tenez*, C.

<sup>4</sup> Robert of Brunne has "Samuel."

<sup>5</sup> *od son seal*, B. *ouf son seal*. C.  
*ou son seal*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Conferma*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *quant il governayt*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *A Statin*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *empire*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *en socour e en aie*, B.

<sup>11</sup> This word is evidently wanting.

<sup>12</sup> *qe pris ad*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *veut*, B.

Cyprus is lost by Isaac the tyrant,  
 And gained by the sword of Richard the valiant,  
 To whom the people all come crying mercy,  
 To hold of him by doing service.  
 "Sire," said Statin, "cause to come the merchant,  
 "Knight, esquire, citizen, and sergeant,  
 "Of towns and cities every one holding land,  
 "And take thy homages as a new conqueror."  
 The king did so, and the people thereupon  
 Go and offer him the half of their goods.  
 To hold the laws which they have held before,  
 Which Manuel the king, with his seal attached,  
 Confirmed in Cyprus when he was governing  
 The empire of Greece; king Richard grants it.

Now has king Richard completed his business,  
 And by great conquest has seized Cyprus.  
 To Statin le Nasé he does great courtesy;  
 He has given him Cyprus to hold by the sword  
 Of him and his heirs, saved the seignury  
 To all the English kings as long as man has life.  
 Statin has received it, and prays the king  
 For Robert de Turnham in succour and aid,  
 Until the peace in Cyprus be better established.  
 Robert remains there; king Richard grants it.

When king Richard has done his will  
 In the land of Cyprus, and he has taken by force  
 Isaac the emperor, Joan and Berengaria  
 Are gone towards Tripoli to carry Isaac thither.  
 King Richard will not remain afterwards,

Richard  
sails for  
Acre.

Ne le ray Guyoun, al sygle fount<sup>1</sup> cryer.  
Nes un de la mesné après demorust<sup>2</sup> arer,  
Fors Robert de Turnham k'en est justizer.  
Le jour suaunt<sup>3</sup> à noune ount veu en la mer  
Un graundesime busce,<sup>4</sup> ke sygle fet lever,  
En noun le ray Phelippe vers Akre prent l'aler,<sup>5</sup>  
Se[s] armes enviroun<sup>6</sup> la nef fount hors boter.

Meets with  
a ship of the  
enemy sail-  
ing under  
false  
colours, and  
sinks it.

Pur saver moun<sup>7</sup> dount sunt s'en va<sup>8</sup> ly maryner ;  
Respouns ly ount doné et dyent, " Sir cher,  
" Nus sumes de Antyoche de gentil mister,<sup>9</sup>  
" Et alums vers Akre, servise pur doner<sup>10</sup>  
" Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, ke nous fist maunder."  
E dist<sup>11</sup> le ray Richard, " Of cels volums parler."  
Le prince de Antioche la nef fet regarder,<sup>12</sup>  
Revent of graunt alayne, et dist<sup>13</sup> al ray Richer,  
" Touz sunt Sarazyns, ke vount envenimer  
" Le pople Krestyten par pusoun amer."  
" Ore tost!" dist le rays, " vous allez batailler ;  
" Assaillez la nef, la fetes enfoundrer,<sup>14</sup>  
" Et ayt chascun sun waigne<sup>15</sup> saunz altre chalanger."  
Il mesme en sa galaye fu tut ly primer.<sup>16</sup>  
Ly Sarazyn se dresce,<sup>17</sup> comence à getter  
Le fu Gregays encountre, et Richard va percer  
Le bek de sa galaye la neef pur naer.<sup>18</sup>  
Xv. c. paens ly mestre va counter

<sup>1</sup> *vount crier*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *après demurt*, B. C. *demort*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Le jour avant*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *Une grandisme busce*, B. C.

<sup>5</sup> *prent aler*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *ount enviroun*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *mon*, B. C. *Par saver dount sunt*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *se va*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *mester*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *vers Acres pur serviez doner*, B. *servir pur dener*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *O, dit*, B. *O, dist*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *va regarder*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *od grant e dit*, the word *alayne* omitted, B. *à grant aleyne*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *confoundrer*, B. *enfounder*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *la gwayne*, D.

<sup>16</sup> Robert of Brunne translates this, " The kynges owen galeie, " he cald it Trenthemere."

<sup>17</sup> *se adresce*, C. D.

<sup>18</sup> *Du beck sa galeie la neef va naer*, B. *Del bek sa galey*, C. D.



Nor king Guy ; they raise the cry " To the sail."  
Not one of his household afterwards remained behind,  
Except Robert de Turnham, who is justiciary of it  
(Cyprus).

The day following at none (3 o'clock P.M.) they have  
seen at sea

A very great busse, which causes its sail to be raised ;  
It takes the way towards Acre in the name of king  
Philip ;

They cause his arms to be exposed around the ship.  
The mariner goes off to see whose they are ;  
They have given him an answer, and say, " Sir dear,  
" We are of Antioch, of gentle employ,

" And we are going towards Acre, to give service  
" To the king of France, who sent for us."

And said king Richard, " We will talk with them."

The prince of Antioch goes to survey the ship ;

Returns with great breath, and says to king Richard,

" They are all Saracens, who are going to poison

" The Christian people with bitter poison."

" Now quick !" said the king, " you are going to give  
" battle ;

" Attack the ship, make her sink,

" And let each have what he gets without other claim."

He himself in his galley was the very first.

The Saracen comes to, begins to throw

Greek fire against him, and Richard goes and pierces

With the beak of his galley the ship to sink it.

The master goes and counts fifteen hundred pagans

Ke là sunt naez, [ne] put<sup>1</sup> nul eschaper,  
 Fors xl. et vj. ke le ray fet<sup>2</sup> salver,  
 Et ad ray<sup>3</sup> de Fraunce partye presenter.  
 D'or,<sup>4</sup> de riche chose, n'est soume<sup>5</sup> de l'aver  
 Ke en la nef estait, put nul<sup>6</sup> homme counter.  
 De pusoun ke là fust put<sup>7</sup> homme enpusoner  
 Trestuz ke lors vindrent<sup>8</sup> Akres asseger ;  
 En mer fu [tut] getté, saunz rens<sup>9</sup> esparnier.  
 Le ray Richard les sigles comaunde eshaucer,<sup>10</sup>  
 Et haster<sup>11</sup> vers Akres les Kristiens aider.  
 Ore les condue Deus et salve de encombrer!<sup>12</sup>

*Anno Domini millesimo c. nonagesimo primo recessit rex Ricardus de Cipria, et venit Acon, quæ etiam capta est per eundem.*<sup>13</sup>

King  
Richard  
arrives at  
Acre.

En la sainte vigile de la Trinité  
 Est ly ray Richard suz Akres aryvé.  
 Sa femme et sa soer ilokes ad trové,  
 Et la fillye Isake jadis ray nomé ;  
 Sun pere est en garde<sup>14</sup> à Triple demoré.  
 Et, quant le ray Richard de Cypre fu alé,  
 Les Gryffonye gens<sup>15</sup> un moyne eschapé,  
 Cosyn l'emperour Ysake [le] deposé,<sup>16</sup>  
 Ount fet ray de Cypre, et Statyn ount grevé.

The Greeks  
elect an  
apostate  
monk to  
succeed  
Isaac.

<sup>1</sup> *Qe sunt là naez, ne put, B. Ki sount là naez, pout nul, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *le rei les fet, B. C. D.*

<sup>3</sup> *Et al ray, C. D.*

<sup>4</sup> *De ore, C. De or, D.*

<sup>5</sup> *ne summe, B. C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *ne puit nul home, B.*

<sup>7</sup> *qe fust poeit, B.*

<sup>8</sup> *qe là vindrent, C.*

<sup>9</sup> *En mer fu tut getté sanz rien espanier, B.*

<sup>10</sup> *enhaucer, B. C. D.*

<sup>11</sup> *E haster, B. D. Et hastier, C.*

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> The rubric is here given from B. In C. it is as follows, *Anno Domini mo. nonagesimo primo recessit rex Ricardus a Cypria, et venit Actu, quæ captu est.* Robert of Brunne has translated this rubric into two lines of his metrical text:—

“ The date was a thousand, a  
 “ hundreth, nienti and one,

“ Fro Cipres he was sailand, a  
 “ toun he wan, Acon.”

<sup>14</sup> *est gardé, B.*

<sup>15</sup> *Les gens de Grifonie, B. C. D.*

<sup>16</sup> *le deposé, B. C. D.*

Who are there drowned; none could escape,  
 Except forty and six, whom the king caused to be  
     saved,  
 And part to be presented to the king of France.  
 Of gold and of rich objects, and the total of the  
     wealth  
 Which was in the ship, could no man count.  
 Of the poison which was there, one might poison  
 All entirely who then came to besiege Acre;  
 It was all thrown into the sea without sparing any.  
 King Richard ordered the sails to be haled up,  
 And to hasten towards Acre to aid the Christians.  
 Now may God conduct them and save from trouble!

*Anno Domini 1191, king Richard departed from  
 Cyprus, and came to Acre, which also is taken  
 by him.*

On the holy eve of the Trinity  
 Is king Richard arrived under Acre;  
 There he has found his wife and his sister,  
 And the daughter of Isaac formerly entitled king.  
 Her father remains in guard at Tripoli.  
 And, when king Richard was gone from Cyprus,  
 The people of Greece an apostate monk,  
 Cousin of the deposed emperor Isaac,  
 Have made king of Cyprus, and have given trouble  
     to Statin.

Robert of  
Turnham  
takes pro-  
ceedings  
against the  
monk.

Robert de Thurnham est molt mespayé,<sup>1</sup>  
Et le va queraunt jekes ly ait<sup>2</sup> trové ;  
Par poer le prent, à Cheryn l'ad mené,  
Où hors de prisoun<sup>3</sup> nuytauntre est passé.  
Statyn et Robert as armes ount cryé ;  
Le pople tut de Cypre i venent de volunté.<sup>4</sup>  
Le chaityf est repris, à Cheryn remené.  
Le terce jour après Robert ad comaundé  
Somoundre la court de tote la countré.  
Les fraunkes et les serves sunt<sup>5</sup> venuz de gré  
Al jugement le rays del moyne<sup>6</sup> coroné.  
Escotez ore coment Robert l'ad jugé.

*De monaco rege facto, et postea suspensio.*<sup>7</sup>

The monk  
emperor is  
judged and  
hanged.

“ Sire,” dist Robert, “ tu fustes moyne jadis,  
“ A Deu omnipotent estayez enemys,  
“ Kaunt pour terryen honur<sup>8</sup> tun habit werpys.  
“ Robbour en cel<sup>9</sup> realme par nous fustes pris,  
“ En prisoun à Cheryn cum robbour fustes mys.  
“ La prisoune debristas, fustif<sup>10</sup> fu tu pris ;  
“ Tu averas jugement par lay de moun pays.<sup>11</sup>  
“ Fetes lever les fourches, et pendez<sup>12</sup> le chaityfs.  
“ Plus bel te serrait en cloystre aver sys,<sup>13</sup>  
“ Et chaunter<sup>14</sup> ta messe, et fet le Deu servys,

<sup>1</sup> *mespaé*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *querant, jesqe il eit*, B. D. *que-  
raunt jekes il ad*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *de la prisoun*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *de Cypre vient à volenté*, B.  
*et (for i) vcent de v.*, C. *i vcent*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *serfs i sunt*, B. C. *serve i sunt*,  
D. Robert of Brunne translates this.  
“ Lered men and lay, fre and bond  
“ of toune.”

<sup>6</sup> *de moygne*, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> B. C. *De monaco rege facto*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *pur terrene honur*, C. “ for  
“ the worldes blisse,” Robert of  
Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *en ceste*, B. *en cele*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *futifs*, B. *debrusastes, futyf*, C.  
*e futyf repris*, D.

<sup>11</sup> “ That lawe I salle the make  
“ that is Richard lond.” Robert of  
Brunne.

<sup>12</sup> *e pendre*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *aver assis*, B. D.

<sup>14</sup> *E chaunté*, B. C. D.

Robert de Turnham is much provoked,  
 And he goes in search of him until he has found him ;  
 He takes him by force, has carried him to Cherin,  
 Where he escaped out of prison by night.  
 Statin and Robert have cried " To arms !"  
 All the people of Cyprus come there voluntarily.  
 The wretch is retaken, and carried back to Cherin.  
 The third day after Robert has given orders  
 To summon the court of all the country.  
 Freemen and bondmen are come gladly  
 To the king's judgment of the monk crowned.  
 Now listen how Robert has pronounced judgment on  
 him.

*Of the monk made king, and afterwards hanged.*

" Sir," said Robert, " thou wast formerly a monk ;  
 " Thou wast enemy to God Almighty,  
 " When for earthly honour thou forsookest thy habit.  
 " Thou was taken by us as a robber in this kingdom,  
 " As a robber thou wast put into prison at Cherin ;  
 " Thou brakest the prison, as an escaped prisoner wast  
 " thou taken ;  
 " Thou shalt have judgment by the law of my country.  
 " Cause the gallows to be raised, and hang the wretch.  
 " It would be better for thee to have been sitting  
 " in a monastery,  
 " And chaunting the mass, and doing God's service,

“ Ke chalanger realme ke Richard ad conquys,  
 “ Et pendre<sup>1</sup> cum laroun si près de tes amys.”  
 Kaunt ço novel rays<sup>2</sup> à mort fu liverez,  
 Et la pes le rays en Cypre affermez,  
 De Statyn le Nasée Robert prent congez,  
 King Richard disapproves of this treatment of a king.  
 Retorne à sun seigneur of rychesce assez,  
 Ly counte coment un moyne, estret de parentez<sup>3</sup>  
 L'emperour Isake, fu emperour cryez  
 Par gens de Gryffonye, ke pus ount chalangez  
 La seignurye de Cypre, et furent entrez ;  
 Coment ço novel rays fu pris et menez  
 Al prisoun de Cheryn,<sup>4</sup> et coment eschapez ;  
 Coment il fu repris, coment<sup>5</sup> remenez,  
 [Coment en la courte estoit encoupez,]<sup>6</sup>  
 Et coment par agarde ilokes fu jugez.  
 Dist<sup>7</sup> le ray Richard, “ Allas ! viletez !  
 “ Ky pendist<sup>8</sup> unkes rays ? fus-tu<sup>9</sup> forsanez ?<sup>10</sup>  
 “ Tu faistez vilaynye à touz corounez.”  
 “ Sire,” dist Robert, “ de ly nent plus parlez !<sup>11</sup>  
 “ Taunt com le ray Phelippe ad si<sup>12</sup> demorez,  
 “ Uncore ne assailist Akres unkes une fez ;<sup>13</sup>  
 “ Tu as fet esplait, à Deu le mercyez.<sup>14</sup>  
 “ Adrescés vos engyns, [et] passet<sup>15</sup> les fossez.”  
 King Richard attacks Acre.  
 Le ray Richard adresse suth<sup>16</sup> Akre ses engyns ;  
 Conforte les Englays, Normauz, et Paytevyngs ;<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *E prendre*, B. C.

<sup>2</sup> *Quant cele novele rey*, B. *cele novel rois*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *des parentez*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *En la prison Cherin*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *comenez*, B.

<sup>6</sup> Omitted in A., and supplied from B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *O dit le rey*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Qi pendi*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *fors tu*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *forsenez*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *de li plus ne parlez*, B. *de ly ne plus parlez*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *ci*, B. C.

<sup>13</sup> *ne assailleit Acres ne mie un fez*, B. D. *Uncor assailist Acres ne my un fez*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *a Dieu mercier*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *et passez*, C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *sur*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *Paytesyngs*, C. *Paytefyngs*, D.

“ Than to claim a kingdom which Richard has conquered,  
“ And hang like a thief so near thy friends.”

When this new king was delivered to death,  
And the king's peace established in Cyprus,  
Robert takes leave of *Statin le Nasé*,  
Returns to his sovereign with riches enough,  
Tells him how a monk, descended from the kindred  
Of the emperor Isaac, was proclaimed emperor  
By people of Greece, who have afterwards claimed  
The sovereignty of Cyprus, and were entered ;  
How this new king was taken and carried  
To the prison of *Cherin*, and how escaped ;  
How he was retaken, how carried back,  
How he was brought to trial in the court,  
And how by sentence he was there judged.  
Said king Richard, “ Alas ! shame !  
“ Who ever hanged a king ? wast thou mad ?  
“ Thou didst shame to all crowned heads.”  
“ Sire,” said Robert, “ say no more of him !  
“ As long as king Philip was remaining here,  
“ As yet he never assaulted Acre once ;  
“ Thou hast done action, thank God for it.  
“ Prepare your engines, and pass the fosses.”

King Richard prepares his engines under Acre ;  
Comforts the English, Normans, and Poitevins ;

En barges et galayes fet<sup>1</sup> lever molyns.<sup>2</sup>  
 Les vens sunt en les vailes, lez<sup>3</sup> sunt les peleryns.  
 Les alesce et movent<sup>4</sup> les molées des Ryns,<sup>5</sup>  
 Fu gettent cum foudre, fumés sulferyns,  
 La noyse fust hidouse al vespre<sup>6</sup> du matyns.  
 Ke fet le ray Richard? entre ses vaisins  
 Ne cesse de couper les chenes acheryns;<sup>7</sup>  
 Les fossez ad saisi malgré les Sarazyns.<sup>8</sup>  
 Les fossez enchenez le ray Richard passait,  
 Et sur la cyté assalz plusurs i donait;<sup>9</sup>  
 Et le ray Phelippe ausynt<sup>10</sup> le fesait;  
 Ly un et ly altre trop de ennoy<sup>11</sup> avait.  
 Phelippe pur negligence ses engyns lessait  
 Une nout saunz garde, li Sarazyn gettait  
 Fu de la cyté, et si les eschafait,  
 Ke le ray Phelippe fors carbuns<sup>12</sup> i trovait;  
 Pour quai<sup>13</sup> le ray Richard al matyn le prechait,<sup>14</sup>  
 Ke sage guerreour dait doter descait,  
 Et plus de la nout<sup>15</sup> ke kaunt le solail vait.  
 Richard de ses engyns à Phelippe prestait,<sup>16</sup>  
 Et del remenaunt vigorousment overait.  
 Le assalt de cels ij. rays si longement dorrait  
 Sur les Sarazyns, par si graunt esplait,  
 Ke le frere<sup>17</sup> Saladyn, ke la cyté gardait,

Richard's  
courage  
and acti-  
vity.

King  
Philippe's  
engines of  
war burnt.

<sup>1</sup> *e en galeies feit*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *melyns*, C. Robert of Brunne translates, "In bargeis and galeis "he set mylnes to go."

<sup>3</sup> *leez*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Les aletz en movent*, B. *en movent*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Le Ryns*, B. C. D. This line appears to be very obscure, nor are we much assisted by Robert of Bruane's translation, "The stones were of "Rynes." Hearne, in his Glossary, explains this last word by "Rhine, a "river so called, from whence they "used to have strange odd stones to "be shot in engins."

<sup>6</sup> *à vespre*, C. *à vespre de m.*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *asceryns*, B. D. *les cheyns asceryns*, C. *à Cheryns*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *caracyns*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *plusurs doneit*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *ausi*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *demoie*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *fors carboun*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Par quei*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ly prechait*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *en la nuyt*, B. C. *en la nocte*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *aprestait*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Ke frer*, C. *Ke frere*, D.



Causes mills to be raised in barges and galleys.  
The winds are in the sails, glad are the pilgrims.  
The machines cast the weighty stones,  
They throw fire like thunder, and sulphurous smoke :  
The noise was frightful from morn to evening.  
What does king Richard? among his neighbours  
He ceases not to cut the iron chains;  
He has made himself master of the fosses in spite of  
the Saracens.

King Richard passed the chained fosses,  
And on the city gave there several assaults ;  
And king Philip did the same ;  
The one and the other had too much weariness.  
Philip through negligence left his engines  
One night without guard ; the Saracens threw  
Fire from the city, and so warmed them,  
That king Philip found there nothing but charcoal ;  
Wherefore king Richard in the morning preached to  
him,

That a wise warrior ought to fear deceit,  
And more by night than when he sees the sun.  
Richard lent some of his engines to Philip,  
And worked vigorously with the rest.  
The assault of these two kings lasted so long  
Upon the Saracens, with so great effect,  
That the brother of Saladin, who commanded the city,

The Saracens treat for peace, but the kings refuse.

Of Richard et Phelippe sovent de pees' parlait,  
 Les offre<sup>1</sup> la cyté, et rendre les volait,  
 Issi ke de nul de soens<sup>2</sup> ke dedens estait  
 Serrait retenuz ne membre perderait.  
 Nul de cels<sup>3</sup> deus rays l'offre accordait,  
 Ne ly Sarazyn rendre les volait<sup>4</sup>  
 Les cytés ne les terres<sup>5</sup> ke Richard demaundait;  
 Pour quai li Sarazyn en Akre retornait,<sup>6</sup>  
 Et ly Kristien à l'assalt alait.

The miraculous arrow.

Novele sovent<sup>7</sup> lur vint ke molt les<sup>8</sup> confortait,  
 Un dart marveylluse,<sup>9</sup> dedenz i fu purtrait  
 La parole ke suyt en<sup>10</sup> Latyn tut draït.

*In nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti.  
 Amen.*<sup>11</sup>

Kristyten fu nul ke unkes heure savait  
 Coment ne par ky la sette hors passait,  
 Et vint de la torelle<sup>12</sup> ke Richard assegait;  
 Et ke kantke<sup>13</sup> Sarazyn dedenz ordinayt  
 Fust en la fleche escrit; le ray Richard loait<sup>14</sup>  
 A<sup>15</sup> Deu de tel miracle, et loer devait.<sup>16</sup>

Offers of the Saracens.

A Phelippe et Richard les Sarazyns volaynt  
 Sovent la cyté rendre, et ben promettaynt  
 Ke la saynte terre Jerusalem<sup>17</sup> rendraynt,  
 Et xx. mil Cristiens, ke en prisoun avaynt.

<sup>1</sup> *offri*, B. *offrist*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *ge nul de seuns*, C. *ge nul de sons*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *de ses*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *la rendre ne poeit*, B. *rendre les poayt*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *et les terres*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *en Acres li turneit*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Nove sovent*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *mult lour*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *mult merveyllous*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *ge fust en*, C. *ge suist en*, D.

<sup>11</sup> B. C., with the omission of *Amen*.

<sup>12</sup> *de la torere*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Et quanqe*, C. *Et kaunt ge*, D. *ke* appears superfluous.

<sup>14</sup> *loaist*, C.

<sup>15</sup> A omitted in C. *Dieu de cel myracle*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *i deveit*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *de Jerusalem*, C.

Often spoke of peace with Richard and Philip,  
Offers them the city, and would surrender it to them,  
On condition that no one of his people who were in-  
side

Should be arrested or lose member.

Neither of these two kings agreed to that offer,  
Nor could the Saracen surrender to them  
The cities nor the lands which Richard demanded ;  
Wherefore the Saracen returned into Acre,  
And the Christians went to the assault.  
News often came to them which much comforted them,  
A wonderful arrow from within, in it was written  
The sentence which follows, all in Latin.

*In nomini Patris et Filii et Spiritus Sancti.  
Amen.*

There was no Christian who ever knew  
How nor through whom the arrow passed out,  
And came from the tower which Richard was be-  
sieging ;  
And whatever the Saracen within was planning  
Was written in the arrow ; king Richard praised  
God for that miracle, and praise him he ought.

To Philip and Richard the Saracens desired  
Often to surrender the city, and firmly promised  
That they would deliver up the holy land of Jerusalem,  
And twenty thousand Christians whom they had in  
prison.

Ne Phelippe ne Rychard de ço s'affyaynt;<sup>1</sup>  
 Mès de jour en altre al salt<sup>2</sup> alaynt.  
 A breach made in the walls. Les minours Rychard les founz del mour<sup>3</sup> percaiynt,  
 Et un graundesyme pece del mour cravauntaynt.<sup>4</sup>  
 Les Frauncays cel heure minaynt et gettaynt,  
 Et vers la Thour Maldite sur les mours entraynt.  
 Les Sarazyns saunz doute tost les rechascaynt;  
 A plusurs donaynt playes, et plusurs tuaynt.  
 Les Englays à lour bryke<sup>5</sup> taunt ben combataynt,  
 Ke à lour ray Rychard vaye esé<sup>6</sup> fesaynt.  
 Richard [i] est entré,<sup>7</sup> les Sarazyns ly vaynt,<sup>8</sup>  
 Tutes lur rycheses à ly comaundaynt.<sup>9</sup>  
 Les Frauncays trestuz Phelippe escryaynt,  
 "Entrez en la cyté ke tes<sup>10</sup> gens i sayent;  
 "Prys sunt les Sarazyns, tes vayas<sup>11</sup> estopaynt."  
 Acre is taken. Ore est la vile de Acre par Rychard saysye,  
 Sa baner en la thour en signe de mestrie.  
 Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, ouf sa<sup>12</sup> chualerye,  
 Il boute sa baner, nul ly countredye.  
 Le duk de Austrice i vent, et<sup>13</sup> sa banere desplye,  
 La boute en une thorele cum homme de compaynye  
 Ke fust al assaut de Crestyen partye.  
 Le ray Rychard en taunt ne se paye mye,<sup>14</sup>  
 Fet venir le duk, demaunde par hatye,

<sup>1</sup> *de ceo saffieieint*, B. *se afyaint*, C. *se affyaynt*, D. Robert of Brunne translates, "Thei treistid not ther-  
 "tille."

<sup>2</sup> *à l'asaut*, B. *à l'assaut*, C. *à l'assalt*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *de mures*, B. *Richard les mures percaint*, C. *de mour*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *du mur cravanteient*, B. *del mure cravantaynt*, C. *del mur craventaynt*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *à lour brige*, B. *ad lour brike*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this

line, "The Inglis at ther triste  
 "bifor tham bare alle doun."

<sup>6</sup> *voie aisé*, B. *vey esée*, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *Le rei Richard en entre*, B. *Richard i est entré*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *luy vayent*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *recomandeient*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *tels*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *qe ces veies*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *od sa*, B. *ou sa*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *et omitted* in B. and C.

<sup>14</sup> *de taunt ne s'apaia mie*, B. *ne se paia mye*, C. D.

Neither Philip nor Richard trusted in that,  
But from day to day went to the assault.  
Richard's miners pierced the foundation of the wall,  
And threw down a very great piece of the wall.  
The French at that time were mining and casting,  
And were entering on the walls towards the tower  
Mandite.

The Saracens without doubt soon drove them back ;  
To many they gave wounds, and many they slew.  
The English at their combat fought so well,  
That they made an easy way for their king Richard.  
Richard is entered there, the Saracens yielded to him,  
They surrendered to him all their riches.  
All the French shouted to Philip,  
“ Enter the city, that thy people may be there ;  
“ The Saracens are taken who stopped thy way.”

Now is the town of Acre taken possession of by  
Richard,  
His banner on the tower in sign of mastery.  
King Philip of France, with his knights,  
Fixes his banner, no one prevents him.  
The duke of Austria comes there, and unfolds his  
banner,  
Raises it on a tower as a man of the company  
Who was at the assault on the Christian party.  
King Richard thereupon is not at all satisfied,  
He sends for the duke, demands with haughtiness,

King  
Richard  
and the  
duke of  
Austria.

“ Coment teens-tu ta terre,<sup>1</sup> de ky seygnurye ?  
 “ Et pour quay ta baner as boté par mestrie  
 “ Entre baners as rays,<sup>2</sup> saunz avouerye ? ”  
 “ Sir rays,” dist le duk, “ pour veirs le ws dye,  
 “ Jo suy cy venuz en Crystyene vye  
 “ Destrure à moun poer la mescreauncye ;  
 “ Et, sire, si ws<sup>3</sup> plest, jo tenk ma ducherye  
 “ De Deu et de saint Pere, par lour garauntye.”  
 “ Sire duk,” dist le rays,<sup>4</sup> “ par le fiz Marye,  
 “ Si tu n’as seygnur, ta terre ert altrye.”

Après orrez quel mal avynt de cel<sup>5</sup> envye.

Akre fu perdue, ke ore est regayné ;  
 Les deus rays i sount of molt grant mesné,  
 A cels sustenir<sup>6</sup> la terre est molt chargé,  
 De beyvre et manger<sup>7</sup> kaunt est<sup>8</sup> la chereté.  
 Entre les deus rays par taunt fu ordyné,  
 Ke l’oste Cristyen fu là devysé  
 Aler en deus partyes sur les enemys Dé.

The army  
divided in  
two.

Devisez [est] en deus le hoste<sup>9</sup> par accordauncè.  
 Conquer un chastel enprist le ray de Fraunce  
 Ad une jorné de Acre, ke molt fist grevaunce<sup>10</sup>  
 Maynt jour à Kristyens, trop fu<sup>11</sup> la tenaunce.  
 Le ray Rychard s’en va par Deu et sa pussaunce,  
 Viii. jornés ad conquys sur les mescreaunce.<sup>12</sup>

King  
Philip be-  
sieges a  
castle.

Le ray Phelippe cel heure avait<sup>13</sup> nule chaunce  
 Le chastel conquere, par fet ne par manaunce.  
 Le ray Richard l’oyt dire, doute de descayvaunce,<sup>14</sup>  
 Ke forsclos serrayt<sup>15</sup> de graunt chevisaunce,

<sup>1</sup> *Coment tienes ta tere, B.*

<sup>2</sup> *des reys, B. au reys, C. al reys, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *si le vous plest, C. s’il vous plest, D.*

<sup>4</sup> *dit Richard, B.*

<sup>5</sup> *de cele, B.*

<sup>6</sup> *A tels gens sustenir, B. C. D.*

<sup>7</sup> *e de manger, B. C.*

<sup>8</sup> *grant est, C. D.*

<sup>9</sup> *Devisez est en dous l’ost, B. C. D.*

<sup>10</sup> *fist grant grevaunce, B.*

<sup>11</sup> *trop fort fu, C. D.*

<sup>12</sup> *sur la mescreaunce, B. C. D.*

<sup>13</sup> *n’avoit, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *doute deceivaunce, B. C. D.*

<sup>15</sup> *fort chose serrait, C.*

" How holdest thou thy land? of whose seignory?  
 " And why hast thou raised thy banner by force  
 " Between the banners of the kings, without autho-  
   " rity?"  
 " Sir king," said the duke, "for truth I tell it you,  
 " I am come here in Christian life  
 " To destroy to my power the infidels;  
 " And, sire, if you please, I hold my duchy  
 " Of God and St. Peter, by their warrantry."  
 " Sir duke," said the king, "by the Son of Mary,  
 " If thou hast not a seigneur, thy land will belong to  
   " another."

Afterwards you will hear what evil sprang from this jealousy.

Acre was lost, which now is regained;  
 The two kings are there with very great company;  
 The land is heavily charged to support them,  
 Great is the dearness of drinking and eating.  
 Between the two kings it was therefore resolved,  
 That the Christian army was there divided  
 To go in two parts against the enemies of God.

The army is divided into two by agreement.  
 The king of France undertook to subdue a castle  
 At a day's journey from Acre, which did great grievance  
 Many a day to the Christians; very strong was the  
   force which held it.  
 King Richard departed, through God and his power,  
 He has conquered eight days' journey on the infidels.  
 King Philip at this time had no chance  
 Of subduing the castle, by act or by threat.  
 King Richard heard it said, fears deceit,  
 That he should be cut off from great aid,

Si le ray Phelippe i feist demoraunce,  
 Et le soudan <sup>1</sup> venist sur ly par purveaunce.  
 Sun host tost retourne, of tresor saunz noumbraunce,<sup>2</sup>  
 Et al ray Phelippe revent en aydaunce.

King  
 Philip re-  
 turns to  
 Acre.

Kaunt le rays Phelippe par mareschal savayt  
 Coment le rays Richard si loynz conquys avayt,  
 Coment et pur quay retourner volayt,  
 Dist à ses barouns, “ Nus ne fesums <sup>3</sup> esplayt,  
 “ Rethornoms vers Acre, kar hounte nous serrayt,  
 “ Si en nos presences ço chastel conquys sayt  
 “ Par le ray Richard, et meyns <sup>4</sup> [nus] doterayt  
 “ Payen, et Kristyens meyns nus honurayt.”

Richard  
 arrives to  
 besiege the  
 castle.

Le ray Phelippe repaire <sup>5</sup> vers Acre of sa gente ;  
 Le ray Richard i vent of pavylloun et tente.<sup>6</sup>

A loger se fet ben et rychement,  
 De manger et [de] bayvre <sup>7</sup> kaunt fet à talente,  
 Ses waytes establye, et al repos se prent.  
 Al matyn se leve, et à la messe <sup>8</sup> attent ;  
 A Deu et ad sa mere prya devotement  
 De aide et soccour, autresi <sup>9</sup> verrayment  
 Cum tut <sup>10</sup> sun desir ad doné playnement  
 Venger la mort Jhesu sur Pylatyn parent.

Ore ad le ray Richard sa <sup>11</sup> messe paroye ;  
 Escotez cum dist à la <sup>12</sup> chivalerye.  
 “ Del ray Phelippe ne avoms soccours ne aye ;<sup>13</sup>  
 “ Pensez de vos honors,<sup>14</sup> ne me fayllez mye ;  
 “ A Deu face le avou, jà <sup>15</sup> jour de ma vye

<sup>1</sup> *saldun*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *sanz nombre*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *nus vos fesoms*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *meins nous d.*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *reperire*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *ouf pavilloun estent*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *e de beivere*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *e sa messe*, B. *et la messe*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *De aie e de socour auxi v.*, B.  
*De aye et de socour autresi verray-*  
*ment*, C. *De aye et socour*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Cum tretut*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *la*, B. C.

<sup>12</sup> *cum il dit à sa*, B. *cum il dist*  
*à la c.*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *socour ne nul aie*, B. *socour*,  
 D.

<sup>14</sup> *nos honeurs*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *faz le vou qe jà jour*, B. *face*  
*le vou jà l'our*, C. *face le vow jà*  
*jour*, D.



If king Philip make delay there,  
 And the soldan should come upon him in force.  
 His army immediately turns back, with treasure with-  
 out count,  
 And returns to the assistance of king Philip.

When king Philip knew by a marshal  
 How king Richard had conquered so far,  
 How and why he intended to return,  
 He said to his barons, " We obtain no success ;  
 " Let us return towards Acre, for it would be shame  
 " to us  
 " If in our presence that castle be conquered  
 " By king Richard, and less would fear us  
 " The pagan, and the Christian would honour us less."

King Philip returns towards Acre with his people ;  
 King Richard comes there with pavilion and tent.  
 He causes himself to be lodged well and richly.  
 When he has caused to eat and drink at will,  
 He establishes his sentinels, and gives himself to repose  
 In the morning he rises, and attends at mass ;  
 To God and to his mother he prayed devoutly  
 For aid and succour, inasmuch truly  
 As he had given all his desire fully  
 To avenge the death of Jesus upon the kindred of  
 Pilate.

Now has king Richard finished hearing his mass ;  
 Hear how he spoke to the knights.  
 " From king Philip we have neither succour nor aid ;  
 " Think of your honours, do not fail me at all ;  
 " To God I make the vow, never day of my life

“ Plus près Akre vendray, avaunt ke ay<sup>1</sup> saisye  
 “ Mesmes cel chastel, ke Phelippe ad guerppe ;  
 “ Refusé nous ad par molt grant envye ;<sup>2</sup>  
 “ Alums à l’assalt, Jhesu nous condye ! ”  
 Le fossé est molt large,<sup>3</sup> et parfound assez,  
 Le chastel de tutes pars<sup>4</sup> est envirounez ;  
 Une chaucé estrayt, et puyz un pount-levez,  
 Tut drait jekes à la porte, of double cheyne barrez.  
 La porte fust overt, des Sarazyns armez<sup>5</sup>  
 Cynkaunte ad cel entré sunt porters assignez.  
 Des mangonels<sup>6</sup> et lenges al ray ount gettez.  
 Les Crystiens encountre autel les ount<sup>7</sup> maundeuz.  
 X. sergauns des plus fers et des melz<sup>8</sup> vanez  
 Devaunt le cors le ray sa targe<sup>9</sup> ount portez.  
 Il mesmes, cum geaunt, les cheynes ad coupez ;  
 Tut drayt à la porte est ly rays passez,  
 Combaty cum leoun, sun destrer fu tuez,  
 Et le ray Rychard la presse perçayt al pez,  
 Parmy les Sarazyns le chastel est entrez.  
 Les Cristyens ben quidaynt ke pris fust<sup>10</sup> et menez.  
 “ Le ray Richard est mort ! ” ount ly Normaunz cryez ;  
 Tuent et destruent les gens renayez,  
 Le chastel ount saysy, et si ount trovez  
 Le ray Rychard al des en la sale mountez,  
 Combataunt of chens Sarazyns nomez ;  
 Tuez sunt trestouz, for[s] trays renomez,  
 Quels al ray Phelippe Richard ad presentez.  
 Molt est graunt honor as Englays avenu  
 De lur ray Richard, taunt valliaunt tenu.

The English  
attack the  
castle.

The king’s  
bravery.

He enters  
the castle.

<sup>1</sup> *qe j’ei*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *haitye*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Des fossez mult large*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *de tote pars*, B. *Le chaustel*  
*totes partz*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *de Sarazins arivez*, B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *De mangonels*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *encountre au tiels unt m.*, B.  
*encountre à altels les unt m.*, C.  
*autels*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *e de melz*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *le targe*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *Les Crisiens quideient qe pris*  
*est*, B. C. D.

“ Will I come nearer to Acre, before I have gained  
“ possession of  
“ This same castle, which Philip has forsaken ;  
“ He has refused us through very great jealousy ;  
“ Let us go to the assault, Jesus be our guide !”

The moat is very large, and deep enough,  
The castle on all sides is surrounded by it ;  
A narrow causeway, and then a drawbridge,  
Right up to the gate, barred with double chain.  
The gate was open, of armed Saracens  
Fifty are assigned as porters at that entrance.  
With mangonels and slings they have cast at the king.  
The Christians have sent against them similarly.  
Ten sergeants of the fiercest and most famous  
Have carried his shield before the king's body.  
He himself, like a giant, has cut the chains ;  
Straight to the gate is the king passed,  
Combated like a lion, his steed was slain,  
And king Richard on foot pierced through the crowd,  
Is entered the castle among the Saracens.  
The Christians quite thought that he was taken and  
carried off.

“ King Richard is dead !” the Normans have cried ;  
They slay and destroy the infidel people,  
They have gained the castle, and so have found  
King Richard mounted on the dais in the hall,  
Combating with dogs named Saracens ;  
They are all slain, except three of name,  
Whom Richard has presented to king Philip.

Very great is the honour accrued to the English  
By their king Richard, esteemed so valiant.

King  
Philip's  
mortifica-  
tion.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce est durement envieu,<sup>1</sup>  
Ke pur le chastel prendre, ke est ore<sup>2</sup> rendu,  
Ala ses bens despendre, [et] si les ad<sup>3</sup> perdu.  
Le soldan<sup>4</sup> par espyes ad ben entendu  
Ke le ray Phelippe ne se paye<sup>5</sup> poynt del jeu.<sup>6</sup>  
Du soldan par lettre à Phelippe est venu,

The soldan  
proposes a  
truce for  
seven  
years.

Et du ray Richard un Sarazyn resceu ;  
Il vent en message, si est trop ben conu,<sup>7</sup>  
Et dist al deus<sup>8</sup> rays, "Le soldan ws salu,  
" Et dist ke pur set aunz bon serrayt le treu ;  
" Kar si vostre Deu est de tel<sup>9</sup> vertu,  
" Cum ws ly avez preché al North et al Seu,  
" Nous serroums de ça issynt purveu,<sup>10</sup>  
" Ke la terre ert vostre, et nous convertu,  
" Saunz plus de saunk esprendre ke n'est ore<sup>11</sup> espaundu.  
" Le waynum<sup>12</sup> saunz chalaunge ws sait retenu."

King  
Philip in  
favour of  
of it, but  
Richard  
disap-  
proves.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce ad tost<sup>13</sup> respoudu,  
" Ke<sup>14</sup> mesure refuse, sovent est<sup>15</sup> desceu."  
" Allas !" dist Rychard, "ke unkes nul tel dit  
" Sur promesse de paen<sup>16</sup> de Krystyen issyst.  
" Nus sumes cy venuz servir<sup>17</sup> Jhesu Kryst,  
" Ke pur nus morust, kant en la croyz pendist ;<sup>18</sup>  
" Nus sumes tuz ses fiz, il nus formast<sup>19</sup> et fist,  
" Nus chalangoums la terre où nostre pere nasquit,

<sup>1</sup> *emeu*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *ore est*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *e si les ad*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ke le soudan*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Phelipp se paye*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *de jeu*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *message, trop fu bien*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *à deus*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *sait de tel*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *issint tiel hour purveu*, B. *de ça cel hour issint p.*, C. *de cy à ecl heure issint*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *ore omitted* in B. C.

<sup>12</sup> *Le gayn*, B. *La waigne*, C. *Le waygne*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *ad tant r*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Qi*, B. *Ki*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *est sovent*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne renders king Philip's reply in two lines:—

"And said, 'Ther men bedis skille,  
" 'skille men ouh to take ;

" 'Tho that wille not that tille,  
" 'skille salle tham forsake.'"

<sup>16</sup> *Pur promesse du paen*, B. *du paen du Cristien*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *de servir*, B. *pur servir*, C.

<sup>18</sup> *morust en croiz quant p.*, C. D.

<sup>19</sup> *forma*, B. *fourmayt*, D.

King Philip of France is deeply mortified,  
Who to take the castle, which is now surrendered,  
Went to spend his goods, and so has lost them.  
The soldan by spies has well understood  
That king Philip is not at all satisfied with the game.  
From the soldan by letter is come to king Philip,  
And by king Richard a Saracen received ;  
He comes on message, and is very well known,  
And says to the two kings, " The soldan salutes you,  
" And says that a truce for seven years would he good ;  
" For if your God is of such power  
" As you have preached of him to North and to South,  
" We shall be by that time so prepared  
" That the land shall be yours, and we converted,  
" Without shedding more blood than is shed already.  
" Let the gain be retained by you without dispute."  
King Philip of France has immediately replied,  
" Who refuses reason, is often deceived."

" Alas!" said Richard, " that ever any such saying,  
" On the promise of a pagan, should issue from a  
" Christian.  
" We are come here to serve Jesus Christ,  
" Who died for us, when he hung on the cross ;  
" We are all his sons, he formed and made us ;  
" We claim the land where our father was born,

“ Ke ly puaunt paen sur Crystyen conquyst.  
 “ Si il la rendre volent par<sup>1</sup> pes saunz countredit,  
 “ De lur conversioun ben averoum respit.  
 “ Et, sire, si ço noun, aloums of graunt delyt,  
 “ Conquere par le espeye ke Krystien perdist.  
 “ Ky sun dever ne face pur quai la croyce prist,<sup>2</sup>  
 “ Hastivement ly preygne la male mort subit.”<sup>3</sup>  
 Phelippe, ray de Fraunce, assez tost entendist<sup>4</sup>  
 Ke le ray Rychard assenter<sup>5</sup> ne vousist  
 Al soldan<sup>6</sup> trewe prendre, se teust<sup>7</sup> et surrist,  
 Et de jour en altre privéement purvyst  
 Repair[er]<sup>8</sup> en sun pays, et sovent requist  
 Congé del ray Rychard par gens ke ly<sup>9</sup> transmist.  
 Ly dist ke maladye si fort ly susprit,  
 Ke endurer ne pout saunz cocher en lyt,  
 Et ad Deu<sup>10</sup> voler comaunder l’espirt.  
 Rychard, saunz demore, trop dolent respoundit,  
 “ Si le ray Phelippe desore me faillyst,  
 “ Et ad Dampnedeu covenant ne tenist,  
 “ Molt serrayt chalangé de ço ke ly promist;<sup>11</sup>  
 “ En ly est la demore, en sun<sup>12</sup> plaisir gist  
 “ Demorer ou aler, à Deu est le despit.”  
 Sovent avaunt cel heure estayt graunt destauce  
 Entre le ray Richard et le ray de Fraunce,  
 Ke par compaynye et par fet de covaunce<sup>13</sup>  
 Demaunda la mayté de terre et tenaunce<sup>14</sup>  
 Ke le ray Richard conquist par sa launce<sup>15</sup>  
 Sur le ray de Cypre, où il ne myst<sup>16</sup> aydaunce.

King  
Philip pre-  
pares for  
his de-  
parture,

Richard’s  
displeasure.

Disputes  
between  
the two  
kings.

<sup>1</sup> *s’il la voilent rendre, pur pes, B.*  
*si il la volent rendre par pees, C. D.*

<sup>2</sup> *perist, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *la mort subit, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *assetz entendit, B.*

<sup>5</sup> *assentir, D.*

<sup>6</sup> *A Saladin, B. A saudan, C.*

<sup>7</sup> *se teusce, D.*

<sup>8</sup> *Repairer, B. C. D.*

<sup>9</sup> *ge à li, B. C. D.*

<sup>10</sup> *al Dieu, D.*

<sup>11</sup> *de ceo q’il promist, B.*

<sup>12</sup> *e à son, B.*

<sup>13</sup> *et par covaunce, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *et de tenaunce, B. C.*

<sup>15</sup> *par la launce, B. C. D.*

<sup>16</sup> *il mist, B. n’en eust eydance,*

D.

" Which the stinking pagan conquered from Christian.  
 ' If they will surrender it by peace without dispute,  
 " We will willingly accept respite of their conversion.  
 " And, sire, if not so, let us go with great joy,  
 " To conquer by the sword what the Christian lost.  
 " Who performs not his duty for which he took the  
     " cross,

" May evil and sudden death take him quickly."

Philip, king of France, soon enough heard

That king Richard would not assent

To take truce of the soldan, he was silent and smiled,

And from day to day secretly provided

To return into his country, and often asked

Leave of king Richard by people whom he sent to him.

He told him that sickness so violent had hold of him,

That he could not endure without lying in his bed,

And recommending his soul to God's will.

Richard, without delay, in great grief replied,

" If king Philip henceforward desert me,

" And hold not his covenant to the Lord,

He will be much blamed for that which he promised

    " him ;

The delay rests with him, it lies in his pleasure

To remain or depart, the offence is against God."

Often before that time there was great dissension

Between king Richard and the king of France,

Who, by company and by act of agreement,

Demanded half of the land and lordship

Which king Richard conquered by his spear

From the king of Cyprus, in which he gave no assist-

ance.

Et par taunt Phelippe, par graunt<sup>1</sup> humiliaunce,  
 Fist al ray Richard une quite clamaunce  
 De trestut sun wayne, et sur ço ly fyaunce  
 Gascoyne et Normendye garder de grevaunce,  
 Cum sa terre demene, of sa<sup>2</sup> pussaunce.  
 Phelippe prent congé saunz plus de parlaunce ;  
 Ad Hüge de Borgoyne, duk de graunt<sup>3</sup> vayllaunce,  
 Comaunda sun host, desuz la<sup>4</sup> governaunce  
 Ly bon ray Richard, ke saunz demoraunce  
 Court sur Saladyn, molt fust en graunt dotaunce<sup>5</sup>  
 Al feloun de<sup>6</sup> Cesaré, escotez ore la chaunce.

Philip  
gives the  
command  
of his army  
to the duke  
of Bur-  
gundy.

Philip's  
departure.

Le ray Phelippe s'en va par mer vers Lumbardye,<sup>7</sup>  
 Repaire en sun pays pur sa maladye,  
 Et le duk de Austrice en la compaynye.  
 Le ray Richard demort of sa<sup>8</sup> chivalerye,  
 En Akres et Antyoche<sup>9</sup> gardayns establye,  
 Et vers C[a]lyphas<sup>10</sup> sa baner desplye.  
 Pres de ly fu tuz jours plenté de navye.  
 Après de jour en altre Saladyn espye;<sup>11</sup>  
 A Joppen<sup>12</sup> kaunt il vent, Saladyn n'y est mye.<sup>13</sup>  
 Sus en la mountayne<sup>14</sup> du floum Cesarye  
 Est<sup>15</sup> sire Saladyn, espyaunt enbuschye ;  
 Et tuz<sup>16</sup> les Sarazyns de sa seynurye  
 Sunt venuz à deffendre le floum<sup>17</sup> par espeye,

Richard  
resumes  
hostilities.

<sup>1</sup> *od grant, B. en grant, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *Cum de sa terre demeyne od tote sa, B. ouf tut son pussaunce, C. oue tote sa pussaunce, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *graunt omitted in B.*

<sup>4</sup> *sa g., B.*

<sup>5</sup> *en grant grevaunce, B.*

<sup>6</sup> *Au flum de, B. Al flum de, C.*

*D.*

<sup>7</sup> *Philipp de Fraunce par mere vers L., C.*

<sup>8</sup> *ouf la, C. oue la, D.*

<sup>9</sup> *En Acres, en Antioche, B.*

<sup>10</sup> *Cayphas, B. C. D.*

<sup>11</sup> *l'espie, B.*

<sup>12</sup> *Al Joppen, C.*

<sup>13</sup> *n'est mye, C. kaunt i veent, Saladyn ne est mye, D.*

<sup>14</sup> *en la funtayne de, B. de flum, C.*

<sup>15</sup> *Et, C.*

<sup>16</sup> *Od touz, B. Ouf tuz, C. En touz, D.*

<sup>17</sup> *del flum, D.*



And in consequence Philip, by great humiliation,  
Made to king Richard a quit-claimance  
Of all his gain, and on that gives assurance to him  
To preserve from injury Gascony and Normandy,  
As his own land, with his power.  
Philip takes leave without more talk ;  
To Hugh of Burgundy, a duke of great valour,  
He entrusted his army under the government  
Of good king Richard, who without delay  
Marches against Saladin ; he was in very great fear  
At the river of Cæsarea, hear now what happened.

King Philip proceeds by sea towards Lombardy,  
Returns to his country for his sickness,  
And the duke of Austria in his company.  
King Richard remains with his knights,  
He establishes wardens in Acres and Antioch,  
And towards Caiaphas displays his banner.  
Near him was always plenty of ships.  
Afterwards from day to day Saladin watches him ;  
When he comes to Joppa, Saladin is not there.  
Up in the mountain of the river of Cæsarea  
Is sir Saladin, keeping watch in his ambushade ;  
And all the Saracens of his lordship  
Are come to defend the river by the sword,

Saladin opposes the crusaders. Ke Richard n'y passe,<sup>1</sup> ne nul de sa partye,  
 Saunz aver bataylle of sa<sup>2</sup> paenerye.  
 Saladyn les hoers<sup>3</sup> del floum<sup>4</sup> ad saysye,  
 Et Rychard vent si près ke Saladyn s'affye  
 Rychard utraer, et aver la mestrie  
 De tuz les Kristyens ke là furent en vye.

Battle of Casarea. Le ray Richard aproche devers Cesarée;  
 Le floum ly estout passer si trover put le gué.  
 Les hoers du floum ad Saladyn estopé,<sup>5</sup>  
 Par ount le passage al rays<sup>6</sup> est vée.  
 Richard regard, et vait la terre environné  
 De tuz les Sarazyns ke pount porter espé;  
 E dist le ray Richard, "Mercy la mere Dé!<sup>7</sup>  
 " Purquai nus venimes, ore le avoums trové!"  
 Et kant vait k'il ne poet par poer de mené  
 Passer, ne reprendre vaye en salveté,  
 Sir Jaques de Avennes. Sun host en trays escheles tost ad devysé.  
 Sire Jakes de Aucunes,<sup>8</sup> chuvaler esprové,  
 De gentil norture et noble parenté,<sup>9</sup>  
 De pruesse en fet, de drait<sup>10</sup> verité,  
 De vigour en bataille, de sen avysé,  
 Paringal<sup>11</sup> ne avait en terre où fu née,  
 De la primere<sup>12</sup> eschele pur Deu ad prié;  
 Le ray Richard l'ottrye<sup>13</sup> pur sa graunt bounté,  
 Et cyl du ray Richard pur tuz jours prent congé.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ne passe*, C.  
<sup>2</sup> *od la*, B. *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D.  
<sup>3</sup> *oers*, B.  
<sup>4</sup> *de flum*, D.  
<sup>5</sup> *Les oers ad Saladyn du flum estoppé*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this, "Passage non he nam, the forthes wer withsette."  
<sup>6</sup> *al Richard*, D.  
<sup>7</sup> *Mercie mere Dé*, B. C. D.  
<sup>8</sup> *de Avenne*, B. *de Acunes*, C.

*de Aucunes*, D. "Sir James of "Avenu," Robert of Brunne. In Hoveden the name is Avennes.  
<sup>9</sup> *nureture de parenté*, B. *norture de noble parentée*, D.  
<sup>10</sup> *en drayt*, C.  
<sup>11</sup> *Parigal*, C. D. "Pere had he non "in the lond ther he was born," Robert of Brunne.  
<sup>12</sup> *de primere*, B.  
<sup>13</sup> *R. otrie*, B.  
<sup>14</sup> This line is omitted in D.

That Richard pass not there, nor any of his party,  
Without having battle with the pagans.  
Saladin has seized the passes of the river,  
And Richard comes so near that Saladin is confident  
To overcome Richard, and have the mastery  
Of all the Christians who were there alive.

King Richard approaches towards Cæsarea ;  
It was necessary for him to pass the river, if he  
could find the ford.

Saladin had stopped the shallows of the river,  
Whereby the passage is forbidden to the king.  
Richard regards, and sees the land surrounded  
With all the Saracens who are capable of bearing  
sword ;

And says king Richard, " Thanks to the mother of  
God !

" For what we came, now we have found it !"  
And when he sees that he cannot by force of troops  
Pass, nor retrace his way in safety,  
He has immediately divided his army into three  
squadrons.

Sir Jacques de Avennes, a knight of experience,  
Of gentle nurture and noble kin,  
Of prowess in deed, of very truth,  
Of courage in battle, of prudent mind,  
Equal he had none in the land where he was born,  
Has begged in God's name for the first squadron ;  
King Richard grants it to him for his great goodness,  
And he takes his leave of king Richard for ever.

La secoude eschele al rays est reservé.  
 Al duk de Burgoyne la terce est comaundé,  
 [Et] al<sup>1</sup> mestre du Temple, of sa fraternité.  
 En l'ost par de là du<sup>2</sup> pople canyn  
 La primere eschele tynt sir Saladyne;  
 Paen plus vayllaunt ne fust en tut sun lyn.  
 En la secoude eschele estayt sir Coradyn,  
 Seygnur des Dames,<sup>3</sup> et fiz Saffadyn;<sup>4</sup>  
 Soudan plus curtays ne gustayt unkes vyn.<sup>5</sup>  
 De la terce eschele mestre fu Melchyn,  
 Seygnur de Baudas, et de Methyffasyn,<sup>6</sup>  
 Seygnur de Galilée, et del leu où Kayn  
 Tua sun frere Abel par feloun engyn.  
 Sire Jakes de Avenes, verray pelryn,  
 Se seygnat<sup>7</sup> de la croyce, et prent sun chemyn  
 Sur la primere eschele, cum lever<sup>8</sup> sur mastyn.  
 Deus fez passa parmy, et du braund<sup>9</sup> asceryn  
 Tua paens saunz noubre; mès Calaphès Duryn<sup>10</sup>  
 Coupa la jaumbe destre sir Jakes, à l'heure s'e[n]clyn,<sup>11</sup>  
 Et dist, "O ray Richard, je suy tun<sup>12</sup> cosyn;  
 " Le ray Henri, tun pere, en chastel Constantyn,<sup>13</sup>

The army  
of the  
infidels.

Death of  
Sir Jaques  
de Avenes.

<sup>1</sup> *E al*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates this with some additions:—

"With [him] were the Templars,  
 "and ther fraternité,  
 "Fals in alle maners, so tellis the  
 "stori me."

Robert wrote after the Templars had been condemned and proscribed.

<sup>2</sup> *par là et del*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Seigneur de Damas*, B. C. D. And Robert of Brunne translates it, "lord of Damas."

<sup>4</sup> *Saladyne*, C. *Fassadyn*, D.

<sup>5</sup> "Soudan so curteys never drank  
 "no wyne," Robert of Brunne. Pierre de Langtoft was so earnest in using

his French poetical phrases, that he forgot or probably he did not know, that the Mahometans prohibited the use of wine.

<sup>6</sup> *Mechiphasyn*, C. e *Melchifasyn*, D. "And Sir Matifasyn," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *Se signe*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *leverer*, B. C. *leverere*, D. Robert of Brunne translates, "als  
 "grehound or mastif," if Hearne has not printed or for on.

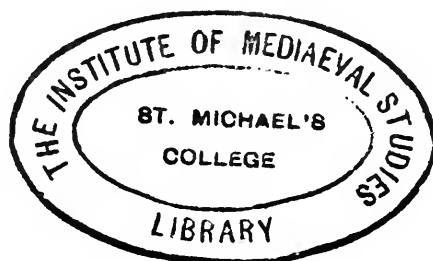
<sup>9</sup> *du brank*, C. *braunt*, D.

<sup>10</sup> "Sir Kalaphes Duryns," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>11</sup> *s'enclyn*, B. D.

<sup>12</sup> *jeo fu toun*, C. *jeo su ton*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Costantin*, B.



The second (middle) squadron is reserved to the king.  
The third is entrusted to the duke of Burgundy,  
And to the master of the Temple, with his brother-  
hood.

In the army of the canine people on the other side,  
The first squadron held sir Saladin ;  
There was not a pagan more valiant in all his lineage.  
In the second squadron was sir Coradin,  
Lord of Damascus, and son of Saffadin ;  
A more courteous soldan never tasted wine.  
The master of the third squadron was Melchin,  
Lord of Baudas, and of Methyfasin,  
Lord of Galilee, and of the place where Cain  
Slew his brother Abel by wicked craft.  
Sir Jacques de Avennes, a true pilgrim,  
Signed himself with the cross, and takes his way  
Upon the first squadron, like greyhound on mastiff.  
Twice he passed through, and with the blade of steel  
Slew pagans without number ; but Calaphès Durin  
Cut off sir Jacques's right leg, at the moment he bows  
down,  
And says, " O king Richard, I am thy cousin ;  
" King Henry, thy father, in the castle of Con-  
stantine,

“ Engendra ma mere sur dame Avelyn,  
 “ Countasse de la Marche, par Deu<sup>1</sup> et saint Martyn ;  
 “ Venez venger ma mort sur ço Sarazyn.”

Jakes de rechef de l'espeye<sup>2</sup> Colony  
 Assene<sup>3</sup> sir Kalaphé<sup>4</sup> aval du patryn,<sup>5</sup>  
 L'enboela parmy ; pur veir, en la fyn  
 Sire Jakes perdist les braz,<sup>6</sup> et lendemayn matyn  
 Fu sun cors<sup>7</sup> trové près du cors Baudewyn,  
 Frere de l'Hospital, fiz le quens Paulyn,  
 Seygnur de Morayn<sup>8</sup> et du Mount Moryn.

Encounter  
 between  
 king  
 Richard  
 and  
 Saladin.

Kaunt le ray savayt sire Jakes<sup>9</sup> fu tuez,  
 Vers le floum s'en va cum home forsenez.  
 Kaunt Saladyn ly vait, de bone voluntez  
 Aproche al ray Rychard, jà sunt encountrez,  
 Un rays et un soldan du mound les melz<sup>10</sup> vanez.  
 Pour veir, le primer coup de Richard donez<sup>11</sup>  
 En la haume<sup>12</sup> de sa launce, les pez ly sunt levez,  
 La cove sun destrer sun chef ad tochez,  
 Le soldan est chaeu, et tost [est]<sup>13</sup> remountez,  
 Et le ray Richard le floum ad recovrez ;  
 Les gens de sa eschele le floum sunt tuz passez.  
 Pour veir en cel contemple sunt tuez et naez  
 Quaraunte mil paens et mil de baptizez.<sup>14</sup>  
 En la drayn eschele sunt dure demenez  
 Templers et Frauncays,<sup>15</sup> sir Hüge est rebotez,<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *pur Deu*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *de espey*, C. *d'espeye*, D.  
 Cologne was celebrated for its blades  
 of fine steel.

<sup>3</sup> *Assena*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Calaphès*, B. *Calephé*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *peitryn*, B. *paytrin*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *le braz*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Fu le corps*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Morian*, B. C. D. “ Was lord  
 “ of Morian alle and of Mount  
 “ Modyn,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *qe Jakes*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *du monde meuz*, B. C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *qe Richard l'ad donez*, B. *le  
 primer coupe Richard l'ad donez*, C.  
*coup Richard l'ad donez*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *En le helme*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *tost est*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *et mille baptizez*, C. *e mil des  
 baptysez*, D.

<sup>15</sup> Robert of Brunne, with his  
 feeling against the Templers, trans-  
 lates here, “ The Templers ilka  
 “ dele failed and thien fled.”

<sup>16</sup> *sire Hüge est rebukés*, B. C. D.

“ Begat my mother on lady Avelin,  
“ Countess of La Marche, by God and St. Martin ;  
“ Come and avenge my death on that Saracen.”  
Jacques again with his sword of Cologne  
Strikes sir Calaphès below the breast,  
Pierced him through the bowels ; for truth, in the end  
Sir Jacques lost his arms, and on the morrow morning  
His body was found near the body of Baldwin,  
A brother of the Hospital, son of count Paulin.  
Lord of Morian and of Mount Morin.

When the king knew that sir Jacques was slain,  
He proceeds towards the river like a man out of his  
mind.

When Saladin sees him, with good will  
He approaches king Richard, now are they met,  
A king and a soldan the most famous in the world.  
For a truth, the first blow given by Richard  
On the helm with his spear, his feet are raised up,  
The tail of his horse has touched his head,  
The soldan is fallen, he is soon remounted,  
And king Richard has gained possession of the river ;  
The men of his squadron have all passed the river.  
For a truth in this struggle are slain and drowned  
Forty thousand pagans and a thousand of the bap-  
tized.

In the last squadron are hard bested  
Templars and Frenchmen, sir Hugh is driven back,

The  
French  
hard  
pressed.

Ke duk est de Borgoyne, et sovent ad cryez,  
 “ Gentyll ray Richard, rethornez et aydez,  
 “ Ou morir nus covent, taunt sumes enchacez !”  
 De Jerusalem le ray Guyoun gentis  
 Dist al ray Richard, “ Sire, tornez le vis ;  
 “ Le duk et sa eschele sunt jà taunt surpris,  
 “ Ke<sup>1</sup> le soldan Saladyn à poy les ad conquis.  
 “ Les freres of la croyce<sup>2</sup> tapisent cum futys ;<sup>3</sup>  
 “ Nes un fet sun dever fors Raynald ly Marchys.”

Richard  
comes to  
their aid,  
and gains  
the victory.

Dist le ray Richard, “ Par le cors saint Dynys,  
 “ Of le ayde Deu,<sup>4</sup> si le duk sait pris,  
 “ Tost sera delivré de ly paen chaitifs.”  
 Le rays lest le floum, sun chemyn ad repris,  
 Et le duk aquite des mayns ses enemys.<sup>5</sup>  
 Le duk perdist cel heure chuvalers trent et sys,  
 Trais cens de pytaille, sergauns e. et dys.  
 Et de cel eschele kaunt ke sunt remys  
 Fet le ray passer le floum à lour amys.  
 De la mayn Richard ilokes est occys  
 Le<sup>6</sup> fiz le ray de Dare, copez ly fu le quys.<sup>7</sup>  
 Le soldan Saladyn est taunt dure assis,  
 Se prent à la mountayne en fuaunt<sup>8</sup> par pays.  
 Al floum de Cesarée Richard enporte<sup>9</sup> le prys.  
 Richard rays Englays va saysir<sup>10</sup> Cesarée,  
 Joppen, de<sup>11</sup> Scaloun, Cadès, de Japhé,  
 Et al ray Guyoun la garde ad doné.  
 Le duk de Burgoyne est si mal naffré,<sup>12</sup>  
 Ke ly cyrogen<sup>13</sup> del duk est desperé,

<sup>1</sup> *Ke* omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *od les croices*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *en futys*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *de Dieu*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *des e.*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Le* omitted in D.

<sup>7</sup> *la quisse*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Et prent à la m. fuant*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *emprent*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *ad saisye*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *et Scaloun*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *si mal mené*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *li surigien*, B. *sirogene*, D.

Robert of Brunne translates this passage, “ That his leche was in ille  
 “ hope of him.”



Who is duke of Burgundy, and often he has cried,  
“ Gentle king Richard, return and aid us,  
“ Or we must die, so hard are we pressed !”

Of Jerusalem the noble king Guy  
Says to king Richard, “ Sire, turn your face ;  
“ The duke and his squadron are now so oppressed,  
“ That the soldan Saladin has almost overcome them.  
“ The brothers with the cross seek hiding places like  
“ fugitives ;  
“ Not one does his duty except Rainald the marquis.”  
Says king Richard, “ By the body of St. Denis,  
“ With God’s aid, if the duke be taken,  
“ He shall soon be delivered from the rascally pagans.”  
The king leaves the river, has retraced his way,  
And rescues the duke from the hands of his enemies.  
The duke lost at that time thirty-six knights,  
Three hundred foot, serjeants a hundred and ten.  
And all who remained of this squadron  
The king caused to pass the river to their friends.  
There is slain by the hand of Richard,  
The son of the king of Dare ; his thigh was cut off.  
The soldan Saladin is so much cast down ;  
He takes to the mountain flying across the country.  
At the river of Cæsarea Richard carries off the prize.

Richard the English king goes and takes possession  
of Cæsarea,  
Joppa, Ascalon, Cades, and Jaffa,  
And has given them in guard to king Guy.  
The duke of Burgundy is so badly wounded,  
That the duke’s surgeon is without hope,

Richard returns to Acre. Et le ray Richard molt descomforté.  
 Le ray le mene vers Acre pur aver la saunté.<sup>1</sup>  
 Et en repiraunt voydez ad trové  
 La vile de Mount Carmele, et de Nazaré ;  
 Chastel Peleryn avaunt avayt wayné,  
 Caloyune et C[a]lyphas<sup>2</sup> ad ly ad proprié ;  
 Pur eser les naffrez en Acre vent de gré.

Saladin makes advances for peace. Le soldan Saladyn si tost l'ad maundé  
 Ke parler vodrayt of ly en amysté,  
 Ne pas al damage de la Kristienté ;  
 Et le rays l'ottrie par counsail du barné.  
 Venuz est Saladyn en fourme ordiné  
 Al palays le rays, si l'ad<sup>3</sup> salué.  
 Saladyn dist, "Sire, tu est<sup>4</sup> prodomme en Dé,  
 " Tuz ces Kristyens sunt en ta poesté,<sup>5</sup>  
 " Tu es lur seygnur, jo say ta dignité.  
 " Si tu vols la pes pur tay et ta mesné,  
 " Et trewe pour vij. aunz saunz mover medlé,  
 " Jo fray tun assez, si tu vols equité."

Richard's reply. " Certes, Saladyn," dist le ray Richer,  
 " A sustenir le guere assez as-tu poer,  
 " Et ad respyt<sup>6</sup> prendre tu n'as pas mester ;  
 " Ne jo à graunter lo,<sup>7</sup> ore n'ay eu voler ;  
 " Mès de la rendre si tu vols parler,  
 " Et la lay mastyne vols renuncyer,  
 " La pes te graunteray, et te fra[y]<sup>8</sup> baptizer ;  
 " Realme te dorry dount te fray corouner."  
 " Sir," dist Saladyn, "gré te day saver,  
 " Ke tu saunz deserte me<sup>9</sup> vols honurer ;  
 " Si tote la paynyme pusse<sup>10</sup> justizer,

<sup>1</sup> *pur avoir sancté*, B. D. *pur aver santeté*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *Cayphas*, B. *Chaloun et Cayphas*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *et l'ad*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *Sire, tuez*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Sunt ceaus cristiens touz qe sunt en ta p.*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Et al respit*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *le*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *fray*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *me sanz desert*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *la paiene justiser*, B.

And king Richard greatly distressed.  
The king carries him towards Acre to obtain health.  
And in his return he has found deserted  
The town of Mount Carmel, and of Nazareth ;  
Chateau Pelerin he had gained before,  
Caloyune and Caiaphas he has appropriated to himself;  
He comes gladly to Acre to give ease to the wounded.  
The soldan Saladin has immediately sent him word  
That he wishes to talk with him in friendship,  
Not to the hurt of Christendom ;  
And the king grants it by the advice of his barons.  
Saladin is come in the established form  
To the king's palace, and has saluted him.  
Saladin says, " Sire, thou art a man noble in God ;  
" All these Christians are in thy power,  
" Thou art their sovereign, I know thy dignity.  
" If thou wilt peace for thee and thy people,  
" And truce for seven years without stirring up war,  
" I will do thy desire, if thou seekest equity."

" Truly, Saladin," said king Richard,  
" Thou has power enough to sustain the war,  
" And thou hast not need to take respite  
" Nor have I to grant it; till the present I have had  
" no wish for it.  
" But if thou desirest to speak of giving it up,  
" And wilt renounce the houndish religion,  
" I will grant the peace, and I will cause thee to be  
" baptized ;  
" I will give thee a kingdom, of which I will cause  
" thee to be crowned."  
" Sire," said Saladin, " I ought to con thee thanks,  
" That thou wilt do me honour without desert ;  
" If I could have the rule of all pagandom

“ Et nul n’y fust fors may, sir, ne gouverner,  
 “ Je pusse et jo vousisse à tay acorder.  
 “ Mon frere Saffadyn tent sun regne enter,  
 “ Ses fiz sunt graunz seygnurs, ne volent lesser <sup>1</sup>  
 “ Terre ne tenement pur nuly precher.”  
 “ O,” dist le ray Richard, “ va tay counsayller,  
 “ Et ad terce jour de cy venez ça arer ;<sup>2</sup>  
 “ Cel heure <sup>3</sup> te dirray coment dayt aler,  
 “ A parfere la guere ou la pes fourmer.”  
 Saffadin repaire ad sa compaynye ;  
 Et Saffadyn, sun frere, sun repayr espye,  
 Et maunde al ray Richard par graunt cortaisye  
 Le meyllour destrer de la paenerye.  
 Par certayns enseynes sur tote ço ly prie  
 Ke en Saladyn trop ne se affye ;  
 Il dist, “ Quant il vent entre compaynye,  
 “ Tuz jours le ray Richard par paroles defye,  
 “ Et dist de tay soul tost averayt <sup>4</sup> la mestrie,  
 “ Si tu says taunt vayllaunt cum le monde te crie.  
 “ Rebuke <sup>5</sup> le ben de sa surquiderye.  
 “ Si tu vols chuva[l]s, hernays, ou armerye,  
 “ Sais-tu tote certayn, <sup>6</sup> jo ne te faudray mye.”  
 Saladyn revent al jour establye.  
 Richard Le ray Richard cel heure ad novele oye,<sup>7</sup>  
 receives news of the French invasion of Normandy. Ke les genz de Fraunce sunt en Normendye  
 Par maundement Phelippe, ses terres ount saysye ;  
 Et si plus tost ne veygne as Normaunz en aye,  
 Desheritez serra de sa seygnourye.  
 Le ray Richard as uns la chose certifiye,  
 Et al parler del trewe <sup>8</sup> al soldan plus se plye.

<sup>1</sup> *volent jà l.*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *cea venez arer*, B. *Et la terce jour de cy ca venez arer*, C. *de cy, cya venez arer*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Del hour*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *avera*, B. C.

<sup>5</sup> *Rebukez*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Soiez tu certain*, B. *Says tout certayn jeo te ne faudra mye*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *novel ad oye*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *de trewe*, C.

“ And no one were there but me, lord or governor,  
“ I could and I would accord with thee.  
“ My brother Saffadin holds his kingdom entire ;  
“ His sons are great lords, they will not yield  
“ Lands or tenements for anybody’s preaching.”  
“ Oh,” said king Richard, “ Go take counsel,  
“ And on the third day hence come back here ;  
“ At that time I will tell thee how it shall go,  
To carry out the war or to establish peace.”

Saladin returns to his company ;  
And Saffadin, his brother, spies his return,  
And sends to king Richard with great courtesy  
The best steed in the pagan land.  
By certain tokens he prays him on all that  
That he trust not too much in Saladin ;  
He says, “ When he comes among companions,  
“ Always by words he defies king Richard  
“ And says that of thee alone he would soon have the  
“ mastery,  
“ If thou be so valiant as the world proclaims thee.  
“ Rebuke him well for his presumption.  
“ If thou desirest horses, harness, or arms,  
“ Be quite certain, I will not fail thee.”  
Saladin returns on the day fixed.  
King Richard at that time has heard news,  
That the people of France are in Normandy  
By sending of Philip, and have seized his lands ;  
And if he does not before come in aid to the  
Normans,  
He will be disinherited of his lordship.  
King Richard gives information of the matter to some,  
And inclines the more to talk of peace with the soldan.

Second  
conference  
with  
Saladin.

Desuz le mount Tabor, en une praerye,  
 Est Saladyn venuz, en amour, saunz boydye,  
 Et prie al ray Richard ke<sup>1</sup> sun playsir ly dye.  
 Du dyt Saffadyn le rays ad graunt envye;  
 Par quai à respoudre Richard estudeye.  
 Chose ne volt promettre, si il ne sayt complye;<sup>2</sup>  
 Respouns ilokes donné à nul jour<sup>3</sup> ert ublye.  
 Le rays à Saladyn dist en respoundaunt,  
 “ De trewe kant tu parles, tu me voys<sup>4</sup> mokaunt.  
 “ Parmy la paynime<sup>5</sup> le pople est molt graunt,  
 “ Et tu de tute le monde es le plus vayllaunt,<sup>6</sup>  
 “ Le melz apris des armes, et le melz<sup>7</sup> combataunt;  
 “ Pour quai<sup>8</sup> parmy la terre es-tu alé prechaunt,  
 “ Si soul me trovyssez,<sup>9</sup> moutez ou alaunt,  
 “ La teste perderay par coup de launce ou braund?<sup>10</sup>  
 “ Si tu vols ço prover, cy ad leu avenaunt,  
 “ Pur tote ta value ore mey grauntez<sup>11</sup> taunt,  
 “ Combatoums solayns, ke nul n’y sayt aydaunt,<sup>12</sup>  
 “ Et ly quel de nous sait trové recreaunt,  
 “ Accioun et claym perde à remenaunt  
 “ De tote la graunde terre dont Kristyten<sup>13</sup> avaunt  
 “ Fu festuz<sup>14</sup> et saisy, de Deu là suz tenaunt.”  
 “ Sire,” dist Saladyn, “ si homme sait vivaunt,  
 “ Paen ou Crystien, ke unkes oyst kaunt  
 “ Ouf tay soul combatre m’en alay avauntaunt,  
 “ Ou fere à tay despyt, si noun<sup>15</sup> encountraunt  
 “ En bataylle champestre ma terre defendaunt,  
 “ Trestut moun heritage te dorray mayntenaunt.”  
 Le halt mestre du Temple lors<sup>16</sup> vynt procuraunt

<sup>1</sup> *ke* omitted in C.

<sup>2</sup> *si ne seit acomplie*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *à nul le jour*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *tu me vas*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *la paene*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *le plus grant*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *apris en armes e meuz c.*, B. et  
*meltz*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *Par quay*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *troiszez*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *brank*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *me grantez*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *soleins e nul i aidant*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *qe Cristien*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *Fu vestu*, B. C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *si moun*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *hors*, B.

Under Mount Tabor, in a meadow,  
 Saladin is come, in love, without deceit,  
 And prays king Richard that he will tell him his  
 pleasure.

The king has great ill-will of the saying of Saffadin ;  
 On which account Richard studies his reply.  
 He will not promise anything, if it be not carried  
 into effect ;  
 The reply there given, will never be forgotten.

The king to Saladin says in reply,  
 “ When you talk of truce you are only mocking me.  
 “ Among the pagan lands the population is very  
 ‘ great,  
 “ And thou art the most valiant of them all,  
 “ The best taught in arms, and the best in fighting ;  
 “ Why hast thou been preaching throught the land,  
 “ If you should find me alone, on horse or on foot,  
 “ I should lose my head by stroke of spear or of sword ?  
 “ If thou wilt prove that, here is a convenient place,  
 “ For all thy worthiness now grant me so much,  
 “ Let us fight alone, that no one assist in it,  
 “ And whichever of us shall be found recreant,  
 “ Let him lose for ever action or claim  
 “ Of all the great land of which the Christian before  
 “ Was enfeoffed and seised, holding it from God there  
 “ above.”  
 “ Sir,” said Saladin, “ if there be man living,  
 “ Pagan or Christian, who ever heard when  
 “ I went boasting to fight with thee singly,  
 “ Or to do despite to thee, if not in encountering  
 “ In field of battle defending my land,  
 “ I will give thee now all my heritage.”

The high master of the Temple then came pleading

Richard and Saladin agree on a truce for seven years. Ke sire Saladyne, pur tuz ly mescreaunt,  
 Promette al ray Richard la trewe parduraunt  
 Seet aunz en bone pees ; le ray Richard le graunt,  
 Salve as Krystiens, par ço coveuaunt,  
 Kaunt ke il ount waygné saunz ren recoupaunt.

Le ray Rychard vers Akre sun chymyn repren[t] ;  
 Le ray Guy et sun fiz fet venir vistement,  
 Le prince de Antyoche, Raymound, of sa gent ;  
 Amfrede de Thuroun<sup>1</sup> i vynt bonement ;  
 Bomound counte de Triple i fu prestement ;  
 Et Leoun,<sup>2</sup> frere Ruffyn,<sup>3</sup> vent al parlement ;  
 Et le ray Richard les counte tut coment  
 Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, par malvays talent,  
 Court en Normendye, destrut sun tenement,  
 Aler ly estout<sup>4</sup> et prendre vengeance.

King Richard arranges his affairs in the East, and returns to Europe. Les terres par dela les pryé devotement  
 Garder et guyer vij. aunz enterement.  
 Freres de l'Hospital, del Temple ensement,  
 Sunt coadjutours del gouvernement.  
 A Deu les comaunde, et sun congé prent.

Le ray<sup>5</sup> de Antyoche, et le ray Guyoun,  
 Bomound quens de Triple, et Amfray de Thuroun,<sup>6</sup>  
 Ount citez et viles en proteccioun,  
 Ke le ray Richard conquist sur feloun.  
 Isake<sup>7</sup> l'emperour prent sa lyveraysoun  
 Al Temple al freres<sup>8</sup> demoraunt à mesoun ;  
 Sa fyllie la rayne quert pur garisoun.<sup>9</sup>  
 Le rays, en repayraunt devers sa region,  
 Fet marier sa soer of ly quens Raymoun,

<sup>1</sup> *Aunfrede de Turim*, B. de Turun, C. *Aumfrede de Turyn*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Eloon*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Rophin*, C. *Rupyn*, D. "Sir Ruffyn brother Leoun," Robert of Brunne, meaning, of course, Sir Ruffyn's brother.

<sup>4</sup> *esteut*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Le prince*, B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *e Aunfray de Turon*, B. D.

<sup>7</sup> *Jakes l'emperour*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *entre freres*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in C. Robert of Brunne translates it, "His douhter with the quene was for hir warisoun."



That sir Saladin, for all the misbelievers,  
Promise to king Richard a truce lasting  
Seven years in good peace; king Richard grants it,  
Assured to the Christians, by that covenant,  
All they have gained without retracting anything.

King Richard resumes his road towards Acre;  
He sends immediately for king Guy and his son,  
The prince of Antioch, Raymond, with his people:  
Amfrid de Tours comes there willingly;  
Boemond, count of Tripoli, was there in readiness;  
And Leo, brother of Ruffin, comes to the conference;  
And king Richard relates to them all how  
King Philip of France, through ill will,  
Is invading Normandy, and destroys his lordship,  
It is necessary for him to go and take revenge.  
He prays them devoutly the lands on that side  
To guard and rule seven years entire.  
The brothers of the Hospital, of the Temple also,  
Are coadjutors in the government.  
He recommends them to God, and takes his leave.

The prince of Antioch and king Guy,  
Boemond count of Tripoli, and Amfrid de Tours,  
Have cities and towns in protection,  
Which king Richard conquered from the wicked people.  
Isaac, the emperor, takes his provisions  
At the Temple, among the brothers, dwelling in the  
house;  
His daughter seeks the queen for her provision.  
The king, in his return towards his kingdom,  
Causes his sister to marry count Raymond,

Le<sup>1</sup> counte de Saint-Gile,<sup>2</sup> homme de graunt renoun.  
 Ne say coment après, ne par quel resoun,  
 Le ray laissa ses genz tuz, [et] en tapisoun<sup>3</sup>  
 Ala devers Austrice<sup>4</sup> à sa confusioun,  
 Espyaunt à tort autry possessioun ;  
 Ne coment en Austrice par procuration  
 Fu pris sodaynement, et tenuz en prisoun ;  
 Quel avoyr fu doné pur<sup>5</sup> sa redemcioun ;  
 Coment l'apstoyle dona sa maliçoun  
 Sur tuz ke ly pristrent, ou par consensioun<sup>6</sup>  
 Furent al counsail de sa capcioun ;  
 Mès ben ws dirray par quel devocioun  
 Il vynt par saint Thomas en processioun.  
 Kaunt le ray Richard delivers<sup>7</sup> estait,  
 Of Helyanore<sup>8</sup> sa mere, ke molt ly aidait,  
 Vint en Engleterre, à Sandwyce<sup>9</sup> aryvait,  
 Devers Caunterbyre devotement alayt,<sup>10</sup>  
 Vij. lews de la ville à pé le saint querait,<sup>11</sup>  
 De molt riche offeraunde le martir honurait ;  
 A Deu et à sa mere<sup>12</sup> sovent mercyait  
 Ke sa graunt angusse si ben eschapaît.  
 Ta int cum en prisoun le rays demorait,  
 Jon,<sup>13</sup> sun frere, pur veir mesfet<sup>14</sup> ly avait ;  
 Ses chastels saisist, ses rentes enportayt,  
 De sa deliveraunce unkes mot parlait,  
 Mès cum [rays] de terre<sup>15</sup> et seygnur se portait;<sup>16</sup>

King  
Richard  
goes  
secretly in-  
to Austria.

He is im-  
prisoned.

Returns to  
England.

Conduct of  
his brother  
John.

<sup>1</sup> *Le* omitted in B. and D.

<sup>2</sup> *de Saynt Gily*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *lessa ses gens, e en t.*, B. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ostrice*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Que il avait fu doné pur*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *contencioun*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *deliverez*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *Od Elianore*, B. *Ouf Alienore*,  
C. *Oue Elyanore*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *Sandwyz*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *devoute aloit*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Sete lewes de la vile le saynt al  
pée querayt*, C. *al pée le seint que-  
rait*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *e à li*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Johan*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *messez*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *cum reys de tere*, B. C. D.  
Robert of Brunne translates it,  
“ Bot als a kyng of lond Jon bare  
“ him fulle stoute.”

<sup>16</sup> *se partait*, C.

Count of Saint Giles, a man of great renown.  
I know not how afterwards, and for what reason,  
The king left all his people and in disguise,  
Went towards Austria to his confusion,  
Spying wrongfully the possession of another ;  
Nor how in Austria by procuration  
He was suddenly taken, and kept in prison ;  
What money was given for his redemption ;  
How the pope pronounced his curse  
On all who took him, or by consent  
Were in counsel for his capture.  
But well I will tell you by what devotion  
He came by St. Thomas in procession.

When king Richard was set at liberty,  
With his mother Eleanor, who much assisted him,  
He came into England, arrived at Sandwich,  
Went devoutly towards Canterbury,  
Seven leagues from the town he sought the saint on  
foot,  
Honoured the martyr with very rich offering ;  
He often gave thanks to God and to his mother ,  
That he escaped so well from his great distress.  
During the time the king remained in prison,  
John, his brother, in truth had misconducted himself  
towards him.  
He seized his castles, laid hands upon his rents,  
Never spoke a word of liberating him,  
But bare himself as king and lord of the land ;

Pur quai<sup>1</sup> le ray Richard juger le volait  
 Solom ses desserz, mès Jon<sup>2</sup> mercy criayt.  
 Helianore, lur mere, taunt ly priayt,<sup>3</sup>  
 K'il [l']ad pardoné, et lors ly disayt,  
 " Tuz jours en ta memore<sup>4</sup> ta mesprise sait,  
 " Jà plus n'en<sup>5</sup> penseray, pur ren ke venir dayt."  
 Le rays est à Loundres, et volt<sup>6</sup> parlementer ;  
 Ses countes, ses barouns là fet<sup>7</sup> tuz maunder ;  
 Trestuz i sunt venuz, chascun de bon quer.  
 Escotez ore coment le ray va counsayller.  
 Ad clers et [ad] lays<sup>8</sup> ke sunt à Westmouster<sup>9</sup>  
 Dist le ray Richard, " A ws voyl moustrer  
 " Coment le ray de Fraunce m'en va<sup>10</sup> desheriter.  
 " Taunt cum jo estay arestuz outre mer,  
 " Saisist mes chastels, despendist moun aver ;  
 " De ws, mes lige gens, voyl counsail demaunder,  
 " Coment plus[tost] porray<sup>11</sup> ma terre regayner."  
 Le counte Roger respount, à ky alme<sup>12</sup> Deus aye,  
 " Countes et barouns, chivalers par espeye ;  
 " Erceveske, eveske, cytayn, et burgaye,  
 " Et persouns de eglises,<sup>13</sup> aiderount par monaye ;  
 " Abbés, et priours, et altres gens de abbaye,  
 " Aydrount par priers et oraysouns par vaye.  
 " Plus valt un saynt home à ky Deus otraye,  
 " Ke ne fount e. mil mars donez en coraye."  
 Le dit ben plest al popel, et ly ray se paye.

<sup>1</sup> *Par quei*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Johan*, B. *mès mercy Johan cryait*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *le rei tant preit*, B. C. *le rei taunt priayt*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *memorye*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *ne p.*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *e va*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *feit là*, B. *fet là*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *e as lais*, B. C. *A clers et à lays*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *à Weymouster*, B. *Wemouster*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *me va*, B. *ly va*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *plus tost purray*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *respunt, qi alme*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *Persons de seint eglise*, B. *parsones des eglises*, D.

Upon which king Richard sought to bring him to  
justice

According to his deserts, but John begged forgiveness.

Eleanor, their mother, solicited him so much,

That he has pardoned him, and then said to him,

“ Be thy misdeed ever in thy memory,

“ Now I shall think no more of it, for nothing that

“ may happen.”

The king is at London, and will hold a parliament ;  
He causes to be summoned thither his earls and his  
barons :

All are come there, each with willing heart.

Hear now how the king goes to take counsel.

To the clergy and laity who are at Westminster

Says king Richard, “ To you I will show

“ How the king of France is going to disinherit me.

“ All the while I was arrested beyond sea,

“ He seized my castles, squandered my property ;

“ Of you, my liege people, I will ask counsel,

“ How best I may be able to regain my land.”

Earl Roger replies, to whose soul God give aid,

“ Earls and barons, knights by the sword ;

“ Archbishop, bishop, citizen, and burgher,

“ And parsons of churches, shall assist with money ;

“ Abbots, and priors, and other monastic people,

“ Shall aid by prayers and supplications by way.

“ More is the value of one holy man to whom God

“ listens,

“ Than a hundred thousand marks given in discontent.”

The speech pleases well the people, and the king is  
satisfied.

Richard  
visits his  
possessions.

Ore volt le ray Richard ses terres estendre,<sup>1</sup>  
Homages des ryches<sup>2</sup> et fealtez volt-il prendre.  
Les barouns le fount<sup>3</sup> de quer pytous et tendre.  
Après rethorne à Loundres argent à despendre.  
De totes pars ly venent barouns pur ly defendre.  
As armes sunt venuz, Richard ne volt atendre ;  
Sur le ray Phelippe ses chastels volt reprendre.<sup>4</sup>

Richard  
arrives in  
Normandy.

Aryvez est ly rays à Depe en Normendye ;  
Demy an y demort, of sa chualerye ;  
Du pople de la terre kant ly rays s'affye,<sup>5</sup>  
Sa guere fet ordiner, les<sup>6</sup> dustres establye,  
Devers Aquitayne sa baner desplye.  
Le chastel de Curtels<sup>7</sup> pris ad par mestrie ;  
Chualers et sergauns, ke le avaynt en bayllye  
Sunt mys en prisoun, où chescun mercy crye.  
Mès le jour pur veir pris[t]<sup>8</sup> par graunt vaidye  
La mesoun de Burrez, of la<sup>9</sup> seygnurye,  
Et al Dangu<sup>10</sup> va prendre sa herbergerye.

Flight of  
king Philip.

Le ray Phelippe de Fraunce, of sa<sup>11</sup> compaynye  
De ses xij. peres, venent en aye  
Al chastel de Curtels, kar il ne<sup>12</sup> sevent mye  
Le chastel est renduz ; le veir kant ount oye,  
Vers Gesorz s'en vount fuyaunt en tapye.  
Le ray Rychard suyst, et ses genz escrye,  
“ Pernez le ray Phelippe, ne ferez pas d'espeye ! ”  
Le ray Phelippe estayt assez descomfit  
Kant of tut sun hoste<sup>13</sup> à Gesorz fuyst ;

<sup>1</sup> *ses terres ordener*, C. “ alle his  
“ lond extende,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *Homages de rechef*, B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *ke fount*, A. *les fount*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *reprendre*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *ly reys se affye*, C. D. “ And  
“ whan he sauh he myght on his  
“ folk affie,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *ses*, B. C. *les dutres*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Curceles*, B. *Curteles*, C. D.  
*Cursels*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> *prist*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *od la*, B. *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D

<sup>10</sup> *à Dangan*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *ouf la*, C. *oue la*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *q'il ne*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *à tot son host*, C.

Now will king Richard make a survey of his lands,  
He will take anew homages and fealties ;  
The barons perform them with kind and tender heart.  
Afterwards he returns to London to spend money,  
From all sides come to him barons to defend him.  
They have come to arms, Richard will not wait,  
He will recover his castles from king Philip.

The king is arrived at Dieppe in Normandy ;  
He dwells there half a year, with his knights ;  
When the king feels trust in the people of the land,  
He causes his war to be ordained, appoints his leaders,  
Displays his banners towards Aquitaine.  
He has taken the castle of Courcelles by mastery ;  
Knights and serjeants, who had it in keeping,  
Are put in prison, where each cries mercy.  
The same day in truth he took by great craftiness  
The house of Burrez, with its lordship,  
And at Dangu goes to take his lodging.  
King Philip of France, with his company  
Of his twelve peers, come in aid  
To the castle of Courcelles, for they know not  
That the castle is surrendered ; when they have heard  
the truth,  
They go towards Gisors flying secretly.  
King Richard follows, and shouts to his men,  
“ Take king Philip, but strike him not with the  
“ sword ! ”

King Philip was sufficiently discomfited,  
When he fled with his army to Gisors ;

Tente et pavylloun ke Phelippe<sup>1</sup> werpist  
 Sunt al ray Richard tut saunz countredit.  
 Phelippe of ses Frauncays à l'aler se prist ;  
 Rychard of ses Englays chasçaunt les suyst  
 Al pount de Gesorz, ke n'est pas petit ;  
 En l'arere garde nes un Frauncays remyst.  
 Molt fu le pople graunde kaunt le pount chayst ;  
 Le rays en la ruyne<sup>2</sup> entre les altres gist.  
 " Or sus, sire<sup>3</sup> ray de Fraunce ! " Markadé ly dist,<sup>4</sup>  
 " Tes brays sunt moyllez, tu honys tun habyt. "  
 Sis cenz<sup>5</sup> chualers en l'ewe sunt ploungesz,  
 Des quels l. et iij.<sup>6</sup> ilokes sunt naez.  
 Le ray Richard comaunde ke Phelippe sayt salvez.  
 Mathy de Mount Moryz,<sup>7</sup> baroun renomez,  
 Sir Alayn de Rusczy,<sup>8</sup> sir Fuke de Griffiez,<sup>9</sup>  
 Of lur chuvalerye, sunt pris et menez ;  
 Markady<sup>10</sup> prist xx. de tuz les melz vanez.  
 Ore est le ray Richard de An[geon returnez] ;<sup>11</sup>  
 En garde à Markadé<sup>12</sup> les prisouns sunt lyverez.  
 Des fez al ray<sup>13</sup> Richard cel houre et altre fez,

The disaster at the bridge of Gisors.

The prisoners who were taken.

<sup>1</sup> *ge rei Philip*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *la rivere*, B. D. *en li river*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *sire* omitted in B.

<sup>4</sup> Robert of Brunne has here somewhat extended the original in his translation:—

" A knyght, a bourdour, kyng

" Richard hade,

" A douhty man in stoure, his

" name was Markade.

" He sauh kyng Philip als he lay

" in the water,

" " Sir kyng, rise up and skip, for

" " thou has wette thi hater.

" " Thou fisses not worthe a leke,

" " rise and go thi ways,

" " For thou has wette thi breke,

" " schent is thi hernays. "

Marchadès was the commander of

the Routiers in Richard's service, and had the reputation of being a great joker.

<sup>5</sup> *Dys cenz*, C.

<sup>6</sup> " Of whilk thritty and thre did "ther endyng there," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *de Mount Morte*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *de Rucy*, C., " of Russie," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *Giffrez*, B. *de Giffreez*, C. " de Geffre." Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *Markadé*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *à Angeowe returnez*, B. *de Danhou rethornez*, C. *à Dangeou retournez*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *ad Marchadé*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *fetz le rei R.*, B. *Des fez ray R.*, C. *Des fez le*, D.



Tent and pavilion which king Philip abandoned  
Are the property of king Richard all without dispute.  
Philip with his French took to flight;  
Richard with his English followed them in pursuit  
To the bridge of Gisors, which is not small;  
In the rear-guard not a Frenchman remained.  
Very great was the crowd when the bridge fell;  
The king lay among the others in the river.  
“ Now up, sir king of France !” said Marchadès to him,  
“ Thy breeches are wet, thou shamest thy coat.”

Six hundred knights are plunged into the water,  
Of whom fifty-three are there drowned.  
King Richard commands that Philip be saved.  
Mathy de Mount Morice, a baron of renown.  
Sir Alan de Rucy, Sir Fulke de Griffiez,  
With their knights, are taken and carried off;  
Marchadès took twenty of all the most men of mark.  
Now is king Richard returned from Anjou;  
The prisoners are delivered to the custody of Marchadès.  
Of the acts of king Richard at this time and on other  
occasions,

Kaunt à chualerye, ne say la veritez; <sup>1</sup>  
 Ky les volt saver [où] il <sup>2</sup> sunt recorderz,  
 Voyse et lyse <sup>3</sup> sun liver ke est enromauncez, <sup>4</sup>  
 Et là purra trover tuz les propertez. <sup>5</sup>  
 Nef aunz et vj. mays tynt-il ses regnez.  
 Le iiij. jour devaunt <sup>6</sup> Dymaynge de palmes nomez,  
 Tut draît en Lymosyne <sup>7</sup> dedure estayt alez.  
 Desuz un chastel k'il avayt manauntez, <sup>8</sup>  
 Un ablaster dedeynz, du ray avysez, <sup>9</sup>  
 Parfound en la jaumbe de un quarel l'ad <sup>10</sup> naffrez.  
 Le ray Richard du coup est envenymez,  
 Nef jours vesquyt, après à Deu est comaundez.  
 Il gist à Fount Ebrak <sup>11</sup> près de ses parentez. <sup>12</sup>  
 Kaunt Deus en avayt fet sun <sup>13</sup> comaument  
 Du bon ray Richard, sun frere se present,  
 Jon, <sup>14</sup> à l'herytage of le honur ke apent. <sup>15</sup>  
 Le counte de Brettayne, Geffray, verrayment  
 Fust hayr après Rychard de terre <sup>16</sup> et tenement;  
 Mès il morust avaunt, sachez certainement,  
 Par taunt est [Jon] resceu à l'encorounement.  
 Jon et femme ad prise, <sup>17</sup> Elysabeth la gent;  
 Al quens de Aculeyne <sup>18</sup> fu fyllye par descent.

Death of  
king  
Richard.

Accession  
of king  
John.

<sup>1</sup> *ne sai les veritez*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *où il*, B. *ù sont*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Voyse, lise*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *en Romancez*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *propretez*, D. Robert of Brunne  
adds,—

“ This that I haf said, it is

“ Pers sawe,

“ Als he in Romance laid, ther-

“ after gan I drawe.”

<sup>6</sup> *avaunt*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *à Lymosin*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *manaces*, B. *manauncez*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *desavisez*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *ad*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Ebrard*, B. D.

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in C.

<sup>13</sup> *Dieu avoit son c.*, B. *Dieus  
avayt fet*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *Johan*, B. C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *qe li apent*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *du terre*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *Johan ad feme prise*, B. C. D.

<sup>18</sup> *Aculeie*, B. *quens Aculeyne*,  
C. “ The erle of Aquiley,” Robert  
of Brunne.

As far as regards chivalry, I know not the truth ;  
Who desires to know them, they are recorded,  
Let him go and read his book which is written in  
French,

And there he will be able to find all the particulars.  
Nine years and six months he held his kingdoms.  
The fourth day before the Sunday named of Palms,  
He was gone for recreation straight into the Limousin.  
Beneath a castle which he had threatened,  
An arbalester within, aware of the king,  
Has wounded him with an arrow deep in the leg.  
King Richard is envenomed by the blow ;  
Nine days he lived, afterwards he is sent to God.  
He lies at Fontevrard near his kinsmen.

When God had done his will  
With good king Richard, his brother presents himself,  
John, to the inheritance with the honour which belongs  
to it.

The count of Britany, Geoffrey, really  
Was heir after Richard of land and lordship ;  
But he died before, know certainly,  
In consequence of which John is received to be  
crowned.

John has taken to wife Elizabeth the fair ;  
She was by descent daughter to the count of Aquileia.

*Anno Domini millesimò centesimo nonagesimo nono.*

Coronation  
of king  
John.

Le ercevesk Hubert,<sup>1</sup> de Caunterbyre par noun,  
Vynt à Westmouster<sup>2</sup> jour de l'Assencioun ;<sup>3</sup>  
Par commune assent de counte et [de] baroun,<sup>4</sup>  
Ad Jon, le frere Richard,<sup>5</sup> ad doné la coroun.  
Enoynt est en rays of graunt devocioun ;  
Aunz et jours vesquyt en tribulacioun.  
Trop jolyfs estayt,<sup>6</sup> par quai la nacioun  
Sovent encountre ly movayt contencioun.

Death of  
Arthur,

Normendye perdist, à sa confusioun,  
Kaunt en la court de Fraunce appelé fu feloun,  
Pur la mort Arthur, fiz sun frere Geffroun,  
Counte de Brettayne, à ky la regyoun  
Par drayt devait descendre ; si tuez fust ou noun,  
Mon mestre me suspende à dire en moun sermoun ;  
Noun pur ço ben say sa mort fust la chesoun<sup>7</sup>  
Par ount le uncle avait la possessioun,  
Ke aver endevayt le nevu<sup>8</sup> par resoun.  
Ço fu le cas le rays saunz condicioun.

and of his  
sister  
Margaret.

Arthur avayt un soer, Margrete par noun wus dye,  
Plus bele creature ne fust cel heure en vye,  
Ke tost après sun frere sun secle ad fynye.<sup>9</sup>  
Ore ad le ray de Fraunce la mort Arthur oye,  
Et al ray Jon maunde k'il veygne en sa ballye,  
A prendre jugement de la<sup>10</sup> felounye  
Ke sur ly fu mys pur le hair de Bretonye.  
Le ray Jon demort, en Fraunce ne va-il mye.  
Pour quai le ray de Fraunce si tost ad saysye

<sup>1</sup> *Hobert, C.*

<sup>2</sup> *Weymouster, B. Wemouster, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *le jour de l'assencioun, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *e de baroun, B. D.*

<sup>5</sup> *Johan frere R., B. A Johan, C.*  
*A Johan le fiz Richard, D.*

<sup>6</sup> "He was of licherous life,"  
Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *fu l'encheson, B.*

<sup>8</sup> *le noun, A. C.*

<sup>9</sup> *ad son secle fynye, C.*

<sup>10</sup> *de sa, B.*

*Anno Domini* 1199.

Archbishop Hubert, of Canterbury by name,  
Came to Westminster on the day of the Ascension ;  
By common assent of earls and barons,  
To John, the brother of Richard, he has given the crown.  
He is anointed king with great devotion ;  
Years and days he lived in tribulation ;  
He was too licencious, through which the nation  
Often moved contention against him.  
Normandy he lost, to his confusion,  
When he was accused in the court of France of felony,  
For the death of Arthur, the son of his brother  
Geoffrey,  
Count of Britany, to whom the kingdom  
Ought by right to descend ; whether he were killed or not  
My master prevents my saying in my discourse ;  
Nevertheless I know well his death was the cause  
Whereby the uncle had the possession,  
Which by right the nephew ought to have.  
This was the king's case without qualification.

Arthur had a sister, Margaret by name, I tell you ;  
There was not a fairer creature at that time alive,  
Who has ended her life soon after her brother.  
Now has the king of France heard of the death of  
Arthur,  
And he calls on king John that he come into his  
ward,  
To take his judgment for the felony  
Which was laid to his charge for the heir of Britany,  
King John remains, he goes not into France.  
For which the king of France immediately has seized

King Philip Tolouse et Tolousan et tote Normendye ;  
 seizes Le ray Jon par taunt perdist sa seygnurye.<sup>1</sup>  
 Normandy. Ke fet le ray de Fraunce ? attyre sa navye,<sup>2</sup>  
 Veent en Engleterre of sa chuvalerye,  
 Ben quydayt de la terre aver eu mestrye.  
 Les Waldays et les altres hors de Pevenesheye  
 Ount le ray de Fraunce rechacez par espeye.  
 The king Ore est le ray de Fraunce repassez la mer ;  
 of Scotland performs Le ray Jon est alé sun regne justizer.<sup>3</sup>  
 homage. William, ray d'Escoce, à Nicole fet maunder ;  
 Hors de la cyté al chauns<sup>4</sup> en yver,  
 Le jour saynt Cecille, le ray William de quer  
 Là ly fist homage, et le fet<sup>5</sup> jorer  
 Ke fay ly portrayt of sun<sup>6</sup> leal poer.  
 Le erceveske Hubert<sup>7</sup> sa croyce fist lever.  
 Le ray William ne poet lyver<sup>8</sup> ilokes aver,<sup>9</sup>  
 Il jorra sur la croyce, ke fay ly dayt<sup>10</sup> porter.  
 Dispute Hubert<sup>11</sup> le erceveske si tost cum mort estayt,  
 about the Le priour de Caunterbyre al ray Jon envayt  
 election of Quere congé de elyre, et ly rays le grauntayt.<sup>12</sup>  
 an arch- Pur ly de<sup>13</sup> Norwyce ke<sup>14</sup> l'evesché averayt<sup>15</sup>  
 bishop of Le ray Jon par lettre devotement priayt  
 Canter- Le priour, of ses<sup>16</sup> moynes, ke<sup>17</sup> eleccioun fesayt.  
 bury. Suppriour est eluz par<sup>18</sup> partye ke volayt  
 Ke il fust erceveske ; partye nay disayt ;

<sup>1</sup> *la seignorie*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *son navye*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *visiter*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates:—

“ And Jon northward him sped,  
 “ his lond for to visite.”

<sup>4</sup> *as champs*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *et li fist*, B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *en son*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Hobert*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *livre*, B. *livere*, D.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in C.

<sup>10</sup> *fei li dust*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Hobert*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *et ly reys grantait*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *li qi de*, B. *Pur ly qe de*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *ke* omitted in D.

<sup>15</sup> *avait*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *ouf les m.*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *ke* omitted in B. and D. C. reads *le*.

<sup>18</sup> *par* omitted in C.

Toulouse and the Toulousain and all Normandy ;  
King John thereby lost his lordship.  
What does the king of France? he fits out his navy,  
Comes into England with his knights,  
He quite reckoned on having the mastery of the land.  
The Welsh and the others off Pevensey  
Have driven back the king of France with the sword.

Now has the king of France recrossed the sea ;  
King John has gone to visit his kingdom.  
He causes William king of Scotland to be summoned  
to Lincoln ;  
Outside the city in the fields in winter,  
On the day of St. Cecily, king William with good will  
There performed homage to him, and he made him  
swear  
That he would bear faith to him with his loyal  
power.  
Archbishop Hubert caused his crosier to be raised.  
King William could not have a book there,  
So he swore on the crosier, that it was his duty to  
bear faith to him.

As soon as Hubert the archbishop was dead,  
The prior of Canterbury sends to king John  
To seek a congé d'elire, and the king granted it.  
For him who should have the bishopric of Norwich  
King John by letter prayed devoutly  
The prior, with his monks, who made the election.  
The sub-prior is elected by the party which willed  
That he should be archbishop ; a party said nay ;

Les veske de Norwyce graunt partye nomayt ;  
Par quay<sup>1</sup> l'un et l'autre à Rome appellayt.

Appeal to  
the pope.

Quatorze moynes eluz sunt à la court alez,  
Trays cenz mars à despendre le ray les ad donez ;  
Les moynes al ray Jon out lealment jorez  
Le eveske de Norwyce ert erceveske sacrez.  
Kaunt venent à la court, lur message est moustrez.  
La pape par resoun<sup>2</sup> les eliz ad cassez,  
Et ad xiiij.<sup>3</sup> moynes de grace ad comaundez  
De rechef elyre un homme de bountez.  
Le evesk de Norwyce eluz out altre fez.  
La pape les quasse ;<sup>4</sup> les moynes sunt blamez,  
Suspendi lour poer ; els mercy out cryez,  
Lour serement fet al rays en court out countez.  
L'apostoylle les assolt, si les ad counsayllez  
Mestre Esteven elire de Langetoun nomez ;  
Esteven est ercevesk, la pape l'ad confermez.

Election of  
Stephen  
Langton.

Ke fet le ray Jon kaunt seet la verytez,  
Coment devaunt la pape le elyt est quassez,<sup>5</sup>  
Coment mestre Esteven est erceveske sacrez ?  
Les clers de la provynce ad taunt malmenez,  
Les moynes de Caunterbyre enchacez hors du sez,  
Al Brabauns<sup>6</sup> en garde l'encloystre out donez.<sup>7</sup>  
Quant Innocent la pape seet la veritez  
Le ray et ses fautours ad escomengez,  
Sa terre entredite, messe n'y ad<sup>8</sup> chauntez,  
Ne cors de homme mort en cymytere entrez.<sup>9</sup>  
Ke fet ly cytayn,<sup>10</sup> ke fet ly barnez,<sup>11</sup>  
Ky femme ou ky fyllye le rays ad violez ?<sup>12</sup>

The Inter-  
dict.

<sup>1</sup> *Par quay*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *par ses resons*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *E les quatorze*, B. *Et al xiiij.*,  
C.

<sup>4</sup> *le cassa*, B. C. *ly cassa*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *cassé*, B. D.

<sup>6</sup> *A Brabauns*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *ad doné*, B. *le cloistre ad doné*.  
C.

<sup>8</sup> *messe n'ad c.*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *enterré*, B. D.

<sup>10</sup> *ke fet citayn*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *le baroné*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *l'ad violé*, B.



A great part named the bishop of Norwich;  
Wherefore one and the other appealed to Rome.

Fourteen monks elected are gone to the court;  
The king has given them three hundred marks to  
spend;

The monks have sworn loyally to king John  
That the bishop of Norwich shall be consecrated arch-  
bishop.

When they come to the court, their message is declared,  
The pope for his reasons has annulled the elections,  
And has of his favour commanded the fourteen monks  
To elect again a man of goodness.

They have elected the bishop of Norwich a second  
time.

The pope annuls it; the monks are blamed,  
Their power suspended; they have cried mercy,  
And have told to the court their oath made to the king.  
The pope absolves them, and has advised them  
To elect master Stephen named of Langton;  
Stephen is archbishop; the pope has confirmed him.

What does king John when he knows the truth,  
How before the pope the election is annulled,  
How master Stephen is consecrated archbishop?  
He has so ill-treated the clergy of the province,  
Driven the monks of Canterbury out of the see,  
Given the monastery in keeping to the Brabanters,  
That when Innocent the pope knows the truth,  
He has excommunicated the king and his abettors,  
And interdicted the land; there is no mass chaunted  
there,

Nor body of dead man interred in cemetery.

What does the citizen, what do the barons,  
Whose wife or whose daughter the king has violated?

The civil war. Courent et destruent chastel et cytez,  
De leu en leu cum lever<sup>1</sup> ount le rays chascez.  
Les uns de barouns de ses parentez<sup>2</sup>  
Combatent pur le rays, par ount il est salvez.<sup>3</sup>

Marriage of the daughter of the king of Scotland. Taunt cum la guere durait en cel enterdit,  
William ray d'Escoce sa fyllle esposer fist  
Al counte de Boloyne, ke par amur<sup>4</sup> la prist.  
Kaunt des esposayles le ray Jon oyst,<sup>5</sup>  
S'en alait<sup>6</sup> à Berwyk et la vile prist;  
Un chastel i levait,<sup>7</sup> uncore demort le syst.<sup>8</sup>  
Amendes demaundait du ray pur le despit  
Ke<sup>9</sup> saunz congé de ly sa fyllle maryst.<sup>10</sup>  
Edenburge<sup>11</sup> et Rokesburge sur ço<sup>12</sup> demaunda quit,  
Sun fiz Alysaundre ke en hostage ly rendist.<sup>13</sup>  
Le<sup>14</sup> ray William d'Escoce trestut ly countredit;  
Par covenauz entre els la pes pus se prist.<sup>15</sup>  
Le ray Jon repayre par viles et cytez,  
Et sur ses enemys par tut fet mal assez.  
Ses enemys sur ly parmy tuz ses fez  
Les uns et les autres ount malement grevez.

Persecution of holy church. Tute sainte eglise, et les ordynez,  
Ercevesk, eveske, elers de dignitez,  
Hors de lur provandres par poer<sup>16</sup> sunt botez.  
Sovent à la pape la plainte fu moustrez;<sup>17</sup>  
[Sovent les meffesours sount escomengez.]<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *leverer le roy ount*, C.<sup>2</sup> *de sa parenté*, B. C. D.<sup>3</sup> Robert of Brunne translates these two lines:—“ Many men of his kynde sauh  
“ him so abaved,“ For him thei fault with mynde,  
“ and oft so was he saved.”<sup>4</sup> *par amurs*, C. D.<sup>5</sup> *Quant le rei Johan des espu-*  
*sailles oist*, B.<sup>6</sup> *S'en ala*, B.<sup>7</sup> *leva*, B.<sup>8</sup> *demurt le site*, B. C. D.<sup>9</sup> *Quaunt*, B.<sup>10</sup> *sa fidle preist marit*, B.<sup>11</sup> *Edeuesburge*, B.<sup>12</sup> *pur ceo*, C.<sup>13</sup> *q'en ostage rendit*, B.<sup>14</sup> *Le* omitted in D.<sup>15</sup> *la pees après se fist*, B. This line is omitted in C. *La pees après se prist*, D.<sup>16</sup> *provande e poer sount*, C. *provandes*, D.<sup>17</sup> *Souvent fu au pape la plainte mustrez*, B. *fuste moustrez*, C.<sup>18</sup> This line is omitted in A., but it has been restored from B. C. and D.

They invade and destroy castles and cities ;  
They have hunted the king from place to place like a  
hare.

Some of the barons of his kindred  
Combat for the king, through which he is saved.

While the war lasted in that interdict,  
William king of Scotland caused his daughter to  
espouse

The count of Boulogne, who took her through love.  
When king John heard of the marriage,  
He proceeded to Berwick, and took the town ;  
He raised a castle there, the site still remains.  
He demanded of the king amends for the offence,  
That he married his daughter without his leave.  
On that he demanded quit Edinburgh and Rokesburgh,  
And that he should deliver his son Alexander as  
hostage.

King William of Scotland refused him everything ;  
Subsequently peace was established between them by  
treaty.

King John returns through towns and cities,  
And everywhere commits great mischief on his enemies.  
His enemies upon him through all his fees  
Have all committed grievous outrages.  
All holy church, and the clergy,  
Archbishop, bishop, titled ecclesiastics,  
Are by force turned out of their prebends.  
Often the complaint was laid before the pope ;  
Often the misdoers are excommunicated.

Arrival of  
the two  
legates. La pape de lur errour avait graunt pytez,  
Pandolf et Duraunt ses legaz ad maunde<sup>1</sup>,  
[Qe sunt en Engleterre à Dovere arivez.  
Le rey e les barons à Loundres sunt alez ;  
Pandolf par<sup>2</sup> prechement la guere ad terminez.]<sup>3</sup>  
Assolz sunt les<sup>4</sup> barouns ; le ray Jon ad jorez  
De l'erceveske Esteven serrait-il vengez,  
De[s]<sup>5</sup> xiiij. moynes, quele part k'il sayent trouvez.<sup>6</sup>

Their  
success. Le legat Pandolf et sun compaynoun  
Fount venir l'erceveske, les moynes par noun ;  
En molz des jornez par graunt despotisoun<sup>7</sup>  
Ount prové ke le rays ad tort, et noun resoun.<sup>8</sup>  
Le legat ad taunt fet par sen et par resoun,<sup>9</sup>  
Ke la pees est fete de la contencioun,  
Et clerk chascun par say de sa possessioun.<sup>10</sup>  
Pandolf repaire à Rome, ne pas saunz<sup>11</sup> ryche doun.  
Le ray Jon demort, demaunde ad pardoun ;  
L'erceveske l'assolt en graunt<sup>12</sup> devocioun.

Family of  
king John. Deus fiz et deus fylles<sup>13</sup> le ray Jon avayt ;  
Henri fu le ayez,<sup>14</sup> ke après ly regnayt ;  
Rychard le punez, ke eluz estayt  
Ray de Alemayne, et la coroune rescayt.  
Isabel sa fillye, ke nul enfaunt portayt,  
L'emperour Frederyk pur veir l'esposayt ;<sup>15</sup>  
Al counte de Laycestre l'autre maryait.

<sup>1</sup> *ad menez*, B.<sup>2</sup> *Pandolf e prechement*, C.<sup>3</sup> These three lines are omitted in A., but they are found in B. C. and D., and are translated by Robert of Brunne. They are printed here from B.<sup>4</sup> *ount les b.*, C.<sup>5</sup> *E des*, B. *Del*, C.<sup>6</sup> *où qe soient t.*, B. *quel part saynt trovez*, C. *quele part qe suiient*, D.<sup>7</sup> *desputeisoun*, B. D.<sup>8</sup> *nul resoun*, B. C.<sup>9</sup> *sermoun*, B. C. D.<sup>10</sup> *E chescon clerke seisi de sa p.*, B. D. *saisie*, C. Robert of Brunne, in his English version, translates this line as follows :—“ And ilk a clerke sesed ageyn  
“ to haf his rent.”<sup>11</sup> *ne passe sanz*, B.<sup>12</sup> *ouf grant*, C.<sup>13</sup> *Deus fitz*, iiij. *feylles*, C.<sup>14</sup> *Henri son fitz ayez*, B.<sup>15</sup> *pur veir esposait*, D.

The pope had great compassion on their error,  
He has sent as his legates Pandulf and Durand,  
Who are arrived in England at Dover.  
The king and his barons are gone to London ;  
Pandulf by his preaching has put an end to the war.  
The barons are absolved ; king John has sworn  
That he will be revenged of archbishop Stephen,  
And of the fourteen monks, wherever they be found.

The legate Pandulf and his companion  
Cause the archbishop to come, and the monks by  
name ;  
In many days, by great discussion  
They have proved that the king is in the wrong and  
not in the right.  
The legate has effected so much by sense and by  
reason,  
That peace is made of the contention,  
And every clergyman is seised of his possession.  
Pandulf returns to Rome, not without rich gifts.  
King John remains, has asked for pardon ;  
The archbishop absolves him with great devotion.

King John had two sons and two daughters ;  
Henry was the eldest, who reigned after him ;  
Richard the youngest, who was elected  
King of Almaine, and received the crown.  
Isabel, his daughter, who bore no child,  
The emperor Frederic in truth espoused her ;  
The other married the earl of Leicester.

John's  
death.

Le ray Jon sa terre xvij. aunz guyait ;  
En le abbaye de Swinesheved<sup>1</sup> home l'empusonait ;  
Il gist à Wyncestre,<sup>2</sup> il mesmes le volait.

*Anno Domini millesimo cc. xvj.º.<sup>3</sup>*

Or est le ray Jon mort et sevely.

Corona-  
tion of  
Henry III.

L'erceveske Esteven ad coroné Henry ;  
Prodhome fu tuz jours, des povers avait mercy.  
Plus ama<sup>4</sup> saint eglise ke nul ray devaunt ly ;  
Clers ke ben chaunterent<sup>5</sup> tost sunt enrychy ;  
Eglises et provandres ne sunt pas esparny,<sup>6</sup>  
Ke clerk de la chapele n'ayt porcioun parmy.

His mar-  
riage.

Covent ke nostre rays par tensusait maryé ;  
Le counte de Provence sa fyllle l'ad doné,  
Helyanore ad noun, de gentil parenté,  
Plus bele creature de là ne fu trové.  
Ore est en Engleterre rayne coroné.  
Deus fiz et deus fyllles l'ad Deu presté ;<sup>7</sup>  
Sir Eduuard, sir<sup>8</sup> Edmoun, hair est le avaunt<sup>9</sup> no[mé].  
Sir Edmoun de Leycestre est counte<sup>10</sup> enheryté ;  
Le Mounfort le perdist kaunt fu desheryté.  
Ke nul des deus feyllles en taunt sayt oblyé,  
Al fiz le ray d'Escoce est Margrete maryé,  
[Et] Beatrice<sup>11</sup> de Brettayne al counte est esposé.

His work  
at West-  
minster.

Molt est ore le overayne bele à Westmouster<sup>12</sup>  
Ke le ray Henry fist [fere] de<sup>13</sup> sun aver.

<sup>1</sup> *Swynheved*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Wircestre*, D., which is correct.  
Robert of Brunne makes it West-  
minster :

“ At Westmynstere even is Jon  
“ laid solempnely ;”

and he says that he died at Haughe  
in Lincolnshire.

“ At Hauhe his lif he leved, so  
“ say men of that toun.”

<sup>3</sup> The rubric is given from B.

<sup>4</sup> *amait*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *qe chauntirent ben*, C. *ke chaun-  
terent bien sunt tost enrichy*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *provandes ne sunt esparny*, D.

<sup>7</sup> “ Tuo sonnes, tuo douhteres  
“ fre Jhesus has them lent,” Robert  
of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> *e sire*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *est avant*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *en counte*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *E Beatrice*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *Wemouster*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *fist fere de*, B. C. D.

King John ruled his land eighteen years;  
 They poisoned him in the abbey of Swineshead.  
 He lies at Winchester, he himself willed it.

*Anno Domini* 1216.

Now is king John dead and buried.  
 Archbishop Stephen has crowned Henry;  
 A good man he was always; he was kind to the  
     poor.  
 He loved holy church more than any king before  
     him;  
 Clergy who chanted well are soon enriched;  
 Churches and prebends are not overlooked,  
 That a clerk of the chapel has not his portion among  
     them.

It is right that our king in time be married;  
 The count of Provence has given him his daughter,  
 Eleanor was her name, of gentle kindred;  
 A fairer creature was not found beyond sea.  
 Now is she crowned queen in England.  
 God has lent her two sons and two daughters;  
 Sir Edward, sir Edmund, the first-named is heir.  
 Sir Edmund is made heir of the earldom of Leicester;  
 The Montfort lost it when he was disinherited.  
 That neither of the two daughters be at all forgotten,  
 Margaret is married to the king of Scotland,  
 And Beatrice is espoused to the count of Britany.

Very fair is now the work at Westminster  
 Which king Henry caused to be made with his own  
     money.

Deu ly presta grace sa terre gouverner  
 Quaraunte et vj.<sup>1</sup> aunz, saunz pople triboler.<sup>2</sup>  
 Après devenent<sup>3</sup> pussaunt cessaunt en poer.  
 The king's Soun fiz sir Eduuard ly va counsayller,<sup>4</sup>  
 advisers. Ma dame la rayne, et ly quens Richer,  
 Le counte de Warayne, sir Huge le beer,<sup>5</sup>  
 Sire William de Valence, Roger le Mortymer,<sup>6</sup>  
 Jon Maunsel le clerk, chuvalers<sup>7</sup> de outre mer,  
 Le ray de cels s'affye, les fet avauncer  
 Des terres et de rentes<sup>8</sup> de molt gentil quer.  
 Sir Eduuard le volt, et fet sun dever.  
 Les barouns Englays les volent<sup>9</sup> destourber,  
 Tenent parlement, ensemble vount treter  
 Coment pount la terre des alyens voider.  
 Al rays et sun counsayl ount maundé messenger  
 Ke l'estat del regne ly covent amender.<sup>10</sup>  
 Ly rays les respount, jour les fet doner  
 Parliament Tut drait à Oxenforde, et là<sup>11</sup> parlementer.  
 at Oxford.

*Anno Domini millesimo cc<sup>o</sup>. l<sup>o</sup>. viij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>12</sup>

[A] cel<sup>13</sup> parlement sopist la destaunce,<sup>14</sup>  
 Al ray et ses hayrs<sup>15</sup> en desheritaunce  
 Des gardes et relefs, des terres de<sup>16</sup> tenaunce,  
 Al countes<sup>17</sup> et barouns, chuvalers et sergaunce,  
 Ke tenent del ray,<sup>18</sup> partye par chevaunce,

<sup>1</sup> *Cinquant e sis*, B. "Sex and  
 " fifty zere," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *troubler*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *devint*, B. *devent pesaunt as-  
 taunt*, C. *devent pesaunt, cestaunt*,  
 D. "But sone afterward failed him  
 " powere," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>4</sup> *li bon c.*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *de Warenne, sire Huge l'Es-  
 penser*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Roger Mortimer*, B. *sire Roger  
 de Mortimer*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *chivaler*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *des rentes*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *le volent*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> This line is omitted in B.

<sup>11</sup> *Oxenforde à la p.*, C.

<sup>12</sup> This rubric is given from D.

<sup>13</sup> *A cel p.*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> Robert of Brunne translates,  
 "At this parlement rested that  
 " distaunce."

<sup>15</sup> *e à ces heyres*, C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *e de*, B. *de terres de t.*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *A countes*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *de rey*, C.



God lent him grace to govern the land  
 Forty-six years, without oppressing his people.  
 Afterwards he becomes oppressive, as his power failed.  
 His son sir Edward acts as his counsellor,  
 My lady the queen, and the earl Richard,  
 The earl of Warren, sir Hugh the noble,  
 Sir William de Valence, Roger de Mortimer,  
 John Maunsel the clerk, knights from beyond sea,  
 In these the king puts his trust, and causes them to  
     be advanced

With lands and rents with very generous heart.  
 Sir Edward wills it, and does his duty.  
 The English barons seek to restrain them;  
 They hold conference, go to consult together  
 How they can clear the land of aliens.  
 To the king and his council have they sent a mes-  
     senger  
 That he is required to amend the state of the  
     kingdom.

The king gives his consent, causes a day to be fixed  
 Straight at Oxford, and there to hold parliament.

*Anno Domini 1258.*

At this parliament the dispute is appeased,  
 To the disinheriting of the king and his heirs  
 Of wards and reliefs, of lands of tenancy,  
 To the earls and barons, knights and sergeants,  
 Who hold of the king, part by chevance,

Partye en chef des altres of l'aportenaunce.

The terms  
imposed  
upon the  
king.

[A] chascun seigneur<sup>1</sup> demort garde et chaunce,<sup>2</sup>  
Et le ray privé de tut l'appendaunce.  
Le rays ne entendist poynt cele descayvaunce ;  
Kant l'escryt est fet de la purveaunce,  
Le rays le graunte,<sup>3</sup> et mette sun sel en testmoynaunce.  
Countes et barouns l'afferment<sup>4</sup> par fyaunce,  
Et<sup>5</sup> ke nul estraunge en court ayt pussaunce,  
Ne ke le ray saunz els de terre nul avaunce  
Ne mette en bayllie,<sup>6</sup> saunz lur ordinaunce.  
Al ray et as ses<sup>7</sup> hayrs estrayt est la parlaunce.

His friends  
advise him  
to resist.

Les amy le rays, ke sentent la grevaunce,  
Ly dient,<sup>8</sup> "Sir, pur Deu, tu n'es pas enfaunce ;  
" Ad tay et ad tun saunk tu faz deshonuraunce  
" Kaun[t] tu es guyé par autry voyllaunce.  
" Assez as-tu amys en Engleterre et [en] Fraunce ;<sup>9</sup>  
" Reprenez tun dit,<sup>10</sup> et fa ta governaunce ;  
" Reteygne<sup>11</sup> ta seignurye, ne dotez la manaunce,  
" Tu seras ben assolz de la variaunce."

Le rays volt ben par là defere la concordaunce ;<sup>12</sup>  
Pur quay les barouns sunt en graunt dotaunce.<sup>13</sup>  
Escotez ore coment se fount quere chevaunce.<sup>14</sup>

Simon de  
Montfort  
called in  
by the  
barons.

Simoun de Mounfort fu cel heure<sup>15</sup> hors de terre,  
Par commune assent les barouns ly fount quere.  
Ly quens vynt,<sup>16</sup> cum cyl ke leger fust à trere<sup>17</sup>  
Encountre sun seigneur mayntenir sun affere ;<sup>18</sup>  
Tenir l'estatut en tens de pes et guere,

<sup>1</sup> *A chescon seigneur*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *e cheaunce*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *la graunte*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *la serment*, B. C.

<sup>5</sup> *Et* omitted in B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *en baylle*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *à ses*, B. D. *à ces*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *Li dit*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *e en Fraunce*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *Repernez condit*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Rengnez*, B. *Retenez*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *l'acordaunce*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *distaunce*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *quere chevissaunce*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *cel heure fu*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *vient*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *cum qe legger fust attrere*, C.

<sup>18</sup> *meinténir l'afere*, B. C. D.

Part in chief of the others with the appurtenance.  
To each lord remains ward and cheance,  
And the king deprived of all the appendance.  
The king did not understand that deception;  
When the charter of the provisions is made,  
The king grants it, and puts his seal in witness.  
Earls and barons confirm it with their faith,  
And that no foreigner have power in court,  
Nor that the king advance any one in lands without  
    them,  
Nor put in place of trust, without their ordinance.  
This arrangement is hard to the king and his heirs.  
The king's friends, who feel the grievance,  
Say to him, "Sire, for God's sake, thou art not a  
    " child ;  
" Thou dost dishonour to thee and to thy blood  
" When thou art guided by the will of another.  
" Thou hast friends enough in England and in France ;  
" Resume thy word, and do thy governance ;  
" Retain thy authority, fear not threats.  
" Thou shalt be entirely absolved of the breach of  
    " faith."  
The king is quite willing thus to break the agreement ;  
Wherefore the barons are in great fear.  
Hear now how they do to seek success.

Simon de Montfort was at that time out of the  
    land ;

By common assent the barons send for him.  
The earl came, as one who was easy to draw  
To maintain his interest against his lord ;  
To hold the statute in time of peace and war,

Saunz counsayl le rays,<sup>1</sup> le serement va fere ;<sup>2</sup>  
 [Dunt pus après vint contek e contrere.]<sup>3</sup>

Proceed-  
ings of the  
barons.

Tost s'en va le counte, ses fiz, et ses barouns ;  
 Les chastels le rays prenent en baundouns ;  
 Courent<sup>4</sup> sur les terres, ardent les mesouns,  
 Ke tenir ne volent les provisious.<sup>5</sup>  
 Le rays en cel contemple et ly quens Symouns  
 Se mettent en agarde de contenciouns ;  
 Se lyent par serment de dissensiouns  
 Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce,<sup>6</sup> ky par ses resouns<sup>7</sup>  
 Durra jugement saunz refusiouns.  
 Henry le rays i va par cels achesouns.

The Lon-  
doners  
insult the  
queen.

Le ray veent à Parys recayvere<sup>8</sup> jugement ;  
 La rayne après vers cele part ce atent.<sup>9</sup>  
 A sun issir de Loundres le[s] Loundrays verryment<sup>10</sup>  
 Le fesaynt plus despyt ke nul home attent.<sup>11</sup>  
 Kant le ray de Fraunce a dit<sup>12</sup> certainement  
 Coment la purveaunce est apertement  
 Desherytaunt le rays, ses hayrs ensement,  
 Desfet l'estatut,<sup>13</sup> le casse<sup>14</sup> nettement.  
 Ly quens Symon l'oyt<sup>15</sup> dire, fet maunder sa gent,<sup>16</sup>  
 La guere recomence, escotez ore<sup>17</sup> coment,  
 [La grande folie qe li quens emprent.]<sup>18</sup>

The earl's  
trick of the  
chariot.

Li quens fet fere à Loundres un char par vaidye,  
 Cum fust à sun oes,<sup>19</sup> pur sa maladie ;

<sup>1</sup> *conseiller le reis*, D.

<sup>2</sup> This line and the preceding are transposed in B. and D.

<sup>3</sup> This line is omitted in A., but is given here from B.

<sup>4</sup> *Curunt*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *promissious*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Philipe rei de France*, B., omitting *Al*.

<sup>7</sup> *qi par sa respouns*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *resceivere*, B. *receyver*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *se tent*, B. C. *tost après vers cele part se tent*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *A son issir de Loundres les Loundreis verryment*, B. C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *entent*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>12</sup> *ad veu*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Differe li estatut*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *le cassa*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *Symon oit dire*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *sagement*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *comence, ore escotez*, C.

<sup>18</sup> This line is found only in B. among the manuscripts, but it is translated by Robert of Brunne.

<sup>19</sup> *à son corps*, B. *à son eus*, C.

Without counsel of the king, he goes and makes the  
oath,  
Whereby afterwards came strife and dissension.

Soon proceeds the earl, his sons, and his barons ;  
They take the king's castles into their power ;  
Invade the lands, burn the houses,  
Of those who will not hold the Provisions.  
The king in this circumstance and the earl Simon  
Put themselves to arbitration on their disputes ;  
Bind themselves by oath on their dissensions  
To king Philip of France, who by his wisdom  
Shall give judgment not subject to refusal.  
Henry the king goes there for these causes.

The king comes to Paris to receive judgment ;  
The queen afterwards proceeds in that direction.  
At her departure from London the Londoners truly  
Offered her greater insult than any man expects.  
When the king of France has seen certainly  
How the Provision is openly  
A disheriting of the king, of his heirs likewise,  
He sets aside the statute, and annuls it entirely.  
Earl Simon hears of it, assembles his men,  
The war begins again, listen now how,  
The great folly which the earl undertakes.

The earl craftily causes a chariot to be made in  
London,  
As though it were for his use, on account of his  
illness ;

Battle of Lewes.

Lx. mil Loundrays sunt en la<sup>1</sup> compaynye ;  
 Devers Lewes s'en va of sa chualerye.  
 Le rays et sa mesné sunt en la priorye.  
 Ly quens Symoun al chauns sa baner desplye ;  
 [Le dragon est levé, le rei le quens defie.]<sup>2</sup>  
 Sir Eduuard, fiz<sup>3</sup> le rays, les Loundrays escrye,<sup>4</sup>  
 Descomfit les ad, et la chare<sup>5</sup> saisye,  
 Quide trouver le counte, le counte n'y est mye.  
 Ke fet sir Eduuard ? repaire à sa partye,  
 Le char ly fist pur veir perdre la<sup>6</sup> mestrye.

*Anno Domini millesimo CC. L. XIIIJ. fuit prælium apud  
 Leaus inter regem et barones, 1J<sup>o</sup>. Idus Maii.*<sup>7</sup>

Discom-  
 fiture of  
 the king's  
 party.

Taunt cum<sup>8</sup> sire Eduuard entur le char estait,  
 Symon de Mounfort descomfit avayt  
 La partye le rays, le dragoun avalait ;  
 Le ray de Alemaynne prisoun<sup>9</sup> demorayt ;  
 Jon Comyn d'Escoce en autel esplayt ;  
 Le counte de Warayne<sup>10</sup> de ilokes eschapyt,  
 Sir Huge le Bygot la mer of ly passayt.  
 Maynte bone dame sun baroun là lessayt ;  
 Tauntz furent là tuez, ke nul home poayt<sup>11</sup>  
 Noumbrer les morz, fors cely ke tut vayt.  
 Sire Eduuard, fiz le rays, de gré se moustrayt  
 Hostage pur sun pere, [le count ly rescait ;  
 Ausint pur sun pere] sun nefu fesayt,<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *sa*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. C. and D., and is translated by Robert of Brunne.

<sup>3</sup> *le fitz*, C.

<sup>4</sup> "Edward was hardie, the Londres gan he aserie," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *e le char*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *sa mestrye*, D.

<sup>7</sup> This rubric is taken from B.

<sup>8</sup> *Kant com*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *en prison*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *de Warenne*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *qe nul ne poeit*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *son pere, le counte le rescait*, B. C. D. Instead of these two lines, C. and D. give,—

*Hostage pur son pere, le count ly rescait,*<sup>1</sup>

*Ausint pur son pere son newen fesait,*

*Henry de Almayne, hostage se donait.*

Sixty thousand Londoners are in his company ;  
 Towards Lewes he goes with his knights.  
 The king and his household are in the Priory.  
 Earl Simon unfolds his banner in the fields ;  
 The dragon is raised, the king defies the earl.  
 Sir Edward, the king's son, gets sight of the Lon-  
 doners,  
 Has discomfited them, and seized the chariot,  
 Expects to find the earl, the earl is not there.  
 What does sir Edward? he returns to his party,  
 The chariot caused him in truth to lose the mastery.

*Anno Domini 1264 was the battle at Lewes between  
 the king and the barons, on the ii Ides of May.*

While sir Edward was occupied with the chariot,  
 Simon de Montfort had discomfited  
 The king's party, had thrown down the dragon ;  
 The king of Almaine remained prisoner ;  
 John Comyn of Scotland was in the same plight ;  
 The earl of Warenne escaped thence,  
 Sir Hugh Bigot passed the sea with him.  
 Many a good lady lost her lord there ;  
 So many were slain there, that no man could  
 Count the dead, except him who is all-seeing.  
 Sir Edward, the king's son, willingly gave himself  
 Hostage for his father, the earl accepted him ;  
 So his nephew did for his father,

Henry de Alemayne, hostage se donayt.

Escape of  
prince  
Edward.

Sir Eduuard un an en prisoun sojornayt.

Le counte parmy la terre le ray Henry menayt;

Ses chastels et ses viles à wardayns assignait.

Sire Eduuard de prisoun sagement alayt,

En soccour et ayde les marchyz assemblayt.

Les fiz le quens Symon trop hautayn estaynt,

Et pur lur partye graunt folye fesaynt,

Gilbert de  
Clare de-  
serts the  
barons.

Kaunt Gilbert de Clare si tost corousçaynt;

Sir Eduuard et ly se entrefyauncaynt,<sup>1</sup>

Ke le counte<sup>2</sup> Symon et ses fis prendrayn[t],

Et saunz raunçoun prendre à mort les liveraynt.<sup>3</sup>

Taunt cum les reals<sup>4</sup> poer assemblaynt,

Fu Norhaunton pris, les barouns là lessaynt

Symon fiz le counte, et gens ke ly suaynt;

Cum soz et chaitifs à Kenelworth alaynt,

Et en lur rybaldye ilokes demoraynt

Taunt cum sire<sup>5</sup> Eduuard Evesham ensçaynt.<sup>6</sup>

*Anno proximo sequenti, nonas Augusti, fuit bellum  
apud Evesham inter regem et barones.<sup>7</sup>*

The battle  
of Eves-  
ham.

Symon de Monfort, of la baronye,

Le ray maugré son fu en sa compaynye,<sup>8</sup>

Le counte est mounté, sa baner desplye;

Sir Eduuard ly vent encountre of sa chuvalrye,

Et Gilbert de Clare de loynz par vaydye.

Kaunt Symon ly vayt, les barouns escrye,

“ Deus ayt les almes ! perduz est la vye ! ”

<sup>1</sup> *s'entrefyaunceient*, B. *entre-  
fiancaint*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *Et le quens*, B. *Ke le quens*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *les mettraint*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *les reis*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *sire* omitted in B.

<sup>6</sup> Robert of Brunne translates  
this,—

“ Suilk ribaudie thei led, thei gaf  
“ no tale of wham,

“ To whils sir Edward had seisd  
“ alle Evesham.”

<sup>7</sup> This rubric is given from B.; it  
is omitted in the other MSS.

<sup>8</sup> *maugré le soen fut en la c.*, B.  
*en la compaignye*, C.



Henry of Almaine he gave himself hostage.  
Sir Edward remained in prison a year.  
The earl carried king Henry through the land ;  
Assigned his castles and his towns to wardens.  
Sir Edward skilfully escaped from prison.  
He assembled the Marchers for succour and aid

The sons of sir Simon were too overbearing,  
And did great folly for their party,  
When they so soon affronted Gilbert de Clare ;  
Sir Edward and he pledged their faith mutually,  
That they would take earl Simon and his sons,  
And, without accepting ransom, put them to death.  
While the royalists were assembling their forces,  
Northampton was taken, the barons left there  
Simon the earl's son, and men who followed him ;  
Like fools and wretches they went to Kenilworth,  
And dwelt there in their ribaldry  
While sir Edward was surrounding Evesham.

*In the year next following, on the nones of August,  
was the battle at Evesham between the king  
and the barons.*

Simon de Montfort, with the barons,  
The king, spite of his will, was in his company,  
The count is mounted, displays his banner ;  
Sir Edward comes against him with his chivalry,  
And Gilbert de Clare at a distance, craftily.  
When Simon sees him, he cries to the barons  
“ God have our souls ! our life is lost ! ”

Sire Eduuard, cum bon fiz, delivera par espeye  
 Sun pere de prisoun, k'il ne demora mye.  
 Dure fu la bataille, et graunt fu la folye;  
 Ke primes le comença, Jhesu ly maldye!

Persons of  
 note slain  
 in the  
 battle.

La bataylle est ferue, escotez ore coment  
 Le Mounfort est tuez, sun fiz ensement,  
 Ses membres sunt tranchez, envayez pur present;  
 Sir Hüge le Despenser i prist<sup>1</sup> martyrement;  
 Sire Rauf Basset i fist sun fynement;  
 Sire Pers de Mounfort tuez de cele gent;  
 Et sire Guy de Ballyol, vigrous en jovent,  
 Il soul fu plus playnt ke les autres cent.  
 Ore ad le ray Henry terre et tenement,  
 Et rays est de sa terre, et de kaunt ke apent;<sup>2</sup>

Parliament  
 of North-  
 ampton.

Of la victore s'en va à tenir parlement  
 Tot drait à Norhauntoun, sir Eduuar[d] assent.<sup>3</sup>

En cel parlement estait exillez  
 La countasse de Laicestre, ses fiz sunt forjorez;<sup>4</sup>  
 Countes et barouns sunt desherytez,  
 Les uns sunt al boys, les uns enprisonez,  
 Ke encountre le rays armes ount portez.  
 Almeryk<sup>5</sup> de Mounfort ilokes fu privez  
 De la tresorye, dount fust estallez  
 En l'eglyse Saint Pere de Everwyk nomez,  
 Al fiz le Mortymer le ray l'ad donez.

Arrival of  
 the legate.

Un legat Octobone cel heure est arveyez,  
 Pur fere la pes estable la pape l'ad maundez.  
 Cel heure of la reyne sunt tuz repairez  
 Ke par la Purveaunce furent enchacez,  
 Forspris Jon Maunsel, ke<sup>6</sup> à Deus est comaundez.

<sup>1</sup> *il prist*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *e quanque à li apent*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *s'assent*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *ses fitz forsjurez*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Emerike*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *ke* omitted in B.

Sir Edward, like a good son, delivered by the sword  
His father from prison, that he remained no longer.  
Hard was the battle, and great was the folly ;  
Who first began it, may Jesus curse him.

The battle is fought, listen now how  
The Montford is slain, his son likewise,  
His members are cut off, and sent for a present ;  
Sir Hugh le Despenser there takes martyrdom ;  
Sir Ralph Basset there makes his end ;  
Sir Pierre de Montfort is slain of that people ;  
And sir Guy de Balliol, vigorous in youth,  
He alone was more lamented than a hundred of the  
others.

Now has king Henry land and lordship,  
And is king of his land, and of all that belongs to  
it ;  
He goes off with victory to hold a parliament  
Straight to Northampton, sir Edward assents.

In that parliament was exiled  
The countess of Leicester, her sons have abjured ;  
Earls and barons are disinherited,  
Some are to the wood, some imprisoned,  
Who have borne arms against the king.  
Almeric de Montfort was there deprived  
Of the treasury, with which he was invested  
In the church called of St. Peter of York,  
The king has given it to the son of the Mortimer.  
At that time a legate, Ottoboni, is arrived,  
The pope has sent him to make a stable peace.  
At that time with the queen are all returned  
Who were driven away by the Provisions,  
Except John Maunsel, who is sent to God.

*Anno Domini millesimo CC<sup>o</sup>.LXVJ<sup>o</sup>., post captionem de Kenilworthe, convenerunt omnes exhæredati adversus regem Henricum.<sup>1</sup>*

Movements  
of the dis-  
inherited.

Les desheritez sunt en graunt dolour,  
Se atyrent ensemble,<sup>2</sup> purchacent soccour.  
Robert le Ferers, le avaunt nomé<sup>3</sup> de lour,  
Tua les gens par nout, sur ço fu robbour  
Sur quaunz<sup>4</sup> ke vers le rays avaynt nul amour.  
A Cestrefeld s'assemblent,<sup>5</sup> à lour deshonor;  
Le[s] reals les espyent, genz de graunt valor,<sup>6</sup>  
La vile ount conquise, de barouns<sup>7</sup> par error  
Sunt les uns tuez,<sup>8</sup> les uns par vigour  
Sunt de ilokes alez, kaun[t] ount fet<sup>9</sup> lur honor.

Defeat at  
Chester-  
field.

Ço fust ly Deyville ke passa de l'estour.<sup>10</sup>  
Al matyn à la chace alaynt ly plusur,  
Robert de Ferers, Baldewyn le Vavasour,  
Ke de Cestrefeld cel heure fu seigneur,  
Cels et lour manage<sup>11</sup> demorent en langour.  
Robert de Wollertoun, vaillaunt chivauchour,  
Fu pris et pendu sur Chene<sup>12</sup> saunz retour;  
Allas! k'il tynt encountre sun seigneur!<sup>13</sup>  
Jon Deyville passa de ilokes saun sojour.

Escape of  
Sir John  
Deyville.

Le Deiville eschapa, hardys et vaillaunt,  
En l'ylle de Haxolme,<sup>14</sup> où il fust avaunt;  
Cum en tapysouns ilokes demort, robbaunt  
Kaunz ke par là passent, burgés et<sup>15</sup> marchaunt;  
Kant doute survenue, si prent escheu et haunt,<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This rubric is taken from B.

<sup>2</sup> *assemblé*, B. *se tirent ensemble*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Robert de Ferrers avaunt n.*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Sur que quant*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *ensembent*, B. *assemblent*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *espient*, *grant de valor*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *des barouns*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Les uns sont tuez*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *quant fet unt lour honour*, B. D.

<sup>10</sup> *cel estour*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *menage*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *sur Kene*, D., and Robert of Brunne translates it, "on Kene hanged he was."

<sup>13</sup> This line is omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *Axynghom*, B. *Axyngholme*, C. *Axinholm*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *burgeis ou*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *il prent escu en haunt*, B. *il prent escu et haunt*, D.

*Anno Domini 1266, after the capture of Kenilworth,  
all the disinherited assembled against king Henry.*

The disinherited are in great grief,  
They draw together, and seek succour.  
Robert de Fereres, the first named of theirs,  
Slew people by night, thereupon he was a robber  
Upon all who had any love to the king.  
They met at Chesterfield to their dishonour ;  
The royalists watch them, people of great valour,  
They have conquered the town, of the barons in  
the action  
Some are slain, some by strength  
Are gone from thence, when they have done their  
best.

It was the Deyville who passed from the battle.  
In the morning many of them went to the chase,  
Robert de Fereres, Baldwin the Vavasor,  
Who was at that time lord of Chesterfield,  
These and their party remained in weakness.  
Robert de Wollerton, a valiant rider,  
Was taken and hanged on Chene without help ;  
Alas ! that he held against his lord.  
John Deyville passed thence without remaining.

The Deyville escaped, bold and valiant,  
Into the isle of Axholm, where he was before ;  
As he remains there in hiding, robbing  
All who pass that way, burghers and merchants ;  
When fear arrives, then he takes shield and spear,

S'en va devers le Suy<sup>1</sup> compaynye queraunt.  
 Le xij. jour<sup>2</sup> de Aprile lur compaynye est<sup>3</sup> taunt,  
 Capture of Ke pris ount Nicole, les Jues<sup>4</sup> maintenaunt  
 Lincoln. Tenent<sup>5</sup> et destruent, les huches<sup>6</sup> debrysaunt;  
 Chartres et escryz et kaunt ke est nusaunt  
 A Crestyen<sup>7</sup> ount pris, les vount defolaunt  
 Parmy les rueles, et femme et enfaunt  
 Ount mys à l'espeye cent et cessaunt.  
 Retaken by Kaunt sire Eduuard oyt dire<sup>8</sup> ke Nicole fu prise,  
 prince As chivas covers<sup>9</sup> ad maundé ses amys.  
 Edward. A Nicole se haste, kaunt vent en pays  
 La cyté ad saisy, hors sunt les enemys;  
 Vers l'ylle de Hely tornés ount le vis;<sup>10</sup>  
 Sire Hüge Pechez i trovent, ilokes sunt remys.  
 Sir Eduuard vers le suth sun chemyn ad repris  
 Si ad le chastel de Kenelworth assys.  
 Siege of De la feste saint Jon en la my estez  
 Kenil- Jekes la feste saint Thomas en iver countez,  
 worth. Ount les desheritez le chastel gardez  
 Encountre sire Eduuard, le ray, et ses barnez.<sup>11</sup>  
 Le legat Octobone i vynt cum fu priez,  
 Sir Henry de Hastyngs le chastel rend de grez  
 Salve vie et membre, ses bens<sup>12</sup> dedenz trouvez.  
 Le legat par<sup>13</sup> le rays ad pronunciez  
 Une sentence dure pur les desherytez;  
 Les hairs que survivent<sup>14</sup> uncore en sunt chargez.  
 Le legat s'en va parmy les countrez,  
 A counter of les clercs et of les ordynez,<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *le sieu*, B. *le seu*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Le duxim jour*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *lour poer est*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Juues*, B. *Jues*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Tuent*, B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *les hutthes*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Al Cristiens*, C. *Al Cristien*,  
D.

<sup>8</sup> *l'oit dire*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *A chevals coverez*, C. *A chivals*

*covertz*, D. "With hilled hors of  
'pris," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *les vis*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *e son barnez*, B. D.

<sup>12</sup> *e bens*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *pur*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *qe survenent*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *A coyter od les lais, e od clerks,*  
*e od les ordeinez*, B. *A counter oue*  
*les clerks, oue les ordinez*, D.

Proceeds towards the south seeking company.  
 The twelfth day of April, their company is so great  
 That they have taken Lincoln, the Jews now  
 They take and destroy, breaking open the coffers ;  
 Charters and deeds and whatever is injurious  
 To the Christians they have taken, treading them  
     under foot  
 Among the lanes, and woman and child  
 They have put to the sword a hundred and sixty.

When sir Edward heard tell that Lincoln was taken,  
 He has sent for his friends on covered horses.  
 He hastens to Lincoln, when he comes into the country  
 He has seized the city, the enemies are out of it ;  
 They have turned their face towards the isle of Ely ;  
 They find there sir Hugh Pecché, they have resumed  
     their place there.

Sir Edward towards the south has retraced his way,  
 And he has laid siege to the castle of Kenilworth.

From the feast of St. John at midsummer  
 Reckoned to the feast of St. Thomas in winter  
 The disinherited have held the castle  
 Against sir Edward, the king, and his barons ;  
 The legate Ottoboni comes there as he was asked,  
 Sir Henry de Hastings surrenders the castle voluntarily,  
 With safety of life and members, and his goods found  
     inside.

The legate on the part of the king has pronounced  
 A hard sentence for the disinherited ;  
 The heirs who survive are still burthened with it.  
 The legate proceeds through the country,  
 To converse with the clerks and with the clergy,

Edward's expedition against the isle of Ely. Sir Eduuard vers Ely of bone gent assez.  
 L'ylle de tute part ad molt ben<sup>1</sup> espyez ;  
 Les barouns dedenz defendent les entrez.  
 Demy an après les barouns ount maundez  
 A sir Eduuard, et<sup>2</sup> si li ount moustrez  
 Ke le ylle ly<sup>3</sup> volent rendre, salve lour herytez,  
 Chastels, vye, et membre, et ly ount priez  
 Ke aider les voylle, et il les ad grauntez,  
 Et par taunt al ray est-il repairez.  
 Tut drait en cel contempele est contek levez

Gilbert de Clare quarrels with the king. Entre Gilbert de Clare et le ray senez,  
 Tesmoynes sire Eduuard, la cause fu privez.  
 Les barons hors de l'ylle à Loundres sunt alez,  
 Of Gilbert de Clare sunt-els demorez.  
 Encountre le rays e sun fiz aynez  
 Ount par iij. mays tenuz les cytez ;<sup>4</sup>  
 En forme après taillez sunt-els acordez,  
 Chascun en sun pays en pes est<sup>5</sup> repairez.  
 Sire Eduuard, fiz le rays, ne lest pur parentez,  
 S'en va devers le North, molt est redotez,

Edward's proceedings in the North. Alnewyk ad pris, du chastel ad donez  
 La garde à un de soens, le seygnur ad menez  
 A Loundres à sun pere, Henry ray clamez.  
 Sir Eduuard al rays ad mercy cryez ;  
 Le rays al Vescy ad tut pardonez,  
 Le duk de<sup>6</sup> Kenelworth forpris et salvez,  
 Il avait par raunçoun ses terres et ses fez.  
 Si tost cum pur tut la pees fu cryé,  
 Al legat Octobon la pape ad maundé  
 Ke parmy Engleterre par ly sait preché,

<sup>1</sup> *ad bien*, B. C. D.<sup>2</sup> *et* omitted in B. C. D.<sup>3</sup> *ly* omitted in B. C. D.<sup>4</sup> *le citez*, B.<sup>5</sup> *en pees sont*, C.<sup>6</sup> *Li sire de*, B. *Le dit de*, C. D.Robert of Brunne translates, —  
 "The lord of Kilyngworth als  
 "that tyme sped wele;" which is  
 a mistaken version of the reading  
 of B. The reading of C. and D. is  
 no doubt the correct one.



Sir Edward towards Ely with good men enough.  
The island on all sides he has very well examined;  
The barons within defend the entrances.  
Half a year afterwards the barons have sent  
To sir Edward, and have shown to him  
That they are willing to surrender to him the island,  
    saved their inheritances,  
Castles, life, and members, and they have prayed him  
That he will assist them, and he has granted it them,  
And thereupon he is returned to the king.  
Just at this conjuncture strife is arisen  
Between Gilbert de Clare and the wise king,  
Sir Edward is witness, the cause was private.  
The barons are gone out of the isle to London,  
They are remained with Gilbert de Clare.  
Against the king and his eldest son  
They have held the city during three months;  
In form afterwards drawn up they are accorded;  
Each is returned to his country in peace.  
Sir Edward, the king's son, leaves not for kindred,  
He proceeds towards the north, is much feared;  
He has taken Alnwick, of the castle has given  
The custody to one of his, has carried its lord  
To London to his father, Henry king proclaimed.  
Sir Edward has prayed the king for mercy;  
The king has pardoned everything to the Vesci,  
The dictum of Kenilworth excepted and saved,  
He had, through ransom, his lands and fees.

As soon as peace was proclaimed everywhere,  
The pope has sent to the legate Ottoboni  
That through England by him be preached

Progress of  
the Sara-  
cens. Coment ly Sarazyns en despit de Dé  
Ount la Terre Sainte destrute et mys suz pé.  
Al legat de Fraunce ausint est<sup>1</sup> comaundé ;  
Le ray Lawys i est des primers<sup>2</sup> croysé.  
Le ray Henry de ça de bone volunté  
Prist la croyz cum cyl ke fu de graunt pyté.  
Sir Eduuard la prist, chivaler plus prisé<sup>3</sup>  
Ke nul Krystyen acounter<sup>4</sup> en bounté ;  
Il pur sun pere et ly emprist cel alé.<sup>5</sup>

*Anno gratie M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. septuagesimo.*

Crusade of  
St. Louis. An<sup>6</sup> quarreme après, le ray Lawys alait  
Devers la Terre Saynte of molt graunt esplait;  
Countes, duks, barouns, chivalers i menait,  
Cum en tel mester à tel prince appendait.<sup>7</sup>  
Kaunt vynt à la mer, eure bon<sup>8</sup> avait ;  
Sur le ray de Tunes<sup>9</sup> en sa terre aryvait,<sup>10</sup>  
A conquere et destrure trop ben començait ;  
Moit fu graunt damage ke vivre<sup>11</sup> ne poait ;  
Mort ly prist, allas ! sa vye terminait.  
Edward  
proceeds to  
the east. Sir Eduuard, fiz le rays de Engleterre, purvait<sup>12</sup>  
Ke à l'Aust<sup>13</sup> après suaunt sun chemyn prent laundrait,  
A Rome of le apostoylle en alaunt parlait,  
Et pus en Cecille cel yver sojornait.  
Si tost cum de l'esté<sup>14</sup> bel tens approchait,  
En mer se myst vers Tunes, la terre kaunt il<sup>15</sup> entrait  
Death of  
St. Louis. Le riche ray de Fraunce Lawys mort trovait.  
De Tunes jekes en Akre sir Eduuard passait ;

<sup>1</sup> *auxi est*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *de primer*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *preisé*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *acountez*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *En*, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *orre*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *de Temes*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *sur le rey de Tunes, de conquere comencayt*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *qe vener*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *prenait*, A. B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Qe al Augst*, B. *Qe al Aust suant après*, C. *Ke al Aust après*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *d'estée*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *il*, omitted in B. D.

How the Saracens in contempt of God  
Have ravaged and placed under subjection the Holy  
Land.

The legate of France has similar commands ;  
King Louis has there taken the cross among the first.  
King Henry on this side the sea with good will  
Took the cross as he who was of great piety.  
Sir Edward took it, a knight more prized  
Than any Christian accounted in goodness ;  
He undertook this expedition for his father and him-  
self.

*Anno Domini 1270.*

In the fourth year after, king Louis went  
Towards the Holy Land with very great equipment ;  
Counts, dukes, barons, and knights he took thither,  
As became such a prince in such a business.

When he came to the sea he had good weather ;  
He arrived against the king of Tunis in his land,  
Began very well to conquer and ravage ;  
Great was the misfortune that he could not live ;  
Death took him, alas ! his life he ended.

Sir Edward, son of the king of England, provides  
That in the August following after his way he takes  
thither,

At Rome, on his way, he spoke with the pope,  
And then remained that winter in Sicily.

As soon as the fair weather of summer approached,  
He put to sea towards Tunis, the land when he entered  
He found the rich king of France, Louis, dead.  
Sir Edward passed from Tunis to Acre ;

Edward  
arrives at  
Acre.

Molz lez<sup>1</sup> de sa venue ly Kristiens estait ;  
Le pople de Fresouns<sup>2</sup> à ly se lyayt.<sup>3</sup>  
Le nombre<sup>4</sup> de gens as armes fust, cum homme disait,  
Deus c. mil p[ar] ayme<sup>5</sup> de ly ke les noumbrayt.  
La terre fu lur waygne par poer saunz descait,  
Ne fust la meschaunce ke els encombrayt.<sup>6</sup>

Molt fu affraé la<sup>7</sup> paenerye

Ke Kristyens avaynt si graunt chuvalerye ;  
Sir Eduuard plus dotait ke nul homme de vye.<sup>8</sup>  
Pur quai de nout et jour<sup>9</sup> le soldan estudye  
Coment sir Eduuard put tuer par espeye.<sup>10</sup>  
Tuz [jours] ad<sup>11</sup> Sarazyns des enfauns norye  
En cel Haute Assyse en joye, en<sup>12</sup> melodye ;  
Ben quident ke la joye n'ert<sup>13</sup> jammès fynye.  
Un de cel escole le soldan prent, et prie  
K'il aylle à sir Eduuard, et par ly le dye,  
" Sir, le soldan te salue cum amye,<sup>14</sup>

The sol-  
dan plans  
his mur-  
der.

<sup>1</sup> lez, omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *Li poeple de Frison*, B. *Le pople de France*, C. Robert of Brunne translates it,—

"Grete folk of Frisland, that to  
"Acres were comen,  
"Tille him thei were willand, for  
"lord thei alle him nomen."

<sup>3</sup> *se alyait*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ce noumbre*, C. *Le noumbres des gentz*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *par ayme*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne translates,—

"Of men of armes bold the  
"numbre thei ame,  
"A thousand and tuo hundreth  
"told of Cristen men bi name."

<sup>6</sup> *qe lour encombreit*, B. *qe les encombrait*, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *fust affraé tut la*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *dotaint qe nul homme en vie*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *de jour e nuyt*, B. *Par quay de nocte*.

<sup>10</sup> "On what manere he myght  
"Edward slo thorgh spie," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>11</sup> *Touz jours ad*, B. C. D. The language is here somewhat involved and difficult in the original, but is translated by Robert of Brunne as follows:

"Ther es a stede of wyne, thei  
"calle it Haut Assise,  
"Men norise childre therinne  
"on merveilous wise,  
"Ever in joy and blisse, in alle  
"that thei may do,  
"Thei wene it salle never misse,  
"ne other dede come to,  
"Thei faire right als dos foles,  
"thei do as men tham say,  
"The childir of tho scoles thei  
"think to lyve ay."

<sup>12</sup> *e en*, B. *e melodye*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *joye ert*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *te salut, com son amye*, D.

Very glad was the Christian of his arrival.  
The people of the Frisons attached themselves to him.  
The number of people in arms was, as man said,  
Two hundred thousand, by reckoning of him who  
    numbered them.  
The land would have been their gain by power with-  
    out fail,  
But for the misfortune which embarrassed them.

    Much was the pagan people frightened  
That the Christians had so numerous a chivalry :  
They feared sir Edward more than any man alive.  
Wherefore the soldan studies night and day  
How he may kill sir Edward by treason.  
Always has the Saracen children bred up  
In the High Assize in joy and in melody ;  
They believe entirely that that joy will never be  
    ended.

The soldan takes one of that school, and prays him  
That he go to sir Edward, and on his part say to him,  
“ Sir, the soldan salutes thee as a friend,

“ Soul à soul en chaumbre saunz altre compaynye  
 “ Te moustray privetez;” sir Eduard l’ottrie  
 Si tost cum il vent, tresun ne quidait mye.

The assassin wounds the prince, who slays him.

Or est li Sarazyn à sir Eduuard venuz,  
 En molz ryche dras d’or est-il vestuz;  
 Cotels envenimez aportait desuz,  
 Cum apris estait dit ad ses saluz.  
 Privément en chaumbre sir Eduuard l’ad rescuz.  
 Le Sarazyn quidait repairer saunz ennuz<sup>1</sup>  
 En cel Halte Assise saunz fyn à les deduz;  
 Sir Eduuard ad<sup>2</sup> naffré, ses coups sunt conuz,  
 Chascun est mortel; sir Eduuard, fort et pruz,  
 Le traitur ad tuez, en mayn l’ad<sup>3</sup> vencuz.

*Ici le rei Edward occist le Sarazin de un tresel qe  
 vint à li en message par treson del soudan.<sup>4</sup>*

Prince Edward escapes.

Des playes sir Eduuard maynt homme est dolent;<sup>5</sup>  
 Sun cyrogen<sup>6</sup> les garde, ly dist surement,  
 Si salver ly voylle, reposer ly covent.<sup>7</sup>  
 Molt fu graunt meschaunce,<sup>8</sup> graunt encombrement,  
 En la Terre Sainte, à Kristyene gent.

Deaths of remarkable people.

L’apostoylle sur ço<sup>9</sup> morust verrayment,  
 Et le patriark, le legat ensement.  
 Le ray de Navverne, ke promist surement  
 Aider<sup>10</sup> à sir Eduuard, ad fet sun fynement,  
 Cum vynt en Cecille; je cray certaynement<sup>11</sup>  
 Ke Deu prist vengauce en cel destourbement.

<sup>1</sup> *esmuz*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *ad il n.*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *l’ad tué en meins l’ad*, B. *mayn ly vencuz*, C. *Le traytour ad tué, en meyn ly ad vencuz*, D.

<sup>4</sup> This rubric is given from B. It reads like the title to an illumination in a MS.

<sup>5</sup> *fu dolent*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *surrigien*, B. *sirogen*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Si sauver sei se voille, reposer covent*, B. *Si salver se voille*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *Mult fu cele meschaunce*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Le pape sur cel la*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Aide à sire E*, B. C.

<sup>11</sup> *jeo croy verrayment*, C.

“ Alone in a room without other company  
“ I will show thee secrets ;” sir Edward grants it  
As soon as he comes, he did not expect treason.

Now is the Saracen come to sir Edward,  
In very rich cloths of gold is he clad ;  
Beneath he bore poisoned knives,  
As he was instructed, he has said his salutation.  
Secretly in a room sir Edward has received him.  
The Saracen expected to return without injury  
Into that High Assize without end to its pleasures ;  
He has wounded sir Edward ; his blows are known ;  
Each is mortal ; sir Edward, strong and prudent,  
Has slain the traitor, has vanquished him by the hand.

*Here king Edward slays with a trestle the Saracen  
who came to him on a message in treason from  
the soldan.*

Of Sir Edward's wounds many a man is in grief ;  
His surgeon examines them, tells him certainly,  
If he wishes him to save him, rest is necessary for  
him.

It was a very great misfortune, great injury,  
To Christian people in the Holy Land.  
The pope truly at that moment died,  
And the patriarch, the legate likewise.  
The king of Navarre, who promised certainly  
To aid sir Edward, has made his end,  
When he came into Sicily ; I believe certainly  
That God took vengeance in this trouble.

Sir Eduuard par ses playes est en graunt torment.  
 Le ray Henri, sun pere, ad fet sun testament  
 Après le saint Martyn, kaunt maladye ly prent ;  
 L. et vj. aunz fu rays enterement.  
 Il gist à Westmouster<sup>1</sup> entumbez richement ;  
 Sachez ke Deu pur ly overe<sup>2</sup> apertement.  
 Sun fiz sir Eduuard prist par sun assent  
 La fillye le ray d'Espayne en femme<sup>3</sup> en sa jovent,  
 Elyanore par noun, dame bele et gent ;  
 En Akre de une fillye avait enfaument,  
 Ke dame Jone ad à noun, plus bele de altre cent.

---

<sup>1</sup> à *Weymouster*, B. *Wemouster*,  
 D.  
<sup>2</sup> *overe pur ly*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *au rei d'Espaigne à femme*, B.  
*La feille al rey de Yspanye à femme*,  
 C. D.



Sir Edward, through his wounds, is in great suffering.  
King Henry, his father, has made his will  
After Martinmass, when sickness falls on him.  
Fifty-six years entire was he king.  
He lies at Westminster in rich tomb :  
Know that God works openly for him.  
His son Sir Edward took by his assent  
The daughter of the king of Spain to wife in his  
youth,  
By name Eleanor, a lady fair and elegant.  
At Acre she was delivered of a daughter,  
Who was named the lady Joan, the fairest of a hun-  
dred others.

The Preface to the history of the reign of Edward I.

Ky volt oyr des rais,<sup>1</sup> coment chescun vesquit  
 En le ylle ke<sup>2</sup> Brutus Brettayne appeler fist,  
 Et pus cel heure en sca<sup>3</sup> ky gayna, ky perdist;<sup>4</sup>  
 Coment<sup>5</sup> li ray Belyns Ytaille tut venquist;  
 Coment Romayn pur Rome tribute li rendist;<sup>6</sup>  
 Coment li Romayn Brettayne après surprist;  
 Coment li Danays sur Brettoun trewe mist,  
 Et coment<sup>7</sup> al darayn la terre lessa quite;  
 Coment le rays Uther le duk Gorloys<sup>8</sup> occist;  
 Coment Arthur sun fiz regions<sup>9</sup> conquyst;  
 Coment le Brettoun de Brettayne s'en partist;  
 Coment li Saxonays i vint, e remist:<sup>10</sup>  
 Coment li rays Gormound Brettayne tost surquist,<sup>11</sup>  
 E en vij. realmes les countrés assist;<sup>12</sup>  
 Coment li veuz Edward le regal en unist;<sup>13</sup>  
 Coment li rays Harald le regne à tort prist;<sup>14</sup>  
 Coment li conquerur William sur li le prist;<sup>15</sup>  
 Coment li ray Richard Normondye joyst;  
 Coment son frere Jon la duché werpist;<sup>16</sup>  
 Coment li rays Henry Deus amait<sup>17</sup> e servyist;

<sup>1</sup> All this introduction to the history of the reign of Edward I., down to the next rubric, is omitted in B. C. and E. Robert of Brunne has not translated it.

<sup>2</sup> *En le livre de Brutus*, E.

<sup>3</sup> *E puis de cele livre en ça*, E.

<sup>4</sup> After this line E. adds, *N'ad mestier tut detruire, car mon tens ne suffist.*

<sup>5</sup> *Come*, E., and so all the way down.

<sup>6</sup> This and the two following lines are omitted in E.

<sup>7</sup> *Ne come*, E. The lines which follow begin with the same words.

<sup>8</sup> *Galeis*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *son fiz Arthur les regions*, E.

<sup>10</sup> This line is omitted in E.

<sup>11</sup> *Gurmond Bretagne pus surprist*, E.

<sup>12</sup> E. has in place of this, *Ne come li rois Rabes les contrées assist*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *enhonist*, E.

<sup>14</sup> *enprist*, E.

<sup>15</sup> *William le conquerour sur li pus reprist*, E.

<sup>16</sup> *Ne come Johan son frere de bouche la guerprist*, E.

<sup>17</sup> *come son filz Henri Deu ama*, E.

Who desires to hear of the kings, how each lived  
In the isle which Brutus caused to be named Britain,  
And from that time to this who gained, who lost ;  
How king Belinus entirely conquered Italy ;  
How the Roman paid him tribute for Rome ;  
How the Roman afterwards took possession of Britain ;  
How the Dane laid a tribute upon Britons,  
And how at last he left the land quit ;  
How king Uther slew duke Gorlois ;  
How Arthur, his son, conquered kingdoms ;  
How the Briton departed from Britain ;  
How the Saxon came there, and remained ;  
How king Gormond soon seized upon Britain,  
And arranged the countries in seven realms ;  
How the old Edward united the regality ;  
How king Harold took the kingdom by wrong ;  
How the conqueror William took it from him ;  
How king Richard possessed Normandy ;  
How his brother John lost the duchy ;  
How God loved and preserved king Henry ;

Coment sun fiz Edward, par aide de Jhesu Cryst,<sup>1</sup>  
 Le pople ad vencu ke vandre l'entendist ;  
 Ki vout saver<sup>2</sup> la geste de grand e de petit,  
 L'apregne de dan Peres,<sup>3</sup> ki l'ad mis en escrit.  
 De noster rays Eduuard Scaffeld li requist<sup>4</sup>  
 Recorder la geste, escotez cum il dist.

*Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>. cc<sup>o</sup>. septuagesimo secundo.*

Death of  
 Henry III.  
 and acces-  
 sion of  
 Edward I.

Le jur saint<sup>5</sup> Emoun le roy, ky ne sait oblie,<sup>6</sup>  
 Morust li rais Henry, home de sainte vye ;<sup>7</sup>  
 A Westmouster où gist, Deus<sup>8</sup> li certifie.  
 Son fiz Eduuard est rays, en la chauncelrye<sup>9</sup>  
 Son bref est comaundé parmy sa seygnurye.<sup>10</sup>  
 En le an secunde suaunt, par un Dymayn, ws dye,<sup>11</sup>  
 Après le Assumpcion gloriuse<sup>12</sup> Marye,  
 Le erceveske Robert de Kylwardebye

<sup>1</sup> Instead of this line and the following, E. has these four lines :—

*Certes qui s'avisast mult tendroit  
 hom petit,*

*Quant à la conquete de tuz ceus  
 desus dit*

*Contre le roi Edward, benoit seit  
 Jhesu Crist,*

*Car ses enemis ad destruit, e par  
 tut desconfit.*

<sup>2</sup> *Qui vielt oir, E.*

<sup>3</sup> *Si l'apreigne de Perot, E.*

<sup>4</sup> Instead of these two concluding lines, E. has :—

*Car en cest livre parfurnir uns  
 amis li requist,*

*Pur recorder le procès de tut son  
 tens parfist,*

*Coment il l'ad contenuz, escultez  
 cum il dist.*

<sup>5</sup> *de saint, B. C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *qui gist en Pontenie, E.*

<sup>7</sup> *de bone vie, E.*

<sup>8</sup> *Qui gist à Westmouster, que Deus, E.*

<sup>9</sup> *si tient chancelerie, E.*

<sup>10</sup> For these last five lines, B. C. and D. have,

*Le jour de seint Edmon,<sup>1</sup> martir e  
 reijadie,*

*Le rei Henri à Loundres termina  
 sa vie,*

*Son fiz Edward<sup>2</sup> fu lors en Sulie,  
 Quant vint en Engleterre resceut<sup>3</sup>*

*la seigneurie.*

Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>. cc<sup>o</sup>. septuagesimo  
 quarto.

*En l'an secunde suant, etc.*

<sup>11</sup> *En l'an siwant après dreiz est  
 que l'em vous die, E.*

<sup>12</sup> *Tut dreit à l'Assumpcion la  
 gloriouse, E.*

<sup>1</sup> *Emoun, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *sire Edward, C. D.*

<sup>3</sup> *resceut, D.*

How his son Edward, by the help of Jesus Christ,  
Has vanquished the people who thought to vanquish  
him ;

Who desires to know the history of great and little,  
Let him learn it from dan Pierre, who has put it in  
writing.

Of our king Edward, Scaffeld required him  
To record the history ; listen how he tells it.

*Anno Domini 1272.*

The day of St. Edmund the king, who let not be  
forgotten,  
Died king Henry, a man of holy life ;  
God certifies it at Westminster where he lies.  
His son Edward is king ; in the chancery  
His brief is directed through his lordship.  
In the second year following, on a Sunday, I tell you,  
After the Assumption of the glorious Mary,  
The archbishop Robert of Kilwardby,

Coronation of Edward I. Corouna le rays sire Edwarde en<sup>1</sup> le abbye  
De Westmouster,<sup>2</sup> temoyne barnez e clergie;  
Ausynt<sup>3</sup> la rayne Elyanor, sa amye,  
Fu coroné le jour; unkes à Saint Dynye<sup>4</sup>  
Ne fu si grant feste,<sup>5</sup> ne si grant noblye,  
Rays ne prince n'ad nul de Grece en Orkenye,<sup>6</sup>  
Ke taunt ad suffert de controversye<sup>7</sup>  
Cum ad<sup>8</sup> sir Eduuard pour sa manauntye.<sup>9</sup>  
En Escoce e Gales avait la mestrye,  
Cum après orrez ses fez en l'estorye.  
Pur nostre rays Eduuard chescun de nus pryé  
Ke Deu pur sa pyté ly sayt en aye,  
Son heritage conquere, Gascoyne e Normundye,  
Ke ly ray de Fraunce ad fausement saysye.

<sup>1</sup> *Corona sire Edward à Westmouster en l'abbie, E.*

<sup>2</sup> *Weymouster, B. Wemouster, D. En presence del poeple, barnage e clergie, E.*

<sup>3</sup> *E tut ensi, E.*

<sup>4</sup> *Dyonie, B.*

<sup>5</sup> *si bele feste, B. C. D. Meime le jor fu coroné à si tresgrant nobleie, E.*

<sup>6</sup> *à Orkeneye, B. C. In D., this and the twenty lines following are omitted. E. substitutes for this line the two following:—*

*N'avoit greignure feste de ci en Orkanie,*

*N'onques n'i out rois en la Cristianie.*

<sup>7</sup> *Qui tant ad suffert de mals e de c., E.*

<sup>8</sup> *ad omitted in C. Come fist, E. Robert of Brunne translates,—*

*“ Was never prince, I wene, that  
“ I writen of fond,*

*“ More had treie and tene than  
“ he had for his lond.”*

<sup>9</sup> After this line, E finishes the paragraph as follows:—

“ Mais en fin seit loez le fiz seinte  
“ Marie,

“ Que parmi e par tut ad conquis  
“ seignorie,

“ Cum jà vus endirroms en ceste  
“ traité oie,

“ E cum son heritage, Gascoigne  
“ e Normendie,

“ Par faus abet li ert tolue e  
“ disseisie.

“ Ore aidez, seint Thomas e Johan  
“ de Beverleie,

“ E seint Cuthbert de Durem,  
“ portez les compaignie,

“ E Thomas de Hereforde, qui  
“ Deus out tant cherie,

“ E seint Eadmon li rois, n'est  
dreiz que l'en oblie,

“ E vous, seint Edward, en qui  
“ mult s'affie.

“ Desore comenceroms de la geste  
“ florie,

“ Si parleroms de sire Edward e  
“ de sa chevalerie;

“ Puis de Leulin de Gales, e de  
“ sa surquiderie,

Crowned king Edward in the abbey  
Of Westminster, in the presence of barons and clergy ;  
Likewise queen Eleanor, his love,  
Was crowned that day ; never at St. Denis  
Was there so great a feast, nor so great nobility.  
There is no prince from Greece into Orkney  
Who has suffered so much dispute  
As Sir Edward has for his lordship.  
In Scotland and Wales he had the mastery,  
As afterwards you will hear his deeds in the history.  
For our king Edward let each of us pray  
That God for his pity be in aid to him,  
To conquer his inheritance, Gascony and Normandy,  
Which the king of France has seized falsely.

Review of  
Edward's  
reign.

Ore aydez Thomas e Jon de Beverlye ;  
Duz sire Saint Cuthbert, partez<sup>1</sup> les compaynye ;  
Sir Edward de vus trais durement s'afye.<sup>2</sup>  
Taunt cum en Gaskoyne la pees est defublye,<sup>3</sup>  
Du rays volums parler, e de sa curtaisye ;  
De Leulyn de Gales, e de sa surquiderye,<sup>4</sup>  
De David soun frere, e<sup>5</sup> de sa felounye ;  
[Dresamiraduk,<sup>6</sup> e de sa folie ;]<sup>7</sup>  
Du contek de Escoce, coment fu sopye,  
Et coment de rechef se leva par sotye ;  
De Madok e Morgan, e de lur reverye,<sup>8</sup>  
Du ray Jon Bayllol,<sup>9</sup> e de sa musardye,  
E des xij. peres ke gyent Albanye.

“ Puis de la guerre d'Escoce,  
“ coment fu sopye,  
“ E puis coment de rechef se leva  
“ par sotie ;  
“ Puis de Maddok e Morgan e  
“ de lur reverie ;  
“ Puis des xij. piers d'Escoce qui  
“ guient Albanie,  
“ Cum firent lur eleccion à Skone  
“ en l'abbeie,  
“ Pur guerreier sire Edward,  
“ toldre sa seignurie ;  
“ E cum sire Edward les prist par  
“ pure chevalerie ;  
“ Puis coment la quarte foiz co-  
“ mencent la hatie ;  
“ Et cum se rendent après, pardon  
“ chescuns enprie,  
“ Si li font fealté sovent, mal eit  
“ qui contralie.  
“ Assez en ai matire, si vus  
“ dirrai partie,  
“ De xlviij. chapitles la raison ai  
“ quillie ;

“ Pensez de l'escoter, car ne vus  
“ mentirai mie,  
“ Car à meint baron ceo croi  
“ jeo en ai garantie.”

<sup>1</sup> portez, B. C. E.

<sup>2</sup> *De vus treis à banere le rei Edward s'affie*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *defublie*, B. *defoblie*, C.

<sup>4</sup> “ And his beryng hie,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *e* omitted in C.

<sup>6</sup> *De ray Sameraduk*, C.

<sup>7</sup> This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. and C., and Robert of Brunne translates it ;—

“ Resaunraduk, an othere, how he  
“ did folie.”

<sup>8</sup> “ Of Madok the Morgan, of  
“ ther nice ribaudie,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *Johan de Bailliol*, B. *Johan de Ballyolf*, C.



Now aid him Thomas and John of Beverley ;  
Gentle St. Cuthbert, bear them company.  
Sir Edward has great confidence in you three.  
Until the peace is undone in Gascony,  
We will speak of the king, and of his courtesy ;  
Of Llewellyn of Wales, and of his presumption ;  
Of David his brother, and of his felony ;  
Of Rees ap Meredith, and of his folly ;  
Of the strife of Scotland, how it was appeased,  
And how again it arose through folly ;  
Of Madoc and Morgan, and of their raving ;  
Of king John Balliol, and of his vain designs,  
And of the twelve peers who rule Albany.

*Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. septuagesimo quinto.*<sup>1</sup>

Edward's  
first Welsh  
war.

Le primer an après ke le ray<sup>2</sup> fu corouné,  
Lewlyn, prince de Wales,<sup>3</sup> en France ad mandé  
Ke la feylle<sup>4</sup> le counte<sup>5</sup> de Mounfort nomez  
Vendrait en Snaudon,<sup>6</sup> en serraynt<sup>7</sup> esposez  
Li e la damoysele ; ses<sup>8</sup> amys sunt paez.  
Aymery<sup>9</sup> son frere e cele sunt en mer entrez ;<sup>10</sup>  
Un burgès de Bristowe,<sup>11</sup> ke vint of vins<sup>12</sup> chargez,  
Pris les ad par force, à terre les ad menez ;<sup>13</sup>  
Al rays en sauve garde sunt meyntenaunt livrez.  
Quant Lewlyn l'oit dire, sa guere ad comencez.  
Le rays s'en va vers ly, e l'ad taunt chacez,  
Ke pur sa folye de pees en ad<sup>14</sup> parlez ;

<sup>1</sup> The rubric is taken from B. C.

<sup>2</sup> *L'an primer après le rei fu*, B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Lewelin, prince de Gales*, B. *ad en France*, E.

<sup>4</sup> *De la fidle*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *al conte*, E.

<sup>6</sup> *à Snowedoun*, B. *en Snawedoun*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *où serraynt*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *ces*, C. *si sis amis*, E.

<sup>9</sup> *Almerik*, B. C. *Amerike*, D. *Sire Aymeris*, E.

<sup>10</sup> *sont eschipez*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *Un burgeys de Brestou*, D. *Mais un b.*, E.

<sup>12</sup> *des vins*, E.

<sup>13</sup> MS. E. gives the following reading of this and the succeeding lines to the end of the paragraph :—

“ Les prent en mer à force, si's  
“ ad à terre menez,

“ Si's ad en sauve garde à sire  
“ Edward livrez.

“ E quant Leulin l'ot dire, ran-  
“ cour l'encrest assez,

“ E par surquiderie sa guerre ad  
“ comencez,

“ E as Engleis fait gaiter tantz  
“ des iniquitez,

“ Les chasteals sire Edward tost  
“ ad acraventez.

“ E quant sire Edward l'entent,  
“ mult est amerveillez,

“ E sanz plus delaie vers Gales  
“ s'est turnez,

“ Sur le prince s'apreste, si li ad  
“ tant chacez,

“ Que Lewelin de fin pour pur  
“ la pees ad priez,

“ E cinquante mil marz al roi ad  
“ presentez,

“ Prent la dameisele, e tient ses  
“ heritez,

“ E sur ceo par bon escrit s'est-il  
“ obligez

“ Al parlement sire Edward par  
“ an venir ij. fiez.”

I have not thought it necessary to collate MS. E. further, for reasons given in the preface to this volume.

<sup>14</sup> *de pees ad*, C. D.

*Anno Domini 1275.*

The first year after the king was crowned,  
Llewellyn, prince of Wales, has sent into France,  
That the daughter of the earl entitled of Montfort  
Should come into Snowdon, where should be espoused  
Himself and the damsel ; her friends consent.  
Almeric, her brother, and she have put to sea.  
A burgher of Bristol, who came laden with wines,  
Has taken them by force, has carried them to land ;  
They are now delivered to the king in safe keeping.  
When Llewellyn hears news of it, he has begun his  
war.  
The king went against him, and has chased him so far,  
That for his folly he has treated for peace.

Peace with Cynkaunte myle mars al rays ad donez  
Llewellyn. Et prent la damoisele, e teent ses heritez.  
Sur ceo par bon escryt est Lewlyn obligez  
Al parlement le rays<sup>1</sup> venir par an deus fez.

Statutes of L'an secunde suaunt<sup>2</sup> l'encorounement,  
Westminster. Le rays à Westmouster tynt soun parlement,  
Estatuz fist fere par commune assent,  
Ke de Westmouster sunt dit proprement.  
A la Paske après le ray certainement<sup>3</sup>  
Fist maunder<sup>4</sup> le prince par sun bref sovent,  
K'il veygne à sa parlaunce pur sun tenement.<sup>5</sup>

Second Leulyn cum musard despise le mandement,<sup>6</sup>  
war with Et guere de rechef sur le rays enprent.  
the Welsh. Le ray parmy sa terre fist<sup>7</sup> maunder sa gent,  
Ke servise ly dayvent venent prestement,  
Et courent<sup>8</sup> sur le prince si vigorusement,  
Ke venuz est al rays, e à sa pes<sup>9</sup> se rent.  
David of le rays fu lors enterement ;  
Le rai<sup>10</sup> li dona pardurabelment  
Foderham<sup>11</sup> en fee, of le purtaynement,  
A Lewlyn pardona tut sun maltalent.  
Par covenaut tayllé assez covenabelment,  
Lewlyn est dure lyé, si autre fez mesprent.<sup>12</sup>

Abuses Le rays sun chemyn devers Lundres reprent,  
in the Fet sa monoye chaunger,<sup>13</sup> ke fu trop<sup>14</sup> vilement  
coinage. Roygné de tuz pars, la plainte li veent ent.<sup>15</sup>  
[De] roygnurs<sup>16</sup> sunt traynez les uns, li altre pent.  
Esterling, maylle, ferthing,<sup>17</sup> fet forger roundement,

<sup>1</sup> *Au parlement le rei*, B. C. D.<sup>2</sup> *La secunde an après*, B. C. D.<sup>3</sup> *curteisement*, B. C. D.<sup>4</sup> *Fet maunder*, C.<sup>5</sup> *tenent*, B.<sup>6</sup> *son maundement*, C.<sup>7</sup> *fet*, C. D.<sup>8</sup> *E corurent*, B.<sup>9</sup> *à la pees*, B. C. D.<sup>10</sup> *E le rei*, B.<sup>11</sup> *Frodesham*, B. D., and Robert of Brunne. *Fredesham*, C.<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in C.<sup>13</sup> *Fet chaunger sa monée*, B. C. D.<sup>14</sup> *trop* omitted in C. D.<sup>15</sup> *la plainte vus vient ent*, B.<sup>16</sup> *De roignours*, B. *Des roygnurs*, C. D.<sup>17</sup> *ferling*, B.

Fifty thousand marks he has given to the king,  
And takes the damsel, and retains his inheritance.  
On this Llewellyn is obliged by good charter  
To come to the king's parliament twice a year.

The second year following the coronation  
The king held his parliament at Westminster ;  
Caused statutes to be made by common assent,  
Which are specially called of Westminster.  
At Easter afterwards the king courteously  
Caused the prince to be summoned by his writ often,  
That he come to his parliament for his lordship.  
Llewellyn, like a fool, despises the mandate,  
And again undertakes war against the king.  
The king caused his people to be summoned through  
his land ;  
They who owe him service come quickly,  
And attack the prince so vigorously,  
That he is come to the king and surrenders to his  
peace.  
David was then entirely with the king ;  
The king gave him for ever  
Frodesham in fee, with the appurtenance,  
And pardoned Llewellyn all his ill-will.  
By covenant expressed very sufficiently  
Llewellyn is hard bound, if he offends another time.  
The king retraces his way towards London ;  
Causes his coinage to be changed, which was too  
disgracefully  
Clipped on all sides ; the complaint of it comes to  
him.  
Of the clippers some are drawn, another hangs.  
He causes sterling (penny), halfpenny, farthing, to be  
coined round,

Reform  
of the  
coinage.

Et gros tornays Englays, ke valent<sup>1</sup> verrayment  
Quatre esterlyns en achate et vent.  
De reen se lo ly prestre ke le offrand attent,<sup>2</sup>  
Ne ly chaitifs povres ke ren n'ad<sup>3</sup> dount despent.  
En tote la monoye la croyce parmy s'estent,<sup>4</sup>  
Par quai l'esterling est rounde<sup>5</sup> communement  
Offert e doné<sup>6</sup> pur Deu omnipotent;  
L'esterling e la maylle i<sup>7</sup> venent rerement;  
Sur Deu e sur les soens cheet l'empirement.<sup>8</sup>

The statute  
of Mort-  
main.

Mil cc. et octaunt aunz<sup>9</sup> de l'Incarnacioun  
Sunt passez par acounte, quant del re[li]gioun<sup>10</sup>  
Est fet l'estatut, ke counte, ne baroun,  
Ne seynur de terre, parmy la regioun,  
Face à seinte Eglise offrand ne doun  
De terre ne tenement, si par cungé noun  
Du rays e de son consayl;<sup>11</sup> tel est la resoun  
Ke freres of la croyce<sup>12</sup> et moyne et chanoun  
Ount taunt des fez le rays tretes à lur<sup>13</sup> aumon;  
Sustret ount<sup>14</sup> son seruise par tel convencioun,  
Par quai li est fet<sup>15</sup> desheretisoun.  
Noun pur ço le rays ad grant devocioun,

<sup>1</sup> *qe vaut*, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates this:—

“Edward did smyte rounde peny,  
“halfpeny, ferthyng;

“The croice passed the bounde of  
“alle thorghout the ryng.

“The kynges side salle be the  
“hede, and his name writen;

“The croyce side what cité it  
“was in coyned and smyten.”

<sup>2</sup> This and the following line are omitted in D. Robert of Brunne translates them,—

“The povere man ne the preste  
“the peny prayses no thing;

“Men gyf God the lest, the feffe  
“him with a farthing.”

<sup>3</sup> *qe rien ad*, B. C.

<sup>4</sup> *se tent*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *le ferling round est*, B. C. This and the three lines following are omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *Offert ou donné*, B. C.

<sup>7</sup> *i* omitted in B. *L'esterling est la maille*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *l'empyrement*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *Mil cc. quatre vinz anz*, B. *Mille cc. octaunte aunz*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *quant de religioun*, B. C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *e son c.*, B. D.

<sup>12</sup> *od la croice*, B. *ouf la croyce*, C. *oue la croyce*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *tret à lour*, B. *taunt del fee le reis tret à lour*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *est*, B. C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *fet li est*, B. D. *fet ly est tiel d.*, C.

And great English tournais, which are worth truly  
Four sterlings in buying and selling.  
The priest is nothing satisfied who expects his offering,  
Nor the wretched pauper who has nothing to spend.  
On all the coinage the cross extends itself in the  
middle,  
For which reason the sterling is round, commonly  
Offered and given for God Almighty ;  
The sterling and the halfpenny come there rarely.  
Upon God and upon his falls the debasement.

One thousand two hundred and eighty years from  
the Incarnation  
Are passed by reckoning, when of religion  
Is made the statute, that count nor baron,  
Nor lord of land throughout the kingdom,  
Make to Holy Church offering or gift  
Of land or lordship, unless by licence  
Of the king and of his council ; such is the reason  
That friars with the cross and monks and canons  
Have so many fees of the king drawn to their alms.  
They have withdrawn his service by such convention,  
By which to the king is made disherising.  
Nevertheless the king has great devotion,

Ke sainte Eglise se prove saunz collisioun<sup>1</sup>  
 De terres e des rentes<sup>2</sup> en possessioun,  
 Salve ses servises, saunz recoupisoun.

*Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>. ducentesimo octogesimo secundo.*<sup>3</sup>

L'an est temoyné en la rubriche avaunt<sup>4</sup>  
 Quant David de Gales ala gopyllaunt;<sup>5</sup>  
 A Leulyn sun frere accordez est<sup>6</sup> en taunt  
 Desheriter le rays e sun punez enfaunt;  
 Enfraynt unt cil sa pees,<sup>7</sup> et rumpu covenant;  
 Courent sur les genz, ardent<sup>8</sup> en passaunt,  
 Abbatent ses chasteus ke trouvent en<sup>9</sup> esteaunt.  
 Le rai fet sun barné<sup>10</sup> maunder maytenaunt.  
 Les barouns li venent<sup>11</sup> de Northumberland,  
 [Les Surreis i sunt, nul est recueillant,]<sup>12</sup>  
 Atyrent lur aler sur li deus tyraunt.  
 Descendent en la Marche li baroun<sup>13</sup> vaillaunt;  
 Leulyn et Davyd, et li remenaunt,  
 Se dourent à la rage e vount<sup>14</sup> la mort queraunt.  
 Grevouse est la guere, e dure<sup>15</sup> l'endurer;  
 Quant [aillours] est<sup>16</sup> l'esté en Gales est yver.<sup>17</sup>  
 Snaudon, ke taunt est fort, Leulyn fet garder,  
 Ke li rays Eduuard ne seet où entrer.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *collusioun*, B. *se pruve*, C. *se proue*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *de rentes*, B. *Des terres et des rentes*, D.

<sup>3</sup> This rubric is given from B. and C.

<sup>4</sup> *devaunt*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *gopyllaunt*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *est acordé*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *unt sa pees*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *ârdaient*, B. *ces gentz ardent*, C. *sus ses gentz*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *en* omitted in B. The whole line is omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> *ses barons maunder*, B. *maunder* omitted in C.

<sup>11</sup> *vient*, B.

<sup>12</sup> This line omitted in A., is found in B. C. D. It is here given from B.

<sup>13</sup> *ly barons*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *i vount*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *dure est*, B. C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *aillours est*, B. C. D.

<sup>17</sup> *le yver*, C. D.

<sup>18</sup> *Qe sire Edward ne siet quel part entrer*, B. D. *Qe sire Edward ne seet quel party entrer*, C.



That holy church prove without dispute  
In possession of lands and rents,  
Except his services without recovery.

*Anno Domini 1282.*

The year is given in the rubric above,  
When David of Wales went about playing the fox ;  
He is accorded with Llewellyn his brother in order  
To disinherit the king and his youngest child ;  
These have transgressed his peace, and broken covenant ;  
They invade his people, burn in passing,  
Cast down his castles which they find standing.  
The king now causes his barons to be summoned.  
The barons come to him from Northumberland,  
The Southernns are there, nobody holds back.  
They prepare their expedition against the two tyrants.  
The valiant barons descend into the Marches ;  
Llewellyn and David, and the rest,  
Act like madmen and go seeking death.

Grievous is the war, and hard the suffering ;  
When elsewhere it is summer, it is winter in Wales.  
Snowdon, which is so strong, Llewellyn causes to be  
    guarded,  
So that king Edward knows not where to make en-  
    trance.

The English defeated.

Ke fount les barouns ? à un braz de mer <sup>1</sup>  
 Barges et batels ensemble fount <sup>2</sup> nower  
 En travers cel ewe, et parmy claer,  
 Tut al foer de pount pur les gens passer,  
 Chuvals as armes, <sup>3</sup> ke vount assayer.  
 Les [Waleis] survenent, <sup>4</sup> les chacent arer ;  
 La presse est si grand à lur retourner,  
 La charge fet le[s] bas e les barges <sup>5</sup> enfoundrer ;  
 Chuvalers sunt naez, je les oy nomer.

Names of those slain.

Naez [i] sunt, <sup>6</sup> pur veirs, de la chuvalerye,  
 Roger de Clifford, primer en la partye,  
 Et le fiz Phelipe William de Lindesye, <sup>7</sup>  
 Jon le fiz Robert, e Lucas de Tannye, <sup>8</sup>  
 Cels sunt les chevetayns, of lur esquyerye,  
 Ke sunt naez cel heure en Gales par folye.

Reflexions.

Ki guyour est de guere, e ne seet de vaidye, <sup>9</sup>  
 Fet sovent damage à sa <sup>10</sup> compaynye.  
 Kar si nos Englays eusent eu espye  
 Entre les Galais, e les eust <sup>11</sup> garnye,  
 Cels ke sunt naez feusent unkore <sup>12</sup> en vye.

<sup>1</sup> Robert of Brunne, who appears to have understood the language of Pierre de Langtoft but imperfectly here, adding a little to the information it conveys, translates—

“ A water in Snowdoun rennes,

“ Auber is the name,

“ An arme of the se men kennes,

“ the defines may non ame.

“ The kyng controved therover a

“ brigge for to make,

“ And of Leulyn to covere Snow-

“ doun for to take.”

Auber is of course Aber.

<sup>2</sup> vount, B.

<sup>3</sup> as chevalls, as armes, C. a chevalls, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Les Waleis survenent*, B. C. D.  
 “ The Walsch com tham ageyn, did  
 “ our men alle arere.” Robert of Brunne. The word Waleis has been accidentally omitted in A.

<sup>5</sup> *les batels e barges*, B. *les baz e barges*, C. *les batz e barges*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *i sunt*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Li autres sunt nomez Wiliam de Lyndeseie*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> “ Sir Lucas of Tame,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *e ne siet voidie*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *à la*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *ke les eus*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *uncore fussent*, B. C. *unkor fussent*, D.

What do the barons? at an arm of the sea  
They cause barges and boats to be tied together  
Across that water, and place hurdles over them,  
Just in the manner of a bridge for the people to pass,  
Mounted and armed, who go to try it,  
The Welsh attack, and drive them back;  
The crowd is so great at their return,  
That the load causes boats and barges to sink.  
Knights are drowned; I heard them named.

Drowned are there, for truth, of the knights,  
Roger de Clifford, the foremost in the party,  
And William de Lindsay, son of Philip,  
John fitz Robert, and Lucas de Tannye;  
These are the chieftains, with their esquires,  
Who are drowned that time in Wales through folly.  
Who is leader in war, and is unacquainted with craft,  
Often does harm to his company.  
For if our English had had a spy  
Among the Welsh, and he had warned them,  
Those who were drowned would have been still alive.

*Anno Domini m<sup>o</sup>. ducentesimo octogesimo tertio.*<sup>1</sup>

Foreign auxiliaries. Kant li rays l'oyt<sup>2</sup> dire ke mort sunt les barons,  
 Vynt<sup>3</sup> Jon de Vescy del ray des Arraguns<sup>4</sup>  
 Of pitayle<sup>5</sup> saunz noubre de Baskles e Gascons;<sup>6</sup>  
 Demorent of le rays, rescayvent ses douns,  
 En mores e mountaynes<sup>7</sup> raumpent cum lyouns;  
 S'en voun[t] of les Engleys, ardent les mesuns,  
 Abatent les chastels, tuent les felouns;  
 Passez sunt la Marche, entrez<sup>8</sup> en Snaudouns.  
 David, frere le prynce, ke playn est de tresuns,  
 S'en ala de sun frere cum lers<sup>9</sup> en tapisuns.  
 Death of Llewellyn. Leulyn est trové covert en boyssuns;<sup>10</sup>  
 Perduz ad la teste, n'ad mister de chaperouns.<sup>11</sup>  
 Leulyn est tuez, decolez vilement;  
 Ses heirs desheritez sunt par jugement.  
 David va gopillaunt, e quide seurement  
 Après la mort sun frere tenir le tenement.  
 Les Waleys ad trete à son parlement  
 A Nowel en Dinebethe,<sup>12</sup> e funt ordaynement  
 La Walesserye<sup>13</sup> defendre par assent.  
 Le ray la fet<sup>14</sup> chacer, David se defent;  
 La vile<sup>15</sup> saynt Marice, par poer de gent,  
 Execution of David. David est desmembré mout trop vilement;<sup>16</sup>  
 La teste est maundé à Loundres pur present,  
 Et ses iiij. membres coupez plainement,

<sup>1</sup> *octogesimo ij<sup>o</sup>.*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *le rei oit*, B. D. *ly roys oit*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Viant*, B. *Vent*, C. *Veent*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Aragouns*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *pedaile*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *de bachelers e garsçons*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *e en mountaynes*, D. Pierre de Langtoft seems to have taken his notions of the movements of the lion from the heraldic *lion rampant*.

<sup>8</sup> *entrent*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *cum lever*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *en busons*, B. *en busçons*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *mester des chaprouns*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *en Denebeghe*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Walescherie*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *le fet*, B. D. *ly fet*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *veile*, B. *veylle*, C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *Sire David i est demembrez ordeinement*, B. C. *Sire David i est desmembré ordenement*, D.

*Anno Domini 1283.*

When the king hears say that the barons are dead,  
Comes John de Vescy from the king of the Aragonese  
With footmen without number of Basques and Gascons ;  
They remain with the king, receive his gifts,  
In moors and mountains they clamber like lions.  
They go with the English, burn the houses,  
Throw down the castles, slay the wretches ;  
They have passed the Marches, and entered into  
Snowdon.

David, the prince's brother, who is full of treason,  
Went away from his brother, skulking like a thief.  
Llewellyn is found concealed in bushes ;  
He has lost his head, he has no need of a hat.

Llewellyn is slain, beheaded with shame ;  
His heirs are disinherited by judgment.  
David goes skulking about, and expects in certainty  
To hold the lordship after the death of his brother.  
He has drawn the Welsh to his parliament  
At Christmas, in Denbigh, and they make an ordinance  
By assent to defend the Welshery.  
The king causes him to be hunted ; David defends  
himself ;  
On the eve of St. Maurice, by power of people,  
David is dismembered very disgracefully ;  
His head is sent to London for a present,  
And his four members cut off completely.

Reduction  
of Wales.

En quatre cytez put homme ver coment  
A chesun par say un des membres pent.  
Leulyn e David unt perdu grant honur ;  
Snaudone est saysi, e chastel e thour ;  
Al rays est l'escheet cum al chef seygnur.<sup>1</sup>  
Ke fount es Walays ke sunt de valour<sup>2</sup>?  
Fount chevaunce al ray, cum à chef seygnur.<sup>3</sup>  
Ly rays parmy la terre, pur norryr amour,  
Feet cryer sa pees al foer<sup>4</sup> de conquerour,  
Establye ses lays,<sup>5</sup> fet l'estat melliour ;  
Il mette<sup>6</sup> en sun noun gardayn e guyour.  
[Quant la chose est fet, à Loundres fet retour,]<sup>7</sup>  
Fet maunder ses countes, baroun, e vavasour,  
Venir al parlement, assignez les ad jour ;  
Les moustre tut<sup>8</sup> coment li covent par clamour  
Aler en Gascoyne amender cel erreur.

*Anno Domini millesimo cc°. octogesimo vj°.⁹*

King Ed-  
ward pro-  
ceeds into  
Gascony.

Nostre rays Eduuard en Gascoyne alayt ;  
Ma dame la rayne là<sup>10</sup> of li menait.  
Li rays a sun aler<sup>11</sup> la terre comaundait  
Al counte de Cornewaile, ke gardayn estayt.  
En pees e en bon<sup>12</sup> amour le rays Eduuard passait.  
Et of le rays de Fraunce à Parys<sup>13</sup> parlayt.  
Quant vint en Gascoyne,<sup>14</sup> fet<sup>15</sup> cryer le drayt,  
Adresça les torz ; ky meffet avait

<sup>1</sup> *com à son seignour*, B. *à chef*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *de grant valour*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *com à governour*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *à foer de compaignon*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *les lays*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *i mette*, C.

<sup>7</sup> This line is omitted in A., but is found in B. C. and D.

<sup>8</sup> *tut* omitted in C.

<sup>9</sup> The rubric is given from B., *cc°. octogesimo secundo*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *là* omitted in B. *ouf ly là menayt*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *al son aler*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *En pees e bon amour*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *al Parys*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *en Engleterre*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *vint . . . . fist*, B. C. D. *fet trier*, D.

In four cities a man might see how  
At each by itself one of the members hangs.

Llewellyn and David have lost great honour ;  
Snowdon is occupied, both castle and tower.  
To the king is the escheat as to the chief lord.  
What do the Welsh who are of valour ?  
They make chevance to the king, as to their chief  
lord.

The king through the land, to nourish love,  
Causes his peace to be cried in the manner of a con-  
queror ;

Establishes his laws, makes the state better ;  
He appoints in his name wardens and rulers.  
When the thing is done, to London he makes his  
return,

Summons his earls, barons, and vavasors,  
To come to his parliament, has assigned them a day ;  
Shows them how he is obliged by tidings  
To go into Gascony to put right that trouble.

*Anno Domini 1286.*

Our king Edward went into Gascony ;  
He took my lady the queen with him there.  
The king at his departure entrusted the land  
To the earl of Cornwall, who was keeper.  
In peace and good love king Edward crossed the sea,  
And conferred with the king of France at Paris.  
When he came into Gascony, he caused justice to be  
proclaimed,  
And put right the wrongs ; whoever had trespassed

Insurrec-  
tion in  
Wales of  
Rees ap  
Meredith.

Jugement resceut tel cum la lay<sup>1</sup> volait.  
Taunt cum en Gascoyne ses gens justizayt,  
Rees Amyraduk,<sup>2</sup> ne sai ke li devait,<sup>3</sup>  
Tuer des genz le rays en Gales comencayt.<sup>4</sup>  
Noun pour ço la noyse primes se levayt  
Ke ly Tybetoft<sup>5</sup> à tort li grevait.  
Ly rays rescait la plainte, e as Rees<sup>6</sup> maundait,  
K'il se tenayt en pes, e, quant repairerayt,<sup>7</sup>  
Le rays en bone fay ses resuns<sup>8</sup> orrayt,  
Et des tutes choses equityé<sup>9</sup> li frait.  
Rees Amyraduk<sup>10</sup> cum fol despisayt  
Le maundement le rays, le mal ke il poait  
Fist parmy la terre, à nul esparnyait,<sup>11</sup>  
Tuer fist-il tuz ke vaindre poait,<sup>12</sup>  
Ki par sir Eduuard en Gales se avowait.

*Anno gratie*<sup>13</sup> M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. LXXX<sup>o</sup>. nono.

Corruption  
in the  
English  
courts.

Quaunt li rais Eduuard<sup>14</sup> avait demoré  
Trays aunz delà la mer, Deu l'ad remené.  
A sun repair trova, par plainte presenté,  
Ses justises e ses clerics attaint de fauseté.<sup>15</sup>  
Les uns avaynt par douns les lays<sup>16</sup> besturné,

<sup>1</sup> *com lei*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *Resamiraduk*. B. *Rees Amere-  
duke*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *davait*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Guere sur le rei en Gales co-  
menceit*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *le Tiptost*, B. *ly Typpetoft*, C.  
*luy Tipetoft*, D. In Robert of  
Brunne the line is translated,

“Men said the wrath and cri  
“com thorgh the lord Tiptofte.”

<sup>6</sup> *al Rese*, B. C. *al Reis*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Q'en pes se tenist, e quant re-  
pairerit*, B. *Qe en pees se tenist*,  
C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *les resouns*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *quite*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Resamiraduk*, B. *Rees Amera-  
duke*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *n'esparnieit*, B.

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Domini*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *Kaunt sire Edward*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *atteyntz de maveisté*, B. D. *ses  
clers e ses justices attainz de mal-  
vayté*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *La lei*, B. C. D. Robert of  
Brunne translates these lines,—

“For giftes som justice lete the  
“lowe go doun,

“And som on other wise did  
“wrong to the coroun.”



Received judgment such as the law ordered.  
While he was administering justice to his people in  
Gascony,  
Rees ap Meredith, I don't know what ailed him,  
Began to slay the king's people in Wales.  
Nevertheless the report rose at first  
That the Tibetoft aggrieved him with wrong.  
The king received the complaint, and sent notice to  
Rees,  
That he remain in peace, and, when he returns,  
The king in good faith would listen to his complaints,  
And would do him justice in everything.  
Rees ap Meredith, like a fool, set at nought  
The king's injunction ; what evil he could  
He did through the land, he spared nobody ;  
He caused to be slain every one he could overcome,  
Who avowed himself for sir Edward.

*Anno Domini* 1289.

When king Edward had dwelt  
Three years beyond the sea, God has brought him  
back.  
On his return he found, by complaint presented to  
him,  
His justices and his clerks convicted of falseness.  
Some had for gifts subverted the laws,

Punish-  
ments of  
the judges.

Les altres la coroune avaynt violé.  
 Thomas de Wilaund,<sup>1</sup> en baunk primer nomé,<sup>2</sup>  
 Par agarde de la court<sup>3</sup> le regne ad forjoré,  
 Et en la terre de France sanz repaier<sup>4</sup> alé.  
 Ses compaynons, ses cleres, sunt pris e mené  
 A la thour de Loundres, delivrés par moné ;  
 Et sur ço de office chescun<sup>5</sup> est pryvé.  
 Helis de Beckyngham<sup>6</sup> n'est pas entechelé,<sup>7</sup>  
 Ne Jon de Metingham, ke chef est demoré.  
 Sir Rauf de Hengham tant ad<sup>8</sup> desputé  
 Ke del bank le rais perdu ad le sée.  
 Sir Adam de Stretton<sup>9</sup> est dure demené,  
 Jo cray ke sanz deserte n'est-il poynt blamé ;  
 Or [et] argent<sup>10</sup> sanz nombre al rais ad doné,<sup>11</sup>  
 Aver chaunta pur ly *placebo Domine*,  
*Dilexit quoniam* fraude e fauseté.

*Anno gratiæ M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. nonagesimo.*

Expulsion  
of the  
Jews.

Des justis e clerz<sup>12</sup> la plainte est chevyé ;  
 Ore fet le ray enquere<sup>13</sup> coment la Jurye<sup>14</sup>  
 Ad desceu sun popel par grand trescherye.  
 Son privé parlement par taunt [ad] establye ;<sup>15</sup>  
 Les barouns en parlent, ausint<sup>16</sup> la clergie,

<sup>1</sup> *Weland*, B. *Wayland*, C. *Weyland*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *primes fu nomé*, B. "The first  
"justise in benk," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>3</sup> *de courtz*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *repeire*, B. C. *repair*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *sur ceo chescon d'office*, B. C.  
D.

<sup>6</sup> *Elys de Bekyngham*, C. D., and  
Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *enterthele*, B. *entylé*, C. *en-  
teclé*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *ad taunt*, B. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Strattoun*, B. C. Robert of  
Brunne translates these two lines,—

"Sir Adam of Stretton fulle hard  
"was he led,

"Nouht without encheson, I lay  
"my glove to wed."

<sup>10</sup> *Or e argent*, B. D.

<sup>11</sup> *ad-il doné*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *e des clers*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *quere*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *Juerye*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *ad establie*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *en parleient, auxi*, B.

Others had offered violence to the authority of the  
crown.

Thomas de Weyland, named chief justice on the bench,  
By judgment of the court has forsworn the kingdom,  
And gone into the land of France never to return.

His companions and his clerks are taken and carried  
To the Tower of London, set at liberty for money :  
But thereupon each is deprived of office.

Elis de Beckingham is not tainted,  
Nor John of Metingham, who is remained chief justice.

Sir Ralph de Hengham has so much disputed  
That he has lost his seat at the King's Bench.

Sir Adam de Stretton is treated with severity ;  
I believe that he is not blamed without desert ;  
He has given gold and silver without count to the  
king

For having chaunted for him *Placebo Domine*,  
*Dilexit quoniam* fraud and falseness.

*Anno Domini* 1290.

The complaint of the justices and clerks is settled ;  
Now the king makes inquiry how the Jews  
Have deceived his people by great deceit.  
He has established his privy parliament thereupon ;  
The barons propose, likewise the clergy,

Voyder la terre de Jues;<sup>1</sup> e le rays l'ottrye,  
 Pur le quinzime dener al rays en aye  
 Des clers e de lays;<sup>2</sup> n'ad nul ke countre crye,<sup>3</sup>  
 Pur ouster les Jues de la<sup>4</sup> mescreauncye.  
 Ore sunt alez en France e en Pykardye;  
 Tutes lur dettes e lur manauntye<sup>5</sup>  
 Sunt salves al ray, dunt fere sa curtaysye.  
 Rees Amyraduk,<sup>6</sup> alaunt en tapye,  
 Memes cel an en Gales fu pris<sup>7</sup> par espye.  
 Quant le rays l'oit dire, comande ke hom le lye,<sup>8</sup>  
 Et meyne à Everwik, à la justiserye,  
 Oû primes fu traynez pur sa felonye,  
 Et pus pendu cum lers; desore n'ad nul<sup>9</sup> en vye  
 Ke porte heritage de sa sucesserye.

Capture  
 and execu-  
 tion of  
 Rees ap  
 Meredith.

*Anno gratiæ M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. nonagesimo primo.*

Capture of  
 Acre by the  
 Saracens.

Le an suaunt après fu Acres saisye;<sup>10</sup>  
 Le soudan par poer avait la mestrye.  
 Prys est<sup>11</sup> la cyté, mys sunt à l'espeye  
 Tuz les Cristiens, la fay cheet en oblye.  
 Ke fet l'apostoyle quant Acres est saysye?  
 Mès doune à sir Eduuard parmy sa ballye  
 Le disme dener de clers,<sup>12</sup> nul li countre crye,  
 De Engleterre, de Escoce, de Gales, de Irland, ws dye,  
 A la verrai value; molt est ore honye<sup>13</sup>  
 Tute saint Eglise, quant nul esparnye.

<sup>1</sup> *des Jues*, B. C. *des Jwes*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Des clers ne des lays*, C. *et des lays*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *countredie*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *et la*, B. C. *oster . . . . mes-reaunty*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *manancie*, B. "The dettes that men tham auht, ther stedes, and ther wonyng," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *Resamiraduk*, B. *Rees Ameraduk*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *pris fu*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *l'em li lie*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *est nul*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *assaillie*, B. D., and so Robert of Brunne, "Acres was assailed."

<sup>11</sup> *Pris unt*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *La disme des bens à clers*, B. *La dime des biens as clers*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *value, nul esparnye*, D., omitting the next line.

To clear the land of Jews ; and the king grants it,  
 For the fifteenth penny to the king in aid  
 Of clergy and laity ; there is nobody who opposes it,  
 To expel the Jews of the misbelief.  
 Now are they gone into France and into Picardy ;  
 All their debts and their tenements  
 Are reserved to the king, wherewith to do his courtesy.  
 Rees ap Meredith, going skulking about,  
 In Wales this same year was taken through a spy.  
 When the king heard tell of it, he orders that they  
     bind him,  
 And carry him to York to the justices,  
 Where first he was drawn for his felony,  
 And then hanged as a thief ; henceforward there is  
     none alive  
 Who carries the inheritance of his succession.

*Anno Domini 1291.*

The year following after was Acre taken ;  
 The soldan by force had the mastery.  
 The city is taken, put to the sword are  
 All the Christians ; the faith falls into oblivion.  
 What does the pope when Acre is taken ?  
 But grants to sir Edward through his dominions  
 The tenth penny of the clergy, not one opposes it,  
 Of England, Scotland, Wales, and Ireland, I tell you,  
 At the true value ; greatly is now shamed  
 All holy church, when he spares no one.

Ma dame la rayne cel an en Lindesye  
 Morust, à Westmouster son cors est sevelye.  
 Vacancy in the crown of Scotland. Avaunt morust Margarete, hair de Albany.<sup>1</sup>  
 Pur quay le ray maunda sa chualerye ;  
 A Norham<sup>2</sup> s'en va, chastel<sup>3</sup> ben garnye,  
 Et là fet<sup>4</sup> venir de abbeye e priorye  
 Tutes les cronicles de<sup>5</sup> auncesserye.  
 La gest examyne, trop ben certifie  
 Ke sire Eduuard ad drait à la seygnurye.  
 Ço fist le evesk Auntoyne, par sen e grant vaydye;<sup>6</sup>  
 Benette pusse-il estre de Deu le fiz Marye !

*Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. nonagesimo secundo.*

The different claimants to it.

Desor est en Escoce<sup>7</sup> grand contencioun  
 Par cels ke mettent claym en la region.  
 Le ayr del regne est mort, le drayt dait par resun  
 Revertir à Davyd quens<sup>8</sup> de Hontyndon,  
 Frere le ray William, ky saunk n'ad fusoun.  
 Passez est, par quay [la] reversioun  
 Est as ayrs Davyd, saunz deposicioun,<sup>9</sup>  
 Encountre tuz les autres ke clayment<sup>10</sup> accioun.  
 David avayt iij. fyllyes, chescun avayt baroun,  
 Et ayrs gentils e riches de grant mansioun.<sup>11</sup>  
 Baylliol,<sup>12</sup> Brus, Hastings, cels sunt les iij. par noun  
 Ke drayt ount à la terre par successioun ;  
 Et à sir Eduuard, sanz dissensioun,  
 Rendu est<sup>13</sup> la terre de Escoce en proteccioun.

<sup>1</sup> *heir en Albanie*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *A Northam*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *le chastel*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *fet là*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *del*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Antoyne, qe Dieu ly benye*, D.,  
 omitting the next line.

<sup>7</sup> *en Escoce est*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *counte*, B. C. D., which is of  
 course grammatically more correct.

<sup>9</sup> *desputeison*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *aveient*, B.

<sup>11</sup> Robert of Brunne translates  
 this, "thorgh descent of blode."

<sup>12</sup> *Baliol*, B. D. *Baliolf*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *est omitted in C. Renduz la  
 tere d'Escoce est en*, D.

My lady the queen this year in Lindsey  
 Died, at Westminster her body is buried.  
 Before her died Margaret, the heiress of Albany.  
 Wherefore the king sent for his knights ;  
 He goes to Norham, a castle well furnished,  
 And there causes to be brought from abbey and priory  
 All the chronicles of our forefathers.  
 Examines the history, very clearly ascertains  
 That sir Edward has right to the sovereignty.  
 That did bishop Anthony by sense and great subtlety ;  
 Blessed may he be by God the son of Mary !

*Anno Domini 1292.*

Henceforth there is in Scotland great contention  
 Through those who lay claim to the kingdom.  
 The heir to the kingdom is dead ; the title ought by  
 right  
 To revert to David earl of Huntingdon,  
 Brother of king William, who had no male issue of  
 his blood.  
 He is dead, whereby the reversion  
 Is to the heirs of David without dispute,  
 Against all the others who lay claim to it.  
 David had three daughters, each had a husband,  
 And heirs noble and rich, of great house.  
 Balliol, Bruce, Hastings, those are the three by name  
 Who have title to the land by succession ;  
 And to sir Edward, without disagreement,  
 The land of Scotland is surrendered in ward.

King Edward is judge of the question.

Sir Edward est saisy du terre<sup>1</sup> e tenement  
 Du realme de Escoce, cum à seynur<sup>2</sup> apent.  
 Les iij. ke<sup>3</sup> claym i mettent par resun de parent  
 Sunt venuz en courte demaunder<sup>4</sup> jugement.  
 Le rays ne volt fors drayt à son ascient;<sup>5</sup>  
 Des Englays, des Escoce,<sup>6</sup> fet venir la gent,  
 Et saver volt de cyl ke melz la lay entent,<sup>7</sup>  
 Ki ad drait, ki noun, à cel<sup>8</sup> gouvernement,  
 Par quel accioun e par quel descent.  
 Li tryours<sup>9</sup> ount fet examinement,  
 Et moustrez<sup>10</sup> au ray par lur entendement,  
 Ke Jon Bayllof,<sup>11</sup> saunz disturbement,  
 Dait aver de drait le regne playnement,  
 A tenir e aver pardurabelment  
 Du ray de Engleterre, par homage e serement.  
 Ly rays de Engleterre,<sup>12</sup> sanz contrariement,<sup>13</sup>  
 Hors de [sa] saysine<sup>14</sup> le realme li rent;  
 Le jour saynt<sup>15</sup> Estefne sun homage prent  
 A Nofchastel<sup>16</sup> sur Tyne; escotez or coment.

Decision in favour of John de Balliol.

*Forma homagii Johannis Baliolensis.*<sup>17</sup>

Form of homage of John Balliol.

Mon seynur sir Eduuard, rais de Engleterre, e  
 soverayn seynur del realme de Escoce, je, Jon de  
 Ballyolle, ray de Escoce, deveygne vostre homme lige

<sup>1</sup> *Sire Edward saisie de tere*, C. Edward is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *al seynur*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Les terres qe*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *demaudent*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *escient*, B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *de Escoce*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Par saver volt de cyle qe melz lay entent*, B. *Kar saver voet . . . la lay entent*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *à tiel*, B. C.

<sup>9</sup> *Les triours*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Unt moustrez*, B. C. D. has one line instead of this and the next:—

*Et dient qe Jon de Balyol saunz destourbement.*

<sup>11</sup> *Bailliol*, B. *Johan de Baliolf*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Le rei sire Edward*, B. C.

<sup>13</sup> *contriement*, C. D. gives this in two lines:—

*Du reis d'Engletere par homage et serment,*

*Luy rey sire Edward saunz contraryement.*

<sup>14</sup> *de sa seisine*, B. C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *de seint*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *Newekastel*, C. *Novechastel*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *Homagium Johannis Baliol*, D.



Sir Edward is seised of the land and lordship  
Of the realm of Scotland, as belongs to the superior  
lord.

The three who lay claim thereto by reason of kindred  
Are come into court to demand judgment.

The king only desires right to the extent of his  
knowledge.

He sends for people of the English and of the Scots,  
And desires to know of him who best understands  
the law,

Who has title, who not, to that government,  
By what claim and by what descent.

The judges have made examination,  
And shown to the king, by their understanding,

That John Baliol, without impediment,  
Ought to have by right the kingdom fully ;

To hold and have permanently  
Of the king of England, by homage and oath.

The king of England, without hesitation,  
Restored to him the realm out of seisine ;

On the day of St. Stephen he takes his homage  
At Newcastle-on-Tyne ; hear now how.

*The form of homage of John Baliol.*

My lord sir Edward, king of England, and sove-  
reign lord of the realm of Scotland, I, John de Baliol,  
king of Scotland, become your liege man of all the

de tut le realme d'Escoce of les apurtenaunces,<sup>1</sup> e quant ke apent,<sup>2</sup> le quel jo teng e dai tenir de drait e clayme<sup>3</sup> heritabelment de ws, e de vos heirs, ray[s] de Engleterre, de vye e membre,<sup>4</sup> e de terrien honur, encountre tote<sup>5</sup> genz ke pount<sup>6</sup> vivre e morir. Et le rays ly reseut en la fourme, salve sun drait e autry. Cest homage fu fet à Nofchastel<sup>7</sup> sur Tyne en Engleterre,<sup>8</sup> le jour sayn Estefne, l'an de grace myl cc. nonauntyme secoude,<sup>9</sup> et du regne le rays Eduuard xxi.<sup>10</sup>

*Anno gratie*<sup>11</sup> M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. nonagesimo tertio.

King  
Edward  
returns to  
London.

Quant le rais Eduuard Escoce ad justizé,<sup>12</sup>  
Saint Cuthbert de Dureme,<sup>13</sup> saint Jon de Beuerlé,  
A soun<sup>14</sup> revenir ad molt honuré.  
S'en va devers le suth<sup>15</sup> à Loundres sa cyté.  
Pus<sup>16</sup> ke sa femme à Deu est comaundé,  
De trestuz ses fiz est nul demoré,  
Fors soul sir Eduuard, ke Deus l'ad<sup>17</sup> reservé.  
Jovenes est e tendre; molt serrait grant pité  
Si si grant seigneur ne ust ayr engendré,  
Ke peust<sup>18</sup> après ses jours estre coroné.  
Et si li rais Eduuard vers Acres [f]ust<sup>19</sup> alé,  
Molt serrait en peryl le<sup>20</sup> regne e regalté.

<sup>1</sup> of l'aportenance, B.

<sup>2</sup> l'apent, B. et ouf quange apent, C. e oue quant qe apent, D.

<sup>3</sup> et doi de dreit tenir de vus e cleim tenir heritablement de vous, B. C. joe tenk de dreit e clayme à tenir, D.

<sup>4</sup> et de membre, B. D.

<sup>5</sup> entre totes, B. contre touz gentz, C. encountre qe pount viver en morir, D.

<sup>6</sup> qe purrount, B.

<sup>7</sup> à Nove Chaustel, C. Nove Chastel, D.

<sup>8</sup> en Angleterre omitted in D.

<sup>9</sup> nonaunt et dous, B.

<sup>10</sup> vint e vii., B. The numbers given in the text are correct.

<sup>11</sup> Domini, B. D.

<sup>12</sup> visité, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> Durhem, B.

<sup>14</sup> Al son, C.

<sup>15</sup> va vers le sieu, B. vers la southe, C.

<sup>16</sup> Pense, B. C. D.

<sup>17</sup> Dieu ad, B. D.

<sup>18</sup> Qe puit, B.

<sup>19</sup> fust, B. C. D.

<sup>20</sup> le omitted in B. C. D.

realm of Scotland with the appurtenances, and all that belongs to it, which I hold and ought to hold of title and claim heritably of you, and of your heirs, kings of England, with life and member, and with earthly honour, against all people who may live and die. And the king receives him in the form, saving his right and that of others. This homage was made at Newcastle-on-Tyne, in England, the day of St. Stephen, the year of grace One thousand two hundred and ninety-two, and of the reign of king Edward twenty-one.

*Anno Domini 1293.*

When king Edward has given judgment on Scotland  
 St. Cuthbert of Durham and St. John of Beverley  
 He has greatly honoured on his way back.  
 He proceeds southward to London his city.  
 He thinks that his wife is despatched to God,  
 Of all his sons none is left,  
 Except only sir Edward, whom God has reserved to  
     him.  
 He is young and tender; very great pity would it be  
 If so great a lord had no heir engendered,  
 Who might be crowned after his days.  
 And if king Edward had gone towards Acres,  
 Greatly would the kingdom and royalty have been  
     in peril.

War at sea  
between  
the English  
and Nor-  
mans.

Englays e Normaunz en mer ount comencé  
Chescun guere sur altre, e batayle ount doné;  
Molt i ad de pople de ambepars twé,  
Les Normaunz en mer ount perdu pousté;  
Les cyne porz ount lur bens; lur navye ont mené  
A Gernemue,<sup>1</sup> à Dovre, e à Winchelsé,<sup>2</sup>  
A Romenye, à Schorham, e à Pevenesé,<sup>3</sup>  
A Sandwice, à Gipwice,<sup>4</sup> à Suthamtoun plenté.  
Irays e Bayonays ount<sup>5</sup> grant partye wayné;  
Les cync pors ount le mer par poer desrené.<sup>6</sup>  
Pariny la terre de Fraunce la perte est publié;<sup>7</sup>  
Devaunt le ray Phelippe la plainte est<sup>8</sup> presenté,  
La cause est dit pur quay et la verité.  
Li rays sir Eduuard ad grant volunté  
Esposer gentil femme de haut parenté,  
Dunt aver engendrure pur sun herité,  
Pur reformer la pes, e norir amisté,  
Et salver les ij. realmes,<sup>9</sup> ke n'y ad<sup>10</sup> medlé.  
De Blaunche sa cosyne sir<sup>11</sup> Eduuard ad parlé,  
Sore al ray de France, si<sup>12</sup> saint eglise l'ad gré<sup>13</sup>  
Par congé la pape quant plain sera le sée.<sup>14</sup>  
Sir Eduuard en France ad messagers<sup>15</sup> maundé,  
Pur ver la<sup>16</sup> damoysele, enquere<sup>17</sup> de sa bounté,  
Si ele sait avenaunte en face, en cors<sup>18</sup> tayllé.  
Le messagers<sup>19</sup> i vount, e la ont<sup>20</sup> refiguré,

Edward  
proposes  
marriage  
to Blanche  
of France.

<sup>1</sup> *Germanie*, B. C. *Gernemeue*, D.

<sup>2</sup> à *Schorham*, e *Pevenesché*, C.

which omits the next line.

<sup>3</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>4</sup> A *Sandwiche*, à *Gipwiche*, B.

A *Sandeswiche*, à *Gypeswiche*, C.

A *Sandwiche*, à *Gipewike*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Li reis e barons sunt*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *derayné*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *est ublyé*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *est* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *dous reis*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *n'i ait*, B. C.

<sup>11</sup> *sir* omitted in B. C. D. *sa soer*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *et*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *l'ad grés*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *est la sée*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *messagers ad*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *Devers la*, B. *De vere*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *e quere*, B.

<sup>18</sup> *e corps* B. *avenant en cors ben tayllé*, C. The line is omitted in D.

<sup>19</sup> *Les messagers*, C. omitting *i vount*. *Les messangers*, D.

<sup>20</sup> *et l'ount*, B. *le fount*, C.

English and Normans have commenced at sea,  
Each war upon other, and have given battle.  
Much people was killed there on both sides;  
The Normans at sea have lost their power;  
The cinque ports have their goods; they have carried  
their ships

To Yarmouth, to Dover, and to Winchelsea;  
To Romney, to Shoreham, and to Pevensey;  
To Sandwich, to Ipswich, and to Southampton, plenty.  
Irish and people of Bayonne have gained great share.  
The cinque ports have by power conquered the sea.  
Through the land of France the loss is published;  
The complaint is presented before king Philip.  
The cause is stated wherefore and the truth,  
The king sir Edward had great desire  
To espouse a noble lady of high descent,  
Of whom he might have issue for his heirs,  
To restore the peace and nourish friendship,  
And save the two kingdoms, that there should be no  
fighting.

Sir Edward has spoken of Blanche his cousin,  
Sister of the king of France, if holy church allow it  
By leave of the pope, when the see shall be filled.  
Sir Edward has sent messengers into France  
To view the damsel, inquire of her goodness,  
If she be agreeable in face, well made in body.  
The messengers go there and have brought back a  
picture of her,

En cors, en façoun, en jambe, en mayn, en pé.<sup>1</sup>  
 Al rays sount revenuz, e li ount nouncié,  
 Plus bele creature est nule part trové.  
 The match Sir Eduuard, allas ! devynt enamouré,  
 agreed to. Et à la damoysele par lettre ad moustré,  
 Et al ray Phelippe,<sup>2</sup> sun quer e sa pensé.

*Anno gratiae M<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>o</sup>. nonagesimo quarto.*

De cele mariage unt parlé<sup>3</sup> si sovent,  
 Ke la damoysele e Phelippe ensemment  
 Volent l'alyaunce, e ws dirray coment.  
 Terms of Li rays Eduuard durra à Phelippe playnement  
 the mar- Sa terre de Gascoyne, saunz retenement.  
 riage. Après xl. jours de cele feffement,  
 Phelippe redurra meme le tenement  
 A Eduuard e à Blaunche, e à lur descent  
 Issuz de lur ij. cors,<sup>4</sup> engendré ligement.  
 Et si dame Blaunche ne ait enfaument,<sup>5</sup>  
 Et [ele] survive<sup>6</sup> Eduuard, la terre enterement  
 Li demora sa vye, e<sup>7</sup> après son finement  
 Revertira dont vint, saunz desturbement.  
 King Philip L'escryt est jà fet, le seal Eduuard i pent;<sup>8</sup>  
 obtains Antoyne ne fu pas à cel ordaynement.  
 possession of Phelippe<sup>9</sup> ad saisi Burdeaus, of quant ke apent ;  
 of Bor- [Par lettre<sup>10</sup> sire Edward Gascoyne á li se rent,]<sup>11</sup>  
 deaux and Gascony. Pur veir en Deu ws dye, encontre lour talent.

<sup>1</sup> *En corps, e en fauçons, en mein, en jambe, e pé, B. en fauschoun, en main, jaumb, e pé, C. en mayn, en jaumbe, et pé, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *Phelippe omitted in C.*

<sup>3</sup> *pensé, B.*

<sup>4</sup> *de lour corps, B. C.*

<sup>5</sup> *E si engendrure par eaus ne se present, B. C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *E ele survive, B. E. cel survif, C. Et ele survif, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *e omitted in C. D.*

<sup>8</sup> *L'escrit Edward ad fet, e son seal i pent, B.*

<sup>9</sup> *A Philipe, B.*

<sup>10</sup> *Par lettres, D.*

<sup>11</sup> *This line omitted in A., is found in B. C. and D.*

In body, in face, in leg, in hand, in foot.  
 They are returned to the king, and have announced  
     to him that  
 A fairer creature is found nowhere.  
 Sir Edward, alas ! fell in love with her,  
 And has shown by letter to the damsel,  
 And to king Philip, his heart and thought.

*Anno Domini 1294.*

They have talked of this match so often,  
 That the damsel and Philip likewise  
 Agree to the alliance, and I will tell you on what terms.  
 King Edward shall give to Philip fully  
 His land of Gascony, without reservation.  
 After forty days of this feoffment,  
 Philip shall give back the same lordship  
 To Edward and to Blanche, and to their heirs  
 Issued from their two bodies, begotten loyally.  
 And if the lady Blanche have no children,  
 And she survive Edward, the land entirely  
 Shall remain to her for her life, and after her end  
 It shall revert to whence it came, without gainsaying.  
 The writing is already made ; Edward's seal hangs to it ;  
 Anthony was not present at this treaty.  
 Philip has taken possession of Bordeaux, with all that  
     belongs to it ;  
 Through sir Edward's letter Gascony submits to him,  
 For truth I tell you in God, against their will.

Ke fet le ray Phelippe après cel dalyement ?<sup>1</sup>  
 A Parys, sa cyté,<sup>2</sup> va tenir parlement,  
 Of son frere Charles, li quens d'Artoys se assent  
 A une grant fausine par compassement.  
 Des Pykars<sup>3</sup> e Normauns fount venir la gent,  
 Ke ont perdu lur nef, lur merce, e lur argent,<sup>4</sup>  
 Par contek of les porz en mer, ou par torment ;  
 Appelent sir Eduuard del comaundement  
 De la robberye e de la recettement.<sup>5</sup>  
 Le appellent en court assez sollempnement  
 Devaunt les xij. peres ; vent nul<sup>6</sup> ke ly defent.  
 Par controve fausine<sup>7</sup> unt doné jugement,  
 Et pryvé sir Eduuard pardurabelment  
 Des terres de Gascoyne, ke li et se parent<sup>8</sup>  
 Tenaynt del ray de Fraunce heritabelment.  
 Ore aidez, Auntoyne, e overez sagement ;<sup>9</sup>  
 En ço cas<sup>10</sup> sanz tay ne gist amendement.

Retains  
 them by a  
 false judg-  
 ment of his  
 court.

Home solait jadis counter en Romaunce,<sup>11</sup>  
 Ki perde par defaute, c'est sanz<sup>12</sup> apparaunce,  
 Terre ou tenement en la court de Fraunce,  
 Nul bref de drayt i court de la recouvrance,  
 Fors un afforce<sup>13</sup> par espey et launce.  
 Ke fet li rays Eduuard quant seet la descayvance ?  
 Fet maunder Auntoyne venir à sa parlaunce,  
 Ses countes, ses barons de sa ben voyllaunce,

Proceed-  
 ings of king  
 Edward.

<sup>1</sup> *delaiement*, B. *ceo daliement*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *Al Parys la cyté*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *De Pikartes*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *lour nef, e lour argent*, B. *lur nef, lour mers, e lour argent*, C. *lour mers et argent*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *e du rettement*, B. *e de rettement*, C. *et du recettement*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *ne vint nul*, B. *pers, vint nul*, C.

<sup>7</sup> "Of that fals controveyng," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> *en Gascoyne qe ly e son parent*,

C. *en Gascoyne qe ly e si parent*, D.

<sup>9</sup> This and the following line are omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> *En ceo cause*, C.

<sup>11</sup> Robert of Brunne has certainly given his own interpretation of this line,

"Men sais in the courte of France;  
 "among the doze peres."

<sup>12</sup> *e saunz*, B. *ceo est saunz*, C. *en la court de Fraunce*, D., omitting the next line.

<sup>13</sup> *à force*, C.



What does king Philip after that dealing ?  
At Paris, his city, he goes and holds parliament,  
With his brother Charles, the count of Artois agrees  
To a great act of treachery by design.  
They send for the people of the Picards and Normans  
Who have lost their ships, their wares, and their  
    money,  
By strife at sea with the ports, or by storm ;  
They accuse sir Edward of commanding  
The robbery, and of the receiving.  
They summon him into court very formally  
Before the twelve peers ; none comes who defends him.  
By premeditated deceit they have given judgment,  
And have deprived sir Edward for ever  
Of the lands of Gascony, which he and his family  
Held of the king of France by inheritance.  
Now assist, Anthony, and work wisely ;  
In this case without thee there lies no remedy.

They used already to relate in French,  
Who loses by default, which is by non-appearance,  
Land or tenement in the court of France,  
No writ of right runs there for the recovery,  
Except by recourse to force with sword and spear.  
What does king Edward when he becomes aware of  
    the fraud ?  
He sends for Anthony to come to talk with him,  
His earls and barons who have good will to him,

He consults  
his council. Les prie de counsayl en la grant meschance.  
Le eveske de Dureme, Auntoyne, avaunt se launce  
E dist, " My sir rays, tu n'es pas enfaunce,<sup>1</sup>  
" Tu ne dais pas fere chose sanz commun ordinance  
" Ke pusse<sup>2</sup> à tun realme turner à grevaunce;<sup>3</sup>  
" Fa tost<sup>4</sup> par counsayl, si ne averez repentaunce.  
" Tu crays à cels ke plus doutent ta manaunce  
" Ke perte de toun regne kant est en balaunce."<sup>5</sup>  
" Sir Auntoyn," dist li rays, " jo face aquitaunce  
" Pur tuz mes privez e à ma noun savaunce;<sup>6</sup>  
" Aretter devez<sup>7</sup> ceste<sup>8</sup> contrariaunce."  
Advice of  
the bishop  
of Durham. " Pus ke tu l'as fet," dist le eveske Auntoyne,  
" Nul fayllir ne dait à tai en ta bosoyne.<sup>9</sup>  
" Si tu veus recoverer la terre de Gascoyne,  
" Et garder ben de Phelippe<sup>10</sup> ke plus sur tay ne  
foyne,<sup>11</sup>  
" Levez, si te movez, ne dormez pas cum moyne;<sup>12</sup>  
" Endossez les haubers,<sup>13</sup> defolés la karoyne,  
" Mountez le destreus,<sup>14</sup> et pernez launce en poyne.  
" Fa quere tay<sup>15</sup> amys par aver de coyne,  
" Le ray de Alemayne, le eveske de Coloyne,<sup>16</sup>  
" Le ray des Arragouns de tay ke ne s'eloyne,<sup>17</sup>  
" Le counte de Sauvay,<sup>18</sup> le counte de Burgoyne,  
" E puyz dailez à Phelippe, sanz autre assoyne."<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *enfaunz*, C. " Sir kyng, thou was a man, be not now hold a childe," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *Qe peus*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *en grevaunce*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Fai tut*, B. *Fas tost*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *en bayllaunce*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *e ma non sachaunce*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *i devez*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *ceo*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *Nul ne deit faillir à tai en tiel bosoigne*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *E reboter Philip*, B. C. *Et rebuter P.*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *feyne*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *movez, pernez launce en poigne*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *hauberkes*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *destrers*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *Fai fere tei*, B. *Face quer tay*, C. *Fa quere tes amys*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *des Alemans, li sire de C.*, B. C. D.

<sup>17</sup> *de Arragon de tei q'il ne s'aloigne*, B. *de Aragouns, de tay qu'il ne s'eloyne*, C. D.

<sup>18</sup> *Salvay*, C.

<sup>19</sup> *daillez partut od Philip sanz a.*, B. D. *daillez par tout ouf Philippe saunz essoigne*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this line as follows, "Than is tyme to bikere with the kyng of France."

Asks them for advice in the great mischance.

The bishop of Durham, Anthony, steps forward

And says, " My lord king, thou art not a child,

" Thou oughtest, without resolution in common, to do

" nothing

" Which may turn to injury to thy realm ;

" Act immediately by counsel, and you will not have

" repentance.

" Thou believest in those who fear more thy threat

" Than loss of thy kingdom when it is in danger"

" Sir Anthony," says the king, " I make acquittance

" For all my private advisers and to my want of know-

" ledge ;

" It is for you to find a remedy to this misfortune."

" Since thou hast done it," said bishop Anthony,

" No one ought to fail thee in thy need.

" If thou wilt recover thy land of Gascony,

" And take good care that Philip dissimulate with thee

" no longer,

" Arise, and bestir yourself, sleep not like a monk ;

" Put on the hauberks, trample down the carrion,

" Mount the steeds, and take spear in fist.

" Seek for thyself friends with power of money,

" The king of Allemaigne, the bishop of Cologne,

" The king of the Aragonese, that he keep not aloof

" from thee,

" The count of Savoy, the count of Burgundy,

" And then deal with Philip, without further difficulty."

Advice of  
the English  
barons.

Quant le eveske Auntoyne sun consail ad moustré,  
Dient les barouns, " Sir rays, escotez ;  
" Tuz les granz seygnurs ke cy sunt<sup>1</sup> nomez  
" Par le ray de Fraunce sunt desheritez,  
" Les uns de bones<sup>2</sup> viles e de grant cytez,  
" Les altres de grant terres ke countrevalent countez.  
" Al ray des Alemauns messagers maunde, z,  
" Et al ray<sup>3</sup> des Arraguns par lettres escryvez,  
" Et à tuz ly altres ke sunt avaunt nomez ;<sup>4</sup>  
" A vivre e [à] morir<sup>5</sup> ensemble ws lyez.  
" Si tu veus ben fere, argent ne esparnyez.  
" Taunt ad le ray de Fraunce poer e poustez,  
" Ke tu n'as autre vaye dont recoverir te[s] fez."<sup>6</sup>

King  
Edward  
sends an  
embassy to  
Germany :

Le ray e sun counsayl à ço sunt acordez ;  
Par commune consail Auntoyne est alez,  
Et li erceveske de Dyvelyn sacrez,  
Huge le Despenser, baroun renomez,  
Et Jon de Craucombe,<sup>7</sup> clerk ben avysez.  
Auntoyne en Alemanyne tant ad<sup>8</sup> procurez,  
Ke les Alemanz as Englays sunt jorez ;  
Le ray en prime chef l'ad ben asseurez,  
Erceveske, eveske, e tuz li barnez.  
Les Englays ausint se sunt obligez  
Ayder as Alemaunz en adversitez.  
Escriz de ambeparz de ço e sunt enselez.  
Antoyne est hors de terre, le rays ad enveyez<sup>9</sup>  
Messagers en France tels cum ws orrez :  
William de Gaynesburge,<sup>10</sup> un frere Cordiller,  
Et un Jacobyn, ke been seet<sup>11</sup> sun mester,

and mes-  
sengers to  
France.

<sup>1</sup> *ke cy ne sunt*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *des bones*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Al rey*, C. D., omitting *Et*.

<sup>4</sup> *avant parlez*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *A morir e à vivere*, B. D. *Al morir*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *tes feez*, B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *Crawecombe*, B. *Crawecumbe*,

C. *Cracoumbe*, D. Robert of Brunne translates this, " Of Krawe-combe sir Jon, a clerke gode and wys."

<sup>8</sup> *ad taunt*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *l'ad envaiez*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *de Gayneburge*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *fet*, C.

When bishop Anthony had declared his advice,  
Say the barons, " Sir king, listen ;  
" All the great lords who are here named  
" Are robbed of their inheritance by the king of France,  
" Some of good towns and of great cities,  
" Others of extensive territories which are equivalent  
" to counties.  
" Send messengers to the king of the Alemains,  
" And write by letter to the king of the Arragonese,  
" And to all the others who are before named ;  
" Bind yourselves to live and to die together.  
" If thou wilt succeed, spare no money.  
" So great force and power has the king of France,  
" That thou hast no other way of recovering thy  
" fees."

The king and his council are agreed to this ;  
By the general advice Anthony is gone,  
And the archbishop consecrated of Dublin,  
Hugh le Despenser, a baron of renown,  
And John de Craucombe, a very skilful clerk.  
Anthony has so far prevailed in Germany,  
That the Germans have sworn fidelity to the English ;  
The king in the first place has well assured it,  
Archbishop, bishop, and all the barons.  
The English similarly bind themselves  
To aid the Germans in adversity.  
Writings to this effect on both sides are sealed.  
Anthony is out of the land ; the king has sent  
Messengers into France, such as you will hear :  
William of Gainesborough, a Franciscan friar,  
And a Jacobin, who knew well his business,

The latter  
are im-  
prisoned at  
Calais. .

Huge de Mauncestre,<sup>1</sup> sunt passez la mer.  
Ly quens d'Artoys les prist, e<sup>2</sup> les fist demorer  
A Kalays en prisun la<sup>3</sup> semayn enter;  
Puys venent à Parys Phelippe<sup>4</sup> saluer,  
Lettre de creauce ly fount presenter,  
Pus dyent lur message, ly prient escoter.

Their mes-  
sage to  
king  
Philip.

Li Jacobyn parla, et dist al ray coment  
A prince et à prelat<sup>5</sup> obeir covent,<sup>6</sup>  
Et pur seynur lige fere comaundement,  
A petiz e [à] granz<sup>7</sup> fay porter lealment.  
“ Pur quay nus sumes cy venuz par maundement<sup>8</sup>  
“ Nostre rays sir<sup>9</sup> Eduuard, ke Deu de mal defend !  
“ Il te signyfyte par nus apertement,  
“ Ke il ad fet homage<sup>10</sup> à tay certainement  
“ Pur tute Aquitayne, à tenir fraunchement,  
“ Soloum la pees tayllé à l'acordement  
“ Entre vos<sup>11</sup> deus auncestres par commune assent,  
“ Quant lur grand contek fu sopye fynalment.  
“ Tu ne l'as pas tenuz, mès rumpu malement.  
“ Et à sun drayn aler en Gascoyne à sa gent,  
“ Feust un covaunt fet assez sollempnement  
“ A tenir entre vus pardurabelment ;  
“ Tu ne l'as pas tenuz un an enterement.  
“ Sur ço te certefye du drayn dalyement  
“ [Entre<sup>12</sup> vus e li fu fet privément,]<sup>13</sup>  
“ Pur quay<sup>14</sup> de Aquytayne te fist un feffement,  
“ Pur li refeffer de mesme le tenement.

<sup>1</sup> *Mamecestre*, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates here, “Frere Hugh of Malmcestre was a Jacobyn.”

<sup>2</sup> *e* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *une*, B. *un*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *vount Philippe*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Al prince e al prelat*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *i covent*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *à granz*, B. *Al petitz e al grantz*, C. *et à grantz*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *comandement*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *sir* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Qe homage ad fet*, B. D. *Qe homage à tei ad fet*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *en vos*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Qe entre*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> This line is omitted in A., but found in B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *Par quay*, C.

And Hugh of Manchester, have passed the sea.  
The count of Artois took them, and caused them to  
remain

At Calais in prison the whole week ;  
Then they come to Paris to salute Philip,  
Cause to be presented to him their letter of credit,  
Then say their message, and pray him to listen to them.

The Jacobin spoke, and said to the king how  
It is proper to obey prince and prelate,  
And for a liege to execute commands for his lord,  
To hold faith loyally to little and to great.  
‘ Wherefore we are come here by command  
“ Of our king sir Edward, whom God defend from evil !  
“ He signifies to thee by us openly,  
“ That he has strictly performed homage to thee  
“ For all Aquitaine, to hold freely,  
“ According to the peace arranged at the agreement  
“ Between your two ancestors by common assent,  
“ When their great strife was finally appeased.  
“ Thou hast not held it, but broken it maliciously.  
“ And at his last repair to his people in Gascony,  
“ A covenant was made very solemnly  
“ To be held between you for ever.  
“ Thou hast not held it quite a year.  
“ Upon that I remind thee of the last dealing,  
“ Between you and him it was made privately,  
“ Whereby he made thee a feoffment of Aquitain,  
“ To refeoff him of the same tenement.

- They re-  
proach  
Philip with  
his faith-  
lessness.
- “ Quant ta<sup>1</sup> saysine estayt conu playnement,  
 “ Par les xij. peres te maunda gentement<sup>2</sup>  
 “ Restorer li sa terre sanz retenement,  
 “ Cum covenant le volt, dount testmoyne ne ment.<sup>3</sup>  
 “ Tu resceuz sa terre<sup>4</sup> par tel abbatement;  
 “ A tenir li covenant tu n’as pas talent;  
 “ E, sire, tu solays assez curtaysement  
 “ Escrivre en tun bref à ly cum à tun parent,<sup>5</sup>  
 “ A tun leal et feal et duk<sup>6</sup> nomément  
 “ De la duché<sup>7</sup> de Aquitayne of le honur<sup>8</sup> ke apent.  
 “ Pus cel heure en ça ren est<sup>9</sup> touché ent.  
 “ Par quai avys ly est ke tu certaynement<sup>10</sup>  
 “ Le teens<sup>11</sup> pas tun homme, ne il estre l’entent,<sup>12</sup>  
 “ Ne des ore à tay serra obedient;<sup>13</sup>  
 “ Mès quant avera sa terre<sup>14</sup> recovré proprement,  
 “ Tenir la clamera de Deu omnipotent.
- Message of  
prince  
Edmund,  
Edward’s  
brother.
- “ Pur nostre rays sir Eduuard, ke Deu li benye!<sup>15</sup>  
 “ Avoms nent plus à dire ke n’as paroye;<sup>16</sup>  
 “ Mès sire Edmoun sun frere par nus te signifye,  
 “ Sun frere est sun seygnur, par quai nul hom en  
 “ vye  
 “ Taunt ayme, ne tant doute, ne en ky tant s’affye.  
 “ Sire, trop ben seet Edmoun<sup>17</sup> par quele controversye

<sup>1</sup> *Qe ta*, B. *Quant ta fausin*, C.  
 “ Thi seisyn is wele knowen,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *gentyllement*, D.

<sup>3</sup> “ As lawe wild and right, and  
 “ covenant was in scrite,” Robert  
 of Brunne.

<sup>4</sup> *Tu retiens la tere*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *en tes brefs à li cum à parent*,  
 B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *A ton feal e leal e duc*, B. C.  
 D.

<sup>7</sup> *Du duché*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *ouf honur*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *n’est rien*, B. *reen tochez ent*,  
 C. *en cya est rien*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *surement*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Ne teens*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *ne il estre le tent*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *Ne des ore ne serra à toi obedient*,  
 B. *des or ne serra à tay*, C. *Ne  
 des ore serra à tey*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *sa tere avera*, B. C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *Par nostre rei Edward, qe  
 Dampnedeu beneie*, B. C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *ke en as paroye*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *Sire Edmon trop bien set*, B.  
 C.



“ When thy seizure was known fully,  
“ Through the twelve peers he summoned thee in  
“ courteous manner  
“ To restore him his land without reservation,  
“ As the covenant willed it, of which there is truthful  
“ witness,  
“ Thou retainest his land by such abatement ;  
“ To hold the covenant thou hast no will ;  
“ And, sir, thou art accustomed very courteously  
“ To write in thy letter to him as to thy kinsman,  
“ To thy loyal and faithful and duke by name  
“ Of the duchy of Aquitaine with the honour which  
“ appertains.  
“ Since that time to this it is discontinued.  
“ For which it is his opinion that thou certainly  
“ Holdest him not thy man, nor does he mean to be so,  
“ Nor will he henceforward be to thee obedient ;  
“ But when he shall have recovered his land to him-  
“ self  
“ He will claim to hold it of God Almighty.

“ For our king sir Edward, may God bless him !  
“ We have no more to say which thou hast not  
“ heard ;  
“ But sir Edmund his brother by us signifies to thee,  
“ His brother is his lord, wherefore there is no man  
“ alive  
“ He loves so much, or fears so much, nor in whom  
“ he puts so much trust.  
“ Sire, Edmund knows full well through what disagree-  
“ ment

“ Son frere e sun seigneur par tay est dissaysye;<sup>1</sup>  
 “ Te rende<sup>2</sup> sun homage, wayne ta seignurye,  
 “ E bye sun heritage recoverir par aye.  
 “ Pur quay<sup>3</sup> sir Edmoun de tut à ly se lye,  
 “ Des ore ne put ne volt<sup>4</sup> tenir ta compaynye;  
 “ Mès totes les granz terres ke tynt<sup>5</sup> en ta ballye  
 “ Te rend sus of le homage dont il se desplye,  
 “ Salve al verray ayr [e] à<sup>6</sup> la remenauncye  
 “ Le drait ke cyl en ount par auccesserye.  
 “ Nus sumes povre freres, ren avoums<sup>7</sup> fors de autrie,  
 “ Et messanger ne dait<sup>8</sup> rescayvre vilainye;  
 “ Conduyt parmy ta terre et avouerye  
 “ Grauntez nus, pur Deu e pur ta curtaysye.”<sup>9</sup>

Reply of  
king  
Philip.

Phelippe ray de Fraunce respouns les fet doner  
 Par un de sun counsayl, averty chuvaler;  
 Lur dist ke les covenanz fez de zà en arer<sup>10</sup>  
 Sunt tenuz en tuz poynz, sanz ren violer,  
 Par le ray de Fraunce, et par ly xij. per;  
 Et par li rays Englays et ly<sup>11</sup> mariner  
 Rumpu sunt covenanz par terre et par mer.  
 Paroles ke sunt dites de terres<sup>12</sup> resigner,  
 Des<sup>13</sup> homages rendre, de seigneur refuser,  
 Le ray Phelippe rescait en mesme la maner  
 Cum els sunt nunciez<sup>14</sup> par ly messager;  
 Et parmy sa terre conduyt les fet aver.

Return of  
the mes-  
sengers.

Les messagers s'en vount à Dovre aryver,  
 E sunt revenuz al ray<sup>15</sup> à Westmouster.

<sup>1</sup> *defailye, C*

<sup>2</sup> *T'ad rendu, B. C. D.*

<sup>3</sup> *Par quei, B. C.*

<sup>4</sup> *ne veut ne peut, C.*

<sup>5</sup> *q'il teent, C. q'il tynt, D.*

<sup>6</sup> *heirs e à la, B. al verrais  
heyres à la, C. as verreys heys  
e la, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *povers freres, riens n'avoms, B.  
riens avoms, C.*

<sup>8</sup> *E mesangers ne doivent, C.*

<sup>9</sup> This line and the preceding are transposed in B., by which, however, the sense is not affected.

<sup>10</sup> *de ça ne arer, C.*

<sup>11</sup> *e par li, B. C.*

<sup>12</sup> *de tere, C.*

<sup>13</sup> *Ses, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *nomez, C.*

<sup>15</sup> *à reis, C.*

" His brother and his lord is by thee dispossessed ;  
 " He returns thee his homage, relinquishes thy seignory,  
 " And intends to recover his heritage with aid.  
 " Wherefore sir Edmund entirely binds himself to him,  
 " Henceforth he neither can nor will hold thy com-  
     " pany ;  
 " But all the great lands which he held in thy lord-  
     " ship  
 " He renders up to thee with the homage which he  
     " refuses,  
 " Saved to the true heirs and their descendants  
 " The right which they have in it by ancestry.  
 " We are poor brothers, we possess nothing but that  
     " of others,  
 " And messengers ought not to receive ill-treatment ;  
 " Conduct through thy land and recognition  
 " Grant us for God and for thy courtesy."

Philip king of France causes a reply to be given to  
 them

By one of his council, a wise knight ;  
 He tells them that the covenants made from that  
     time back  
 Are kept in all points, without breaking anything,  
 By the king of France, and by the twelve peers ;  
 And by the English king and the mariners  
 Are broken the covenants by land and by sea.  
 Words which are spoken of resigning lands,  
 Of giving back homages, of refusing lord,  
 King Philip receives them in the same manner  
 As they are announced by the messengers ;  
 And he causes them to have conduct through his land.  
 The messengers depart to arrive at Dover,  
 And have returned to the king at Westminster.

Edward  
calls his  
parliament.

Respouns le ray<sup>1</sup> de Fraunce kant sir Edward sa-  
vayt,

Ses clerks et ses barons à Londres assemblayt,

E lors<sup>2</sup> de rechef il mesme les moustrait

Coment Aquitayne fu perdu par descayt,

Ke saunz aide des genz<sup>3</sup> recoverir ne poayt.

De tuz les bens as clers la maité<sup>4</sup> demandait,

E de la demaunde departir ne volayt;

De cytesayn et burgés,<sup>5</sup> le syme dener aurait;<sup>6</sup>

The taxes  
granted to  
him.

Li barné pur le pople le disyme le grauntait,<sup>7</sup>

Issi ke de cel an tut paez serrayt;<sup>8</sup>

Molt est ore Engleterre plus povre ke n'estayt.<sup>9</sup>

Non pur ço chescun à Deu prier dait

Ke nostre rays Eduuard face bon esplayt,

E pusse par nos aydes recoverir sun drayt.<sup>10</sup>

Conse-  
quences  
appre-  
hended  
from a  
French  
conquest.

Si il fust utraé, cum ne voyl Deus k'il sayt,<sup>11</sup>

Le eglise de Engleterre si mal mené serrayt,

Ke clerk<sup>12</sup> ne lays homme dount vivre troverayt.

Ly novel conquerour ke sur nus vendrait<sup>13</sup>

Ly counte et ly baroun de honur priverait;

Erceveske, eveske, estat chaungerait;

Ly abbé, ly priour terre perderait;

Parsons et vicare sa rente voiderait,

Et li fraunkelayn vilayn demorrait.<sup>14</sup>

Cytayn ne burgé<sup>15</sup> nul part irrayt

Fere sa marchaundise, cum avaunt solayt.

<sup>1</sup> *du roy*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *hors*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *de gentz*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *la moitié*, B. à *clers la mayté*,  
C. *Des touz les biens as clers mayté*,  
D.

<sup>5</sup> *De citain e de burgeis*, B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *avereit*, B. D.

<sup>7</sup> *li otrait*, B. *le dime le otrait*,  
C.

<sup>8</sup> *Issint qe deinz cel an home la*

*paierait*, B. *Issi qe dedeinz cel an  
homme la paierait*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Mult est Engleterre qe n'esteit*,  
B. *Mult est Engleterre*, C.

<sup>10</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>11</sup> *cum Dieu ne veut qe seit*, B. C.  
*cum Dieu ne voet q'il sait*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Ne clerk*, D.

<sup>13</sup> This and the seven following  
lines are omitted in D.

<sup>14</sup> *devendreit*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *e burgeis*, B. C.

When sir Edward learnt the reply of the king of  
France,  
He assembled his clergy and barons at London,  
And then again he himself explained to them  
How Aquitaine was lost by treachery,  
Which without aid of the people he could not re-  
cover.  
Of all the goods of the clergy he demanded the moiety,  
And would not depart from the demand ;  
Of citizen and burger he would have the sixth  
penny ;  
The barons granted him the tenth for the people,  
So that it should be all paid in that year ;  
England is now much poorer than it was.  
Nevertheless ought every one to pray to God  
That our king Edward be quite successful,  
And that he may by our aids recover his right.  
If he were overcome, as may God not will him to be,  
The church of England would be reduced to such an ill  
condition,  
That neither clerk nor layman would find wherewith  
to live.  
The new conqueror who would come upon us  
Would deprive of honour the earls and barons ;  
Archbishop and bishop would change his condition,  
Abbot and prior would lose his lands ;  
Parson and vicar would be deprived of his rent,  
And the freeman would remain a villain.  
Citizen nor burger would go anywhere  
To make his market, as he did before.

Li Frauncays orgullous à [si] bas<sup>1</sup> nus menerait,  
 Et nent plus ke mastyns<sup>2</sup> honurer nus frayt.  
 Argent put hom quere, argent vent<sup>3</sup> et vayt;  
 Donk vaut melz doner le tant cum home l'ayt,  
 Ke vivre cum chaitif en payne si estrayt.

Quant par clers et lays les aydes sunt grauntez,  
 Le eveske de Dureme al rays est repayrez,  
 Et<sup>4</sup> en Alemayne ad fet ses voluntez;  
 [L'esvesqe de Divelyn à Dieu est comaundez;]<sup>5</sup>  
 Huge le Despenser est sayn et haitez.

Ambassa-  
 dors sent  
 to Rome.

Le erceden<sup>6</sup> de Richemund est la mer passez,  
 Mestre Jon de Craucombe<sup>7</sup> li est associez;  
 Il sunt alez à Rome, par le rays chargez  
 Dire à l'apostoyle les playnes veritez.

Knights  
 sent into  
 Gascony.

Li ray à Portesmue<sup>8</sup> avaunt fust alez,  
 Sur le ray de Fraunce sa guere ad comencez.<sup>9</sup>  
 De sa chivalrye en Gascoyn ad maundez:  
 Sir Jon<sup>10</sup> de Brettayne est ly primer nomez;  
 Sire Jon de Seyn Jon, ke conust les countrez;  
 Robert de Typetoft,<sup>11</sup> et sun fiz aynez;  
 Sire Laurence de Sauvay,<sup>12</sup> et autres genz assez;  
 En le ylle de Ollyroun<sup>13</sup> sunt tuz aryvez.  
 Le counte de Nycole fu laundrait aprestez;  
 Par maundement le rays le counte est returnez;  
 La resun pur quai ws diray, escotés.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *si bas*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *ge mastyn*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *vint*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *Et* omitted in B.

<sup>5</sup> This line is omitted, evidently by accident, in A.; but it is found in B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *L'ercedeken*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Crawecomb*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *vers Portesmue*, B. *vers Portesmewe*, C. *vers Portesmowe*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *ad ordeinez*, B. *ordenez*, C. *ordinez*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *Sire Johan*, B. C. *Sire Jon*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Tiptoft*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Sauvie*, B. D. *Salvevay*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *A Burgh sur la mare*, B. *A Burge super mare*, C. D. In place of the following lines, Robert of Brunne translates:—

“Thei aryved alle o weye at

“Burgh sur la Mare,

“Thiderward as als he went, sir

“Henry the Lacie,

“The kyng oft for him sent, I

“salle telle you whi.”

<sup>14</sup> *l'escotez*, B.

The proud Frenchman would bring us so low,  
And cause us to be honoured no more than dogs.  
One may seek money, money comes and goes ;  
Then it is better worth to give it as long as one has it,  
Than to live like a caitiff in suffering so extreme.

When the aids are granted by clergy and laity,  
The bishop of Durham is returned to the king,  
And has effected in Germany the object of his mission.  
The bishop of Dublin is despatched to God ;  
Hugh le Despenser is safe and sound.  
The archdeacon of Richmond has passed the sea,  
And master John de Craucombe is associated with  
him ;

They are gone to Rome charged by the king  
To tell the pope the full truth.  
The king was before this gone to Portsmouth,  
Has begun his war against the king of France.  
He has sent part of his chivalry into Gascony.  
Sir John of Britany is the first named ;  
Sir John de St. John, who knew the countries ;  
Robert de Tiptoft, and his eldest son ;  
Sir Laurence de Savoy, and other people enough ;  
In the isle of Oleron are they all arrived.  
The earl of Lincoln was already there ;  
By command of the king the earl is returned ;  
I will tell you the reason why, listen.

Insurrec-  
tion in  
Wales.

En la Walesserye<sup>1</sup> un rybald est<sup>2</sup> mountez,  
Ke quidayt ke ly rays fust outre mer alez;<sup>3</sup>  
Snaudon<sup>4</sup> ad saisy cum ses herytez,  
Se fet apeler prynce par noun des parentez.<sup>5</sup>  
Mort ad les Englays kant ke sunt trovez,  
Les chastels le rays à terre cravauntez.  
Le ray ne put souffrir ses iniquitez;  
La guere de Gascoyne ad jà<sup>6</sup> delayez,  
Et desuth Snaudon<sup>7</sup> en Gales est entrez.  
En Abyrconeway,<sup>8</sup> chastel affermez,  
Tint-il<sup>9</sup> ses Noelez of muz de ses barnez.

Edward's  
error in  
regard to  
Wales.

Jekes après la Paske de Noel avaunt  
Dura la guere en Gales,<sup>10</sup> al ray trop grevaunt.  
Escotez [ore] coment<sup>11</sup> pyté ly fist perdaunt.  
Sun pople al primour estait assez<sup>12</sup> pussaunt  
Aver conquis la terre, saunz arester passaunt;  
Et si li rays à cel heure<sup>13</sup> eust fet sun avenaunt,  
Et as tuz<sup>14</sup> doné lur wayne à remenaunt,  
Terre et tenement à tenir par garaunt  
De li e de ses hayrs le servise fesaunt,  
Gales fust gainé tost<sup>15</sup> par tel covaunt,  
Et Gascoyne recovré sur cyl ke<sup>16</sup> est tenaunt.  
Mès taunt ad targé<sup>17</sup> la pees en covaitaunt,<sup>18</sup>  
Ke la<sup>19</sup> chualrye, ke ala conqueraunt  
Sun drayt en Aquytayne, est pris mayntenaunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Walecherie*, B. D.

<sup>2</sup> *est* omitted in B. The translation of this line by Robert of Brunne is as follows, "In Wales is a schre-ward to werre rises on."

<sup>3</sup> *passez*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Snaudoun*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *de parentez*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *ad là*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Snaudoun*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Abbrettounwaye*, C. *Abrecone-waye*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *il* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *de Gales*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *Escotez ore coment*, B. *Escotez ore coment delay ly fist perdaunt*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *assez estoit*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *le rei cel heure*, B. *ly reis cel heure*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *à touz*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *tut*, B. *tost par cel*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *q'en*, B. D.

<sup>17</sup> *Mès ore ad tant targé*, C. D.

<sup>18</sup> *la pes covaitant*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *Qe à la c.*, C.



In the Welshery a ribald is arisen,  
Who believed that the king was gone beyond sea ;  
He has seized Snowdon as his heritage,  
Caused himself to be entitled prince by name of  
    kindred.  
He has put to death the English, as many as are  
    found,  
Has broken down to the ground the king's castles.  
The king cannot suffer his iniquities ;  
He has already delayed the war in Gascony,  
And has entered under Snowdon into Wales.  
In Aberconway, a castle well strengthened,  
He held his Christmas with many of his barons.

    From Christmas forward till after Easter  
Lasted the war in Wales, very troublesome to the  
    king.

Listen now how pity made it losing :  
His people at first was sufficiently powerful  
To have conquered the land, without halting in the  
    way ;

And if the king at that time had made his terms,  
And had given to all their gain for ever,  
Land and tenement to be held by warrant  
Of him and of his heirs by doing service,  
Wales would have been won soon by such covenant,  
And Gascony recovered from him who is holding it.  
But he has delayed so long in his desire for peace,  
That his knights, who were going to conquer  
His right in Aquitaine, are now captured.

Capture of Sir Charles à Ryouns les prist en combataunt,<sup>1</sup>  
Edward's En fyrges les menayt à Parys tot<sup>2</sup> chauntaunt.  
knights in Aquitaine. Saint Severe est renduz, ou est en rendaut;<sup>3</sup>  
Burdeus est bayllé as Frauncays<sup>4</sup> et Normaunt:  
Pur veirs ly Pykard nus<sup>5</sup> va desore mokaunt,  
Gascoyne<sup>6</sup> retenir quide ben<sup>7</sup> par taunt.  
Nos Englays quidaynt aide de Arragoun,  
Et du rays Eduuard par sun frere Edmoun,  
Du counte de Nicole of sa<sup>8</sup> garnisoun;  
Mès tuz lur fayllirent<sup>9</sup> de promissioun.  
Kar taunt cum sunt de là en tribulacioun,  
Comence la guere en Gales saunz resun;  
Defeat of Et tost après la Paske li rays et li baroun  
the Welsh. Enchacent les Walays, et saysent Snaudon.  
Pus vount à Angleseye,<sup>10</sup> estendent pavylloun.  
Le ray kant là vent<sup>11</sup> fet cryer enviroun  
Sa pees à tuz ke volent<sup>12</sup> venir à pardoun.<sup>13</sup>  
Le counte de Gloucestre, ne say la chesoun,<sup>14</sup>  
A perdu en Suth Wales more et<sup>15</sup> mansioun;  
Morgan li surquert, li fet<sup>16</sup> destruccioun.  
Morgan and Madoc. Mès al rays Eduuard volt<sup>17</sup> Morgan si ben noun;  
Par ly et sun consail, Madok<sup>18</sup> en tapisoun,  
Ke prince se noma à sa confusioun,  
Est pris et menez à Loundres en prisoun.  
Sachez par sa folye et sa mesprisioun  
Ad le ray perdu la possessioun

<sup>1</sup> *le prist combant*, B. *les trova cumbataunt*, C. *les prist combataunt*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *tot* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *reddant*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *Burdels est baillé à Franceys*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *nus* omitted in B.

<sup>6</sup> *Car Gascoine*, B. C.

<sup>7</sup> *ben quide*, C. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *od la*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *lour failient*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *en Angleseie*, B. D. *en Engleterre*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *vint*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *voleient*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *al pardoun*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *l'anchesoun*, B. *le achesoun*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *Ad perdu Southgales, mees e*, B. *en Sutwales moose e mansioun*, C.

*en Souzwales meos et*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *e fet*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *veut*, C. *voyl*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *Maddoc*, D.

Sir Charles took them in battle at Rioms,  
And carried them to Paris in fetters, all singing.  
Saint Severe is surrendered, or is in the act of sur-  
rendering;  
Bordeaux is given up to the French and Normans:  
In truth the Picard goes henceforth making mockery  
of us,  
And expects to retain Gascony in consequence.

Our English expected aid from Aragon,  
And from king Edward by his brother Edmond,  
From the earl of Lincoln with his garrison;  
But all failed them of their promise.  
For while they are beyond sea in tribulation,  
Begins the war in Wales without reason;  
And immediately after Easter the king and the barons  
Drive out the Welsh, and seize Snowdon.  
Then they go to Anglesea, spread pavilions.  
The king, when he comes there, causes to be pro-  
claimed everywhere  
His peace to all who will come to pardon.  
The earl of Gloucester, I know not the reason,  
Has lost in South Wales moor and dwelling.  
Morgan attacks him, and does him destruction.  
But to king Edward Morgan means nothing but well;  
By him and his counsel, Madoc in hiding place,  
Who called himself prince to his confusion,  
Is taken and carried to London into prison.  
Know through his folly and his misbehaviour  
The king has lost his possession

Injury  
caused by  
the Welsh  
insurrec-  
tion.

De tote Aquytayne, fors soulement Bayoun.<sup>1</sup>  
Kar si il eust alé<sup>2</sup> par aide de Gascoun  
Aquitayne defendre de Phelippe et Carloum,  
Kant il alayt en Gales sur Madok li felun,<sup>3</sup>  
Toulouse et Tolousan par grant affeccioun  
Fussent tuz,<sup>4</sup> venuz à sa subjeccioun,  
Sun estre eust sauvé Saint Severe et Ryoun,<sup>5</sup>  
Burdeus li fust renduz saunz occisioun,  
Et<sup>6</sup> tote Aquitayne eust eu en baundoun.  
[Guales seit maudit de Dieu et de seint<sup>7</sup> Simoun !  
Qar touz jours ad esté plein de tresoun.]<sup>8</sup>

Defection  
of John  
Baliol and  
commence-  
ment of  
the war  
in Scot-  
land.

Escoce sait maudite de la mere Dé,<sup>9</sup>  
Et parfound ad deable<sup>10</sup> Gales enfoundré!<sup>11</sup>  
En l'un ne<sup>12</sup> l'autre fu unkes verité.  
Kar si tost en Gales guere est comencé,  
Et de Aquitayne le<sup>13</sup> covenant tayllé  
Fu par le ray de Fraunce rumpu et refusé,  
Et sir<sup>14</sup> Eduuard et Phelippe comencent<sup>15</sup> medlé,  
Li fol ray de Escoce, Jon Bayllof<sup>16</sup> nommé,  
Ke par le ray Eduuard al regne est approché,<sup>17</sup>  
Par le counsail de sun fol<sup>18</sup> barné,  
Encountre sun homage ne<sup>19</sup> encountre sa fealté,  
A la court de Rome ad messagers maundé,  
A Celestyn la pape ke à l'heure<sup>20</sup> tynt le sé,

<sup>1</sup> *Baroun*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Car s'il fust alée*, B. D. *Kar soul fust alé*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *le feloun*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *tost*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> This and the following line are omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *Et* omitted in D.

<sup>7</sup> *et seint*, D.

<sup>8</sup> These two lines are not found in A., but B., C., and D. have them.

<sup>9</sup> *del meere Dé*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *al deable*, C. This and the following line are omitted in D.

<sup>11</sup> *Guales soit e.*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *n'en*, B. *ne en ly altre*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *le* omitted in C.

<sup>14</sup> *sir*, omitted in B. and D. *Et sir*, omitted in C.

<sup>15</sup> *comenscail*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *Baliole*, D.

<sup>17</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>18</sup> *Par l'enticement de son faus*, B. C. D.

<sup>19</sup> *ne* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>20</sup> *cel heure*, B. D. omits the rest of this line and the first three words of the next.

Of all Aquitaine, except only Bayonne.  
For if he had gone with aid of the Gascons  
To defend Aquitaine against Philip and Charles,  
When he went into Wales against Madoc the felon,  
Toulouse and the Toulousain through great affection  
Would all have come to his subjection.  
His presence would have saved Saint Severe and Riom ;  
Bordeaux would have been surrendered to him without  
slaughter,  
And all Aquitaine would have been in his power.  
May Wales be accursed of God and of St. Simon !  
For it has always been full of treason.

May Scotland be cursed by the mother of God,  
And may Wales be sunk deep to the devil !  
In neither was there ever truth.  
For as soon as war is commenced in Wales,  
And the covenant which had been made for Aquitaine  
Was broken and rejected by the king of France,  
And sir Edward and Philip begin combat,  
The mad king of Scotland, John Baliol by name,  
Who had been promoted to the kingdom by king  
Edward,  
With the advice of his mad barons,  
Contrary to his homage and contrary to his fealty,  
Has sent messengers to the court of Rome,  
To Celestine the pope, who at that time held the see,

Par suggecioun ount<sup>1</sup> fausement moustre  
 Ke le regne d'Escoce, of la digneté,  
 Dayt de ly tenyr par antiquité;  
 Et le rays Eduuard par poer et poesté  
 Li fist fere homage encountre volunté;  
 Et pryé ke il sait assous et desvolupé  
 De la fay le ray, à ky il fu joré.

Conduct  
 of the  
 pope.

La pape Celestyen [fu] trop<sup>2</sup> desavysé,  
 Assout le ray d'Escoce par lettre enbullé.  
 Si tost cum en Escoce la chose est noncié,  
 Les barnez<sup>3</sup> ount fet, à lur hounteté,  
 Duze pers en Escoce,<sup>4</sup> et sunt counsayllé  
 Desheriter Eduuard de la<sup>5</sup> souverainté.  
 Pur le grant honor ke Eduuard le sené  
 Fist à Jon Bayllof,<sup>6</sup> tel est la bounté  
     Dount li rays<sup>7</sup> Eduuard  
     Du ray Jon musard  
     Est rewerdoné.  
     De Escoce sait cum pot;  
     Parfurnyr nus estot  
     La geste avaunt parlé.

End of the  
 Welsh war.

Quant Morgan est renduz, et Madok<sup>8</sup> est pris,  
 Le ray revynt à Loundres par consayl des amys.  
 Deus chardinals de Rome la pape i ad<sup>9</sup> transmys,  
 Ke of le ray de Fraunce parlaint à Parys;  
 De l'amur entre eus la pape est entremys.  
 Les chardinals al rays<sup>10</sup> ount dit lur avys;  
 Sir Eduuard<sup>11</sup> et Phelippe ount durement requys  
 Reposer une pece chescun en sun pays,  
 Issi ke bone gent de poer et de prys,<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *suggestioun ad*, B. C.

<sup>2</sup> *fu trop*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Les barons*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *d'Escoce*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *sire Edward à la*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *Baliol*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *rays* omitted in B.

<sup>8</sup> *Maddoc*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *la pape ad*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *le rcis*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *E Edward*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in B.

They have by prompting falsely explained  
 That the kingdom of Scotland, with the dignity,  
 Ought to hold of him by ancient right ;  
 And that king Edward by force and power  
 Made him do homage against his will ;  
 And prays that he may be absolved and dissolved  
 From fidelity to the king, to whom he was sworn.  
 Pope Celestine was very ill-advised,  
 He absolves the king of Scotland by writ with bull  
 attached.

As soon as the thing is made public in Scotland,  
 The barons have made, to their shame,  
 Twelve peers in Scotland, and they have taken counsel  
 To disinherit Edward of the sovereignty.  
 For the great honour which Edward the wise  
 Did to John Baliol, such is the goodness  
 With which king Edward  
 By king John the fool  
 Is rewarded.  
 Of Scotland be it as it may  
 We must continue  
 The history before told.

When Morgan has surrendered, and Madoc is taken,  
 The king returned to London by the advice of his  
 friends.

Two cardinals from Rome the pope has sent thither,  
 Who conferred with the king of France at Paris ;  
 The pope has interfered to restore love between them.  
 The cardinals have said their opinion to the king ;  
 They have earnestly required sir Edward and Philip  
 To remain quiet a while each in his country,  
 Until good people of power and worth,

Ke à nule part se facent enemys,  
 Ou la pape mesmes sait par là justiz  
 A parfere l'acorde de kant<sup>1</sup> ke sayt mespris.  
 Taunt<sup>2</sup> cum les chardinals de la pes parlaynt,  
 Les gens de Normendye suth<sup>3</sup> Dover aryvaynt,  
 En la compaynye les Kalays estaynt;<sup>4</sup>  
 En la vile de Dovre sodaynement entraynt,  
 Et partye du burge arder comencaynt,  
 Des jovenes et des velz xiiij. homes i tuaynt.<sup>5</sup>  
 Quant vindrent à l'acounte, x. pur<sup>6</sup> un lessaynt.  
 Li gardayn del chastel et cel ke là<sup>7</sup> manaynt,  
 Et moynes de la celle, ke ben se guyaint,  
 Se pristrent à defens et les escryaint.  
 Normaunz et Pikard ke forfeit avaynt  
 Furent desgagez, les chapels demorraynt  
 Of les chefs des uns, les autres s'en alaynt.<sup>8</sup>  
 Un moyne de la celle, à ky vynt enclinaynt,<sup>9</sup>  
 Et cyl les assolt, mot plus ne sonaynt.  
 Les chardinals après à Parys repairaynt,  
 Ne sai quels respouns<sup>10</sup> du ray enportaynt,<sup>11</sup>  
 Nun pur ço plusurs entre els disaynt  
 Ke totes les parlaunces al darayn descendaynt<sup>12</sup>  
 Ke Eduuard et Phelippe lur genz suthrayeraynt,<sup>13</sup>  
 Issi ke gens par terre et mer<sup>14</sup> irraynt  
 Et<sup>15</sup> suffraunce de pees, ke amys purraynt

Attack  
upon Dover  
by the Nor-  
mans and  
Picards.

Progress  
of the ne-  
gotiations  
with  
France.

<sup>1</sup> *et qauntz ke sunt*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Kant*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *sur*, B. *suz*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> "And men of Caleis camen  
"with tham I wene," Robert of  
Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *De jovens e de veltz xiiij. homme  
tuaynt*, C. *i tueynt*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Quant à la court vindrent x.*  
*pur*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *là* omitted in B. *e cels qe là*,  
D.

<sup>8</sup> *les altres demoraint*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *Un moigne i fu pur veir, à qi  
vint enclinecent*, B. C. D. It may be  
remarked that Pierre de Langtoft's  
account of the monk seems to have  
been entirely misunderstood by  
Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *Ne sey le quele respouns*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *reporteient*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *descendrait*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *sustreraynt*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *par mer e par tere*, B. D. *par  
meer ou par tere*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *En*, B. C. D.



Who should act with enmity to neither side,  
Or the pope himself should be over there judge  
To complete the accord of whatever may be done  
wrong.

While the cardinals were conferring on the peace,  
The people of Normandy made an attack upon Dover,  
The people of Calais were in the company ;  
They entered suddenly into the town of Dover,  
And began to burn part of the burgh,  
Of young and old they slew there thirteen men.  
When they came to the reckoning, they left ten for  
one.

The keepers of the castle, and those who dwelt there,  
And monks of the cell, who behaved themselves well,  
Took to their defence, and raised the cry upon them.  
Normans and Picards who had forfeited  
Were let out of pledge, their hats remained  
With the heads of some of them, the others went  
away.

A monk of the cell, to whom twenty bowed,  
And he assoils them, they uttered not a word more.  
The cardinals afterwards repaired to Paris,  
I know not what answer they carried from the king,  
Nevertheless many among them said  
That all the conferences in the end came to this,  
That Edward and Philip should withdraw their men,  
So that people might go by land and sea  
In peaceful armistice, that friends might

Parfournyr l'acorde ; les Englays le volaynt,<sup>1</sup>  
Si les Alemaunz à ço se assentiraynt.

Treason of  
Thomas de  
Turbeville.

Taunt<sup>2</sup> cum les chardinals se sunt entremys  
De refourmer<sup>3</sup> la pees et fere les rays amys,  
Thomas de Tourbevyle, ke à Ryouns fu prys,  
En taunt ad parlé of le provost<sup>4</sup> de Parys,  
Ke fet l'ad sun homage, et hostage<sup>5</sup> mys  
Ses deus fiz en garde, et seurement promys  
Aler en Engleterre espyer<sup>6</sup> le pays ;  
Et dire al rays Eduuard ke il vynt futifs,  
Eschapé<sup>7</sup> de prisoun parmy ses enemys.  
Le provost l'ad graunté, et fet ent<sup>8</sup> ses escryz,  
Cent liverez de terre par autel<sup>9</sup> devys ;  
Et Thomas l'affiaunce sur les Evangeliz,  
Ke tut Engleterre et Walays et Marchiz,  
Et du regne de Escoce kant ke<sup>10</sup> sunt de prys,  
Serrount enclynaunt à Phelippe fis Lawis.

Turbe-  
ville's pro-  
ceedings.

Escotez ore coment la grace Jhesu Krist  
Ly gentiz ray Edward de la tresun garnyst.  
Thomas en Engleterre vint al ray, et dist  
Ke hors de la prisoune nuytauntre<sup>11</sup> issist,  
[E pur l'amour Edward à tiel peril se prist.]<sup>12</sup>  
Curtaisyse assez li rays ly countrefist,  
Et Turbevyle après de jour en jour enquyست  
L'estat de la terre, et sun aler purvyst  
De leu en leu enquere de graunt et de petyt,<sup>13</sup>  
Coment as Englays pout fere tel despyt  
Ke li rays Eduuard sa terre perdesist.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *la volaint*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *Kaunt*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *parfournir*, C. *reformer*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *à provost*, B. C. *al provost*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *hostages*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *à espier*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Eschapa*, A.

<sup>8</sup> *eust*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *Cent livere de tere par un tel*, C.

“ And granted him with scrite tuo  
“ hundreth pounde of lond,” Robert  
of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *qauntz qe*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *nuctauntre*, D.

<sup>12</sup> This line, omitted in A., is  
given from B., C., and D.

<sup>13</sup> *e petit*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *perdist*, C. *perdissist*, D.

Complete the accord, the English willed it,  
If the Germans would give their assent to it.

During the time that the cardinals are interfering  
To restore the peace and make the kings friends,  
Thomas de Turbeville, who was taken at Riom,  
Has so long conferred with the provost of Paris,<sup>1</sup>  
That he has performed his homage to him, and placed  
as hostages

His two sons in ward, and faithfully promised  
To go into England to spy the country ;  
And to say to king Edward that he came as a fugi-  
tive,

Escaped from prison among his enemies.

The provost has agreed to it, and made his writings  
of it,

A hundred pounds of land for this plot ;  
And Thomas pledges his faith to him on the Gospels,  
That all England and Wales and the Marches,  
And all of the kingdom of Scotland who are of worth,  
Shall be subject to Philip the son of Louis.

Listen now how the grace of Jesus Christ  
Warned the noble king Edward of the treason.  
Thomas came into England to the king, and said  
That he had escaped out of prison by night,  
And had encountered this peril for the love of  
Edward.

The king showed him in return courtesy enough ;  
And Turbeville afterwards from day to day inquired  
The state of the land, and provided his journey  
From place to place to inquire of great and small,  
How he could do such mischief to the English,  
That king Edward should lose his land.

Les estat<sup>1</sup> de tote parz<sup>2</sup> tele cum entendist  
 Of les chardinals par un de sons transmyst<sup>3</sup>  
 Al provost de Parys, ke joye assez en fist.  
 Li clerk ke la lettre à<sup>4</sup> Tourbevylle escryt  
 Al plus privé le rays l'entente discoverist.  
 Li lers le<sup>5</sup> aparceust, à fuste<sup>6</sup> tost se myst;  
 Un sergaunt as armes, ke plus près<sup>7</sup> suyst,  
 Le terce jour après le traytour<sup>8</sup> soupryst.

Turbe-  
ville's de-  
signs dis-  
covered.

His cap-  
ture and  
punish-  
ment.

Li traitour est pris, à Loundres remené,  
 Of molt grant fausine ke sur ly fu trové.  
 Choses ke sunt dites quels il ad grauté,  
 Par volunté le rays sunt mys de<sup>9</sup> suth pé  
 Jekes à ço<sup>10</sup> sekle sait autrement chaungé.  
 Turbevyle en court cum traitour est jugé;  
 [Parmi la vile<sup>11</sup> de Loundres primes fu trainé,]<sup>12</sup>  
 Et pus<sup>13</sup> pendu cum lers pur sa malvayté.  
 Pur nostre rays Eduuard molt ad Deus overé,<sup>14</sup>  
 Ore et altre fez, à sa salveté.

Cardinals  
sent to re-  
establish  
peace.

Quant de Tourbevyle est fet<sup>15</sup> le vengeance,  
 Les chardinals de Rome repairent<sup>16</sup> en Fraunce,  
 Ount of le ray Phelippe sovent eu parlaunce,  
 Et sovent requys ly ray des Alemaunce,<sup>17</sup>  
 Et par clers et lays ount fet demoustraunce  
 Al gentil rays Eduuard, ke dure est [la] destauce<sup>18</sup>  
 Dount ly et Phelippe sunt en descordaunce.  
 Par ount il unt fet<sup>19</sup> un tel ordinaunce  
 Ke ly et les ij. rays<sup>20</sup> enverrount sanz targaunce

<sup>1</sup> *L'estat*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *de tot part*, C. *de tote part*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *tramist*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *de*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *le* omitted in B. *Ly leers tost*  
*aparceust*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *à fute*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *prest*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *le Turbevile*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *de* omitted in B. C.

<sup>10</sup> *qe ceo*, B. C.

<sup>11</sup> *la cité*, D.

<sup>12</sup> This line is wanting in A, but  
found in B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *pus* omitted in C.

<sup>14</sup> This and the following line are  
omitted in D., the scribe of which  
probably thought them superfluous.

<sup>15</sup> *fet est*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *reparez*, B. C. D.

<sup>17</sup> *de l'Almaunz*, C.

<sup>18</sup> *est la d.*, B. *la distauce*, C.

<sup>19</sup> *Parount ount-il fete*, C.

<sup>20</sup> *Qe li e li autre*, B. C. D.

The condition of all parts, as he learnt it,  
He sent by one of his men with the cardinals  
To the provost of Paris, who made joy enough of it.  
The clerk who wrote the letter for Turbeville  
Revealed the purport of it to the king's most confidential attendant.  
The thief got a hint of it, and immediately took to flight;  
A serjeant at arms, who followed him nearest,  
Surprised the traitor the third day after.

The traitor is taken, carried back to London,  
With very great treason which is found upon him.  
Things which are aforesaid which he had stipulated,  
By the king's will are placed under foot  
Until the world be otherwise changed.  
Turbeville is condemned in court as a traitor;  
He is first drawn through the town of London,  
And then hanged as a thief for his malpractices.  
For our king Edward much has God worked,  
Now and at other times, for his preservation.

When the punishment is done upon Turbeville,  
The cardinals from Rome return into France,  
They have often had conference with king Philip,  
And often required the king of the Germans,  
And by clerks and laymen have made demonstration  
To the gentle king Edward, that hard is the dispute  
About which he and Philip are in discord.  
In consequence of which they have made such order  
That he and the two kings shall send without delay

The nego- A Kaumbray clers et lays de graunt conoysaunce,  
 tiations at A treter de la pes,<sup>1</sup> et juger la grevaunce,  
 Cambray. Et fere<sup>2</sup> les amendes de la contrariaunce.  
 Le rays Eduuard se assent en bon affiaunce ;  
 A Kaumbray ad maundé, saunz nul delayaunce,  
 Eveskes et barouns de graunt apparaunce ;  
 Les garde de tresoun Deu par sa pussaunce !

English Taunt cum cels seygnurs sunt alez cel messages,  
 troops sent Le counte de Nicole, of tote ses menages,<sup>3</sup>  
 into Gas- Sir Edmoun frere le rays, de gentil corage,<sup>4</sup>  
 cony. Sir William de Vescy, chuvaler prus et sage,  
 Barouns e vavasours de gentil lynage,<sup>5</sup>  
 Chuvalers et seijauns of lur cosinage,  
 Gens à pé<sup>6</sup> sanz noumbre de more et boschage,<sup>7</sup>  
 Et Galays<sup>8</sup> ke sevent combatre par usage,  
 Sunt alez en Gascoyne, [et] entrez<sup>9</sup> en passage,  
 Of xxvj. baneresce del mellieur<sup>10</sup> escuage !  
 Ke fust en Engleterre, salve le vasselage  
 De cels ke or ne fayllent à lur seygnurage ;  
 Kar cels ke sunt remys garder lur heritage  
 Ad le ray requis, et pris en sun vayage  
 Sur le ray d'Escoce et sun fol barnage,<sup>11</sup>  
 Ke al rays Eduuard dedyent lur homage.

Edward in Le primer jour de Marce, en tot le grant orrage,<sup>12</sup>  
 person pro- Vynt li rays Eduuard à trop grant coustage  
 ceeds to A Nofchastel<sup>13</sup> sur Tyne, par<sup>14</sup> le grant outrage  
 Newcastle.

<sup>1</sup> *treter la pes*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *A fere*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *soun menage*, B. C. D. "Of  
 "Lyncoln the erle another, sir  
 "Henry the Lacy," Robert of  
 Brunne.

<sup>4</sup> This line and the preceding are  
 transposed in B. C. D., and in P  
 obert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> The last three words of this  
 line, and the first three of the line  
 following, are omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *al pé*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *e de boschage*, B. C. This line  
 is omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *Gualeis*, B. *Galays*, C. *Galeys*,  
 D.

<sup>9</sup> *e entrez*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Ouf xx. et vj. baners de meillur*,  
 C. *baners de meliour*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *e son fuls b.*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *horage*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *Newechaustel*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *pur*, B. C.

To Cambray clerks and laymen of great knowledge,  
To treat of peace, and give judgment upon the cause  
of dispute,  
And make amends for the injury.  
King Edward assents to it in good faith ;  
He has sent to Cambray, without any delay,  
Bishops and barons of great account.  
May God by his power preserve them from treason !

While these lords are gone on this message,  
The earl of Lincoln, with all his household,  
Sir Edmund, the king's brother, of noble spirit,  
Sir William de Vesci, a prudent and wise knight,  
Barons and vavasors of noble descent,  
Knights and serjeants with their kindred,  
People on foot without number from moor and bush,  
And Welshmen who know how to fight by use,  
Are gone into Gascony, and entered on the sea,  
With twenty-six banerets of the best scutage  
Which was in England, except the vassalage -  
Of those who now fail not to their duty to their lord ;  
For those who are left to guard their inheritance  
The king has called up, and taken in his expedition  
Against the king of Scotland and his mad barons,  
Who have withdrawn their homage from king Edward.  
The first day of March, in all the great storm,  
Came king Edward with very great purveyance  
To Newcastle-on-Tyne, for the great wrong

Ke les fols<sup>1</sup> mastyns ount bracé par folage.  
 Nostre rays<sup>2</sup> sir Eduuard ayt la male rage,  
 S'il ne les preygne et teygne si estrait en kage,  
 Ke ren lur demorge<sup>3</sup> après sun tayllage,<sup>4</sup>  
 For soul le[s] rivelinges et la<sup>5</sup> nue nage.

*Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo vj<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>6</sup>

Robert de Ros<sup>7</sup> de Werk des Englays s'en fuyst,  
 Et<sup>8</sup> of les gens de Escoce à la guere se myst.<sup>9</sup>  
 Ly rays sir Eduuard sun chastel saysist,  
 Sa feste de la Paske<sup>10</sup> i tynt, après s'en partist<sup>11</sup>  
 Devers Berwyk<sup>12</sup> sur Twede, et la vile assist.  
 Le pople maluré al primour surprist  
 Deus navez<sup>13</sup> des Englays, et tuer les fist.  
 Li rays Eduuard l'oyt dire, les portes assaylist,  
 Les fossez passaint<sup>14</sup> les Englays saunz respit.  
 Le vendredi de Paske al relevé<sup>15</sup> conquyst  
 La vile de Berwyk, li Englays i occyst<sup>16</sup>  
 Quatre mil de Escoce, et aukes plus perdist.  
 Chualer un saunz plus sir Eduuard i perdist,  
 Richard<sup>17</sup> de Cornewaile, un Flemang li ferist  
 Hors du sale<sup>17</sup> rouge du quarel ke il tendist ;

Edward  
besieges  
Berwick.

Berwick  
taken.

<sup>1</sup> *les fels*, B. C. *les fals*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *rays* omitted in B. This and the three following lines are omitted in D.

<sup>3</sup> *demore*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *après son daliage*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *à la*, C.

<sup>6</sup> This rubric is inserted from B. C. and D.

<sup>7</sup> *de Reos*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Et* omitted in B. *Et les gentz*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *od le rei se mist*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *de Pasqe*, B. D.

<sup>11</sup> *s'en departist*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Vers Berwike*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *nefz*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *passait*, B. *passait ly Englays*, C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *revele*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *les Engleis occist*, B. *ly Engleis occist*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this passage:—

“ In Pask weke it was, the Friday

“ thei it wan,

“ In the non tyme felle this cas,

“ that slayn was ilk a man

“ That were in Berwik, fourti

“ thousand and mo,

“ Was non of tham left quik,

“ bot alle to dede zede tho.”

<sup>17</sup> *de la sale*, B. C. D.



Which the mad dogs have worked in their folly,  
May our king sir Edward be struck with madness,  
If he does not take them and hold them so close in  
cage  
That nothing remain to them after his taxing,  
Except only their rivelings (shoes) and their bare  
buttocks.

*Anno Domini 1296.*

Robert de Ros of Wark fled from the English,  
And entered into the war with the people of Scotland.  
The king sir Edward seized his castle ;  
His feast of Easter he held there, afterwards he de-  
parted thence  
Towards Berwick-on-Tweed, and besieged the town.  
The ill-fated people at the beginning surprised  
Two ships of the English, and caused them to be slain.  
King Edward heard tell of it, attacked the gates ;  
The English passed the fosses without halting.  
On the Friday of Easter in the afternoon he conquered  
The town of Berwick ; the Englishman there slew  
Four thousand Scots, and some more perished.  
Sir Edward lost there one knight and no more,  
Richard de Cornwall, a Fleming struck him  
With a bolt which he shot out of the Red Hall.

Tost fu la sale prise, le fu en fist tut quit.  
 Le gardayn du chastel, quant la force vist,  
 Le chastel saunz assaut à li ray rendist.<sup>1</sup>  
 William de Douglas dedenz estayt elyt,  
 Et Richard Freser,<sup>2</sup> pur fere al ray despit ;  
 Le ray les ad prisouns, mercy Jhesu Cryst !  
 Li quens de la Marche, Patrik le<sup>3</sup> renomé,  
 A la pes le rays se rendist de gré.  
 Gilbert de Umfrainvile<sup>4</sup> avaunt fu demoré  
 Al rays<sup>5</sup> Eduuard, à ky il fu joré.  
 Sir Robert de Brus, of tote sa mené,  
 Vers le rays Eduuard tynt tuzjours sa fealté,  
 Encountre les Escoz amour l'ad<sup>6</sup> moustré.  
 Kant Berwik fu prise, dedenz estayt trové  
 Or [et] argent assez, des autres metals plenté,<sup>7</sup>  
 Et tote la noblye ke appendayt al cyté.  
 Ly Balliolf ad perdu le issu et le entré  
 De la plus noble vile ke fust en sa poesté.  
 Li rays Eduuard la teent conquis par espé,<sup>8</sup>  
 [Le fet environer de fosse large e lee.]<sup>9</sup>  
 En reprovaunt le Escot, ke ad de ly chaunté,  
 Et par mokerye en Englays rymeyé :

Scottish  
nobles who  
submit to  
the Eng-  
lish king.

Rhymes in  
scorn of  
the Scots.

Pykit him,  
 An diket hym,  
 On scoren sayd he,<sup>10</sup>  
 He dikes, he pikes,<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *al reis Edward rendist*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *E Simon Fresele*, B. C. *Sim-  
mound Fresele*, D. "Symon Fre-  
" *selle ther was*," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>3</sup> *le* omitted in B. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Umfravile*, B. *Umfrayvile*, C.  
*Umfraylle*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Od le rei*, B. *Ouf le reis*, C.  
*oue le reys*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *amour ly ad*, C. *amours ly ad*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Or e argent saunz nambre*,  
*d'autre metals plenté*, B. C. *Or*,  
*argent saunz noumbre*, *des altres*

*metals plenté*, D. *assez*, A., corrected  
in the margin to *plenté*. "Golde  
" and silver thei fonde, and other  
" *metalle plenté*," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> *par l'espée*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in A., but it  
is supplied from the other MSS.

<sup>10</sup> *In scorn seiden*, B. C. D. *In  
hoker seiden he*, E.

<sup>11</sup> *he pikes*, *he dikes*, B. C. D.  
*Nu pikes he it*, and *dikes he it*, *his  
owen for to be*, E. "He pikes and  
" *dikes*," Robert of Brunne.

The hall was immediately taken ; fire cleared it all  
away.

The warder of the castle, when he saw the necessity,  
Surrendered the castle to the king without assault.  
William de Douglas was appointed within it,  
And Richard Fraser, to set the king at defiance ;  
The king has them prisoners, thank Jesus Christ!

The earl of March, Patrick the renowned,  
Of his own will surrenders himself to the king's peace.  
Gilbert de Umfravile had before remained  
With king Edward, to whom he had taken his oath.  
Sir Robert de Brus, with all his followers,  
Held always his faith towards king Edward,  
Has shown him love in his wars against the Scots.  
When Berwick was taken, within it were found  
Gold and silver enough, of the other metals plenty,  
And all the nobility which belonged to the city.  
The Baliol has lost the issue and the entry  
Of the noblest town that was in his power.  
King Edward holds it conquered by the sword,  
Causes it to be surrounded with a wide and broad  
foss,

In reproof of the Scot, who had sung of him,  
And in mockery made rhymes upon him in English :—

Let him pike,  
And let him dike,  
In scorn said they ;  
He dikes and he picks,

On lenche<sup>1</sup> als hym likes,  
 Hu best may be.  
 [And thou has for thi piking  
 Mykille ille likyng,  
 The sothe is to see,  
 Without any lesyng,  
 Alle is thi hething  
 Fallen opon the.]<sup>2</sup>  
 Skaterd be the Scottes,<sup>3</sup>  
 Hoderd in thar hottes,  
 Never thay ne the.  
 Ryth if<sup>4</sup> I rede,  
 Thai tumbed<sup>5</sup> in Twede,  
 Thet<sup>6</sup> woned by the se.

Tant cum sir Eduuard of countes et barouns  
 Fist Berwyk encloure de fossez<sup>7</sup> enviroons,  
 Issuz sunt de Escoce iij. countes par nouns,  
 De Mare, de Rosse, de Menethet,<sup>8</sup> of xl. mil felouns.  
 Estaynt en la route alaunz<sup>9</sup> en tapisouns.<sup>10</sup>  
 Tindal ount destrut en cendres et carbouns,<sup>11</sup>  
 La vile de Corbrige, et ij. religiouns,  
 De Hexhileham et<sup>12</sup> Lanercost, ennentiz par arsouns;  
 Del pople du pays unt fet occisiouns,

The Scots  
 invade  
 Tindale,  
 and burn  
 Hexham  
 and Lanercost.

<sup>1</sup> *On leghe*, D.

<sup>2</sup> These lines are found only in Robert of Brunne.

<sup>3</sup> *Scatered are the Scottis*, B. *er the*, C. *er ze*, D. *Skiterende Scottes*, E. "For scatred er thi "Scottis, and hodred," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>4</sup> *zif*, B. *Rikt yif*, D. "Right "als I rede," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *thai tounge*, C. *thay tumbeld*, D. *tumbled*, E. *tombled*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *That*, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *ouf fossés*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *De Ros, Ascetel, de Menetest*, B. *De Ros, Assette, de Menetz*, C.

*De Ros, Ascetel, de Menetez*, D. "Rosse and Meneteste, Assetelle, "thise erles thre," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *alant*, C. *alaunt*, D

<sup>10</sup> *en tapisouns*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *En passaunt unt destrut en cendres, en carbons*, B. C., which latter reads *e charbouns*. *En passaunt ount destructe en cendres et carbouns*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *De Exilham, de*, B. *De Exilsham e Lavertoft*, C. *De Exillesham, de Lavertost*, D. "Leyner- "tofte and Hexham," Robert of Brunne, according to the edition of Thomas Hearne.

In length as it pleases him,  
How best may be.  
And thou hast for thy picking  
Much ill liking,  
The truth is to be seen,  
Without any untruth,  
All is thy mocking  
Fallen upon thee.  
Scattered are the Scots,  
Huddled in their huts,  
Never do they thrive.  
Right if I read,  
They are tumbled into Tweed,  
Who dwelt by the sea.

While sir Edward with earls and barons  
Was causing Berwick to be inclosed with fosses around,  
Are issued from Scotland three earls whose names are  
Marr, Ross, Menteith, with forty thousand felons.  
They were on their way going in concealment.  
They have destroyed Tindale to cinders and coals,  
The town of Corbridge, and two monasteries,  
Of Hexham and Lanercost, they have annihilated by  
burning ;  
They have made slaughters of the people of the country,

Emporté les bens,<sup>1</sup> enchacé les chanouns.  
 Après la ravye,<sup>2</sup> cum fols et bricouns,  
 They take the castle of Dunbar. Sunt alez à<sup>3</sup> Dumbar à lur confusiouns ;  
 Le chastel unt pris, estendent<sup>4</sup> pavyllouns.  
 Al counte de la Marche estaynt les mesouns.  
 [Le rei Edward l'oit dire, fait fere<sup>5</sup> somons]<sup>6</sup>  
 Dumbar pur rescure, et prendre les larouns,  
 Ke de saint eglise ount fet destrucciouns.<sup>7</sup>  
 The cardinal returns to England. Poy avaunt cel houre, parmy les regions  
 Revynt le chardynal de Kaumbray of respouns ;  
 Et del ray de France, cum après orroums,<sup>8</sup>  
 Sir Emery de Sauvay,<sup>9</sup> quens de graunt renouns,  
 Vynt en la compaynye, et Otes<sup>10</sup> de Grauntsouns.  
 Cil vynt hors de Cypre de ses compaynouns,  
 Ke quant Acres fu prise, la mer as avyrouns  
 En passaunt eschapynt sanz altres achesouns.<sup>11</sup>  
 Avaunt ws ay counté quels mals et quels tresuns  
 Sunt fet à saynt eglise à tort et saunz resouns ;  
 Et oy avez sovent en les saynt sermons,<sup>12</sup>  
 Ke Deus est draitureus en tuz ses werdouns ;<sup>13</sup>  
 Or oyez de Dumbar, ù saunz evasiouns  
 Les enemys Deu sunt pris en faude cum motouns.  
 King Edward sends relief to Dunbar. En le mayns de May le mardy primer,  
 A Berwyk sur Twede oyst le rai parler,  
 Coment les fols felouns ke fesaynt arder

<sup>1</sup> Robert of Brunne seems to have read this *beus*, cattle, for he translates:—

“Thei chaced the chanons out,  
 “ther godes bare away,  
 “And robbed alle about, the  
 “bestis tok to pray.”

<sup>2</sup> *la ravine*, B. *la ravyn*, C.  
 This line is omitted in D.

<sup>3</sup> *Pus aloynt à*, D. A MS. at Cambridge reads *de Dunbar*.

<sup>4</sup> *estendi*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *fet feere les somouns*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> This line is omitted in A., but is restored from B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *France, après en orroms*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Sire Amy de Sauveie*, B. C., which reads the name *Sauwaye*. *Sire Amy de Salvey*, D. “Sir “Amys of Saveye,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *Sire Otes*, B. *Othes*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *altre chesons*, B.

<sup>12</sup> This and the following line are omitted in D.

<sup>13</sup> This line is omitted in B.

Carried off the goods, driven away the canons.  
After the plunder, like fools and rogues,  
They are gone to Dunbar to their mishap ;  
They have taken the castle, and spread out their  
pavillions.

The houses belonged to the earl of March.  
King Edward heard tell of it ; caused his summons to  
be made

To rescue Dunbar, and take the robbers,  
Who have made destructions of holy church.  
A little before that time, through the kingdoms  
The cardinal returns from Cambray with answer ;  
And from the king of France, as you will hear after-  
wards,

Sir Amery de Savoy, an earl of great renown,  
Came in his company, and Otho de Grauntsoun.  
The latter came out of Cyprus with his companions,  
Who, when Acre was taken, the neighbouring sea  
Escaped in crossing without other accidents.  
I have before told you what evils and what treasons  
Are done to holy church wrongfully and without  
reason ;

And you have often heard in the holy sermons,  
That God is just in all his dispensations ;  
Now hear of Dunbar, where without fail  
God's enemies are taken in a fold like sheep.

In the month of May, the first Tuesday,  
At Berwick-upon-Tweed the king heard say  
How the mad felons who burnt

Hexlesham<sup>1</sup> et Lanercost, n'esparynt mouster,  
 Prys avaynt Dumbar, chastel sur la mer,<sup>2</sup>  
 Oû ly quens<sup>3</sup> Patrik tynt sa mulier.  
 Ly rays sir Eduuard par taunt i fist<sup>4</sup> maunder  
 Le counte de Garenne, of tut sun poer,  
 Le counte de Warwyk, et Huge le<sup>5</sup> Despenser ;  
 Barouns et vavassours, chuvaler, esquyer,  
 Surays et Norays, i alaynt<sup>6</sup> de bon quer,  
 Assez de genz à pé et menent<sup>7</sup> al mester,  
 Et venent à Dumbar<sup>8</sup> le chastel asseger,  
 Se attyrent à l'assaut, ne volent esparyner.<sup>9</sup>  
 Les fols feluns dedeynz esparyrent aide aver,  
 Ses sotillent<sup>10</sup> coment les Englays engyner.  
 Sir Richard Syward,<sup>11</sup> ke solayt demorer  
 Of nostre rays Eduuard à robe et à dener,  
 Maunde[n]t<sup>12</sup> par descayte à nos<sup>13</sup> Englays treter.  
 Cyl les vynt<sup>14</sup> et dist ke molt trevolunter  
 Les fra le chastel rendre, si il volent<sup>15</sup> graunter  
 Trays jours de respit, k'il pussent counsayler  
 Le ray de Bayllof,<sup>16</sup> et lur [estat] maunder ;<sup>17</sup>  
 Et si cel heure ne veygne le sege remuer,  
 Le chastel rederount<sup>18</sup> saunz plus par là targer.  
 Hostage par taunt i mette, et fet nouncier  
 Al hoste de Escoce<sup>19</sup> en mesme la maner  
 Cum vus orrez après le fet recorder.

The trick-  
 ery of Sir  
 Richard  
 Siward.

<sup>1</sup> *Exilham*, B. *Exilsham e Lavertoft*, C. *Exillesham e Lavercest*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *sur meer*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Ouf le quens*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *il fist*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Warwik, sire Hughe le*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *il alaint*, C. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>7</sup> *gentz al pé il menent*, C. *il menent*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *al Dunbar*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *reposer*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Se sotile*, B. *Se sotillent*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *Suard*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Maudent*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *od nos*, B. *ouf nos*, C. *oue nos*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *Si les vint*, B. *S'il*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *si voillent*, B. *si volent*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *Baliol*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *e lour estat m.*, B. C. D.

<sup>18</sup> *rendrunt*, B. C. D.

<sup>19</sup> *de l'Escoce*, C. *des Escotz*, D.



Hexham and Lanercost, nor spared any monastery,  
They had taken Dunbar, a castle on the sea,  
Where earl Patrick kept his wife.  
The king sir Edward forthwith caused to be sent  
thither  
The earl of Warenne, with all his power,  
The earl of Warwick, and Hugh le Despenser ;  
Barons and vavasors, knights, esquires,  
Southerns and Northerns went there with good will,  
They lead to the need plenty of foot-men ;  
And come to Dunbar to besiege the castle,  
Prepare for the assault, will not spare.  
The foolish wretches within hope to have aid,  
They study how to deceive the English.  
Sir Richard Siward, who used to live  
With our king Edward at robe and pay,  
They send in deceit to treat with our English.  
He came to them and said that very willingly  
He will cause the castle to be surrendered, if they  
will grant  
Three days respite, that they may consult  
With the king Baliol, and inform him of their con-  
dition ;  
And if at that time he come not to raise the siege  
They will give up the castle without further delay on  
their side.  
Thereupon he gives hostages, and sends an announcement  
To the army of Scotland in the same manner  
As you will hear the fact recorded afterwards.

Informa-<sup>1</sup>  
tion given  
to Bailliol  
by sir  
Richard's  
messen-  
ger.

Li messenger s'en va, et tost aprochayt  
Al ray Jon Bayllof, là où il estayt;<sup>1</sup>  
Lur dist cum ly Syward<sup>2</sup> enfourmez l'avayt,  
" Sir rays, vos barouns demorent en dur esplayt,<sup>3</sup>  
" En le chastel<sup>4</sup> de Dumbar, en chauns les chascait;<sup>5</sup>  
" Kar quant li rays Eduuard lur estre là savayt,  
" Partye de sun host ilokes maunder fesait.  
" Ly Englais, quant [là] vint,<sup>6</sup> le chastel assegait;  
" Sir Richard Syward, ke tuz les conussait,  
" Issist du chastel, et taunt cum il porrayt<sup>7</sup>  
" Pur trewe de iij. jours, li Englays li grauntayt.<sup>8</sup>  
" Par quai<sup>9</sup> la compaynye ke ilokes par ws alayt,  
" A ws, cum à seigneur,<sup>10</sup> aler me comaundayt,  
" Et dire verreament ke home ne seet<sup>11</sup> ne vayt  
" Dunt ws les pourrez vandre, si noun par descait.<sup>12</sup>  
" Dedenz trewe le terme<sup>13</sup> ke le Englais nus<sup>14</sup> grauntait,  
" A demayn cel heure<sup>15</sup> k'em mangeust et bait,  
" Alez de cest part hastivement laundrait,<sup>16</sup>  
" Les voz du chastel ws vendrunt<sup>17</sup> par agayt,  
" Istrount sur les Englays ke lur venir ne crayt;<sup>18</sup>  
" Happez les entre vus,<sup>19</sup> tenez les si estrayt  
" Ke mès en chaump ne venent pur fere les voz sur-  
" fayt.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *A rei Johan e à l'ost qe od li estoit, B. Al rey Johan, et à l'hoste qe ouf ly estait, C. D.*

<sup>2</sup> *Li dit cum sire Siward, B.*

<sup>3</sup> *en dur plait, B. D.*

<sup>4</sup> *En chastel, D.*

<sup>5</sup> *où chance lour chaceit, B. en chance, C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *quant là vint, B. C. D.*

<sup>7</sup> *e tant bel parleit, B. C. D.*

<sup>8</sup> *Qe treu pur treis jours l'Engleis l'otrieit, B. C. Qe trewe pur iij. jours luy Englays ly ottrayt, D.*

<sup>9</sup> *Pur quay, C.*

<sup>10</sup> *com seigneur, C.*

<sup>11</sup> *qe home set, B.*

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in B.

<sup>13</sup> *Dedenz le terme de treu, B. C. D.*

<sup>14</sup> *vus, D.*

<sup>15</sup> *Demein à tel heure, B. tel heure qe home m., D. Robert of Brunne translates it, "To moru in the none " tide, whan thei ere at the mete."*

<sup>16</sup> *hastez vus laundrait, D.*

<sup>17</sup> *vus verront, B. D.*

<sup>18</sup> *l'Engleis qe lour ne creit, B. ly Englays qe lour venir ne crayt, D.*

<sup>19</sup> "lap tham bituex 3ow," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>20</sup> *venent fere à vus surfeit, B. ne venent fere à les vos surfait, D.*

The messenger departs, and soon approached  
The king John Baliol, and the army who were with him.  
He told them as the Siward had instructed him,  
“ Sir king, your barons remain in hard case  
“ In the castle of Dunbar, where chance drove them ;  
“ For when king Edward knew of their being there,  
“ He caused part of his army to be sent thither.  
“ The English, when he came, laid siege to the castle ;  
“ Sir Richard Siward, who knew them all,  
“ Issued from the castle, and pleaded so well  
“ For a truce of three days that the English granted  
“ it.  
“ Wherefore the company who went thither on your  
“ account  
“ Commanded me to go to you as to their sovereign,  
“ And to say truly that one neither knows nor sees  
“ How you can vanquish them, except by deceit.  
“ Within the term of truce which the Englishman  
“ granted us,  
“ To-morrow at the hour when people eat and drink,  
“ Go in that direction hastily thither,  
“ Your people of the castle will see you by their  
“ watch,  
“ Will make a sally upon the English who expect not  
“ their coming ;  
“ Snap them between you, hold them so tight  
“ That they come no more in field to do you damage.

Their ex-  
ultation. " Vous ne avez altre vaye ke valer ws dayt ;<sup>1</sup>  
" Ore armez-vus, si aloums, nul alme se<sup>2</sup> retrayt.  
" De nos<sup>3</sup> enemys,  
" Kant serount pris,  
" Mercy nul en ait.<sup>4</sup>  
" Ferez du braund  
" Northumberlaund,  
" Le vostre ert<sup>5</sup> de drait.  
" Tut Engleterre  
" Par ceste guere  
" Voyliez ke perdu sayt ;  
" Unkes Albanye  
" Par coup d'espeye  
" Fist si bon esplayt.  
" On grene<sup>6</sup>  
" That kynered kene  
" Gadered als gayt ;<sup>7</sup>  
" I wene<sup>8</sup>  
" On summe it es<sup>9</sup> sene  
" Whar the byt bayt."<sup>10</sup>

SirRichard  
Siward  
seeks to  
deceive the  
English. Alayt li messenger al route<sup>11</sup> de raskayle,  
Arenger se comence al fore<sup>12</sup> de bataylle ;  
Sir Richard Sywar[d], ke dona le<sup>13</sup> counsaylle,  
Veent à nos Englays, et dist,<sup>14</sup> " Si Deu me vaylle,<sup>15</sup>  
" Jo vai genz venir<sup>16</sup> de molt graunt apparaylle,  
" Cum batayller vousisent, saunz nombre de pytaylle,  
" Jo voys, si ws loez, fere i<sup>17</sup> destourbaylle,

<sup>1</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *ne se*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Des vos*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *nul n'ait*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *est*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *On the grene*, B. *On grene*, D.

" Ther on that grene," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *als the gait*, B. and Robert of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> " Right, as I wene," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *is it*, B. " was it sene," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> " Ther the bit bayte," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>11</sup> *Au dit la messenger la route*, B. *Al dit le messagere la route*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *à foer*, B. *al foer*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *cele c.*, B. *cel c.*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *les dist*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *m'availe*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *Jeo vei venir gent*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *un*, B.

- “ You have no other way likely to avail you ;  
“ Now arm yourselves, and let us go, let no soul hold  
“ back.  
“ Of our enemies,  
“ When they shall be taken,  
“ Let no one have mercy.  
“ Strike with the sword  
“ Northumberland,  
“ It will be yours by right.  
“ All England  
“ By this war  
“ Resolve that it shall be ruined ;  
“ Never Albany  
“ By sword’s blow  
“ Did so great exploit.  
“ On green  
“ That sharp race  
“ Are gathered like goats ;  
“ I am of opinion  
“ On some it is seen  
“ Where the bit punishes.”

The messenger went to the army of low people,  
It began to arrange itself in order of battle.  
Sir Richard Siward, who gave the advice,  
Comes to our English, and says, “ If God protect me,  
“ I see people coming with very great appearance,  
“ As though they intended to give battle, with innu-  
“ merable foot,  
“ I go, if you approve it, to put an impediment among  
“ them,

He is  
arrested.

“ Ke plus près ne venent ;” le[s] noz dient, “ noun  
“ kaylle,”<sup>1</sup>

Et prenent ly Syward ke plus avaunt n’y ayle ;  
Establyent gardayns al port et al<sup>2</sup> muraylle.

Umfray de Boun le joven tent la<sup>3</sup> garde en baylle,<sup>4</sup>  
Ke aide du chastel lure reregard ne<sup>5</sup> assaylle,

Et mountent les destrers, les brochent al mountaylle ;  
E<sup>6</sup> ke plus tost pot coure, devaunt<sup>7</sup> ly altre saille.

Les Escoc<sup>8</sup> les vait venir, la cowe les torne cum  
quayle<sup>9</sup>

Battle of  
Dunbar,  
and entire  
defeat of  
the Scots.

En enfuaunt s’en vole<sup>10</sup> al vent cum fet la paylle.

Les Englays après les chacent cum owaylle,

Ke fuyst quant vait le low venir de boskaylle.<sup>11</sup>

Ly surquiders Escote<sup>12</sup> quide ke countrevaylle

Le duk sir Coryné<sup>13</sup> ke conquist Cornewaylle.

Des taunz de gens armez<sup>14</sup> mult ayt grant mervaylle

Ke nes un de tuz al fet valt une maylle,

For[s] Patrik de Graham, ke demort et daylle

De l’espeye fourbye, mès tuez est saunz faylle.

Dis mil cynquant et quatre sunt tuez al travaylle ;

Trestuz sunt d’Escoc, le noubre est par taylle.<sup>15</sup>

Cels furent les cheftayns ke demaglerent<sup>16</sup> l’aumaylle

Parmy Northumberland, al chens lessaynt<sup>17</sup> l’entraylle ;

Escomengez estayent de lyvre<sup>18</sup> et chaundaylle,

<sup>1</sup> *non kaile*, B. *noun kaylle*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *à port e à*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *n’eut la*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *laylle*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *leur rereward ne a.*, B. *leur reregarde*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *Et* omitted in B. D.

<sup>7</sup> *avant*, B. D.

<sup>8</sup> *L’escoez*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *La cowe se turne cum quaille*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *En suant se vole*, B. *Et en fuaunt se vole*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Co fust quant veit venir le lou de boscaile*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>12</sup> *Li surquider Escot*, B. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Le duc Corinée*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *De tanz des genz as armes*, B. *De taunz des gentz as armes mult ay grant*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *ai par taile*, B. The last five words of this line and the first four of the next are omitted in D., so as to make only one line.

<sup>16</sup> *les cheitifs ge demagleient*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>17</sup> *à chiens lessent*, B. *as chens lessaynt*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *od livere*, B. *al lumere et al*, D.

“ That they come no nearer ;” ours say “ Care not,”  
And take Siward that he may go there no further ;  
They place keepers upon gate and upon wall.  
Humphrey de Bohun the young has the ward in charge  
That aid from the castle attack them not in the  
rear ;

And they mount their steeds, spur them to the hill ;  
And he who can go quickest, springs before the others.  
The Scots see them come, turn tail upon them like as  
a quail

In fleeing away flies before the wind like straw  
does.

The English after chace them like sheep  
Which flies when it sees the wolf come out of the  
bush.

The presumptuous Scot believes that he is worth more  
than

The duke sir Corineus who conquered Cornwall.  
Of so many armed men it was very great wonder  
That not one of them is worth a farthing in deed,  
Except Patrick de Graham, who remains and fights  
With the furbished sword, but he is slain without  
fail.

Ten thousand and fifty-four are killed in the engage-  
ment ;

They are all of Scotland, the number is by count.  
These were the chieftains who slaughtered the cattle  
Through Northumberland, they left the entrails to the  
dogs ;

They were excommunicated by book and candle,

Pur ço ke à seynt eglise, à prestre ne<sup>1</sup> clergaille,  
 Nent plus esparnaynt ke four ou torraylle;<sup>2</sup>  
 Peché les ad chacé à tel aryvaylle,  
 Ke perduz ount en le chaump les chefs of le oraylle.<sup>3</sup>

Song in  
 mockery of  
 the Scots.

The fote folk<sup>4</sup>  
 Put the<sup>5</sup> Scottes in the polk,  
 And nackeden<sup>6</sup> thair nages.  
 Bi waye<sup>7</sup>  
 Herd i<sup>8</sup> never saye,  
 Of prester pages,  
 To pyke  
 The robes of the rike,  
 That<sup>9</sup> in the felde felle.<sup>10</sup>  
 Thay token ay tulke;  
 The roghe raggy sculke  
 Rug ham in helle.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *qe seint eglise, ne prestre, ne,*  
 B. D.

<sup>2</sup> *qe four en toraylle, D.*

<sup>3</sup> *en champ le chief ovesqe l'oraile,*  
 B. *en chaumpe le chef oveke l'oraylle.*  
 D. Robert of Brunne has abridged  
 the preceding lines, and has pre-  
 faced the English verses with the  
 following —

“The Scottis had no grace,  
 “To spede in ther space,  
 “For to men ther nisse,  
 “Thei filed ther face,  
 “That died in that place,  
 “The Inglis rymed this.”

<sup>4</sup> *Wel wrth a fote folk, That*  
*put the Scottes in the polk, And*  
*paied them their wages, E. Robert*  
*of Brunne reads, “Oure fote folk.”*

<sup>5</sup> *that the, B. putte ze, D.*  
 “putte tham in,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *and nakid, B. nakkend, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *Be wai, B. Robert of Brunne*  
 has, “Bi no way.”

*Bi wode ne bi weie,*  
*Herdi nevere seie*

*Of prestere pages,*  
*To pulle and to pike*  
*The robes of the rike*  
*That in the feld felle.*  
*How ferd the wreches thenne,*  
*The devel I them bikenne*  
*That ragged sit in helle.—E.*

<sup>8</sup> *Her I, B.*

<sup>9</sup> *And, B. D.*

<sup>10</sup> *the dik sonne, B. the dike syonne,*  
 D. Robert of Brunne gives these  
 lines as follows:—

“Purses to pike,  
 “Robis to rike,  
 “And in dike tham schonne;  
 “Thou wiffin  
 “Scot of Abrethin,  
 “Kotte is thi honne.”

<sup>11</sup> Instead of this, B. has—

*Thou wiffin,*  
*Scot of Abrenityn,*  
*Clutid is thi honne.*  
 and D.,  
*Wiffyn,*  
*Scot of Abernithin,*  
*Clut es ty honne.*



Because to holy church, to priest nor clergy,  
Did they show mercy more than to oven or barn;  
Sin has driven them to such a result,  
That they have lost in the field their heads with the  
ears.

The foot folk  
Put the Scots in the poke,  
And bared their buttocks.

By way  
Never heard I say  
Of readier boys,  
To rob  
The robes of the rich  
That fell in the field.  
They took of each man;  
May the rough ragged fiend  
Tear them in hell!

Greatness of the slaughter at Dunbar. Du bataylle ne poygniz<sup>1</sup> fust unkes recordez  
 Ke taunz de genz si tost estayent outrayez,  
 Ne issynt<sup>2</sup> saunz defense les renes retornez ;  
 Corfs unt<sup>3</sup> les cors, les almes à malfez<sup>4</sup>  
 De trestuz ke issint gueres<sup>5</sup> ount guyez !  
 Car de cele part fust unkes une fez,<sup>6</sup>  
 Denz vile ne dehors, un bon fet esprovez,  
 Mès for gopillier et robber les vilez,  
 Arder seint eglyse, tuer les ordinez.  
 Cil Deu sayt loé ke ad Dumbar l'ad vengez !  
 Les countes ke avaynt fet les malveistez,  
 Si tost cum savaynt<sup>7</sup> et furent avysez  
 Surrender of the castle. De la descomfiture sur lour<sup>8</sup> parentez,  
 As Englays, quant repairent, le chastel ount liverez,  
 Et sauns condiciouns<sup>9</sup> els mesmes obligez  
 Al ray sir Eduuard, dount fere ses volentez.  
 Li rays lendemayn i vynt à ses<sup>10</sup> barnez,  
 Disposal of the prisoners. Les prisouns ke sunt pris li sunt presentez,  
 Trais countes, iij. barouns, iij. banerez nomez,  
 Saunz els xxviiij.<sup>11</sup> chivalers adubbez,  
 Of v. vyz<sup>12</sup> gentilshommes ke ilokes sunt trovez ;  
 Deus clers et ij. Pikars par entre els sunt<sup>13</sup> noumbrez.  
 A la thour de Loundres les countes sunt maundeiz,  
 Les uns de[s] barouns les [sunt] associez ;<sup>14</sup>  
 Et<sup>15</sup> à diverse chastels les autres enveez,  
 Par deus et ij. ensemble un hakenay mountez,  
 Les uns en charettes, enfergez les pez.

<sup>1</sup> *De bataile ne de punice*, B. *De bataylle ne punyce*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Ne ensi*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>3</sup> *eient*, B. *eyent*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *les almes seient sauvez*, B. *les almes les maufez*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *qe ensint guere*, B. *q'ensint gweres*, D.

<sup>6</sup> This and the four following lines are omitted in D.

<sup>7</sup> *cum aveient*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *de lour*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *condicion*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *od ses*, B. *e ses*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *E sans eaus xx. et viij.*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Oue xx. v.* C.

<sup>13</sup> *parentre sont*, C. D. "Tuo clerkes, tuo Pikardes ;it were among tho," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>14</sup> *les sunt associez*, B. C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *Et* omitted in B. C. D.

Of battle or combat was never recorded  
That so many people were so soon slain,  
Nor thus without resistance turned their backs ;  
Ravens have their corpses, their souls to the fiends  
Of all those who have thus conducted wars !  
For on that side was never once,  
Within town or without, a good deed shown,  
But only to sneak about and plunder the towns,  
Burn holy church, slay the clergy.  
May that God be praised who at Dunbar has avenged  
it !

The earls who had committed the offences,  
As soon as they knew and were informed  
Of the discomfiture upon their kindred,  
They have delivered up the castle to the English when  
they come back

And without conditions obliged themselves  
To the king sir Edward to be at his will.  
The king came there next day with his barons,  
The prisoners who are taken are presented to him,  
Three earls, three barons, three bannerets of name,  
Besides them twenty-eight knights addubbed,  
With five score gentlemen who are found there ;  
Two clerks and two Pikards are numbered among  
them.

The earls are sent to the Tower of London,  
Some of the barons are associated with them ;  
And the others sent to different castles  
By two and two together mounted on a hackney,  
Some in carts, with fetters on the feet.

En tel plait de karole lur<sup>1</sup> jeu est terminez ;  
 [Parmi Engleterre en totes les cuntrez,]<sup>2</sup>  
 De lur surquiderye à touz jours ert<sup>3</sup> parlez,  
 Taunt cum le secle dure lur fet les ad<sup>4</sup> mokez.  
 For Scottes<sup>5</sup>  
 Telle i for sottes,<sup>6</sup>  
 And wrecches unwar ;  
 Unsele<sup>7</sup>  
 Dintes to dele  
 Tham drohu<sup>8</sup> to Dumbar.

Negotia-  
 tions of  
 the Scots  
 for an al-  
 liance with  
 France.

Ore<sup>9</sup> est tens à dire du compassement  
 Les xij. peres de Escoce, ke quidaynt surement  
 Engleterre destrure, ben ws diray<sup>10</sup> coment.  
 Quant le ray de Fraunce après le dallyement  
 De cel maryage dount fu parlé sovent,  
 Volayt tenir Gascoyne par abbatement,<sup>11</sup>  
 Et le rays Eduuard ilokes maunda sa gent,  
 Et partye par guere sur Frauncays repret,  
 Le ray Jon de Escoce, par l'entycement  
 De countes<sup>12</sup> et barouns, et clers ensement,  
 Ad maundez en Fraunce par commune assent  
 Le eveske de saint Andreu, par ki procurement  
 Frere le ray de Fraunce, Charles nomément,  
 Pur le fiz<sup>13</sup> le ray de Escoce ad fet alyement,  
 Dount marier sa feylle, et après par serement,  
 Frauncays et les Escoz<sup>14</sup> iraynt uniement

<sup>1</sup> *leur* omitted in C.

<sup>2</sup> This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. C. D. Robert of Brunne has here,—

“ Thorghout Inglond men said of  
 “ tham schame,

“ And ther thei were in bond men  
 “ scorned tham bi name.”

<sup>3</sup> *ert touz jours*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *lour fet ad*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *For the Scottis*, B. *Skiterende Scottes*, E. “ The Scottis,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> “ I telle for sottis,” Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *Mikel unsele*, E.

<sup>8</sup> *droght*, C. *droy*, D. *them drof to Dunbar*, E. *Drouh*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *Des ore*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *dirra*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *abatement*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Des countes*, B. D. *De countes e de barons e de clers*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *Pur fitz*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *e Escoce*, B.

In such a style of dance their game is ended ;  
 Throughout England in all the countries  
 There will be for ever talk of their presumption,  
 Their deed has turned them to mockery as long as the  
 world shall last.

For the Scots  
 I reckon for fools,  
 And wretches unwary ;  
 Want of luck  
 In dealing blows  
 Drew them to Dunbar.

Now it is time to tell of the conspiracy  
 Of the twelve peers of Scotland, who thought surely  
 To destroy England, I will tell you exactly how.  
 When the king of France, after the dealing  
 About that marriage which was often spoken of,  
 Sought to hold Gascony by abatement,  
 And king Edward sent thither his people,  
 And retakes part of it from the French by war,  
 King John of Scotland, by the enticement  
 Of earls and barons, and likewise of the clergy,  
 Has sent into France by common assent  
 The bishop of St. Andrew's, by whose procuration,  
 The brother of the king of France, Charles by name,  
 Has made an alliance for the son of the king of Scot-  
 land  
 For a marriage with his daughter, and afterwards by  
 oath  
 French and Scots should go conjointly

Engleterre destrure de Twede jekes en Kent ;<sup>1</sup>  
 Et ke le ray de Fraunce prendrayt aryvement,  
 Quel heure k'il vousist, en Twede prestement,  
 Par ount Northumberland prendraynt sodaynement,  
 Et pus la terre tote saunz nul<sup>2</sup> desturbement,  
 Ne lerraynt<sup>3</sup> homme en vye, pere ne parent.<sup>4</sup>  
 La fause purparlaunce saunz esplayt atent.  
 Le senescal de Escoce est venu fayntement<sup>5</sup>  
 Al rays sir Eduuard, of quant ke à ly appent,  
 Countes et barouns, [et] eveskes playnement,  
 Sunt venuz à sa pes encountre lur talent,<sup>6</sup>  
 Le ray Jon et sun fiz, saunz terre et tenement,  
 Sunt menez à Loundres attendre jugement.  
 Ore ad le rays Eduuard Escoce enterement,  
 Cum Albanak le avayt al comencement.<sup>7</sup>

King John  
 Baliol carried a prisoner to  
 London.

Calays, Yrays,<sup>8</sup>  
 A nos Englays  
 Aident durement ;<sup>9</sup>  
 Dount les Escoz  
 Ount par le[s] noz  
 Enprisounement.  
 Et cele terre,  
 Par ceste guere,<sup>10</sup>  
 Est perdu finalement.  
 Les Walays<sup>11</sup> sunt repairez,  
 Et les Yrays retornez,  
 Al sigle et al vent.  
 Ws Englays [i] demorez<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> à *Kent*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *nul* omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Ne lerreit*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *ne frere ne p.*, B. *ne pere ne parent*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *venu bonement*, B. *venuz bonement*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *tut à son talent*, B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> This line is omitted in B.

<sup>8</sup> *Galeis, Irreis*, B.

<sup>9</sup> "halp douhtily," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>10</sup> *par cel guere*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *Galeis*, B. *Les Galais qe sont*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *i demorez*, B. C. D.

To destroy England from Tweed into Kent ;  
And that the king of France should make arrival,  
At what time he would, into Tweed ready,  
Whereby they would take suddenly Northumberland,  
And then all the land without any hindrance ;  
They would leave no man alive, father nor kinsman.  
The treacherous conference remains without effect.  
The steward of Scotland is come with dissimulation  
To king Edward, with all that belongs to him,  
Earls and barons, and bishops openly,  
Are come to his peace against their will.  
King John and his son, without land and tenement,  
Are carried to London to wait judgment.  
Now has king Edward Scotland entirely  
As Albanak had it at the beginning.

Welsh and Irish,  
To our English,  
Give aid courageously ;  
Whereby the Scots  
Have from ours  
Imprisonment.  
And that land  
By this war  
Is lost finally.  
The Welsh are gone home,  
And the Irish returned,  
With sail and wind.  
You English remain there,

Exhortations to king Edward to judge the Scottish prisoners with severity.

Doucement prier devez<sup>1</sup>  
 Ke Dampnedeu omnipotent<sup>2</sup>  
 Aman recounciller,  
 Et Mardocheum exiller,  
 En regal parlement.  
 Eduuard, parmy tuz<sup>3</sup> vos resuns,  
 Voilliez penser des arsouns<sup>4</sup>  
 Du temple Deu<sup>5</sup> omnipotent,  
 A Hexelesham, où cel host<sup>6</sup>  
 De la croice fesaint<sup>7</sup> rost,  
 Figure de humayn<sup>8</sup> salvement.  
 Herodes i fert, l'emphle mourt,<sup>9</sup>  
 En ceste angusse Rachel plurt;  
 Eduuard, or fa la vengeance.<sup>10</sup>  
 Tu auras<sup>11</sup> jugé, jugez à drayt,  
 Suffrez k'il pend<sup>12</sup> ke pender dait,  
 La lay le volt<sup>13</sup> certainement.  
 La pain est dure et molt cruele,<sup>14</sup>  
 Kar ele est perpetuele,  
 A tuz<sup>15</sup> ke jugent autrement.  
 Vos enemyz or chastiez,  
 K'il ne se movent altre fez  
 En un novel torment.<sup>16</sup>  
 Homme dait mercy aver;  
 Mès à traitur<sup>17</sup> ne dait valer,  
 Iloke la lay la<sup>18</sup> suspent.

<sup>1</sup> *Devoutement Dieu priez, B. Devotement prier devez, C.*

<sup>2</sup> *qe Dampnedieu defent, B. C. D.*

<sup>3</sup> *tuz omitted in B.*

<sup>4</sup> *de arsouns, C.*

<sup>5</sup> *Deu omitted in B.*

<sup>6</sup> *Qe à Exilham en cel host, B. A Exilsham ouf cel hoste, C. A Excellesham, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *feseit, B. fesaunt, C.*

<sup>8</sup> *de un mayn, C.*

<sup>9</sup> *Herodes fert, l'enfant murt. B.*

*Herodes i fert, ly emphile mourt, C. ly emfès, D.*

<sup>10</sup> *E fai jugement, B. Edward, fa le vengeance, D.*

<sup>11</sup> *averas, D.*

<sup>12</sup> *Suffrez pendre qe pendre, B.*

<sup>13</sup> *La lei voet, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *e cruel, B. D.*

<sup>15</sup> *A tuz omitted in B.*

<sup>16</sup> *Un novel turnement, B. C. tournayment, D.*

<sup>17</sup> *Mès traitour, C.*

<sup>18</sup> *les, B.*



You ought gently to pray  
That the Lord God forbid  
To take again into favour Aman,  
And to exile Mardocheus  
In royal parliament.  
Edward, among all your reasons,  
Deign to think of the burnings  
Of the temple of God Almighty,  
At Hexham, where that army  
Made roast of the cross,  
The figure of man's salvation.  
Herod there strikes, the child dies ;  
In this anguish Rachel laments ;  
Edward, now do the vengeance.  
Thou wilt have judged, judge rightly ;  
Suffer that he hang who ought to hang,  
The law wills it certainly.  
The punishment is hard and very cruel,  
For it is everlasting,  
To all who judge otherwise.  
Your enemies now chastise,  
That they rise not another time  
In a new trouble.  
Man ought to have mercy,  
But it ought not to avail a traitor ;  
There the law suspends it.

Verses  
against the  
Scots.

Pur amy ne pur dener,  
Ray ne dait esparnier,  
K'il ne juge owelement.  
Si li rays volt Deu servir,  
La lay ly covent mayntenir ;  
Si noun, il pecche et molt mesprent.<sup>1</sup>  
Pur veir quant Jon de Balliol<sup>2</sup>  
Lessa sun liver à<sup>3</sup> l'escol,  
Desceu fu tremalement.<sup>4</sup>  
For boule bred in his bok,  
Wen he tint that he tok  
Wiht ye kingedome.<sup>5</sup>  
For he haves<sup>6</sup> overhipped,  
His tipet is tipped,  
His tabard is tom.

*De ministris et statutis in Scotia.*<sup>7</sup>

English  
rule esta-  
blished in  
Scotland.

Orgoyl en payse est urtil en herber,  
Ke suztret<sup>8</sup> la rose, et la bout<sup>9</sup> arer.  
Ensint est du Balliol,<sup>10</sup> ke par li duze per  
Perduz ad [le] realme,<sup>11</sup> et va sojourner  
A la thour de Loundres sur autri dener.  
Li rays sir Eduuard Escoce fet garder ;  
Li quens [Jon] de Garenne i est<sup>12</sup> chef justiser,  
Et<sup>13</sup> Henry de Percy ad Galway à guyer.<sup>14</sup>  
A Berwick sur Twede assise est<sup>15</sup> le escheker,

<sup>1</sup> *il pecche e mesprent*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Pur veir Johan le Baliol*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *et l'escol*, B. D. *en l'escole*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *fu malment*, B. *trop malement*,  
C. D.

<sup>5</sup> "Alle his kyngdome," Robert  
of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *has*, B.

<sup>7</sup> This rubric is taken from B.

<sup>8</sup> *surcrest*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *reboute*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *de Baliolle*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *le reaume*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Li quens Johan de Garenne est*,  
B. *Li quens Johan de Garenne i  
est*, C. *Ly quens Jon de Garenne  
il est justicer*, D. "Sir Jon of  
"Warene he is chef justise,"  
Robert of Brunne.

<sup>13</sup> *Et* omitted in B.

<sup>14</sup> *à garder*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *assis ad*, B. C. D.

For friend nor for money,  
 A king ought not to spare,  
 So as not to judge equally.  
 If the king will serve God,  
 He must maintain the law ;  
 If not, he sins and acts wrong.  
 For truth when John de Baliol  
 Left his book at the school,  
 He was very ill deceived.  
 For bale bred in this book,  
 When he lost what he took  
 With the kingdom.  
 For he has overhopped,  
 His tippet is tipped,  
 His tabard is empty.

*Of the ministers and statutes in Scotland.*

Pride in a country is a nettle in a garden,  
 Which overgrows the rose and pushes it back.  
 So is it with the Baliol, who by the twelve peers  
 Has lost the realm, and goes to take his lodging  
 In the tower of London at another's expense.  
 The king sir Edward places Scotland under guard ;  
 The earl John of Warenne is there chief justice,  
 And Henry de Percy has Galway to rule.  
 The exchequer is established at Berwick-on-Tweed,

Et Hüge de Cressingham ilokes est tresorer,  
 Et ly Hamundesham<sup>1</sup> Walter est chaunceler.  
 Le ray pur pes norrir baunk i fet<sup>2</sup> crier,  
 Et justizes cynk la lay à gouverner,  
 Vescountes et baillifs sunt mys al mester<sup>3</sup>  
 Des Englais ke sevent et volent drait juger.  
 La garde est establye si bon et si enter,  
 Ne Flemang ne Frauncis desore n'avera<sup>4</sup> poer  
 Entrer en Escoce, si noun pur marchaunder.  
 De tuz les melz vanez ke dayvent demorer<sup>5</sup>  
 Pris sunt<sup>6</sup> les homages, le ray les fist jorer  
 Ke leaus ly serrynt par terre et par mer.  
 Ke comencaynt la guere et li counsayler  
 Sunt maundeز delà Trent en sewe reposer,  
 Taunt cum la guere en Gascoyne<sup>7</sup> dayt durer.  
 Issint dait li sire ses hommes chastier.  
 Le eveske de Dureme, ke molt fet à loer,<sup>8</sup>  
 En conqueraunt la terre fut tuz jurs le primer;  
 Ne fussent ses<sup>9</sup> emprises et hardiement de quer,  
 Choses ore chevyes serraint<sup>10</sup> à comencer.

Les xii. peres  
 S'e[n] vount à freres,<sup>11</sup>  
 Pur<sup>12</sup> els confesser;  
 Le jugement  
 Ke les atent  
 Porrount il doter.<sup>13</sup>

Order  
 established  
 in Scot-  
 land.

Energy of  
 the bishop  
 of Durham.

<sup>1</sup> *Amundisham*, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates,—

“ Sir Hugh of Cressyngham he  
 “ was chancelere,  
 “ Walter of Admundesham he  
 “ was tresorere.”

<sup>2</sup> *fist*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *à ly mester*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *des ore avera*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> This and the two following lines are omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *Pris unt*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *en Gascoine la guere*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> This and the three following lines are omitted in D., the scribe of which often seeks to abridge.

<sup>9</sup> *ces*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *fusent*, B. *furent*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *Vunt à les freres*, B. *S'en von à freres*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *Pur* omitted in C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Porrount doter*, C. D.

And Hugh de Cressingham is treasurer there,  
And Walter de Hamundesham is chancellor.  
The king to nourish peace causes his bench to be  
    proclaimed there,  
And five justices to administer the law.  
Sheriffs and bailiffs are appointed to office  
Of the English who can and will judge right.  
The guard is established so good and so complete,  
Neither Fleming nor Frenchman will henceforth have  
    power  
To enter into Scotland, except for merchandize.  
Of all those of most account who are to remain,  
Taken are the homages, the king makes them swear  
That they would be loyal to him by land and by  
    sea.  
They who began the war and they who counselled it  
Are sent beyond Trent to dwell in the South,  
So long as the war may last in Gascony.  
Thus ought the lord to chastise his men.  
The bishop of Durham, who did much to deserve  
    praise,  
In conquering the land was always the first ;  
Were it not his energy and boldness of heart,  
Things now completed would be to begin.  
    The twelve peers  
    Go to friars,  
        To confess them ;  
    The judgment  
    Which awaits them  
        They may fear.

Satirical  
verses  
against the  
Scots.

Kambynhoy<sup>1</sup>  
Se tent tut coy,<sup>2</sup>  
Ne volt aider ;  
La sorcerye  
De Albanye  
Ne put valer.  
Andreu est mort,<sup>3</sup>  
Ou il se dort<sup>4</sup>  
Al mouster.  
Le Escote ke fra,  
Kaunt il orra  
Le ray parler  
A saint Edmoun,  
Et de tresoun  
Appeler<sup>5</sup>  
Counte et baroun,  
Ke par arsoun  
Destrut l'alter?<sup>6</sup>  
Plus loynz ne pot,  
Ilokes estot<sup>7</sup>  
Estre cum ler ;

<sup>1</sup> *Cambyn oie*, B. *Kaumbynhoy*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *tynt en coy*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Andreu se dort*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Ou il est mort*, B. C. D. Robert of Brunne, who was perhaps scandalized at the notion of St. Andrew being dead, or even asleep, translates these lines as follows:—

“ Andrew is wroth,  
“ Tho wax him loth,  
“ For ther pride.  
“ He is tham fro,  
“ Now salle thei go  
“ Schame to betide.”

<sup>5</sup> *Le appeller*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *l'autrer*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *l'estut*, C. *l'estoet*, D. Robert of Brunne, after omitting some lines here, alters so much to the end of the paragraph, that I prefer

giving it all as it stands in his translation, to taking only the various readings:—

“ Thou scabbed Scotte,  
“ Thi nek thi hotte,  
“ The develle it breke !  
“ It salle be hard  
“ To here Edward  
“ Ageyn the speke.  
“ He salle the ken  
“ Our lond to bren,  
“ And werre bigynne ;  
“ Thou getes no thing,  
“ But thi rivelyng  
“ To hang therinne.  
“ The sete of the Scone  
“ Is driven over Done,  
“ To London led.  
“ A hard wele telle  
“ That bagelle and belle  
“ Be filchid and fled.”

Cambinhoy  
Holds himself all coy,  
    Will not aid ;  
The sorcery  
Of Albany  
    Cannot avail.  
Andrew is dead,  
Or he sleeps  
    At the minster.  
What will the Scot do,  
When he shall hear  
    The king speak  
At St. Edmund's,  
And of treason  
    Accuse  
Earl and baron,  
Who by burning  
    Destroys the altar ?  
No further can he,  
Thither he must  
    Stand as a thief ;

Et par agard  
Le rays Eduuard  
Determiner.

English  
rhymes on  
the Scots.

And swa may men<sup>1</sup> kenne  
The Scottes to renne  
And werre biginne ;  
Somme is left na thing,  
Bot his rough ryveling<sup>2</sup>  
To hippe tharynne.  
Thair kinges sette of Scone<sup>3</sup>  
Es driven over done,  
To Lunden i-ledde ;  
In toune herd I telle,  
Thair baghel and thair belle<sup>4</sup>  
Ben filched<sup>5</sup> and fledde.

*De unione Angliæ et Scotiæ.*<sup>6</sup>

Merlin's  
prophecies  
of the  
union of  
England  
and Scot-  
land.

Ha, Deus ! ke<sup>7</sup> Merlyn dist sovent veritez  
En ses prophecyes, [si]cum ws lisez !<sup>8</sup>  
Ore sunt les ij. ewes en un aryvez,  
Ke par graunz mountaynes<sup>9</sup> ount esté severez ;  
Et une<sup>10</sup> realme fet de [deus] diverse<sup>11</sup> regnez  
Ke solaint par deus rays estre governez.  
Ore sunt les insulanes trestuz assemblez,  
Et Albanye rejoynte à les regaltez<sup>12</sup>  
Des quels li rays Eduuard est seynur clamez.  
Cornewaylle et<sup>13</sup> Wales sunt en ses poustez,  
Et Irelaunde la graunde à ses voluntez.

<sup>1</sup> man, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *But the riven riveling*, B. *Bot his riven ryveling*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *ous Scone*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *That baghel and belle*, B. C. *and the belle*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Bien filched*, C.

<sup>6</sup> This rubric, omitted in A., is given from B. C. and D.

<sup>7</sup> *O Dieu ! cum*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *sicum lisez*, B. *sicum vous lisez*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *grant mountaigne*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *En un*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *est fet de dous divers r.*, B. *est fet*, C. *de deus divers*, D.

<sup>12</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>13</sup> *et* omitted in D.



And by judgment  
King Edward  
    Condemn him.  
And so may men teach  
The Scots to run  
    And begin war ;  
To some is left nothing,  
But his rough riving (shoe)  
    To hop in.  
Their king's seat of Scone  
Is driven over downs,  
    Carried to London ;  
In town I heard tell,  
Their jewels and their bells  
    Are stolen and fled.

*Of the union of England and Scotland.*

Ah, God ! how often Merlin said truth  
In his prophecies, if you read them !  
Now are the two waters united in one,  
Which have been separated by great mountains ;  
And one realm made of two different kingdoms  
Which used to be governed by two kings.  
Now are the islanders all joined together,  
And Albany reunited to the royalties  
Of which king Edward is proclaimed lord.  
Cornwall and Wales are in his power,  
And Ireland the great at his will.

Edward's  
great for-  
tune.

Rays n'y ad ne prince de tuz les countrez<sup>1</sup>  
Fors le ray Eduuard, ke ensi les ad joustez;<sup>2</sup>  
Arthur ne avayt unkes si plainement les fez.  
Desore n'y ad ke fere for purver ses alez  
Sur li ray de Fraunce, conquere ses heritez,  
Et pus porter la croyce où Jhesu Cryst fu nez.

Ses enemys,<sup>3</sup>

Deus mercys!

Sunt chastiez;

Trestuz sunt<sup>4</sup> maz,

Et pris cum raz

Enlacez.

Il ad coruz,

Et combatuz

Ben assez,

Of deus rays

A une fays,

Et utrayez.

Cely descà

Ore ayle delà

Of ses barnez.<sup>5</sup>

Jon et Thomas

Li lerrout pas

Desaidez.

Chuthbert ly vent,

Ke of ly teent

En ses medlez.<sup>6</sup>

En Deu ws dy,

Merlyn de ly<sup>7</sup>

Ad prophetez.

Trays regiouns

En ses baundouns

Serrout waygnez;

The saints  
who help  
him.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following line are omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *q'ensi les ad justisez*, B. *qe ensint li ad justicez*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Son enemys*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *sunt* omitted in B.

<sup>5</sup> This and the two preceding lines are omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *les medlez*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *le dy*, A.

There is neither king nor prince of all the countries  
Except king Edward, who has thus united them ;  
Arthur had never the fiefs so fully.  
Henceforward there is nothing to do but provide his  
expedition

Against the king of France, to conquer his inheritances,  
And then bear the cross where Jesus Christ was born.

His enemies,  
Thank God !

Are chastised ;  
They are all defeated,  
And taken like rats  
In trap.

He has run about,  
And combated  
Quite enough,  
With two kings  
At one time,  
And overthrown them.

Let the one on this side  
Now go over there  
With his barons.

John and Thomas  
Will not leave him  
Without aid.

Cuthbert comes to him  
Who holds with him  
In his battles.

In God I tell you,  
Merlin of him

Has prophesied,  
Three regions  
Into his power  
Shall be gained ;

Ne sayt blemye<sup>1</sup>  
 La prophecye  
 Par pecchez!  
 Sire<sup>2</sup> Deus omnipotent,  
 A saint Edmoun al parlement<sup>3</sup>  
 Li counsayllez;  
 Et sur li faus<sup>4</sup> Phelippe de Fraunce,  
 Par ta vertu, aver vengauce  
 Li grauntez.<sup>5</sup>

*De parlamento apud Sanctum Edmundum.*<sup>6</sup>

The Par-  
liament at  
St. Ed-  
mund's.

Al burg Saint<sup>7</sup> Edmoun, le jour establie,  
 Sunt venuz les eveskes, of la compaygnye<sup>8</sup>  
 Des ercedenes<sup>9</sup> et clers, ad quels<sup>10</sup> li rays prie  
 Des bens de saint eglise aide et curtaisye,  
 Ensi cum il<sup>11</sup> promistrent auntan en le abbye<sup>12</sup>  
 De Westmouster, par quai li rays de ço<sup>13</sup> s'affiye  
 En soccour<sup>14</sup> de sa guere, ke n'est pas finye.<sup>15</sup>  
 Countes et barouns et la chualerye  
 Pur els et pur le pople li grauntent<sup>16</sup> en aye  
 Le disime dener,<sup>17</sup> et pur la marchaundye

<sup>1</sup> Langtoft's translator, Robert of Brunne, who wrote at a later date, when the hopes here expressed were overthrown, and the Scots were again troublesome, adds on this passage the following reflections of his own.

“ That Pers said,  
 “ Me think it is laid,  
 “ The pes so trewe;  
 “ Now ilk ȝere,  
 “ Bi tymes sere,  
 “ Thei gynne alle newe.  
 “ Jhesu so meke,  
 “ I the biseke,  
 “ On croice that was wonded,  
 “ Grante me that bone,  
 “ The Scottes sone  
 “ Alle be confoded.”

<sup>2</sup> *Sire* omitted in D.

<sup>3</sup> *à parlement*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *sur le rei Ph.*, B.

<sup>5</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> This rubric is omitted in A., but is found in B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *de Seint*, B. C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *od ma companie*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ercediakenes*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *al quels*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Ensint cum els*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *avant en l'abbeie*, B. C.

<sup>13</sup> *en ceo*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *en socour*, B.

<sup>15</sup> This line is omitted in C.

<sup>16</sup> *ly grant*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *Le .xij. dener*, C. D.

Let not be blemished  
The prophecy  
By sin !  
Lord God almighty,  
At St. Edmund's at the parliament  
Give him counsel ;  
And upon false Philip of France,  
By thy virtue, to have vengeance  
Grant him.

*Of the Parliament at St. Edmunds.*

At the town of St. Edmunds, on the day fixed,  
Are come the bishops, with the company  
Of the archdeacons and clergy, whom the king has  
asked  
For aid and courtesy of the goods of holy church,  
According to the promise they made formerly in the  
abbey  
Of Westminster, for which the king trusts to it  
In aid of his war, which is not finished.  
Earls and barons and the knights,  
For themselves and for the people, grant him in aid  
The tenth penny, and for the mercantile class

Le setime parmy à sa tresorye.  
 Et li erceveske, ke teent la primacye  
 Del sé de Caunterbyre, sur repouns estodye,  
 Et par deus eveskes al rays signifye  
 L'estat de saint eglise, ke mout est enpoverye.  
 Li arceveske après al ray va et dye,  
 " Sir, pur Deu là sus, ne te grevez mye,  
 " Pur tute saint eglise je te certefye,  
 " Desuz Deus<sup>1</sup> en terre est nul alme en vye  
 " Ke ad sur saint eglise poesté et mestrye<sup>2</sup>  
 " Fors la pape de Rome, ke teent la vicarye  
 " Ke saint Pere le apostoyle avayt en sa ballye.<sup>3</sup>  
 " La pape est nostre chef, il nus<sup>4</sup> garde et guye;  
 " Estatute<sup>5</sup> ad fet ke durement nus lye,  
 " Sur privacioun de rente et prelacye,  
 " Ke disme, ne vintyme, ne maité, ne partye,  
 " Ad tay ne à ly altre<sup>6</sup> nul de nus ottrye,  
 " Saunz sun maundement en avowerye.<sup>7</sup>  
 " Sur ço solempnement escomenge et maudy  
 " Trestuz les fiz de mere, ke par seygnurye  
 " Asservent saint eglise, ke Deus ad fraunchye."<sup>8</sup>  
 The king's " Sir clers," dit le rays, " tu as parlé folye.  
 reply. " Promesse est dette due,<sup>9</sup> si fay ne sait ublye.  
 " Mès ke jo te vays de [la] bulle saysye,<sup>10</sup>  
 " Ausint tuz les autres,<sup>11</sup> par le fiz Marye!  
 " Ke purryez<sup>12</sup> de ceste aide estre defublye!"

<sup>1</sup> *Qe south Dieu en tere*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *poer ne mestrie*, B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *en baillie*, B. C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *vus*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>5</sup> *E estatut*, C. *Estatut ad-il fet*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *ne à altre*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *e awowerie*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *ad enfranchie*, B. C. *qe Dieus enfraunchie*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *dieu*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *Mès qe jeo vei de la bulle seisie*, B. *Mès jeo te vaise de la bulle*, C. *Mès ke jeo te veysse de la bulle*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Ensint touz li autre*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *Ne purrai*, B. *Ne purrez*, C. D.

The seventh among them for his treasury.  
And the archbishop who holds the primacy  
Of the see of Canterbury, studies an answer,  
And by two bishops signifies to the king  
The state of holy church, which is much impoverished.  
The archbishop afterwards goes to the king, and says,  
“ Sire, for God there above, do not be angry,  
“ I certify thee for all holy church,  
“ Under God on earth there is no soul alive  
“ Who has over holy church power and mastery  
“ Except the pope of Rome, who holds the vicarate  
“ Which St. Peter the apostle had in his trust.  
“ The pope is our head, he keeps and rules us ;  
“ He has made a statute which binds us strictly,  
“ Upon privation of rent and prelacy,  
“ That tenth, nor twentieth, nor moiety, nor part,  
“ No one of us give to thee or to other,  
“ Without his commandement as our authority.  
“ Upon that he solemnly excommunicates and curses  
“ All the sons of mother who by lordship  
“ Put in subjection holy church, which God has freed.”  
“ Sir clerk,” says the king, “ thou hast spoken folly.  
“ Promise is debt due, if faith be not forgotten.  
“ But let me see thee possessed of the bull,  
“ As well as all the others, by the Son of Mary !  
“ You will not be able to escape this aid.”

*Responsio clerici super auxilio petito.*

The arch-  
bishop's  
reply to  
the king.

“ Sire,” dist li erceveske, “ mult trevolunter  
 “ A tay, cum à seynur, volumes tuz<sup>1</sup> aider  
 “ Par congé de la pape, si tu vols<sup>2</sup> maunder  
 “ Par un de tes clers of nostre<sup>3</sup> messager,  
 “ Ke toun estat et nostre porrount<sup>4</sup> moustrer.  
 “ Et soulom ço<sup>5</sup> ke la pape nus fra remaunder,  
 “ Voloums souloum nos eses volunters aider.”<sup>6</sup>

The king's  
reply.

“ Sire clers,” redist<sup>7</sup> ly rays, “ jo n'ai pas mester  
 “ De ço ke tu me dais la pape counsayller.  
 “ Mès si tu voes respit en ço kas<sup>8</sup> aver,  
 “ Fa quant tu vodras<sup>9</sup> tes clers assembler,  
 “ En parlez du promesse, en parlez<sup>10</sup> ent de quer ;  
 “ Après le saynt Hyllere venez à Westmouster,  
 “ Parfournir la promesse<sup>11</sup> saunz plus en parler.”  
 “ Sir,” dist le erceveske, “ pur Deu et saint Rycher,  
 “ Voylliez cy et là tes<sup>12</sup> gens comaunder,  
 “ Ke sunt tes ministres al duzime dener,<sup>13</sup>  
 “ Ke nus ne nos tenaunz ne facent molester,  
 “ Nes nos temporals of les lays taxer.”<sup>14</sup>  
 “ Sir,” ço dist le rais, “ ço<sup>15</sup> n'estot doter,  
 “ Kar ben ne mal ne frount<sup>16</sup> à nul de toun poer.”  
 Noun pur ço li rays li prie<sup>17</sup> et requer,  
 “ Parmy ta dyocise comaundez pryer  
 “ Pur may et les mens,<sup>18</sup> et Deu mercier

<sup>1</sup> nus, B.<sup>2</sup> si tu le voes, B. C.<sup>3</sup> à nostre, D.<sup>4</sup> li purrount, B. The line is omitted in D.<sup>5</sup> E sur ceo, B. C. D.<sup>6</sup> Voloms nous de nostre prester e aider, B. aider et prester, C. Voloms nous du nostre eyder et prester, D.<sup>7</sup> Sire clers dit, B. D.<sup>8</sup> en ceste cas, B.<sup>9</sup> tu vorras, B. C. D.<sup>10</sup> e tretés, B. D.<sup>11</sup> E fetes là respons, B. C. D.<sup>12</sup> ses, B.<sup>13</sup> à xij. dener, C.<sup>14</sup> This line is omitted in D.<sup>15</sup> Sire, respount li rei, de ceo, B.

Sire, respont ly reis, ceo, C. D.

<sup>16</sup> ne male front, C.<sup>17</sup> Noun pur ceo, beau frere, jéo pri, B. Noun pur ceo, beal sire, jéo prie, C. D.<sup>18</sup> e pur les meens, C.



*The reply of the clergy on the demand for aid.*

- “ Sire,” says the bishop, “ very willingly  
 “ To thee, as to our lord, we are willing all to give  
 “ aid  
 “ By leave of the pope, if thou wilt send  
 “ By one of thy clerks with our messenger,  
 “ Who shall be able to state thy condition and ours.  
 “ And according to the message which the pope shall  
 “ send us back,  
 “ We will aid voluntarily according to our capabi-  
 “ lities.”
- “ Sir clerk,” replies the king “ I have no need  
 “ Of thy sending to consult the pope.  
 “ But if thou desire to have respite in this case,  
 “ Cause when thou wilt thy clerks to assemble,  
 “ Talk with them of the promise, talk of it heartily ;  
 “ After St. Hillary’s day come to Westminster,  
 “ To perform the promise without more talking of  
 “ it.”
- “ Sire,” says the archbishop “ for God and St. Richer,  
 “ Deign to give order here and there to thy people,  
 “ Who are thy ministers for the twelfth penny,  
 “ That they cause not to be molested us or our tenants,  
 “ Nor tax our temporal goods with the laity.”
- “ Sir,” says the king, “ that need not be feared,  
 “ For they will do nor good nor evil to any one of  
 “ thy power.”
- Nevertheless the king prays and requires him,  
 “ Throughout thy diocese give orders to pray  
 “ For me and mine, and to thank God

Return of the cardinals and Walter de Langton. “ Ke largement pur nous ad fet scà<sup>1</sup> en arer.”  
 Le erceveske l’ottrie, et fet sun dever.  
 Poy avaunt cel heure revynt le tresorer,  
 Walter de Langetoun, ke fu passé<sup>2</sup> la mer  
 Of les chardinals<sup>3</sup> de la pes treter.  
 Respouns quel il porte put<sup>4</sup> nul home saver,  
 For cels du counsayl, ke ne l’osent<sup>5</sup> reveler.<sup>6</sup>  
 Messagers après vindrent nouncyer  
 Al rays, sir Eduuard, forme de amouurer  
 Du contek du Gascoyne,<sup>7</sup> et fere acorder  
 Li of le ray Phelippe saunz plus guerrayer,  
 Si com les chardinals ount fet ordiner.  
 Li rays Eduuard par taunt ad fet rethorner  
 Walter de Langetoun et Hüge le Despenser,  
 Et Jon de Beruuyk, clerk, averty<sup>8</sup> ber ;  
 Condure les face Deus et ben remener!<sup>9</sup>

*De respectu concessio Scotis.*<sup>10</sup>

The king’s indulgent feelings towards the Scots. Des<sup>11</sup> barouns de Escoce à cel parlement  
 Ne fu resun renduz, ne doné<sup>12</sup> jugement.  
 Li rays est si curtays, de [si] pitouse<sup>13</sup> talent,  
 Et de si graunt mercy, jo cray certaynement<sup>14</sup>  
 Ke sa misericorde serra salvement  
 A cels ke ount la mort deservy playnement,

<sup>1</sup> *pur nous fait de scèà*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *qe passé fu*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Od le cardinal*, B. *Ouf le cardinale*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *queus i porte, ne puit*, B. *quels i port poet*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *qe n’osent*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *relever*, C. Robert of Brunne, in his translation, says here :—

“ Nouthur of som no alle ne wist  
 “ what thei ches.

“ Bot tho that were privé, other  
 “ myght not witen,

“ Tille my maister no me was  
 “ not told no writen.”

<sup>7</sup> *de Gascoyne*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *clerk e averti*, B.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> This rubric, not found in A., is taken from B. C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *Les*, B. C.

<sup>12</sup> *ne fu doné*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *de si pitus*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> This line is omitted in D.

“ Who has done largely for us hitherto.”

The archbishop grants it, and does his duty.

A little before this time returned the treasurer,

Walter de Langton, who had passed the sea

With the cardinals to treat of peace.

The reply which he brings no man can know,

Except those of the council, who dare not reveal it.

Afterwards messengers came to announce

To the king, sir Edward, a form of conciliating

The strife of Gascony, and of reconciling

Him with king Philip without further hostilities,

Accordingly as the cardinals have caused to be ar-  
ranged.

King Edward thereupon has sent back

Walter de Langton and Hugh le Despenser,

And John de Berwick, clerk, a prudent baron ;

May God give them good guidance and bring them  
back successfully !

*Of the respect yielded to the Scots.*

Of the barons of Scotland in this parliament

Was no account rendered, or judgment given.

The king is so courteous, of such charitable feelings,

And of so great compassion, I believe veritably

That his mercy will be the salvation

Of those who have fully deserved death,

Et de fez ataynt<sup>1</sup> felonnesement.  
 La graunt pité de quer k'il ad eu sovent  
 Des felouns de Gales, en parlent tote gent ;  
 Quant plus ad eu à fere pur sun avauncement,  
 Meu li ount la guere, et fet<sup>2</sup> destourbement,  
 Dount ses alez aylliours lesser li covent.

*De auxilio petito e clero supradicto.*<sup>3</sup>

Obstinacy  
of the  
archbishop  
of Canter-  
bury.

Après la saint Hillere, kant li rays quidait  
 Parlement tenir<sup>4</sup> à Londres cum ordinez avait,  
 Noveles ly vindrent par cil ke lors estait  
 Venuz de Kaumbray, et li nunciait  
 Ke la parlaunce de pes se fist pur nul esplait.  
 Pur quai<sup>5</sup> li ray Eduuard demort et se purvait,  
 Par terre et par<sup>6</sup> mer, ke tray ne sayt ;  
 Et ad Westmouster de ses gens envayt  
 Treter sur quele aide la clergye li frayt.<sup>7</sup>  
 Li sire de Caunterbire sur ço se tynt estrayt,  
 Pur ly et pur sa<sup>8</sup> paroche à saint Thomas wowayt  
 Ke nul de sa<sup>9</sup> eglise tayllé plus serrayt,  
 Ne mys en servage, taunt com il viverayt,  
 Saunz maundement la pape, ke gouverner les dait.<sup>10</sup>  
 Li sire de Nichole à taunt se acordait,  
 Olyver<sup>11</sup> le eveske, ke flecher ne solayt.  
 Li rais vers la clergye par taunt se coroucait,  
 Et hors de [sa] pees<sup>12</sup> juger les comaundait ;<sup>13</sup>

King  
Edward's  
quarrel  
with the  
clergy.

<sup>1</sup> *E des fez attaintz*, C. The line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *e fere*, B.

<sup>3</sup> The rubric is taken from B. It is omitted in A., but it is *De conditione auxilii petiti a clero*, in C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *tenir*, omitted in B. C.

<sup>5</sup> *Parquei*, B. C.

<sup>6</sup> *ne par*, B. *Par meere e par tere*, C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *li ferroit*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *li e sa*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *de la*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *le dait*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *Olivier*, C. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>12</sup> *de sa pes*, B. C. D. "Out his "pes did tham deme," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>13</sup> *juger la comandait*, C. D.

And attainted of acts of felony.  
Of the great generosity of heart which he has often  
shown  
To the felons of Wales, all people talk.  
When he had most work before him for his own  
advancement,  
They have raised war upon him, and given him trouble,  
Through which he was obliged to abandon his expe-  
ditions elsewhere.

*Of the above aid sought from the clergy.*

After St. Hillary's day, when the king thought  
To hold a parliament in London as he had ordained,  
News came to him by him who was then  
Come from Cambrai, and announced to him  
That the conference on peace was carried on without  
effect.

Wherefore king Edward remains and provides,  
By land and by sea, that he be not betrayed;  
And he sends some of his people to Westminster  
To treat on the aid which the clergy would give him.  
The lord of Canterbury held himself inflexible on that  
subject,

For himself and for his diocese he vowed to St. Thomas  
That no one of his church should be taxed in future,  
Nor put in servage, as long as he lived,  
Without command of the pope, who ought to be their  
governor.

The lord of Lincoln agreed to the same,  
Bishop Oliver, who was not used to give way.  
The king thereupon became angered against the clergy,  
And ordered them to be judged out of his peace

Mès maintenaunt après cel fet repelait.<sup>1</sup>

The clergy  
relent and  
consent to  
give taxes.

Ço fesaynt les eveskes ke volunté chascayt

Aider à lour seynur, dount recoverir sun drait,

Et saint eglise defendre de hounte et surfayt.<sup>2</sup>

L'elyt de Everwyk, ke pees desirayt,

Dist ke volunters, pur quant ke ly tuchayt,

Dunt saint eglise defendre le quint dener mettrayt.

Des Escotes chaitifs nul alme en parlayt,<sup>3</sup>

Demorez sunt uncore suz garde en autel esplait<sup>4</sup>

Cum avaunt estayent; escotez ke ço dayt.

Alliance  
with the  
count of  
Flanders.

An<sup>5</sup> taunt cum li rays et si<sup>6</sup> counsayllers

En debat estayent of les ordiners,

Ly quens William de Flaundres ad maundé<sup>7</sup> messagers,

Le seynur de Blaunkmount, chuvaler pruz et fers,

Et li sire de Keu,<sup>8</sup> et li tresorers,

Rescayvour de Flaundres, ke volent volenters

Des Englays et Flemangs fere amys enters,

Ke en l'une terre et l'autre, en totes les cousters,

En bon amour et pees pussent les mercers

Aryver of lur merce, et vendre<sup>9</sup> pur deners.

Et quant ly rays<sup>10</sup> Eduuard enhaucera<sup>11</sup> baners,

Li quens et ses Flemengs<sup>12</sup> serrount ses suters<sup>13</sup>

Sur le ray Phelippe et sur les<sup>14</sup> xii. pers,

Ke à tort se deforcent<sup>15</sup> la terre of les maners<sup>16</sup>

Ke ly rays Arthur al duk sire Beduers<sup>17</sup>

Donait en Aquitayne, cum à si<sup>18</sup> botellers;

<sup>1</sup> *cel fait repelleit*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *e de surfait*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *n'i parleit*, B. *i parlait*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *Demorez sunt en garde, tut à lour desheit*, B. *Demorrez sont en garde molt à lour deshait*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *En*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *e ces*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *manda*, B.

<sup>8</sup> "With thre lordes pers of Blankmonte and of Kewe," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *à vendre*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Si li rei*, B. C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *eshaucera*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *e les Flemings*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *ses soters*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *ses*, B. D.

<sup>15</sup> *li deforcent*, B. C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *Gascoygne oue les maners*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *à duc de Bedewers*, B. This and the three lines following are omitted in D.

<sup>18</sup> *com à ses*, B.

But soon afterwards he repealed that act.  
That caused the bishops, who showed willingness  
To give their lord aid, whereby to recover his right,  
And protect holy church from shame and injury.  
The elect of York, who desired peace,  
Said that willingly, for as much as touched himself,  
He would contribute the fifth penny for the defence  
of holy church.  
No soul spoke of the wretched Scots ;  
They are remaining still in custody in the same position  
As they were before ; listen what caused that.

While the king and his counsellors  
Were in debate with the clergy,  
Count William of Flanders has sent messengers,  
The lord of Blancmount, a prudent and bold knight,  
And the lord of Kew, and the treasurer,  
Receiver of Flanders, who will willingly  
Make entire friends of the English and Flemings,  
That in one land and the other, on all coasts,  
The merchants may in good love and peace  
Arrive with their wares, and sell for money.  
And when king Edward shall raise his banners,  
The count and his Flemings shall be his allies  
Against king Philip and against the twelve peers,  
Who wrongfully hold from him the land with the  
manors  
Which king Arthur to the duke sir Beduer  
Gave in Aquitaine, as to his butler ;

Lesquels li rays Eduuard et li rays Henry se pers,<sup>1</sup>  
 Et tuz lur auncestre, tenaynt<sup>2</sup> sça en arers.  
 Li gentis quens de Henaud,<sup>3</sup> et tuz<sup>4</sup> ly Henners,  
 Li duk Jon de Braban, et ses Hoylaunders,<sup>5</sup>  
 Ount par<sup>6</sup> ly quens de Flaundres et ses chuvalers  
 Affermé [l'a]lyaunce<sup>7</sup> cum ses amys chers.

The judg-  
 ment of the  
 Scottish  
 prisoners  
 still  
 delayed.

Overt[ement]<sup>8</sup> ws ay recordé la resoun  
 Pur quai<sup>9</sup> le rays Eduuarde, pur le occupacioun  
 Des bosoynes de Flaundres, ne poet à Saint Edmoun,  
 Ne à Salesbyre, treter de raunçon,  
 Ne salver ne dampner counté ne baroun  
 Du realme de Escoce, pur mort<sup>10</sup> ne pur arsoun.  
 Uncore i demorent suz gardayns en prisoun.<sup>11</sup>  
 Celer ne ws pusse<sup>12</sup> un altre achesoun,  
 Oyez, et je<sup>13</sup> dirray la narracioun.

*De captione Johannis de Sancto Johanne apud  
 Belegarde.*<sup>14</sup>

Disasters  
 in Aquit-  
 taine.

Noveles<sup>15</sup> dolereuse fu lors esparplye  
 En l'ostel le rays, de sa chuvalerye  
 Ke fust en Aquitayne, et dust aver garnye  
 Les chastels<sup>16</sup> de vitaylle et [de] moné partye.<sup>17</sup>  
 Les Mescredy<sup>18</sup> à vespre<sup>19</sup> avaunt la Purifye  
 La sainte mere Deu, glorieuse Marye,  
 Passaynt un pas estrayt, menez par lur espye,

<sup>1</sup> *e sire Henri si pers, B. et sire Henri fitz Peers, C.*

<sup>2</sup> *tindrent, B.*

<sup>3</sup> *Le counte de Hanaud, B. C. D.*

<sup>4</sup> *à tuz, C.*

<sup>5</sup> *et les Holanders, B. C.*

<sup>6</sup> *pri, B. pur, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *l'alyaunce, B. C. D.*

<sup>8</sup> *Overtement, B. D. Avertiment, C.*

<sup>9</sup> *Par quey, D.*

<sup>10</sup> *ne pur mort, B.*

<sup>11</sup> *This line is omitted in B. C.*

<sup>12</sup> *celer vous ne pense, C.*

<sup>13</sup> *E oiez, jeo, B. Oiez, jeo dirra, C. Oyez, jeo vus dirray, D.*

<sup>14</sup> *This rubric is found in B. C. D., but not in A.*

<sup>15</sup> *Novel, C. Novele, D.*

<sup>16</sup> *Ses chasteles, B. C.*

<sup>17</sup> *et de moné partie, B. C. D.*

<sup>18</sup> *Le Meskerdi, B. C. Robert of Brunne translates this as follows, "The Wednesday next at even be-  
 for Kandilmesse."*

<sup>19</sup> *al vespre, C. D.*



Which king Edward and king Henry his father,  
 And all their ancestors, held hitherto.  
 The gentle count of Henault, with all the Henaulters,  
 The duke John of Brabant, and his Hollanders,  
 Have by the count of Flanders and his knights  
 Confirmed the alliance as his dear friends.

I have openly related to you the reason  
 Why king Edward, for the occupation  
 Of the affairs of Flanders, could not at St. Edmund's,  
 Nor at Salisbury, treat of ransom,  
 Nor save or condemn earl or baron  
 Of the realm of Scotland, for death nor for burning.  
 Still they remain there under custody in prison.  
 I cannot conceal from you another cause ;  
 Listen, and I will tell you the narration.

*Of the capture of John de Saint John at Belgarde.*

Grievous news was then spread  
 In the king's household, of his knights  
 Who were in Aquitaine, and were to have stored  
 The castles with provisions and part with money.  
 At vespers on the Wednesday before the Purification  
 Of the holy mother of God, the glorious Mary,  
 They were passing through a narrow pass, led by their  
 spy,

Ke lur dist pur veirs ke en la compaygnye  
Des Frauncays cel heure el pays ne estaynt mye<sup>1</sup>  
For v. cens as armes, de mil et plus mentye.<sup>2</sup>

Defeat and  
capture of  
sir John de  
Saint John.

Sir Jon de Saint Jon, ke sur ço s'afye,  
Se mette en le auvant garde, et baner desplye.  
Quant passé fu le pas, il trovayt enbuschye  
Quynze cens as armes,<sup>3</sup> et bataylle establye  
En quatre<sup>4</sup> granz escheles; et li baroun les escrye,<sup>5</sup>  
Descomfit la primere, se melle of l'autrie.  
Le counte de Nicole, Henry de Lascye,<sup>6</sup>  
Retorna par counsail, la reregard l'ottrie,  
La vitaille est perdue, et la moné ravye.

Death of  
sir John  
de Beau-  
champ.

Sir James de Bealchaump<sup>7</sup> la bataille ad guerpye,  
Of molz de nos Englays de sa couardye,<sup>8</sup>  
En fuyaunt se nayt, allas! la vilainye!<sup>9</sup>  
Sire Jon de Saint Jon combataunt of l'espeye,  
Et xj. chivalers, sunt pris<sup>10</sup> en le estaumpye,  
Et xvij. gentishomes de lour esquyerye.  
En le yssu Israel<sup>11</sup> Egipte fu blemye,  
Et Pharaon naé en sa surquiderye;  
Par pecché perirent Gomor et Sodomye;  
David en sa simplece al mort livra<sup>12</sup> Golye;

<sup>1</sup> *De Franceis u pais cel heure n'estoient mie*, B. C., which latter reads *el pais*. *De Franceis en pays cel oure n'estoynt mye*, D.

<sup>2</sup> Robert of Brunne translates here:—

“ A spie did sir Jon leve that  
“ Frankis oste non was,  
“ Namely in that pas that he suld  
“ lede tham bi;  
“ He lied, that Judas, ten thou-  
“ sand were redi.”

<sup>3</sup> *Quynze mil as armes*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Et quatre*, A.

<sup>5</sup> *l'escrye*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *de Lucie*, B. *Lascye*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *de Beauchamp*, B. *de Beel-*

*chaump la gwere ad*, C. *De Beel-*  
*chaumpe*, D.

<sup>8</sup> This line is omitted in B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *En fuant fu naez chacez par maladie*, *De mortel plaie*, noun pas par cowardie, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *Chivalers unze sunt pris*, B. *E chevalers xj.*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *de Israel*, B. C. This and the eighteen following lines are omitted in D. Robert of Brunne introduces these historical exemplifications with the two lines following:—

“ Boste and deignouse pride, and  
“ ille avisement,  
“ Mishapnes often tide, and dos  
“ many be schent.”

<sup>12</sup> *liverait*, C.

Who tells them for truth that in the company  
Of the French at that time in the country were no  
more

Than five hundred men-at-arms, having lied by a thou-  
sand and more.

Sir John de Saint John, who trusts in that,  
Places himself in the van-guard, and displays his  
banner.

When the pass was passed, he found in ambush  
Fifteen hundred men-at-arms, and battle formed  
In four great squadrons ; and the baron raises the cry  
upon them,

Discomfits the first, and engages the rest.

The earl of Lincoln, Henry de Lacy,

Returned by advice, the rear-guard agrees to it,

The provision is lost, and the money plundered.

Sir James de Beauchamp has abandoned the battle,

With many of our English of his cowardice,

In flying he is drowned, alas ! the disgrace !

Sir John de Saint John, combating with the sword,

And eleven knights, are taken in the flight,

And eighteen gentlemen of their esquier.

In the departure of Israel, Egypt was disgraced,

And Pharaoh drowned in his presumption ;

Through sin perished Gomorrah and Sodom ;

David in his youthful age delivered Goliath to death ;

Examples  
of political  
misfor-  
tunes.

Lucys ly emperour fu mort par covaytye ;  
Joseph, le fiz Jacob, fu vendu par envye ;<sup>1</sup>  
Et li rays Arthur surpris par tricherye,  
Et Modred demaglé pur<sup>2</sup> sa reverye ;  
Kaduualdre pur poverte wayna<sup>3</sup> Brettaynye,  
Par poer l'enchacaint<sup>4</sup> les genz de Germenye ;  
Après à tort le tynt<sup>5</sup> Haralde le fiz Godwye,  
Ke en sun an primer perdist seygnurye ;  
William le Conquerour le conquist par espeye.<sup>6</sup>  
[Lewelin jadis prince de la Walescherie,  
E David son frere, unt perdu manantie,  
Cil od le lunge jambes de tut est<sup>7</sup> seisie.]<sup>8</sup>  
Le ray Jon de Balliolf ad perdu par folye,<sup>9</sup>  
Pur li et pur ses heirs, le regne de Albanye.<sup>10</sup>  
Allas ! ke nul homme par altre se chastye !  
O<sup>11</sup> riche rays Eduuard ! pur Deu, eyez mercye ;  
Ne suffrez poynt<sup>12</sup> perir la graunt genturye<sup>13</sup>  
De cels ke sunt remys conquere Aquytanye.  
Hastez ws laundrait, le pople vus surcrye ;<sup>14</sup>  
Acordez of<sup>15</sup> le eglise et of la clergie,  
Et Thomas de Kent, et Jon de Beverlye,  
Et Cuthbert de Dureme, te vendront en aye.  
Kar, si tu n'as de Deu ayde en longanye,<sup>16</sup>

Edward  
advised to  
be recon-  
ciled with  
the church.

<sup>1</sup> This line and the preceding are transposed in B. C.

<sup>2</sup> *par*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *par poverte weina*, B. *Cudwald par povert waina*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *le chacaint*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *qe tint*, B. *la tynt Harald fitz Godwie*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *la conquist par mestrie*, B. C.

<sup>7</sup> *ouf les longes jambes de tot en est*, C.

<sup>8</sup> These three lines are found only in B. and C.

<sup>9</sup> *par sa folie*, B.

<sup>10</sup> This line is omitted in C.

<sup>11</sup> *Ore*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *Ne suffrez pas*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *gentylerye*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *sur vus crie*, B. Robert of Brunne, omitting the exhortation to be reconciled with the church, renders this:—

“Edward, do turne the rother,

“and fare over the se,

“And socoure tho that are ;it in

“Gascoyn left,

“Ne late tham not misfare, ne

“ther powere be refst.”

<sup>15</sup> *Acordez vus od*, B.

<sup>16</sup> *Car si ne eis aide de Dieu en cel agonie*, B. *en le agonie*, C. D.

Lucius the emperor died through covetousness ;  
Joseph, son of Jacob, was sold through envy ;  
And king Arthur surprised through treachery,  
And Modred slaughtered through his madness ;  
Cadwallader for poverty lost Britain,  
By force the people of Germany drove him from it ;  
Afterwards Harold, son of Godwin, held it wrongfully,  
Who in his first year lost the lordship ;  
William the Conqueror acquired it by the sword.  
Llewellyn, formerly prince of the Welshery,  
And David his brother, have lost their lordship ;  
He with the long shanks is seised of all.  
King John de Baliol has lost by folly,  
For himself and his heirs, the kingdom of Albany.  
Alas ! that no man corrects himself by the example  
of another !  
Oh, rich king Edward ! for God, have mercy ;  
Suffer not to perish the great nobility  
Of those who are left to conquer Aquitaine.  
Haste you thither, the people appeals to you ;  
Be reconciled with the church and with the clergy,  
And Thomas of Kent, and John of Beverley,  
And Cuthbert of Durham, will come to thee in aid.  
For, if thou hast not aid of God in the struggle,

Pur kant ke tu fras<sup>1</sup> ne doray un alye.  
 Sur cil ke Deu mayns ayme cherra<sup>2</sup> l'acravauntye.  
 En guere et en bataylle<sup>3</sup> Deu dona jadye  
 Honor et victorye al fiz Mathatye;<sup>4</sup>  
 Ausint le fet<sup>5</sup> à tuz ke plus ly sunt amye.  
 Le Prince ke morust en mount de Calvarye  
 Ayme<sup>6</sup> li rays Eduuard et sa baronye.  
 Recorder m'estoyt la controversye,  
 Après ws parleray de la forsanerye<sup>7</sup>  
 Du<sup>8</sup> remisaylle de Escoce, de<sup>9</sup> Dampnedeu maldye.<sup>10</sup>

*De transfretatione regis supradicti in Flandriam, anno  
 graticæ<sup>11</sup> millesimo ducentesimo nonagesimo vj<sup>o</sup>.<sup>12 13</sup>*

The king  
 prepares to  
 embark for  
 Flanders.

Après la sainte feste de l'Assencioun,  
 Maunda le rays Eduuard parmy sa regioun  
 Ad erceveske, eveske, à counte, et ad baroun,<sup>14</sup>  
 Et ad tuz li altre ke ount pur<sup>15</sup> garysoun  
 Vynt livre de terre en possessioun,<sup>16</sup>  
 Venir à sa court à fere<sup>17</sup> redempcioun,  
 Ou passer of sun cors sur li Frauncays feloun,  
 Ke à tort li deforcent sa terre<sup>18</sup> de Gascoun.

The barons  
 resist his  
 claims on  
 them.

Les barouns en parlent, les uns dyent ke noun,  
 Car fere novele<sup>19</sup> servise saunz condicioun

<sup>1</sup> *quange tu fus ne durra*, C.  
<sup>2</sup> *charra*, B. This line and the  
 five which follow are omitted in D.  
<sup>3</sup> *gueses e batailes*, B. C.  
<sup>4</sup> *de Matathie*, B.  
<sup>5</sup> *Ausi fet à touz*, C.  
<sup>6</sup> *A vu*, B.  
<sup>7</sup> *forcenerye*, D.  
<sup>8</sup> *De*, C.  
<sup>9</sup> *ke Dampne Dieu*, D.  
<sup>10</sup> *maladye*, C.  
<sup>11</sup> *Domini*, C.  
<sup>12</sup> *nonagesimo vij<sup>o</sup>*, C.

<sup>13</sup> This rubric is given from B. C.  
<sup>14</sup> *A ercevesques, evesques, counte, e  
 baron*, B. *à count e baroun*, C.  
*evesqe, count, et à baroun*, D.  
<sup>15</sup> *par*, B.  
<sup>16</sup> Robert of Brunne translates  
 these lines:—  
 “and other that thei found,  
 “That ilk zere mot dispende of  
 “londes twenty pound.”  
<sup>17</sup> *court fere*, C.  
<sup>18</sup> *la tere*, B. C. D.  
<sup>19</sup> *Car par novel*, B.

For all thou wilt do I would not give a garlic.  
Upon him whom God loves least will fall the ruin.  
In war and in battle God gave formerly  
Honour and victory to the son of Matathias;  
So he does to all who are most dear to him.  
The Prince who died on the mount of Calvary  
Loves king Edward and his barons.  
I was obliged to relate the controversy,  
Afterwards I will talk to you of the folly  
Of the remnant of Scotland, accursed of the Lord.

*Of the passage of the above-named king into Flanders,  
A.D. 1296.*

After the holy feast of the Ascension,  
King Edward sent through his kingdom  
To archbishop, bishop, to earl, and to baron,  
And to all the others who have for maintenance  
Twenty pounds of land in possession,  
To come to his court and make redemption,  
Or proceed with his body against the felonious French,  
Who wrongfully hold from him his land of Gascony.  
The barons converse on it; some say no,  
For to do new service without condition

Serrait pur coustoume<sup>1</sup> desheretisoun.  
 And join the clergy. Li sire de Caunterbire mettent à resoun,  
 Li prient de counsayl en la dissensioun.<sup>2</sup>  
 Et cil pur sainte<sup>3</sup> eglyse se profre champyoun,  
 Et vait al parlement abataunt cum leoun.  
 Edward's expostulation with them. Ly rays lors les parle,<sup>4</sup> et dist en sun sermoun,  
 " Jo suy chastel pur ws, et mur, et mesoun,  
 " Et ws la barbecane, et porte, et pavylloun;<sup>5</sup>  
 " Ma terre de Gascoyne est perdu par tresoun,  
 " Recoverer la m'estot, ou perdre accioun,<sup>6</sup>  
 " Le aler ay enpris, la voue<sup>7</sup> ay fet en soun;  
 " Passer of may covent chescun de ws par noun,  
 " De ço nul alme se escuse par evasioun."  
 The archbishop replies. " Sir," dist le erceveske, " à ta perdicioun  
 " Vols-tu guere enprendre, saunz correccioun  
 " Devotement parfere de l'offensioun<sup>8</sup>  
 " Ke tu as fet sovent, par ta mesprisioun,  
 " A Deu et ad sainte eglise,<sup>9</sup> et ad religioun?  
 " Oyez tun trespas pur ta salvacioun,  
 " Et fetes les amendes, et pryiez de pardoun  
 " Vers Deu et sainte eglise, et sachez, si noun,<sup>10</sup>  
 " A tay et ad tuz ly altre de la nacioun,<sup>11</sup>  
 " Suspens le passage sur la maleyçoun<sup>12</sup>  
 " De cyl ke pur nus tuz suffry passioun."

<sup>1</sup> *par coustome*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *la discessioun*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *de seint*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *les parole*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *barbicane, i portez pavilloun*, C.

Robert of Brunne has, some way or other, marvellously misunderstood this line, which he translates as follows:—

" And ȝe als naked berd loken in  
 " pavilloun,

" That to fight is ferd, or ȝate  
 " that first is doun."

Is it possible that a writer of the fourteenth century should not know what a barbacan was?

<sup>6</sup> *ou perdre amoun*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Ke l'aler ay empris le voue*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *tel offensioun*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *e seint eglise*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *eglise, par satisfaccioun*, B. C.

D.

<sup>11</sup> *Ou à toy à touz de la nacion*, B.

C. *A tay et à touz de la nacioun*,

D.

<sup>12</sup> *malisoun*, C.



Would be disinheritance by custom.

They consult with the lord of Canterbury ;

Ask him for advice in the dispute,

And he offers himself as a champion for holy church,

And he goes to the parliament, bearing down upon  
them like a lion.

The king then addresses them, and says in his speech,

“ I am castle for you, and wall, and house,

“ And you the barbican, and gate, and pavilion ;

“ My land of Gascony is lost through treason,

“ I must recover it, or lose my process.

“ I have undertaken the expedition, I have finally  
“ made the vow ;

“ It is the duty of each of you by name to pass with  
“ me,

“ Of that not a soul has excuse by evasion.”

“ Sire,” says the archbishop, “ to thy perdition

“ Wilt thou undertake war without correction

“ Performing devoutly for the offence

“ That thou hast often done, by thy misbehaviour,

“ To God, and to holy church, and to the clergy ?

“ Listen to thy trespass for thy salvation,

“ And make amends, and pray for pardon

“ To God and holy church, by satisfaction

“ For thee and for all the others of the nation.

“ Suspend the passage, upon the curse

“ Of him who suffered passion for us all.”

Protest of  
the earl  
Marshal.

Après ly erceveske, ly quens Marchal Roger  
Vers ly rays Eduuard comença parler ;  
Respyt demaundait et tens en<sup>1</sup> counsayler ;  
Ly dist ke les barouns, ne nul de lur poer,  
Ne de lur homage, dayvent outre mer,  
Si noun à ses coustages par covenant, passer.  
Li rays prist la parole irousement al quer,<sup>2</sup>  
Harougement parlayt,<sup>3</sup> respit ne volt graunter,<sup>4</sup>  
Comaundayt ly quens<sup>5</sup> say apparayller,  
Kar vousist ou noun le estoverayt aler,  
Ou de la marchalcye le office<sup>6</sup> là lesser.  
Ly quens Roger respount, ke de si leger  
Ne quidera<sup>7</sup> sun office ilokes resigner ;  
Et hors du court s'en part saunz plus<sup>8</sup> par là dayller.

He is de-  
prived of  
the mar-  
shalship.

Geffray de Genevile ly rays fet lors<sup>9</sup> maunder,  
Et à la<sup>10</sup> marchalcye<sup>11</sup> la verge presenter,  
Et sur ço comaunde ses privez genz armer,  
Et bye<sup>12</sup> lendemayn les barouns arester.

The bishop  
of Durham  
interferes.

Ly quens Marchal l'oit dire, se fet aprester,  
Of countes et barouns, ly rays à refrener ;<sup>13</sup>  
Et issint, cum medlé<sup>14</sup> devait comencer,  
Survent<sup>15</sup> le eveske Auntoyne, et vait al ray moustrer  
Quel mal et quel peril li purrount encumbrier,  
Si ly et ses barouns devaynt<sup>16</sup> descorder.

<sup>1</sup> *demander, e temps de, B. en ce conceyller, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *irousoument à quier, B. irrousement al quer, C. D. Robert of Brunne translates these two lines :—*

“ The kyng his wordes toke  
“ wraathfully tille herte,  
“ For ire nere he quoke, and  
“ ansuerd him fulle smerte.”

<sup>3</sup> *parla, B.*

<sup>4</sup> *ne volayt granter, D.*

<sup>5</sup> *Comaunda al quens, B. Comaundait al quens, C. D.*

<sup>6</sup> *Ou du marchaucie l'office, B.*

<sup>7</sup> *Ne quidoit, B.*

<sup>8</sup> *plus omitted in B.*

<sup>9</sup> *lors omitted in C.*

<sup>10</sup> *E de la, B.*

<sup>11</sup> *à la marchie, C. “ And of the marschalcie presented him the “ zerde,” Robert of Brunne.*

<sup>12</sup> *E bien, B.*

<sup>13</sup> *le rei refrener, B. ly reis affrener, C.*

<sup>14</sup> *Ensint cum la medlé, B. C. D.*

<sup>15</sup> *Survynt, D.*

<sup>16</sup> *deivent, B. D.*

After the archbishop, Roger, the earl Marshal,  
Began to speak to king Edward ;  
He demanded respite, and time to consult about it ;  
He told him that the barons, nor any one of their  
power,

Nor of their homage, owe beyond sea  
To pass, except at his cost by agreement.  
The king took the speech angrily to heart,  
Spoke haughtily, would not grant respite ;  
Commanded the earl to equip himself,  
For, whether he would or not, he must go,  
Or quit there the office of the marshalship.  
Earl Roger replies that so lightly  
He will not think of there resigning his office ;  
And out of the court he departs without further  
dealing there.

The king then sends for Geoffrey de Genevile  
And presents to him the rod of the marshalship,  
And thereupon orders his familiars to arm,  
And intends on the morrow to arrest the barons.  
The earl Marshal hears tell of it, makes himself ready,  
With earls and barons, to restrain the king ;  
And thus, as battle was at the point of beginning,  
Bishop Anthony arrives, and proceeds to show the  
king

What evil and what peril may fall upon him,  
If he and his barons were to disagree.

King  
Edward  
sails for  
Flanders.

Pus le eveske Auntoyn al barouns va prier<sup>1</sup>  
Ke ad lur seygnur lige se deygnet plyer,<sup>2</sup>  
Sicom<sup>3</sup> de lur aide or en ad mester.  
Les barouns en parlent, et fount respouns arer<sup>4</sup>  
Par peticiouns de diverse maner,  
Et ke à Saint Alban vendrount<sup>5</sup> volunter,  
Of ly rays Eduuard sur ço<sup>6</sup> parlementer,  
Si of sun counsayl i voylle<sup>7</sup> decliner.  
Le ray sire Eduuard ne pot demorer,  
Ses alyez delà l'estot<sup>8</sup> visiter,  
Saunz compaygnye de counte sigle fet lever  
Et va sodaynement en Flaundres aryver.  
Unkes tel seygnur fu servy sça en arer  
Issint de sun pople, kant devait guerrayer.  
Trop est recreaunt ke se recolt arer,  
Kant vait sun seygnur en peril<sup>9</sup> aler.

*Coment l'avauntdit Edward ariva en Flandres.*<sup>10</sup>

Les countes demoraynt, ly rays Edward passait ;  
Escotez ore coment en Flaundres aryvait ;  
De vins et de viaundes son attret<sup>11</sup> estait

<sup>1</sup> *Pus va 'evesqe Auntoyne les barons prier*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *replier*, B. C. *qe deygnet replier*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *De si com*, C. *Desicum*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *respouns doner*, B. C.

<sup>5</sup> *vendrent*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *pur ceo*, B. C.

<sup>7</sup> *il voille*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *delà là estoit*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *en tiel peril*, B. *son seignur vers de le peris mover*, C. *vers tel peril mover*, D. It may be remarked that these four lines are altogether omitted by Robert of Brunne, who perhaps disagreed in the sentiments they

contain; for he has, a few lines further on, inserted in his translation some remarks which appear intended to have a rather opposite tendency:—

“ Now is Edward arived in  
“ Flanders, bot with fo,

“ With his barons he strived, with  
“ him wild non go.

“ A kyng that strives with hise,  
“ he may not wele spede,

“ Where so he restis or rives he  
“ lyves ay in drede.”

<sup>10</sup> This rubric is taken from B.

<sup>11</sup> *e viandes son atret*, B. *Des vins et des viaundes son attret*, D.

Then bishop Anthony goes to beg of the barons  
That they will deign to bend to their liege lord,  
Inasmuch as he has now need of their aid.  
The barons consult on it, and send back their reply  
By petitions of diverss manner,  
And that they will willingly come to St. Albans,  
To hold a conference with king Edward upon it,  
If he will go down there with his council.  
The king sire Edward cannot wait ;  
It was necessary he should visit his allies beyond sea.  
He raises his sail without company of earl,  
And goes suddenly to arrive in Flanders.  
Never in time back was such a sovereign served  
Thus by his people, when he was going to make war.  
He is too cowardly who draws back  
When he sees his lord going into danger.

*How the aforesaid Edward arrived in Flanders.*

The earls remained, king Edward crossed the sea ;  
Now listen how he arrived in Flanders :  
Of wines and meats his depôt was

Establishes himself at Bruges. En la vile de Bruges,<sup>1</sup> où il se herbegait.  
 Humayne salveour, ke tut seet et vait,  
 De graunt encombrement illokes ly salvait.  
 Le provost de la vile desheriter beayt<sup>2</sup>  
 Le counte son seigneur lige, ke Flaundres gouvernait;  
 Al ray Phelippe de Fraunce, ke countre ly guerrait,  
 Sa lettre privéement par messagers<sup>3</sup> envait,  
 Li dist quel heure à Bruges aprocher vodrait,<sup>4</sup>  
 Tute la commune la vile ly rendrait,<sup>5</sup>  
 Ly rays Eduuard ilokes sodainement prendrait,  
 Ensint ke nule part<sup>6</sup> ayllours eschaperait.

Plot to deliver him to the king of France. Ly rays Phelippe de Fraunce<sup>7</sup> meintenaunt le otrait;  
 Vers la vile de Bruges<sup>8</sup> son hoste apparaylait.  
 Ly rays Eduuard [l']oyt<sup>9</sup> dire et parler de descait,  
 Fet trumper as harmes, et son aler purvait

He escapes to Ghent. Au noble burghe de Gaunt, où venir quidait<sup>10</sup>  
 Ly rays des Alemaunz, ke son<sup>11</sup> aver avait  
 Pur aider en la guerre taunt cum ele durait.<sup>12</sup>  
 Ly rays des Alemaunz ilokes ly maundait,  
 Souspris<sup>13</sup> estoit de guerre, dont venir ne poait.  
 Allas! ke tel<sup>14</sup> prince fay mentu estre dait!  
 Ly rays Edward demort, e mangust<sup>15</sup> et bayt;  
 Ses Walays issirent sovent à surfait.  
 Ly querw<sup>16</sup> counte de Bar entrechevauchait,

<sup>1</sup> *Briges*, B. *Burges*, C. D.  
 Robert of Brunne translates it,

“His vitaille he has purveid in  
 “Brigges for to be,  
 “His wynes were ther leid, and  
 “warnised that cité.”

<sup>2</sup> *bieit*, B. “The provest of the  
 “toun, a wik traytour and cherle,”  
 Robert of Brunne.

<sup>3</sup> *par messangers privéement*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *à Burgh aprocher volait*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *De tote la vile la comune li rendreit*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *q'en nul part*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Philip rei de France*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *de Burge*, B. *de Burgh*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *Poit dire*, B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> Robert of Brunne has added some lines here to inform us how king Edward became acquainted with his danger, and how he escaped it.

<sup>11</sup> *ke le soen*, C.

<sup>12</sup> *tant cum il savoit*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Que suspris*, B. C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *cel*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *manju*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *Li querru*, B. C. D.

In the town of Bruges, where he lodged.  
The Saviour of mankind, who knows and sees all things,  
There saved him from great disaster.  
The provost of the town aimed at depriving of his  
heritage  
The earl his liege lord, who ruled Flanders ;  
To king Philip of France, who was at war with him,  
He sends his letter privately by messengers ;  
Tells him at whatever hour he would approach Bruges,  
All the commune would deliver the town up to him,  
And that he would there take king Edward suddenly,  
So that he would escape nowhere else.  
King Philip of France at once agrees to it ;  
He marshalled his army towards the town of Bruges.  
King Edward heard tell of it and talk of deceit,  
Ordered to trumpet to arms, and made preparation for  
his departure  
To the noble burgh of Ghent, where he expected to  
come  
The king of the Germans, who had his money  
To aid in the war so long as it lasted.  
The king of the Germans sent word to him there,  
That he was overtaken by war, through which he  
could not come.  
Alas ! that such a prince should belie his faith !  
King Edward remains, and eats and drinks ;  
His Welsh issued forth often for plunder.  
The warlike count of Bar rode out with them,

Petty warfare between the English and French. Et sur ly ray de Fraunce e court et robbayt ;<sup>1</sup>  
 Ses marchés et ses faires des chateus despoyllait,<sup>2</sup>  
 A maufere par tut<sup>3</sup> poynt ne esparniayt ;  
 Et ly ray Phelippe autel ly fesait.  
 Ly eveske de Dureme touz jour[s] travayllait  
 De enentir la guerre saunz contek et playt.  
 Le poer des Englays ly ray Phelippe savayt,  
 Par taunt ke fu petite,<sup>4</sup> se tent le plus estrait.  
 Ly rays Edward, ws dye, eust fet bon esplait,  
 S'il eust eu ses countes et lors et laundrait.<sup>5</sup>  
 Escotez la defaute, e en ly tut<sup>6</sup> pecchayt.

*Ensaumple du noble rei sire Arthur.*<sup>7</sup>

The example of king Arthur should have been followed. En gestes aunciens trovoums-nous escrit  
 Quels rays et quels realmes ly rays<sup>8</sup> Arthur conquist,  
 Et<sup>9</sup> coment sun purchace largement partyst.  
 Roys suz ly<sup>10</sup> n'avoit ke ly countredist,  
 [Counte, duc, e baron,<sup>11</sup> qe unqes li faillist,]<sup>12</sup>  
 En guere n'e[n]<sup>13</sup> bataille ke chescun ne suyst.<sup>14</sup>  
 Ly rays sir Eduuard ad doné trop petyt ;  
 Par quai à sun aler, quant en mer se myst  
 Vers ly roys de Fraunce, fet ly fu despit,  
 Ke nes un de ses countes of ly le aler<sup>15</sup> emprist.  
 The Scots revolt again. La commune de Escoz la novele oyst,  
 Chescun la sue part sur çoe se<sup>16</sup> joyst.  
 La route de raskaylle la guere renoue<sup>17</sup> reprist ;

<sup>1</sup> *sur le rei de France eorrust e robbeit*, B. C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *ses chastels despuleit*, B. *de chaustels*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *de tut*, B. *de tot*, C. *de tote*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *cum fu perte*, B. *Tant com feust petit se tyent plus*, C. *com fu petite*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *et lors laundrait*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *defaute, en qi tut*, B. D. *la defaict e qe tut*, C.

<sup>7</sup> This rubric is given from B.

<sup>8</sup> *rays* omitted in B.

<sup>9</sup> *Et* omitted in B.

<sup>10</sup> *sur ly*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *duk, baroun*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> This line, omitted in A., is found in B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *n'en*, B. D. *ne en*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *ne fuist*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *of li aler*, B. *n'enpris*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *s'en*, B. *de ceo se*, C. D.

<sup>17</sup> *noue*, B.



And invaded and plundered the territory of the king  
of France ;  
Robbed his markets and his fairs of their chattels,  
Spared not to do evil everywhere ;  
And king Philip did as much to him.  
The bishop of Durham continually laboured  
To put an end to the war without strife and dispute.  
King Philip knew the force of the English,  
Insomuch as it was small, he held himself the more  
unguarded.  
King Edward, I tell you, would have gained a great  
advantage,  
If he had had his earls then and there.  
Listen to the fault in which all the sin lay.

*An example of the noble king sir Arthur.*

In ancient histories we find written  
What kings and what kingdoms king Arthur con-  
quered,  
And how he shared largely his gain.  
There was not a king under him who contradicted  
him,  
Earl, duke, or baron, who ever failed him  
In war or in battle, but each followed him.  
The king sir Edward has given too little ;  
Whereby at his departure, when he put to sea  
Against the king of France, the affront was shown  
him  
That not one of his earls undertook the expedition.  
The commonalty of Scotland hears the news,  
Each on his own part rejoices over it.  
The rabble of the lower people resumed war anew ;

Ly counte et ly baroun feyntement suffrist  
 Ke Williame Walays chevetayn se fist,  
 Par false covertoure<sup>1</sup> ke homme n'entendist,  
 Ke halt home d'Escoz relever vousist.<sup>2</sup>  
 Ly Walays meintenaunt les chastels assaillist  
 Parmy la terre d'Escoz, et souz Englays les prist.<sup>3</sup>  
 Hwe de Cressingham un pou avaunt mesfist,  
 Kant le argent<sup>4</sup> sir Eduuard en taunt esparnist,  
 Ke molt de la petaylle de l'host s'en partist.<sup>5</sup>  
 Ly quens Jon de Guarayne,<sup>6</sup> si tost com entendist  
 La pees estoyt rompue ke ly Escot promist,  
 Vers Estrivelyn<sup>7</sup> s'en va of l'ost ke remist,  
 Oû Williame le Walays<sup>8</sup> le counte descomfist,  
 Par sa folye demene, kaunt alait al lyst.<sup>9</sup>  
 Kar taunt com ly quens al matyn dormist,<sup>10</sup>  
 William le Walays le chef du pount assist ;  
 De launces et gavelokes home pecea ne vist<sup>11</sup>  
 Coyllette<sup>12</sup> plus espesse ; le counte refuist,  
 Les Englays i morurent, l'Escot i passa<sup>13</sup> quit.  
 A cele mesavenue estaient tuez  
 Vavassours curtoys de gentil parentez,  
 Robert de Somerville et sun fiz aynez ;  
 Chualers et sergauns<sup>14</sup> i pristrent congez,

William  
Wallace  
made their  
leader.

Defeat of  
earl John  
deWarenne  
at Stirling.

<sup>1</sup> Robert of Brunne translates this, "Thorgh fals concelement William did his wille."

<sup>2</sup> *ne vousist*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *e sur Engleis se prist*, B. *e sur E.*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *ke l'argent*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *perrist* (?), B.

<sup>6</sup> *Garenne*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Strivelin*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *William Waleis*, B. D.

<sup>9</sup> *aleit à lit*, B. *al lit*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> Robert of Brunne translates this as follows:—

" And that was his folie, so long  
" in his bed gan ligge,

" Untille the Waleis partie had  
" umbilaid the brigge."

" With gavelokes and dartes suilk  
" ore was non sene,

" Myght no man tham departe,  
" ne ride ne go bituene."

<sup>11</sup> *home piece sanc vist*, B. *Des launces*, C. *Des gavelocs et des launces*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Cuyllette*, B. *Coillet*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *morront, l'Escot passa*, B. *i morirent, l'Escote passa*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *Chevalers, serjaunz*, C.

The earl and the baron suffered by dissimulation  
That William Wallace made himself their chieftain  
By false pretence, which none understood,  
That he sought to raise himself up a great man of  
Scotland.

The Wallace immediately assaulted the castles  
Through the land of Scotland, and took them from the  
English.

Hugh de Cressingham had done wrong a while before,  
When he was so very sparing of sir Edward's money,  
That much of the foot of the army deserted.

The earl John de Warenne, as soon as he learnt  
That the peace was broken which the Scot promised,  
He proceeds towards Stirling with the army which  
remains,

Where William Wallace discomfited the earl,  
By his own folly, when he went to bed.  
For while the earl was sleeping in the morning,  
William Wallace laid siege to the head of the bridge;  
Of spears and gavelokes none ever saw before  
So thick an assemblage; the earl fled,  
The English died there, the Scot passed there quit.

At this misfortune were slain  
Courteous vavasors of noble kindred,  
Robert de Somerville and his eldest son;  
Knights and serjeants there took their leave,

Sorais et Norays, ke cy ne sount nomez.<sup>1</sup>  
 Hwe de Cressingham, en sele<sup>2</sup> mesusez,  
 Du destrer<sup>3</sup> coraunt cheist desuz pez,<sup>4</sup>  
 Des ribaus<sup>5</sup> d'Escoz sun cors fu demaglez,  
 Et<sup>6</sup> en menues corayes le quir<sup>7</sup> escorchez,  
 En despit ly roys, ki clerk il fu clamez.<sup>8</sup>  
 Marmeduk de Thweng,<sup>9</sup> de Deu sait honurez !  
 Cum lyon se contynt en totes les mellez,<sup>10</sup>  
 Taunt fist à la jorné<sup>11</sup> ke soens sunt les grez ;<sup>12</sup>  
 Counte ne baroun à ly fu<sup>13</sup> comparez ;  
 Combataunt of l'espeye la garde ad recoverez  
 Du chastel de Strivelyn, et là demorez.  
 Meintenaunt après ad li Escot maunde  
 Delà la mer en Flaundres un ribaud deguysez,<sup>14</sup>  
 Espier sir Eduuard en viles et cytez.  
 Cil revent<sup>15</sup> et dist en fin veritez,  
 Il vist où sir Eduuard fu mort et enterrez.  
 La commune d'Escoz se leve à cele fez,  
 Et promette et vouwe à Deu en trinitez  
 Engleterre destrure saunz aver pitez,  
 Confunder saint eglyse et les ordinez.  
 En Northumberland les fols ount comencez  
 Arder et destrure et mesuns et blez.  
 Au ray Eduuard en Flaundres sunt gent<sup>16</sup> enveez,

<sup>1</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *en tel*, C. *cel*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *De destrer*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *chaist suz peez*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Du ribaudaile*, B. D. *Outre ribaudaile*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *Et* omitted in B.

<sup>7</sup> *son quir*, B. C. Robert of Brunne has here, "I wene thei quik "him flouh," *i.e.*, "they flayed him "alive;" but Hearne very erroneously says in his note that *flouh* is an error for *slouh*, slew.

<sup>8</sup> This line is omitted in B. *i fu claimez*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *de Tuenge*, B. *de Thewenge*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *en touz ses medlez*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *à la courné*, D.

<sup>12</sup> This and the preceding line are transposed in B. D.

<sup>13</sup> *à ly ne fu*, C. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>14</sup> "A boye of ther rascaile, quaynt "and deguisé," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>15</sup> *revint*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *sunt genz*, B. D.

Northerns and Southernns, who are not named here.  
Hugh de Cressingham, not accustomed to the saddle,  
From his steed in its course fell under foot,  
His body was cut to pieces by the ribalds of Scotland,  
And his skin taken off in small thongs,  
As an insult to the king, whose clerk he was called.  
May Marmaduke de Thweng, may he be honoured of  
God!

Behaved like a lion in all the combats;  
He did so much that day that his are the congratula-  
tions;

Earl nor baron was compared to him:  
Combating with the sword he has recovered the ward  
Of the castle of Stirling, and remained there.  
Now afterwards the Scot has sent  
Beyond sea into Flanders a ribald in disguise,  
To spy sir Edward in towns and cities.  
He returns and tells for perfect truth,  
He saw where sir Edward was dead and buried.  
The commonalty of Scotland rouses itself at this time,  
And promises and vows to God in trinity  
To destroy England without having pity;  
To confound holy church and the clergy.  
In Northumberland the madmen have begun  
To burn and destroy both houses and corn.  
People are sent into Flanders to king Edward,

Distress  
of king  
Edward.

Ke par<sup>1</sup> les Norays la plainte ount presentez  
Coment il ount perdu lur teres et lur feez,  
Et coment plus perdrount, et touz les melz<sup>2</sup> vanez  
Ke sunt en Engleterre en viles et citez,<sup>3</sup>  
Si plus tost par ly ne sayent<sup>4</sup> aidez.  
Ly rays de tote pars estoyt angussez,<sup>5</sup>  
Issi k'à lendemayne<sup>6</sup> fet maunder ses privez ;  
Counsayllent sur la chose, si com ws orrez.<sup>7</sup>  
Maintenaunt après ly rays est avysez,  
Ke graunter ly estoyt à clers et as barnez<sup>8</sup>  
Les peticiouns ke furent veez.

He yields  
their de-  
mands to  
his barons  
and clergy.

As countes et barouns ke of ly ne sunt alez,  
As primaz d'Engleterre ke tenent les ij. seez,<sup>9</sup>  
Et as tuz les autres eveskes sacrez,  
As abbez et priours et beneficiez,  
As countes et barouns, ly rays avaunt nomez<sup>10</sup>  
Par lettre et par buche<sup>11</sup> ad durement pryez  
De aide et de soccour et de amistez<sup>12</sup>  
Encountre les Escoz et lur iniquitez ;  
Leaument les promette ben<sup>13</sup> serrount werdonez,  
Et averount lur demaunde à lur<sup>14</sup> volunteez.  
Ly sire de Caunterbire du promès<sup>15</sup> est leez ;  
Pur ly<sup>16</sup> et sa province respouns ad donez,  
Salve l'estatut la pape ad publyez,  
Des bens de saint eglise la disme i ad<sup>17</sup> grauntez,

<sup>1</sup> *E par*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *lour meuz*, B. D. *perderont tuz lour meltz*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *e viles e vilez*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>4</sup> *ne soiez*, B. *n'en soient*, C.

<sup>5</sup> "The kyng for tho tithinges " was noyed grevoslie," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *Issint qe lendemein*, B. *Issi qe il lendemayn*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *si vus orrez*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *as clers e barnez*, B. *estoit e as barnez*, C.

<sup>9</sup> For this and the following line, D. has one: *A les ercevesques et evesques sacrez*.

<sup>10</sup> *avant tuchez*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>11</sup> *par lange*, B. C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *des amistez*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *qe ben*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *e lour*, C. D.

<sup>15</sup> *de la promesse*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *Par ly*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *la disme ad*, B. C. "Of holy " kirkes frute he gaf the kyng the " tende," Robert of Brunne.

Who have presented on the part of the Northerns their  
complaint  
How they have lost their lands and their fees,  
And how they will lose more, and all those of most  
account  
Who are in England in towns and cities,  
If they be not aided by him in time.  
The king was tormented on all sides,  
So that on the morrow he sent for his privy coun-  
cillors ;  
They consulted on the matter, as you will hear.  
Immediately after, the king is counselled,  
That he must grant to clergy and to the barons  
The petitions which were laid before him.  
To the earls and barons who were not gone with him,  
To the primates of England who hold the two sees,  
And to all the other consecrated bishops,  
To the abbots and priors and beneficed clergy,  
To the earls and barons, the king before named  
By letter and by mouth has earnestly prayed  
For aid and succour and friendship  
Against the Scots and their wickedness ;  
Faithfully he promises them they shall be well rewarded,  
And shall have their demand at their will.  
The lord of Canterbury is rejoiced by the promise ;  
He has given answer for himself and his province,  
With reservation of the statute the pope has published,  
He has there granted the tenth of the goods of holy  
church,

Dunt salver le et defendre<sup>1</sup> en ses dignitez,  
 Ensint ke par les clers<sup>2</sup> le aver sait levez,  
 Et par mesmes les<sup>3</sup> clers as barouns liverez,  
 Kaunt irrount en Escoz of lur alyez,  
 A salver seint eglise parmy les regnez.  
 E les clers du north du quinte sount chargez,  
 A la verrai value com furent taxez  
 Kant al rais Edward donaint les maytez.<sup>4</sup>

The Scots  
 are  
 alarmed.

Mayntenant après kant les Escoz savaient  
 Coment al rais Edward ses clers aider volaint,<sup>5</sup>  
 Coment ses barons enter eus parlaient,  
 Si tost quant<sup>6</sup> par le rai enselée verraient  
 La chartre des franchises<sup>7</sup> ke jadis avaient,  
 Trestuz en Albanye volunters<sup>8</sup> irraient  
 Encountre les Escoz ke plus de mal ne fraint,<sup>9</sup>  
 Le venir des barons les Escoz dotaint.

Marma-  
 duke de  
 Thweng is  
 captured  
 through  
 treachery.

Al chastel de Strivelyn com gent de pees alaint,  
 A Marmeduk de Tweng<sup>10</sup> hostages presentaint,  
 E en lur bapteme<sup>11</sup> promistrent e joraient,  
 Si hors vousist venir, de pees li parlerayent,  
 E al rays Edward illokes se renderayent.  
 Marmeduke issist à cels ke ly pryayent,  
 Ke sanz plus delayer<sup>12</sup> ly pristrent e montayent,  
 Le joven conestabel<sup>13</sup> ovekes ly menayent  
 Tut drait à Dumbretayn, e l'enprisonayent ;  
 Ne sevent lur amys si mort ou vifs i sayent.<sup>14</sup>  
 La treson fu fete, kar les<sup>15</sup> Escoz quidayent,

<sup>1</sup> *Dont salver e le deffendre*, C.  
 This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *ses clers*, B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *ces clers*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *la maitez*, C. "Whan the kyng  
 "asked half of alle ther noble  
 "thing," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> For this and the next line, D.  
 has: *Coment al reis Edward entre  
 els parlaynt.*

<sup>6</sup> *Si tost cum*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *de franchise*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *volenters en Albanie*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *qe plus mal ne ferroient*, B.  
 The line is omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> *de Thweng*, C. *Thweng*, D.

<sup>11</sup> "Thei suore ther Cristendam,"  
 Robert of Brunne.

<sup>12</sup> *plus dailler*, B. *dalier*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *Jovene conestablie*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *ou vif ensaint*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *La treson i fu fet par les*, B.



Wherewith to save and defend him in his dignities,  
So that the money he raised by the clergy,  
And by the same clergy delivered to the barons,  
When they shall go into Scotland with their allies,  
To save holy church throughout the kingdoms.  
And the clergy of the North are charged with the fifth,  
At the strict valuation as they were taxed  
When they gave to king Edward the moiety.

Now after when the Scots knew  
How his clergy were willing to aid king Edward,  
How his barons talked among themselves,  
As soon as they saw sealed by the king  
The charter of freedom which they had formerly,  
That they would all go willingly into Albany  
Against the Scots to prevent their doing more evil,  
The Scots were in fear of the coming of the barons.  
They went to the castle of Stirling as men of peace,  
Offered hostages to Marmaduke de Thwenge,  
And promised and swore on their baptism,  
If he would come out they would treat of peace with  
him,  
And there they would submit to king Edward.  
Marmaduke went out to those who solicited him,  
Who without further delay took him and put him on  
horseback,  
Took with him the young constable  
Straight to Dumbarton, and put him in prison;  
Their friends know not if they be dead or alive there.  
The treason was done, for the Scots imagined,

Si mal lour fust venue, par eus le melz<sup>1</sup> averayent.  
 Ore oyez de la chartre quel gent la portayent  
 A clers e al barons,<sup>2</sup> ke la procurayent.

The king's  
 message to  
 his clergy  
 and barons.

Tant com les clers du su devaient compasser,  
 Ke par la disme graunté<sup>3</sup> ne pussent mal aver,  
 Ne la pape offendre, revent ly tresorer  
 Du rays sir Edward, ke fust outre mer.  
 Cil vers la clergye comença parler,  
 E al les barons ensi<sup>4</sup> noncier.  
 " Amis,<sup>5</sup> ly ray, vos sires, bee<sup>6</sup> de gentil quer  
 " De sa seynurie tut Engleterre eyser,  
 " La chartre des franchises ws voet confermer,  
 " E<sup>7</sup> de la foreste l'assise amender,  
 " Com jadis purvist le ray Henri son per."

Publication  
 of the  
 charter of  
 liberties.

La chartre fu moustré e leu à Westmouster.  
 Li sire de Canterbir sur çoe ne voelt targer,  
 Parmy sa province l'ad fet publier.  
 Maintenaunt après ly quens Marschal Roger,  
 E ly quens de Herforthe, Umfray<sup>8</sup> li gentil ber,  
 Vers Everwyke s'en vont, al mouster Saint Per ;  
 Les hauz homes de la terre les venent encountrer,  
 Ly quens Jon de Soray<sup>9</sup> of tut soen poer,  
 Ly gardayn de Gloucestre, Rauf de Moinhermer,<sup>10</sup>  
 Of Jone la countesse, sa lige mulier,<sup>11</sup>  
 E trestouz ly autre ke portent baner  
 De Dover à Dureme, il venent<sup>12</sup> volunter.

<sup>1</sup> *les fust venuz, par eaus les meuz,*  
 B. *les fust avenue,* C. *les fust*  
*venue,* D.

<sup>2</sup> *as clers e as barons,* B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *grande,* B. C.

<sup>4</sup> *issi,* D.

<sup>5</sup> Perhaps, *A vus. A vous,* C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *bie,* B. *bye,* C.

<sup>7</sup> *E* omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *Herford, Homfray,* C. *de Her-*  
*ford,* D.

<sup>9</sup> *Johan de Surray,* C.

<sup>10</sup> *Rauf le Mohermer, B. de Mein-*  
*hermer,* C. D.

<sup>11</sup> Joan Plantaganet, widow of  
 Gilbert earl of Clare, Gloucester,  
 and Hertford. Robert of Brunne  
 translates here,

" Of Gloucestre stoute and gay

" sir Rauf the Mohermere,

" And his wif dame Jone, whilom

" Gilberdes of Clare."

<sup>12</sup> *i venent,* B. D.

If misfortune came upon them, they would by them  
have the better.

Now hear of the charter what people brought it  
To the clergy and barons, who procured it.

While the clergy of the South were employed in  
contriving

That by the tenth granted they could have no harm,  
Nor offend the pope, returns the treasurer  
Of the king of England, who was beyond sea.

He began to address the clergy,

And to announce to the barons as follows :

“ Friends, the king, your lord, seeks with gentle heart

“ Of his lordship to ease all England,

“ It is his will to you to confirm the charter of  
“ freedom,

“ And to amend the assize of the forest,

“ As king Henry his father formerly provided.”

The charter was shown and read at Westminster

The lord of Canterbury will not delay thereupon,

He has caused it to be published throughout his parish.

Thereupon the earl Marshal Roger,

And the earl of Hereford, Humphrey the noble baron,

Go to York, to the minster of St. Peter;

The high men of the land come to meet them,

Earl John of Surrey with all his power,

The warden of Gloucester, Ralph de Monthermer,

With Joan the countess, his lawful wife,

And all the others who carry banner

From Dover to Durham, they come willingly.

Le jour de saint Annais<sup>1</sup> illokes font maunder  
 L'eveske de Kardoil, ke vient pronuncier  
 La sentence sollempne al pulpit du mouster,<sup>2</sup>  
 Entre les deus countes, of livre e lumer,  
 Sur tuz iceax ke facent la chartre violer,  
 Ou ouster, ou destrure nul poynt de l'enter.  
 Puy vont vers Escoce Northumberland garder,  
 Ressaisent les terres ke Walays le leer  
 Avaunt avait saisye, e lors fuyst<sup>3</sup> arer.  
 Entre ces aferes la graunt contrariaunce  
 Entre le rays Edward e le ray de Fraunce  
 Josques à jour certayne pris est delayaunce,<sup>4</sup>  
 E la guere sopye e mys en suffraunce,  
 Josques l'apostoyle ad fet ordinaunce  
 Entre<sup>5</sup> les deus rays purveu l'acordaunce.  
 Par deus mariages la pees est en beaunce;<sup>6</sup>  
 Ly rays Edward avera cele dont fu parlance,  
 E son fiz Edward, ke Deus là sus<sup>7</sup> l'avaunce!  
 Aura<sup>8</sup> la feille Felipe, ke n'ad for set aunce.  
 Clers e lays, des queus les roys ont<sup>9</sup> affiance,  
 Sont alez à Rome of lettres de creaunce,  
 Moustrer à la pape coment, par quel covenance,<sup>10</sup>  
 Gascon estait rendue of l'apurtenaunce.  
 Entendu ad la pape par lur demustrance<sup>11</sup>  
 Quel mal, e quel damage,<sup>12</sup> e com<sup>13</sup> sovent grevance,  
 Englays e Francays ont eu par la distance;  
 Discussion ad fait de la grant descordaunce,  
 E mandez al reis partie de sa voyllaunce.  
 Acorde bone i mette Deu par sa puyssaunce!

The  
English  
recover the  
Marches.

Double ma-  
trimonial  
alliance  
between  
England  
and France.

<sup>1</sup> *de seint Agneis*, B. *Auneys*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *pulpit de moustrer*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *fust*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *desloyaunce*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *Et entre*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *biance*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Dieu sus*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Avera*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *e reis desqueus le rei out*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *al pape par lour demustrance*, B.

<sup>11</sup> This and the preceding line are omitted in B.

<sup>12</sup> *Quele mal, quel damage*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *coment*, B.

On the day of St. Agnes they summon thither  
 The bishop of Carlisle, who comes to pronounce  
 In the pulpit of the minster the solemn sentence,  
 Between the two earls, with book and candle,  
 Against all those who cause the charter to be violated,  
 Or infringed, or any point of the whole to be destroyed.  
 Then they go towards Scotland to protect Northum-  
 berland,  
 They recover the lands which Wallace the thief  
 Had previously seized, and then he flies back.

Amidst these transactions, of the great dispute  
 Between king Edward and the king of France  
 A delay is taken until a certain day,  
 And the war appeased and put in sufferance,  
 Until the pope has made order  
 And provided the accord between the two kings.  
 By two marriages the peace is in negotiation ;  
 King Edward shall have her of whom was talk,  
 And his son Edward, may God there above advance him !  
 Shall have Philip's daughter, who is only seven years  
 of age.

Clerks and laymen, in whom the kings have trust,  
 Are gone to Rome, with letters of credit,  
 To explain to the pope how, and by what agreement,  
 Gascony was given up with the appurtenance.  
 The pope has understood by their explanation  
 What evil, and what damages, and how frequently  
 grievance,  
 English and French have had by the quarrel,  
 He has made discussion of the great disagreement,  
 And has sent to the king part of his will.  
 May God by his power put there a good accord !

*Anno Domini millesimo cc<sup>o</sup>. nonagesimo viij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>1</sup>

King  
Edward  
returns to  
England.  
Treason  
of the  
liberated  
Scottish  
nobles.

Tant com le apostoile Boniface atent  
Entre les deus rays purveer l'acordement,  
Ly reys sir Edward son chymyn reprent  
Tut dreit vers Engleterre, of sigle e of vent.<sup>2</sup>  
Le counte de Menetef,<sup>3</sup> ke fu son parent,  
E li quens d'Ascetil,<sup>4</sup> le Comyn ensement,  
Fiz cil de Badenake,<sup>5</sup> e autres jesqe à trent,<sup>6</sup>  
Quex li rais Edward sanz or e sanz argent<sup>7</sup>  
Hors de sa prisone lessa quitement,  
Aler en pilrinage-priaynt<sup>8</sup> devotement.  
Kant congeez estaient, escotez coment  
Al ray Felipe de France alayent fausement,  
Ly pryaynt<sup>9</sup> de soccour e de avauncement  
Dont recoverir Escoce of le apurtenement,  
A tenir de ly pardurabelment.  
Le ray Phelippe respont, "Soz,<sup>10</sup> alez-ws ent,  
" La pape par sa lettre me maunde e defent<sup>11</sup>  
" Coure sour la terre k'au rays Edward apent,<sup>12</sup>  
" Tant com nostre trewe demort sur jugement."  
La fausse compaygnye desaidé s'assent,<sup>13</sup>  
Al port de la mer s'en vount vistement,  
Passage i trovent prest, promettent largement,  
E ki piere s'en fount,<sup>14</sup> ne lessent pur tourment,  
Arivent en Escoce saunz destourbement.  
Li rays sir Edward par oydire atent  
Coment les Escoce l'ount trahi sovent.  
Lors va visiter seint Thomas de Kent,

They  
return to  
Scotland.

<sup>1</sup> This rubric is taken from D.

<sup>2</sup> *e vent*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *Meneteste*, B. D. *Menetest*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *de Astrels*, B. *Ascecil*, D. *Ascetelle*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *Badenagh*, B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *jesqe trent*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *e argent*, B. D.

<sup>8</sup> *priaunt*, B. C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *priaunt*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Folz*, B. *Sotz*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *et me deffent*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *qe au rei apent*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *desaidée se sent*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *Eskipper se fount*, B. *E skyper s'en font*, C. *Eskipper s'en fount*, D. The reading of the text is evidently incorrect.

*Anno Domini 1298.*

While pope Boniface waits  
To provide the accord between the two kings,  
The king sir Edward takes his way back  
Right towards England, with sail and with wind.  
The earl of Menteith, who was his kinsman,  
And the earl of Asketil, the Comyn likewise,  
Son of him of Badenagh, and others to the number  
of thirty,  
Whom king Edward without gold or silver  
Let quit out of his prison,  
Prayed devoutly to go on a pilgrimage.  
When they had leave, hear how  
They went treacherously to king Philip of France,  
Prayed him for succour and advancement  
Wherewith to recover Scotland with the appurtenance,  
To hold of him for ever.  
King Philip replies, "Fools, go away with you,  
" The pope by his letter sends and forbids me  
" To attack the land which belongs to king Edward,  
" So long as our truce remains upon judgment."  
The false company finds itself without aid,  
They go hastily to the port of the sea,  
They find there the passage ready, promise largely,  
Cause themselves to be embarked, do not hesitate for  
storm,  
Arrive in Scotland without impediment.  
The king sir Edward learns by hearsay  
How the Scots have betrayed him often.  
Then he goes to visit St. Thomas of Kent

Saint Jon de Beverlé, molt devotement,<sup>1</sup>  
 Saint William de Everwyk, seint Cuthbert ensement ;  
 Edward proceeds to Scotland. Puys va vers le north à sa<sup>2</sup> lige gent,  
 Assembler les fet, e tient<sup>3</sup> parlement.  
 Cil parlent, e purvayent, e sunt d'un assent,  
 Aler en Albanye à prendre vengeance,  
 [E priver les Escotz de tere e tenement.]<sup>4</sup>  
 Or oyez quel vengauce ly Dex<sup>5</sup> omnipotent  
 I fist par sa pussance sour le faus covent<sup>6</sup>  
 Ke robba saint eglise de soun vestement,<sup>7</sup>  
 E renovelaynt la guere encontre lur serment.<sup>8</sup>  
 Battle of Falkirk. Le jour de la Magdelayne après la<sup>9</sup> mi esté,  
 D'Escoz e de Galewaye le popel maluré,  
 Kantke denz le Marche<sup>10</sup> furent norriz e née,  
 Chescun of lance en poigne à malfaire<sup>11</sup> apresté,  
 Sunt venuz à Faukirke à une matiné<sup>12</sup>  
 Encontre les Anglais en bataille ordiné.  
 En l'avaunt garde estoit dos au dos<sup>13</sup> doné,  
 E point sur point de lance, en chiltrons tant sarré<sup>4</sup>  
 Com chastel en plein de mur environé.

<sup>1</sup> Robert of Brunne says,—  
 “ Sithen on his viage to Beverley  
 “ he went,  
 “ Bifor saynt Jon he woke a  
 “ nyght or he thien nam.”  
<sup>2</sup> *od sa*, B.  
<sup>3</sup> *e tynt*, C.  
<sup>4</sup> This line is omitted in A., but  
 is found in B. C. D.  
<sup>5</sup> *vengauce Dieus*, B.  
<sup>6</sup> *sur le fals gent*, D.  
<sup>7</sup> Instead of this line and the one  
 following, D. has one :  
*Qe renovelaynt la gwere encountre  
 lour serment.*  
<sup>8</sup> Robert of Brunne adds,  
 “ The date was a thousand, thre  
 “ hundred alle bot one,  
 “ At Foukirke in Scotland Scottis  
 “ escapid none.”

<sup>9</sup> *la Magdale à la*, B. “ a litlelle  
 “ bifor Lamnesse,” Robert of  
 Brunne.  
<sup>10</sup> *les Marchez*, B. *dedenz les Mar-  
 ches*, D.  
<sup>11</sup> *à meffare*, B.  
<sup>12</sup> *par une matiné*, B.  
<sup>13</sup> *dos à dos*, B. C. *dos al dos*, D.  
 Robert of Brunne translates this,—  
 “ Ther formast conrey ther bakkis  
 “ togidere sette,  
 “ Ther speres poynt over poynt  
 “ so sare and so thikke,  
 “ And fast togidere joynt, to se  
 “ it was ferlike.  
 “ Als a castelle thei stode, that  
 “ were wallid with stone,  
 “ Thei wende no man of blode  
 “ thorgh tham suld haf gone.”  
<sup>14</sup> *en scheltrom sarré*, B.



St. John of Beverley, very devoutly,  
St. William of York, St. Cuthbert likewise;  
Then he goes towards the North to his liege people,  
Causes them to assemble, and holds a parliament.  
These speak, and provide, and are of one assent,  
To go into Scotland and take vengeance,  
And deprive the Scots of land and tenement.  
Now hear what vengeance God Almighty  
Took there by his power on the false people,  
Who robbed holy church of its garment,  
And renewed the war contrary to their oath.

On the day of the Magdalen, after Midsummer,  
The wretched people of Scotland and Galloway,  
As many as were bred and born in the Marches,  
Each with spear in fist ready to do mischief,  
Are come to Falkirk in a morning,  
Arranged in order of battle against the English.  
In their van guard back was placed against back,  
And point of lance on point, in squadrons so serried,  
Like castle in plain surrounded with wall.

La multitude estait tant fort effrené,<sup>1</sup>  
 As Englays<sup>2</sup> destrure de tel volunté,  
 Ne quidaynt<sup>3</sup> pur veirs ke tute la lignée  
 Tant com la terre est longe de Perte à Pevensé,<sup>4</sup>  
 Oveske ly rays Edward, les eust<sup>5</sup> parmi percé.  
 Ly rays Edward les vait venir aval le pré,  
 Escrie ses barons, "Aloms en noun de Dé!"  
 Lors brochent les destrers li count e ly barné;  
 Ky plus tost put coure s'en aut à la medlé.<sup>6</sup>  
 La chualerie delà ke fu mounté,<sup>7</sup>  
 Kant vist la banere Edward le sené  
 Of les trais lipars<sup>8</sup> en place desplaé,  
 Meintenant fuirent e lessaint desaidé  
 Tute lur pitaile, ont werpé<sup>9</sup> e wayné.  
 La route de raskaille fu meintenaunt sevré  
 Par poer des Englais, ke n'avoyent pité;  
 Com mousches i morurent e mil par coup d'espé;<sup>10</sup>  
 Les autres sy fuyrent,<sup>11</sup> la place fu voidé  
 Entre prime e noune de tote la lignée,<sup>12</sup>  
 E nes un des Englais<sup>13</sup> fu mort ne maigné,  
 For frere<sup>14</sup> Brian de Jai, chualer alosé,  
 Haut mestre du Temple decà mere assigné.<sup>15</sup>  
 Cil suist<sup>16</sup> les Escoz à une betumé,<sup>17</sup>

Great de-  
 feat and  
 slaughter of  
 the Scots.

<sup>1</sup> *affrené*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *Des Engleis*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *quideit*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *de Perth e de Pevensé*, B. *de Pert à Pevensé*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *le eust*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *s'en alt au medlé*, B. C. *s'en alt al medlé*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *qe là fu counté*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *Od les treis leobars*, B. *Ouf les iij. leopardes en la place*, C. *Les iij. leopardz*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *unt quepie*, B.

<sup>10</sup> Here again D. has condensed

two lines into one:—*Com mouches i morirent, la place fu voydé*. Robert of Brunne translates, "Als fleihes doun thei fleih, ten thou sand at ones."

<sup>11</sup> *s'en fuirent*, B. C.

<sup>12</sup> *de cele parenté*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *un Engleis*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *sire*, C. *Fors Bryan de Jay*, D.

<sup>15</sup> "Maister Templere he was on this half the se," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>16</sup> *fuist*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *betumee*, C. D.

The multitude was so very fierce,  
And so eager to destroy the English,  
They imagined not for truth that all the race  
Through the whole length of the land from Perth to  
Pevensey,

With king Edward, could have pierced through them.  
King Edward sees them coming down the meadow,  
He shouts to his barons, "Let us advance in God's  
" name !"

Then earls and barons spur their steeds ;  
He who can run quickest goes into the battle.  
The knights on the other side who were mounted,  
When they see the banner of Edward the wise  
With the three leopards displayed in the field,  
Now fled and left without aid  
All their footmen, have abandoned and lost them.  
The army of the common soldiers was now severed  
By the power of the English, who had no mercy ;  
Like flies died there a hundred thousand by sword  
blows ;

The others fled, the place was cleared  
Of all the race between prime and none,  
And not one of the English was killed or left on the  
field,

Except brother Brian de Jai, a knight of worth,  
Appointed head master of the Temple on this side the  
sea.

He pursued the Scots to a slough,

E sanz soccour suaunt illokes fu tué.<sup>1</sup>  
 Conduct of Les Galays ne fesayent<sup>2</sup> aide à la journé,  
 the Welsh. Desuz une montaygne s'esturent de gré,<sup>3</sup>  
 Josques la bataille iloques<sup>4</sup> fu terminé.

*Anno Domini millesimo-ducentesimo nonagesimo ix.*<sup>5</sup>

Après la batayle ly rays retornait,  
 Du realme de Escoce la garde comaundait  
 Ad ses barouns Englays, par quels il quidayt  
 Refrener l'Escot, ke plus ne moverayt.  
 King Ad Loundres kant il vint, la pape ly maundait,  
 Edward's La soer<sup>6</sup> al ray de Fraunce à femme<sup>7</sup> prenderayt,  
 return to Par ount de Gascoyne<sup>8</sup> la gwere cesserait;  
 London. Ne pas dame Blaunche dont homme primes parlait,<sup>9</sup>  
 Mès dame Mergerete, en ky maynder dait<sup>10</sup>  
 Plus ad de bounté, de beauté, ki la vait,  
 K'en la bele Ydoyne ke Amadas amait.  
 Ly roys le maundement curtaisement rescait,  
 Et de jour en autre sour çoe se purvait.<sup>11</sup>  
 Sur quel avisement kan[t] plus à fere avait,  
 Ly quens Marschal Roger à Loundres aprochait,  
 Ly quens Ounfray<sup>12</sup> de Boune i vint of graunt esplait,

<sup>1</sup> Robert of Brunne says,—

“ He folowed the Scottis pas,

“ whan the bigan to fle,

“ Fer intille a wod, men calle it

“ Kalenters,

“ Ther in a mire a mod, withouten

“ help of fers,

“ Slouh thei sir Brian alon with-

“ outen mo.

“ Alas ! that douhti man, that he

“ so fer suld go ! ”

<sup>2</sup> *i feseient*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Sutz la montaigne se coverent de gré*, B. *Desuz la montaigne se turent de grée*, C. D.

<sup>4</sup> *ensi*, B. *ensint*, C. *Ilokes la bataylle ensint*, D.

<sup>5</sup> This rubric is taken from B. and D.

<sup>6</sup> *Qe soer*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *al femme*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *à Gascoyn*, C.

<sup>9</sup> Robert of Brunne says,—

“ Not dame Blanche the suete,

“ that I first of spake,

“ Bot dame Margarete, gode with-

“ outen lak ”

<sup>10</sup> *meindre deit*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *ceo purveit*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *Umfray*, C.

And following without succour there was slain.  
The Welsh gave no assistance in the battle,  
They voluntarily took their position on a mountain,  
Until the battle there was terminated.

*Anno Domini 1299.*

After the battle the king came back,  
He gave the custody of the realm of Scotland  
To his English barons, by whom he believed he should  
Curb the Scot, that he would rebel no more.  
When he came to London, the pope sent to command  
him.

That he should take to wife the sister of the king of  
France,

Whereby the war of Gascony should cease ;  
Not the lady Blanche, of whom people spoke first,  
But the lady Margaret, in whose least finger  
There is more goodness and beauty, whoever looks at  
her,

Than in the fair Idoine whom Amadas loved.

The king receives the message courteously,

And from day to day provides for that.

On which affair when he was most occupied,

The earl Marshal approached to London,

Earl Humphrey de Bohun came there with great retinue,

Comp.aint  
about the  
statute of  
perambu-  
lation.

Des countes et barouns assez i trovait.  
Ly quens Roger al rays pur la commune alait,  
Et en bon amour devotement priaït  
Ke saunz plus demore la puralé se faist.<sup>1</sup>  
Ly rays la puralé delayer volait,  
Noun pur ço respouns assez cortays donait,  
Le maundement la pape al quens Roger mostrait,  
Et en bone fay promist et jorait  
Ke, kant le damoisele esposez averait,  
A la puralé fere gens assignerait,  
Des quels nul de soun regne se<sup>2</sup> mespayerait.  
Tant fu<sup>3</sup> son dit cortays ke lors al quen parlait,  
Tant bele la parole,<sup>4</sup> taunt<sup>5</sup> bel ressemblait,  
Ke counte et baroun ad cel fez le crait,  
Et en son pays chescun repairayt.  
Ly quens Ounfray<sup>6</sup> de Boune malades après<sup>7</sup> cochait,  
Mort le prent,<sup>8</sup> allas ! son fiz Ounfray de draït<sup>9</sup>  
Le heritage son pere retent, et le rescaït.<sup>10</sup>

Meyntenaunt après le ray Phelippe de Fraunce  
Ad novele oye ke, par l'alyaunce

Arrival of  
Margaret of  
France.

De sa soer Mergrete, la commune ordinaunce  
De la court de Rome fraït<sup>11</sup> sopir la distaunce  
Du dusché de Aquitayne of le apurtenaunce.  
Ly ray Phelippe se acorde cum fiz de obeisaunce,  
Et pur la damoysele fet fere purviaunce ;  
La maunde en Engleterre of gent de conisance.  
Aryvé est ad Dover saunz nule destourbaunce,  
Où gent ly countervenent<sup>12</sup> de grant apparaunce ;

<sup>1</sup> *Ke sanz plus de la puralé fesoit,*  
B. *Ke saunz plus delay la purailé*  
*se faist, C. D.*

<sup>2</sup> *ne se, C.* The line is omitted  
in D.

<sup>3</sup> *fust, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *sa parole, B. C.*

<sup>5</sup> *e tant, C.*

<sup>6</sup> *Umfray, C.*

<sup>7</sup> *après malades, D.*

<sup>8</sup> *Mort ly prist, C. le prist, D.*

<sup>9</sup> *allas ! Umfrei son fitz entreit,*  
B. C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *son pere, e le tient de dreit, B.*  
C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *feit, B.*

<sup>12</sup> *Où genz li countrevenent, B. C.*  
D.

He found there enough of earls and barons.  
Earl Roger for the commons went to the king,  
And in good love earnestly prayed him  
That without further delay the perambulation should  
be made.

The king wished to delay the perambulation,  
Nevertheless he gave a very courteous reply,  
Showed to earl Roger the pope's message,  
And in good faith promised and swore  
That, when he had espoused the damsel,  
He would appoint people to execute the perambulation,

With whom no one of his kingdom would be dissatisfied.

So courteous was his saying which he then spoke to  
the earl,

So fair his word, and it sounded so well,  
That count and baron that time believed it,  
And each returned to his country.

The earl Humphrey de Bohun after this lay down ill ;  
Death takes him, alas ! his son Humphrey by right  
Claims the heritage of his father, and receives it.

Now after, king Philip of France  
Has heard news that, by the alliance  
Of his sister Margaret, the common ordinance  
Of the court of Rome would cause to be appeased the  
quarrel

About the duchy of Aquitaine with the appurtenance.  
King Philip consents to it like an obedient son,  
And causes purveyance to be made for the damsel ;  
He sends her into England with people of knowledge.  
She is arrived at Dover without any impediment,  
Where people meet her with great ceremony ;

Ad Kanterbyr la menent, où saunz delayaunce  
Sount fet les esposailles sur memes la parlance,  
Ke la court de Rome taila ly<sup>1</sup> covaunce.

King  
Edward's  
marriage  
with  
Margaret.

Li erceveske Robert de Winchelesé  
Fist des esposailles la sollempneté,  
Le meskerdi avaunt la Nativité  
La glorieuse virge Marie, la mere Dé.<sup>2</sup>  
En le iver<sup>3</sup> après ly rays desavisé  
Alait vers Escoce saunz aide du barné;  
Kant vint en la Marche, son host ad regardé,  
Petit le vist, et pover, et descounsailé.  
Le Escot delà le vait, le vis ly ad moustré,  
Ly profer la batayle; ly rays n'y ad pousté  
Visiter Escoce ne endurer la medlé.  
Suth garde com avaunt la Marche ad lessé,<sup>4</sup>  
Sanz plus fere cele fez al suth est<sup>5</sup> retorné;  
Despendu ad le soen, et plus n'y ad gayné.<sup>6</sup>  
Trop fu sa chaunce<sup>7</sup> pover en l'an de Jubilé;  
Sachez certainement çoe fist la puralé,<sup>8</sup>  
Ke ne estait pas fete com ele fu graunté.

*De parlamento perambulationis.*<sup>9</sup>

A parlia-  
ment called  
at London. Ad la Paske après ad ly rays somouns  
Erceveskes, evekes, countes, et barouns,  
Quatre chivalers des countés<sup>10</sup> chescuns,

<sup>1</sup> *les*, C. D.

<sup>2</sup> Robert of Brunne has,—

“ Robert of Wynchelsé, that cor-  
“ seynt is verray,

“ Did that solempnité opon a  
“ Wednesday,

“ Next the latterre fest that is of  
“ our Lady.”

<sup>3</sup> *jour*, B. *yver*, D.

<sup>4</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>5</sup> *Sanz plus fere à cele foiz, al  
sieu est*, B. C. D.

<sup>6</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>7</sup> *la chance*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *le poveraille*, C.

<sup>9</sup> This rubric is taken from D.

<sup>10</sup> *Quatre chivalers de countez*, B.  
C. The latter reads, with the text,  
*des countés*. *Quatre chivalers des  
countés*, D. Robert of Brunne  
translates it, “ Four knyghtes be  
“ somons chosen in ilk counté.” In  
A. a hand of the fourteenth century  
has changed “ *quatre* ” into *deux*.”



They take her to Canterbury, where without delay  
 The espousals are made according to the same covenant  
 Of which the court of Rome drew up the terms.

The archbishop Robert de Winchelsea  
 Performed the ceremony of the espousals,  
 The Wednesday before the Nativity  
 Of the glorious virgin Mary, the mother of God.  
 In the winter following, the king ill advised  
 Went towards Scotland without aid of his barons ;  
 When he came to the March, he has reviewed his  
     army,  
 Sees it small, and poor, and disheartened.  
 The Scot on the other side sees him, has shown him  
     his face,  
 Offers him battle ; the king has not power there  
 To visit Scotland or support a battle.  
 As before he has left the March under a warden,  
 Without doing more this time he is returned to the  
     south ;  
 He has spent his money, and gained no more there.  
 His chance was very poor in the year of the Jubilee ;  
 Know for certain that was caused by the perambula-  
     tion,  
 Which was not performed as it was granted.

*Of the parliament of the perambulation.*

At Easter following the king has summoned  
 Archbishops, bishops, earls, and barons,  
 Four knights of each of the counties,

The parlia-  
ment at  
London. Ad Loundres à parlement<sup>1</sup> pur plusurs achesounz.<sup>2</sup>  
Al comencement sount nomez les persouns  
Ad fere la puralé la terre enviroins.<sup>3</sup>  
Kaunt ele serra parfete parmy la regions,<sup>4</sup>  
La commune ad graunté al rays en gwerdouns<sup>5</sup>  
Le vyntime dener de lour possessiouns.  
Après fu parlé, acordé par alcuns,<sup>6</sup>  
Maunder ad la pape pur saver respouns,  
Pur quay al rays Eduuard ne volt par ses resouns  
Rejuger à tenir la terre de Gascouns.<sup>7</sup>  
En le terce article de çoe parlement,  
Pria ly rays Eduuard socours de sa gent  
Dount relyer soun host sur le Escot pulent.  
Adjourned  
to Carlisle. Après la my esté, par commune assent,  
Estait à Kardoyl<sup>8</sup> lour ajornement ;  
Surrays et Norrays pur lur tenement<sup>9</sup>  
Ke servise ly dayvent i vount<sup>10</sup> bonement.  
Ly quens Marschal Roger deshaité<sup>11</sup> se sent,<sup>12</sup>  
Sir Jon de Segrave en soun lu<sup>13</sup> present,  
Ad fere le servise<sup>14</sup> en taunt cum apent.  
The queen  
follows. La rayne Margarete, par comaundement  
Soun seygnur ly rays, vers le North s'estent ;<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> à le parlement, C. *al parlement*  
par, D.

<sup>2</sup> *enchesons*, B.

<sup>3</sup> Robert of Brunne translates  
this,—

“ First the nemnid alle tho the  
“ puralé suld make,  
“ That thorgh the reame suld go,  
“ the boundes forto stake.”

<sup>4</sup> *les regions*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *au rei de guerdons*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *par ascons*, B. *de acorde par*  
*acouns*, C. *par acuns*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *des Gasouns*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *Estait ly Cardoylle*, C.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> *li deivent, venent bonement*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *deshérité*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *se assent*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *en soun lour*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *les servicez*, B. Robert of  
Brunne translates these lines as  
follows:—

“ The erle Marschalle Rogere no  
“ hele that tyme mot have,  
“ He went with his banere sir  
“ Jon the Segrave,  
“ To do alle tho servise that  
“ longed the office tille,  
“ And mayntend alle the prise  
“ ther he sauh lawe and skille.”

Robert of Brunne evidently mis-  
understood the original of Pierre  
de Langtoft, which states that Se-  
grave was sent as substitute.

<sup>15</sup> *se tent*, B. *se estent*, C.

To London to parliament for several causes.  
At the beginning are named the persons  
To make the perambulation round the country.  
When that shall be completed through the kingdoms,  
The commons have granted to the king in reward  
The twentieth penny of their possessions.  
Afterwards it was debated, agreed to by some,  
To send to the pope to know his reply,  
Why to king Edward he will not by his reasons  
Judge back the possession of the land of the Gascons.

In the third article of that parliament,  
King Edward asked for succour of his people  
Wherewith to reassemble his army against the stinking  
Scot

After Midsummer, by common assent,  
Their adjournment was at Carlisle ;  
Southerns and Northerns for their lordships  
Who owe him service go thither well-willing,  
The earl Marshal Roger feels himself discouraged,  
Presents sir John de Segrave in his place,  
To do the service in as much as belongs to him.  
Queen Margaret, by command  
Of her lord the king, proceeds towards the North ;

Birth of a  
prince.

Gros encaint estait ; par Deu le omnipotent,<sup>1</sup>  
A Broyerton sur Wherf<sup>2</sup> delyver est sauvement  
De un fiz, k'a noun Thomas en baptizement.  
Ly rays Eduuard Poyt dire, se atire vistement  
Aprocher à la dame, cum falcoun al vent.<sup>3</sup>  
Après sa purifye fet sollempnement,  
Ly rays vers Escoce soun chimyn reprent ;  
La rayne of soun fiz à Kawode<sup>4</sup> attent,  
Sour Ouse la rivere, assez esement.

*De ingressu regis in Scotiam.*<sup>5</sup>

King  
Edward  
enters  
Scotland.

[Li<sup>6</sup> rei à Cardoil parle od<sup>7</sup> ses barnez,  
Ensint qe des uns est-il consallez  
Passer parmy Galawai destrure les contrez,<sup>8</sup>  
Rincer e voider pastours e prez  
Des bestes pur larder, où<sup>9</sup> trouvoit assetz.  
Le pais est garni, le pople avisez  
Enchacent lour aumale<sup>10</sup> parmi betumez,  
En mores e mareis de tielz<sup>11</sup> parfoundedez,  
Ne seit home estrange ou tenir ses peez.  
Lors le temps se chaunge, survint li oundez,<sup>12</sup>  
Descendet<sup>13</sup> des montaignes en pleins e valez,  
Surroundent les riveres, coverent les fossez,  
Ne siet le rei Edward quel part passer les guez,  
Change ses chemins, se prent à plus eisez.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Dieu omnipotent*, B. C.

<sup>2</sup> *Brothertoun sur Werf deliveré*,  
B. *suth Werk*, C. *Brothertoun*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *cum à luy apent*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *Cawode*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> This rubric is taken from B.

<sup>6</sup> The forty-four lines here in-  
closed in brackets are omitted in A.,  
but they are found in B. C. D.,  
and are translated by Robert of  
Brunne. They are here given from

B., with the various readings of  
C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *ouf*, C.

<sup>8</sup> This line is omitted in B.

<sup>9</sup> *où* omitted in C. *où trovent*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *cel aumaylle*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *En mores, en marays de tel pro-  
foundedez*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *survenent les undez*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Descendent*, C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *al plus esez*, D.

She was advanced in pregnancy; by will of God  
Almighty,  
At Brotherton on the Wharf she is safely delivered  
Of a son, who is named Thomas in his baptism.  
King Edward receives information of it, prepares  
quickly  
To visit the lady, like a falcon before the wind.  
After her purification made solemnly,  
The king resumes his road towards Scotland;  
The queen with her son waits at Cawood,  
On the river Ouse, much at her ease.

*Of the entrance of the king into Scotland.*

The king at Carlisle talks with his barons,  
So that by some he is advised  
To pass through Galloway and destroy the countries,  
Sweep and clear pastures and meadows  
Of the cattle to salt, where he found enough.  
The country is warned, the people informed of it  
Drive their cattle among the bogs,  
Into the moors and marshes of such depth  
A foreigner knows not where to hold his feet.  
Then the weather changes, the showers come,  
They descend from the mountains into the plains and  
valleys,  
Overflow the rivers, cover the ditches,  
King Edward knows not on what side to pass the  
fords,  
Changes his roads, takes to the easiest.

The king  
takes Caer-  
laverock.

Un povere chastelet, Karlaverok<sup>1</sup> appelez,  
Prist le rei Edward, nul alme dedenz trovez,  
Fors ribaus qe le tindrent, vencuz as entrez.  
Entre ses affaires, en forme des amistez,  
Ad le rei de France au rei Edward priez  
Pes pur les Escoz en noun de Trinitez.<sup>2</sup>  
En l'an suant après la true li ad grantez,  
E le rei Edward à Loundrez returnez.

What are  
the errors  
of a king  
when he  
aims at  
conquest.

Demore e traine feynte<sup>3</sup> e lung matinez,  
Delit en luxure,<sup>4</sup> e surfet en vesprez,  
Affiaunce en felon, des<sup>5</sup> enemis pitez,  
Au fet e consail<sup>6</sup> propre voluntez,  
Conqueste retenir sanz fere largetez,  
Eschurent les Bretons en antiquitez.  
Ensample puit home prendre de Arthur li senez,  
De touz jours fu primer en touz ses alez  
A matin e à vespre,<sup>7</sup> de grant honestetez,  
Felons en companie, e gens des enemistez,<sup>8</sup>  
Solunc lour desert, touz les<sup>9</sup> ad jugez.  
Au fet e au consail estoit atemprés ;  
Prince plus curteis de teres<sup>10</sup> conquestez  
Entre Crestiens<sup>11</sup> ne fut unqes neez.  
Par quei<sup>12</sup> le vus di, la reson escotez,  
Si nostre rei eust fet les<sup>13</sup> puralez  
Parmi Engleterre, cum il avoit<sup>14</sup> grantez  
Affermez par escrit, qe bien est testmoynez,<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Karlaverok*, C. "A povere  
"hamlete toke, the castelle Kare-  
"laverok," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *Escoz jekes les Trinitez*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *fayne*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *luxurye*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *e des*, C. D.

<sup>6</sup> *Al fet e al consaille*, C. *Au fet  
et al counsaylle*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *Al matyn e al vespre*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *de enemistez*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *desertz, tost les*, C. D.

<sup>10</sup> *des teres*, C. D.

<sup>11</sup> *En tere Cristien*, C. *En tere  
Cristiene*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *Pur quai*, C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *nostre reis Edward eust fet la*,  
C. D.

<sup>14</sup> *cum avoyt*, D.

<sup>15</sup> This line is omitted in D.

A poor little castle, called Caerlaverok,  
King Edward takes, no soul found in it,  
Except ribalds who hold it, vanquished at the entrance.  
Among these affairs, in form of friendship,  
The king of France has asked king Edward  
Peace for the Scots in the name of the Trinity.  
In the year after following he has granted him the  
truce,  
And king Edward is returned to London.

Idleness and fained delay, and long morning's sleep,  
Delight in luxury, and surfeit in the evenings,  
Trust in felons, compassion for enemies,  
Self-will in act and counsel,  
To retain conquest without giving distributions of gain,  
Overthrew the Britons in old times.  
We may take example of Arthur the wise ;  
He was always the first in all his expeditions  
In morning and in evening, with great magnanimity ;  
Felons in company, and hostile people,  
According to their desert, he condemned them all.  
He was temperate in deed and in counsel ;  
A prince more courteous in conquering lands  
Was never born among Christians.  
Wherefore I tell you, listen to the reason,  
If our king had performed the perambulations  
Through England, as he had granted  
And strengthened by writing, as is well witnessed,

E de la tere d'Escoce partiz e donez<sup>1</sup>  
 A ses barons Engleis, par droite quantitez,  
 La tere de pité scà fust<sup>2</sup> en ses poestez,  
 E pardurablement les soens<sup>3</sup> heritez.  
 La fin de ceste guere par fet après<sup>4</sup> orrez.]

*Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo.*<sup>5</sup>

A parlia-  
 ment at  
 Lincoln.

Complaints  
 of the par-  
 liament.

A la Pasche après ly rays fist assembler  
 A Nichol sur Wyme<sup>6</sup> soen parlement enter,  
 De countes et barouns,<sup>7</sup> de prelaz du muster,  
 Ke al jour donez i venent<sup>8</sup> volunter,  
 Et al Edward<sup>9</sup> se pleignent primer,  
 Coment la puralé<sup>10</sup> n'ad fet à soen dever;  
 Coment la graunt chartre que custa graunt aver,<sup>11</sup>  
 Ne sofre à tenir ne les poinz user;  
 Coment ses ministres wnt la tere waster  
 Par prises surfetuses, saunz monay payer;  
 Et sur ceo se pleygnent de soen tresorer,<sup>12</sup>  
 Ky parmy la tere les torz fet comaunder,  
 Et de jour en altre s'aforce à besturner<sup>13</sup>  
 Usages aunciens, et leys<sup>14</sup> de l'escheker.  
 Li prient en amur celuy remuer,  
 Et par comune assent un altre ordeyner,<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *En la tere d'Escoce partiz est donez, C. Et la tere, D.*

<sup>2</sup> *La tere depesca fust, C. D.*

<sup>3</sup> *le soens, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *parfet pres, C.*

<sup>5</sup> This rubric is taken from B.

<sup>6</sup> *A Nichole sur Withme, B. A Nichole la bele cité son, D.*

<sup>7</sup> *Des countes e des barons, B. D. Des countes, des barons, des prelats, C.*

<sup>8</sup> *donez, venent, B.* This line is omitted in D.

<sup>9</sup> *au rei Edward, B. C. Kaunt sunt assemblez, se pleynt, D.*

<sup>10</sup> *purayllé, C.*

<sup>11</sup> Of this and the line following, D. makes one:—

“ Ne de la grant chartre ne soffre  
 “ les poynz user.”

<sup>12</sup> Instead of this and the two following lines, D. gives:—

“ Et de jour en altre coment son  
 “ tresorer.”

<sup>13</sup> *sa force bestourner, B.*

<sup>14</sup> *se afforce à bestourner, D.*

<sup>15</sup> *assigner, B.*



And of the land of Scotland had shared and given  
To his English barons, by just quantities,  
The land over there would have been in his power,  
And his men heritors of it for ever.  
The end of this war you will hear afterwards.

*Anno Domini 1300.*

At the Easter afterwards, the king caused to be  
assembled  
At Lincoln on the Witham his entire parliament,  
Of earls and barons, of prelates of the minster,  
Who come willingly at the day appointed,  
And to Edward first make their complaint  
How he has not carried out the perambulation according  
to his duty ;  
How the great charter, which cost much money,  
He suffers not to be held nor the points acted upon ;  
How his ministers go to ravage the land  
By seizures for forfeit, without paying money ;  
And thereupon they complain of his treasurer,  
Who through the land gives command for the wrongs,  
And from day to day labours to overthrow  
Old usages and the laws of the Exchequer.  
They pray him in love to dismiss this man,  
And by common assent appoint another,

Ky puse cel office salvement guyer.<sup>1</sup>  
 Ly reys Edwarde respount<sup>2</sup> irusement de quer,  
 " Jeo vey ke par<sup>3</sup> orgoyl me voulez<sup>4</sup> reviler,  
 " Quant à si baas estat me pensez chacer ;  
 " N'i ad cil de vos ke n'ad byen<sup>5</sup> power,  
 " Saunz altri assent, soen ostel arayer,  
 " Bailifs et seneschals suz ly assigner,<sup>6</sup>  
 " Quels à soen pleysir il purra justizer.  
 " Ne hom deyt<sup>7</sup> segnur plus baas de ly bouter,  
 " Ne [jeo] sofrir le voyle<sup>8</sup> taunt cum day regner.  
 " Mès si mes ministres vus unt fet grever,  
 " La verité conue le tort frai amender,  
 " Ke de teles utrages mès ne orrez jangler.<sup>9</sup>  
 " La chartre de fraunchises et du puraler<sup>10</sup>  
 " Defrout ma corune, si jeo les day graunter ;  
 " Laquel ovoke moi vus devez supporter,<sup>11</sup>  
 " K'el ne sait blemye par prise ne par prier.  
 " Pur quai<sup>12</sup> jeo vus graunt le drait examiner  
 " Par xxvj.<sup>13</sup> descrez, que voisent<sup>14</sup> juger,<sup>15</sup>  
 " A vos peticiouns si purray encliner,  
 " Et salver la corune en taunt desmembrer.  
 " De altre part vus dye, jeo suy saunz dener,  
 " Dunt ayde de ma tere me covent aver,  
 " Si la gwere d'Escoz day recomencer.  
 " Vus savez mes reysouns, [ore] alez ent parler."<sup>16</sup>  
 Ly clers et ly baroun wnt mayntenaunt trier ;  
 Les xxvj.<sup>17</sup> descrez, ke wnt cunseyler,

A com-  
 mittee  
 appointed  
 to consider  
 the com-  
 plaints.

<sup>1</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *respount* omitted in B.

<sup>3</sup> *vei par*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *me voillez*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *been*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *ordiner*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *homme ne dait*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *Ne jeo soffrir ne voil*, B. *Ne jeo soffrire*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> *de puraler*, B.

<sup>11</sup> This and the line following are omitted in D.

<sup>12</sup> *Par quei*, B. C. D.

<sup>13</sup> *Par xx. et vj.*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *voiser*, B.

<sup>15</sup> *jorer*, C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *ore alez parler*, B. *ore alez ent parler*, C.

<sup>17</sup> *Les vint et vj.*, C.

Who may be able to execute this office with safety.  
King Edward replies with anger in his heart,  
“ I see that through pride you intend to insult me,  
“ When you think to drive me to so low condition ;  
“ There is not one of you who has not quite the  
“ power,  
“ Without assent of another, to arrange his household,  
“ To appoint bailiffs and stewards under him,  
“ Whom at his pleasure he will be able to judge.  
“ Nor ought any one to push a lord lower than himself,  
“ Nor will I suffer it as long as I am to reign.  
“ But if my officers have caused injury to you,  
“ When I know the truth I will cause the wrong to  
“ be amended,  
“ That you shall hear no more talk of such acts of  
“ violence.  
“ The charter of liberties and of the perambulation  
“ Will undo my crown, if I were to grant them ;  
“ Which you ought to join with me in supporting,  
“ That it be not damaged by taking by force or by  
“ prayer.  
“ Wherefore I grant you the right to examine  
“ By twenty-six discreet men, who will give judgment,  
“ If I can yield to your petitions,  
“ And save the crown in dismembering it so much.  
“ On another side, I say to you, I am without money,  
“ Of which I must have aid of my land,  
“ If I am to recommence the war of Scotland.  
“ You know my reasons, now go and discuss them.”  
The clergy and the barons go now to the discussion ;  
The twenty-six discreet men, who go to consult,

Tretent sur les choses,<sup>1</sup> eschuent de l'errer,<sup>2</sup>  
 K'em les puse<sup>3</sup> après faymentuz<sup>4</sup> apeler;<sup>5</sup>  
 De si graunt serment se veulent descharger,  
 Remaudent al reys, "Sir, n'est paas maner"<sup>6</sup>  
 Their reply " A rey<sup>7</sup> ne à prince covenant tregeter,  
 to the king. " Ne mettre en agarde<sup>8</sup> chose vendu cher;  
 " Plus bel te serrait toen pople avauncer  
 " Par ta curtaysie, ke par arbitrer,  
 " Ou par agarde de cil ke n'est paas toen peer;<sup>9</sup>  
 " Rend ceo<sup>10</sup> ke tu dais, et hom te dait amer,  
 " Et cum segnur lige servir et honurer,  
 " Et de tes ennemys ayder à venger."<sup>11</sup>  
 Li rays covertement<sup>12</sup> respouns les fet arer,  
 Cum cil ke n'ad talent ses genz du soen<sup>13</sup> eser,  
 Ne eus luy verrayment par doun ne par taylor,  
 Mès wnt en partyes cuntre desputer  
 Tuz ses demaundes,<sup>14</sup> saunz nul alower.  
 Des altercaciouns taunt dure fu l'endurer,  
 De pees ou de la gwere le pople fu en wer,  
 Mès Deus i mist counsayle, ky pout kaunt volt ayder,<sup>15</sup>  
 The king Et taunt i mist<sup>16</sup> de grace, ke tuz wnt acorder,  
 yields, and obtains taxes. Après le saint Michel, à l'oes le rey lever  
 Le quinzim dener, pur byen afermer  
 La chartre de fraunchises<sup>17</sup> saunz ryen recoper,  
 Et pur la puralé certaynement bunder<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *de sur les choses*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *eschuent le errer*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *pense*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *faymentz*, B.

<sup>5</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *n'est pas mester*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *Al reis*, C. D.

<sup>8</sup> *en garde*, D.

<sup>9</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>10</sup> *Rende sus qe*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *et venger*, B. C. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>12</sup> *courtement*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *de soen*, C.

<sup>14</sup> *ses damages*, B.

<sup>15</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>16</sup> *tant mist*, B. *Mes Dieus fist taunt de grace*, D.

<sup>17</sup> *des fraunchises*, C. *La chartre et la puralé saunz rien recoper*, D., which omits the two following lines.

<sup>18</sup> Robert of Brunne has here,—

" And for the puralé, set with

" certeyn bounde,

" Thorgh the lond suld be de-

" laied no lengere stounde."

They treat on the things, avoid erring,  
Lest they might be afterwards accused of disloyalty ;  
They desire to discharge themselves of so great an  
oath,  
And return answer to the king : “ Sir, it is not the  
“ manner  
“ For a king or a prince to overthrow his covenant,  
“ Nor put in question a thing sold dear ;  
“ It would be fairer in thee to advance thy people  
“ By thy courtesy, than by putting questions to arbi-  
“ tration,  
“ Or to the judgment of him who is not thy peer ;  
“ Repay that which thou owest, and we ought to love  
“ thee,  
“ And serve and honour thee as a liege lord,  
“ And aid thee in taking vengeance of thy enemies.”  
The king covertly sends them back an answer,  
As he who has no desire to ease his people with what  
is his,  
Nor they truly him by gift or by tax ;  
But they go in parties to dispute against  
All his demands, without allowing any.  
It was so hard to bear the altercations,  
That the people were in doubt between peace and war ;  
But God interposed his counsel, who can aid when he  
will,  
And he threw so much of his grace into it, that all  
agree,  
After Michaelmas, to raise for the king’s use  
The fifteenth penny, in exchange for well confirming  
The charter of liberties without abating anything,  
And for fixing exact bounds for the perambulation

Parmy la regioun, saunz nul esparnier ;  
 A la<sup>1</sup> gwere d'Escoz s'acordent kaunt aler.<sup>2</sup>  
 Du contek de Gascoyn atendent<sup>3</sup> messenger,  
 Le cunt de Nichol, ke fust utre mer,  
 [Le counte de Sauveie, et Hughe le Despenser,]<sup>4</sup>  
 Sir Jhon de Berewike, trebyen avisé beer,  
 Ke lors furent à Rome la pape aresoner,  
 Ke saunz<sup>5</sup> plus demore voysent<sup>6</sup> declarer  
 Le drait de Gascoyn à ky dait demorer,  
 Et par soen decreté la pees pronuncier.  
 La pape Bonifaz oyoun nus cunter.  
 Les messagers<sup>7</sup> de Fraunce avaunt<sup>8</sup> ly fist maunder,  
 Ensint les Engleys, les<sup>9</sup> comencea precher,  
 " Em dit en vos deus teres sunt genz de graunt  
 " saver,  
 " Ke daivent par resoun lur reys confurmer,<sup>10</sup>  
 " Saunz nus ou nostre<sup>11</sup> curte en<sup>12</sup> taunt travayler ;  
 " Returnez en vos teres, à vos reys nuncier,  
 " Ke par els s'acordent, si noun, par saint Peer,  
 " A la saint Andreu en venaunt le yver,  
 " Durroum la decreté<sup>13</sup> od jugement taunt feer,  
 " Ke l'un et ly altre l'estuvera<sup>14</sup> douter."<sup>15</sup>  
 Les messagers repayrent, saunz plus reporter.<sup>16</sup>  
 Returnoum à la<sup>17</sup> geste, covent<sup>18</sup> recorder  
 La fyn du parlement, le<sup>19</sup> voylez escouter.

<sup>1</sup> *Pus à la*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *touz aler*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *attender*, B.

<sup>4</sup> This line is omitted in A., but it is found in B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *Q'il sanz*, B. D.

<sup>6</sup> *vousist*, B. C. D.

<sup>7</sup> *messangers*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *devaunt*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *les* omitted in B.

<sup>10</sup> *confermer*, D. " And enforme  
 " *our kynges*," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>11</sup> *et nostre*, C. D.

<sup>12</sup> *en* omitted in B.

<sup>13</sup> *Dirroms le deite*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *l'estovera*, B. *l'estovera*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *doter*, C. D.

<sup>16</sup> *reparter*, B.

<sup>17</sup> *Reparnoum la geste*, C. *Repre-*  
*noums la geste*, D.

<sup>18</sup> *qe covent*, B.

<sup>19</sup> *le* omitted in B.

Through the kingdom, without sparing any one  
And they agree to go to the war of Scotland.  
Of the dispute about Gascony they wait messengers,  
The earl of Lincoln, who was beyond sea,  
The earl of Savoy, and Hugh le Despenser,  
Sir John de Berwick, a very wise baron,  
Who were then at Rome to argue with the pope,  
That without more delay he would declare  
To whom the right to Gascony ought to remain,  
And by his decree pronounce peace.  
Let us hear pope Boniface tell the case.  
He sent for the messengers of France into his presence,  
And likewise the English, began to preach them,  
“ They say in your two lands there are people of great  
“ knowledge,  
“ Who ought by reason to support their kings,  
“ Without giving so much trouble to us or our court ;  
“ Return to your lands, announce to your kings,  
“ That they come to agreement of themselves, if not,  
“ by St. Peter,  
“ On St. Andrew’s day, at the approach of winter,  
“ We will give the decree with judgment so solid,  
“ That one and the other must need respect it.”  
The messengers return, without further report.  
Let us return to the history ; we must record  
The end of the parliament, be willing to listen to it.

King Edward gives the principality of Wales and the earldom of Chester to his eldest son.

Li reys sir Edeward, à ceo<sup>1</sup> parlement,  
 A soen fiz Edwarde dona playnement  
 La segnurye de Gales, saunz retenement,  
 La cunté de Cestre od l'apurteynement,  
 Et<sup>2</sup> Pountif et Mustroyle, od l'onur que apent.  
 Le fiz est prinz<sup>3</sup> et count, et les<sup>4</sup> homages prent;  
 Devers la gwere d'Escoz s'aprest<sup>5</sup> durement  
 Od xxx. mil de Galés,<sup>6</sup> saunz altre bone gent,  
 Countes et barouns, chevalers à talent,  
 Et venent à Kardoyle, od pavyloun et tent,<sup>7</sup>  
 Parlent et purveyent quele part et coment<sup>8</sup>  
 Purrount la mere d'Escoz passer vers l'occident.  
 Invasion of Scotland. Ly reys Edwarde le per va vers l'orient,  
 Par Berewyke sur Tuede, où une<sup>9</sup> pece atent  
 Od sa chevalerye, et sunt de un asent  
 Voyder cele marche al comencement  
 Du faus lygnage d'Escoz dunt [sunt] tray<sup>10</sup> sovent.  
 Entre ces afers, par comaundement  
 The pope sends the bishop of Spoleto as his envoy. La pape Bonifaz, surveent sodaynement<sup>11</sup>  
 L'esveske de Spolete, od novel maundement;  
 Et par le rey de Fraunce un hom de covent,  
 Abbé de Cumpayne, ne [sai] pur quel<sup>12</sup> entent,  
 Ne pur quel message veritablement;<sup>13</sup>  
 Sur quai sur la geste reposer coveent,  
 Jekes la novele se leve overtement;  
 Ke hom ne puse dire ke ceste lettre ment.  
 Receu ad luy roys la<sup>14</sup> lettre de creance,  
 Et par ly<sup>15</sup> messagers entendu la sustance,

<sup>1</sup> à cel, C.<sup>2</sup> A Pountif, B. E Puntif e Moustroille, C. Moustroylle, D.<sup>3</sup> Le fiz et prince et count, D.<sup>4</sup> les omitted in B.<sup>5</sup> se prent, B.<sup>6</sup> de Galeis, B.<sup>7</sup> à Kardoylle, se consayllent coment, D.<sup>8</sup> This line is omitted in D.<sup>9</sup> en une, B.<sup>10</sup> dunt sunt trahi, B. C. D.<sup>11</sup> privément, C.<sup>12</sup> de Compeigne, ne sai pur quel, B. C.<sup>13</sup> This line is omitted in B.<sup>14</sup> la omitted in C.<sup>15</sup> Et ly, D.



The king sir Edward, at that parliament,  
Gave fully to his son Edward  
The lordship of Wales, without reserve,  
The county of Chester with its appurtenance,  
And Pontivy and Montreuil, with the honour belonging.  
The son is prince and earl, and takes the homages ;  
He prepares himself earnestly towards the war of  
Scotland

With thirty thousand Welshmen, besides other good men,  
Earls and barons, knights at will,  
And they come to Carlisle with pavilion and tent,  
Talk and provide on which side and how  
They shall be able to pass the sea of Scotland towards  
the west.

King Edward the father goes towards the east,  
By way of Berwick-on-Tweed, where he waits a while  
With his knights, and they are of one accord  
To clear that march at the beginning  
Of the false lineage of Scotland by whom they are  
often betrayed.

Amid these affairs, by command  
Of pope Boniface, there arrives suddenly  
The bishop of Spoleto, with new messages ;  
And from the king of France a man of convent,  
The abbot of Compiègne, I know not nor for what  
purpose,  
Nor for what message truly ;  
Wherefore we must remain quiet upon the history,  
Until the news is made known openly,  
That no one may say that this writing lies.

The king has received the letter of credit,  
And by the messenger understood its substance ;

Sa gwere vers Escoz<sup>1</sup> ad mis en suffrance,  
 A Lynliscou revent soen fiz sanz targance.  
 Ly roys sa pees<sup>2</sup> lors crie, l'Escotes est<sup>3</sup> en balance,  
 Cum avant fesait, demoert en sa tenance.  
 Ly roy repaire à Lundres, et tient ilokes parlance,  
 Oû purveu est la trewe sur boen assurance  
 Jekes la saint Andreu, afermé par fiaunce.  
 Ceo fist le apostoile en sainte esperance,  
 Dedenz le tens de pees pur fere<sup>4</sup> l'acordance  
 Entre les deus roys d'Engleterre et Fraunce.  
 Desclos<sup>5</sup> vus ay le fet, ore oez la meschance  
 Avenue<sup>6</sup> est à Fraunce, et quel honurance  
 A Flandres est acreu par coup d'espey et lance,  
 Sur la fraude de Fraunce, la pompe, et la bobance;  
 Curtement à dire, escotez la venjance.

A truce  
concluded  
with  
France.

The earl of  
Flanders  
treacher-  
ously  
arrested in  
France.

Li quens Gwy de Flandres,<sup>7</sup> vers ky contencion  
 Ly rois de Fraunce avait par sudeyn acheison,  
 Vilement estoit trahy par Charlon,  
 Ky deveyt le cunte par convencion  
 Mener et remener en salvacion  
 Al parlement de Fraunce entre ly baron.  
 Le cunte, quant il vynt, pris fu<sup>8</sup> cum laron,  
 Et menez et mys en chartre cum felon.

The French  
take pos-  
session of  
Flanders.

Li roy Phelip de France,<sup>9</sup> après la traison,  
 Flandres fet seisir à sa subjeccion;  
 Gardeins des soens<sup>10</sup> i mette en terres et meyson,<sup>11</sup>  
 Des biens as riches homes funt<sup>12</sup> destruccion,  
 Lur femmes et lur flyes defulent à raundon.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *soutz Escoce*, B. *sur Escoz*,  
C. D.

<sup>2</sup> *la pes*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *est* omitted in C.

<sup>4</sup> *de fere*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Descols*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *Qe avenuz*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *Wiliam de Flaundres*, B. *Guil-*  
*lam*, C. *Gyllam*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *fu pris*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Philip rei de France*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *de soens*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *en tere e en meson*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *e fount*, B. *i fet destrucioun*, D.

<sup>13</sup> This line is omitted in D. Ro-  
bert of Brunne makes two of it:—

“Defoules ther wyves, thar douh-  
“ tres lay bi,

“Ther lordes slouh with knyves,  
“ of fo had thei merci.”

He has put in abeyance his war against Scotland ;  
 His son returns to Linlithgow without delay.  
 The king then proclaims his peace, the Scot is in  
     balance ;  
 As he did before, he remains in his tenancy.  
 The king returns to London, and holds there conference,  
 In which a truce is arranged on good assurance  
 Until St. Andrew's day, confirmed by pledges.  
 That the pope did in holy hope  
 Within the time of peace to make accord  
 Between the two kings of England and France.  
 I have discovered to you the fact, now hear the mishap  
 Which is happened to France, and what honour  
 Is accrued to Flanders by stroke of sword and spear,  
 Over the fraud of France, the pomp, and the boast-  
     ing ;  
 Shortly to tell it, listen to the vengeance.

Count Guy of Flanders, against whom contention  
 The king of France had by sudden cause,  
 Was shamefully betrayed by Charles,  
 Who was bound by agreement the count  
 To bring and take back in safety  
 To the parliament of France among the barons.  
 The count, when he came, was taken like a thief,  
 And carried and put in prison like a felon.  
 King Philip of France, after the treason,  
 Causes Flanders to be seized to his subjection ;  
 He places there wardens of his own in land and  
     houses.  
 They make destruction of the goods of the rich men,  
 Violate their wives and daughters at will.

Insurrec-  
tion of the  
Flemings,  
and de-  
struction of  
the French  
army.  
Battle of  
Courtrai.

Les vilées en parlent, le pople environ  
Enchacent les Franceys sanz remansion ;  
Les uns i lessaient k'il portaient<sup>1</sup> en chaperon.  
Ly roy Phelip l'out<sup>2</sup> dire, se purveit garnison  
Flandres à destrure sanz redempcion.  
L'ost s'aparaile, adresce gunfaynon,  
Guyor i estoit ly quens d'Artoys<sup>3</sup> par non.  
Cil fu le primer ke perdist l'escochon ;  
Un rybald ly tuait sanz confession.<sup>4</sup>  
Ly quens de Eu<sup>5</sup> perdist et test et talon,  
Et li quens d'Aumarle membre<sup>6</sup> et menton.  
Li sir Peres de Flote, Godefray de<sup>7</sup> Brabazon,  
Li deus sires [de] Nele,<sup>8</sup> chevalers de renon,  
Sire William de Fens,<sup>9</sup> ses parentz en son,  
Les melz vanez de Fraunce par eleccion,<sup>10</sup>  
Et banerez sanz nombre, des quels n'ay<sup>11</sup> mencion,  
Morurent en l'estur, tumbanz<sup>12</sup> en sablon.  
Li Henuer cheit cum oysele en lason.<sup>13</sup>  
Normant ne Pikard, ne ly Burgeylon,<sup>14</sup>  
Ne Vienais,<sup>15</sup> ne Bascle, ne Braban, ne Bretoun,  
Ne<sup>16</sup> cele fiez ne altre, y avaint<sup>17</sup> fuson.  
En chascune avenue puys la dissension,  
Chaeu est sur France la confusion ;

<sup>1</sup> *ge portent*. B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *loit dire*, B. C. D.

<sup>3</sup> *le quens Arthur*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *saunz confusioun*, C. Robert of Brunne translates *rybald* by *herlote* :—

“ A foule herlote him slowe, trut  
“ for his renoun.”

<sup>5</sup> *de Teu*, B. *Ly quens Eu*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *e membre*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *de* omitted in B. *le Brabazon*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *de Nele*, B. *de Nel*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *de Fereres*, B. *de Feens*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *de Fraunce des quels n'ay men-  
cioun*, D.

<sup>11</sup> *n'ad*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>12</sup> *Morirent en l'estour cum bauz  
en sabloun*, D.

<sup>13</sup> *chait cum oiser en lascoun*, B.  
*chett cum oysel en lascoun*, C. *chaist  
cum oysel en lacoun*, D.

<sup>14</sup> *Burgilloun*, C. *Ne Normand  
. . . ne ly Burgylloun*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *Ne Viens*, B. *Vieneis*, C. *Vie-  
nays*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *Ne* omitted in D.

<sup>17</sup> *ne autre n'aveient*, B.

The townships consult upon it, the people around  
Drive out the French without any remaining;  
Some left there what they carried in their hats.  
King Philip hears tell of it, provides an army of oc-  
cupation

To destroy Flanders without redemption.

The army is fitted out, raises its banners ;

The leader of it was the count of Artois by name.

He was the first who lost his escutcheon ;

A ribald slew him without confession.

The count of Eu lost both head and heel,

And the count of Albemarle member and chin.

The lord Pierre de Flote, Godfrey de Brabazon,

The two lords de Nele, knights of renown,

Sir William de Fens, his kinsmen in fine,

The most renowned of France by election,

And bannerets without number, of whom I have no  
mention,

Died in the battle, falling on the sand.

The man of Henalt falls like a bird in a snare.

Of Norman, or Picard, or the Burgundian,

Or Viennese, or Basque, or Brabanter, or Breton,

Neither this time nor other, was there abundance.

In each occurrence since the dissension,

The defeat is fallen upon France ;

Tant cum le secle dure en chascune region<sup>1</sup>  
 La hunte<sup>2</sup> ert pardurable, le fet en mokeyson  
 Al rey Phelip de France et à sa<sup>3</sup> nacion.  
 Cil ke Abacuc pust en la prison,<sup>4</sup>  
 Et salva Danyel du mors del lion,  
 Salve les Flemynges et lur accion,  
 Ke herité<sup>5</sup> ne perdent par extorsion.  
 Returnoums à la geste, reprenoums la lesson,<sup>6</sup>  
 A parler des Anglais sanz fere mixcion,  
 Fors ke la<sup>7</sup> matere demande par rayson.

Pur veir, en l'an millayne, cum nus<sup>8</sup> trovums escrit,  
 Et trecentime secunde, del nestre<sup>9</sup> Jhesu Crist,  
 Le cunte de Karrike<sup>10</sup> les Escoz werpist,  
 As gens le roy Edwarde de gré se rendist.  
 Li quens Umfray de Boum<sup>11</sup> cel an<sup>12</sup> à femme prist  
 La filye al reys Edward, Elizabeth est dit.  
 Entre ces afers<sup>13</sup> cunsail s'en entremist<sup>14</sup>  
 Entre les deus roys ke gwere n'avenist,  
 Continuer la trewe, ke pees se tenist  
 Jeskes après la Pasche; Phelip sur ceo requist  
 Ke ly roys Edwarde en amur volsist  
 Conduyt parmy sa tere, sanz mal et sanz despit,<sup>15</sup>  
 Granter as Escoz, pur quels il transmist  
 Vers luy venyr en Fraunce, sire Edward assentist;<sup>16</sup>  
 Et pur perile eschure tost après purvist

Marriage  
 of Hum-  
 phrey de  
 Bohun with  
 the king's  
 daughter.  
 The truce  
 continued.

<sup>1</sup> This and the following line are omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *La honure*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *Et al rey Phelipp et sa*, D.

<sup>4</sup> This and the three following lines are omitted in D.

<sup>5</sup> *heritage*, B.

<sup>6</sup> For these two lines, D. has one:—

*Recoroms à la geste saunz fere mixtioun.*

<sup>7</sup> *de la*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *millisme, cum nous*, B. D.

<sup>9</sup> *nostre sire*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *de Karryl*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *Umfrei de Boun*, B. C. *Oumfroy de Bounc*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *à cel an*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *ces dous afferes*, B.

<sup>14</sup> *s'entremist*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *respit*, C.

<sup>16</sup> *ensentist*, C.

As long as the world lasts in each kingdom  
 The shame is lasting, the fact in mockery  
 Of king Philip of France and of his nation.  
 May He who sustained Abacuc in prison,  
 And saved Daniel from the bite of the lion,  
 Save the Flemings and their action,  
 That they lose not their heritage by extortion.  
 Let us return to the history, let us resume the lesson,  
 To speak of the English without making mixture,  
 Except so far as the matter reasonably demands.

In truth, in the year a thousand, as we find written,  
 And three hundred and two, from the birth of Jesus  
 Christ,  
 The earl of Carrick deserted the Scots,  
 He willingly surrendered himself to the people of king  
 Edward.  
 The earl Humfrey de Bohun that year took to wife  
 The daughter of king Edward, Elizabeth is she called.  
 Amid these affairs counsel interfered  
 Between the two kings that war should not happen,  
 To continue the truce, so that peace should be pre-  
 served  
 Until after Easter; Philip thereupon requires  
 That king Edward would in love  
 A conduct through his land, without evil and without  
 ill-feeling,  
 Grant to the Scots, for whom he sent  
 To come to him in France, and sir Edward assented;  
 And to avoid danger immediately afterwards pro-  
 vides

Ke Johan de Hastyn,<sup>1</sup> chevaler elit,  
 Emery de la Brette,<sup>2</sup> baroun ne-pas<sup>3</sup> petyt,  
 Alaynt en Gascoyne tost<sup>4</sup> sanz cuntredit,  
 Pur le terme atendre del trewe avandit.<sup>5</sup>  
 Nus Englais crioums laschesce<sup>6</sup> sait maldite;  
 Kar kant à melz<sup>7</sup> ferir plus avums delit,  
 Deshonur nus vyent et piert<sup>8</sup> pur respit.  
 Jeo parle pur l'Escot<sup>9</sup> ke l'autrere assaylist  
 Nos Englays en Escoz par asaut subit;  
 Sire Jhon de Segrave à la fute se mist,<sup>10</sup>  
 Soen fiz et soen frere, après lever du lyt,  
 Et chevalers seze desgarnyz,<sup>11</sup> susprist,  
 Serjaunz jeskes à trent, dunt chascun se rendit;  
 Sire Thomas de Nevyl chevaler i occist,  
 Et Ralf ly Cofrers, ke grant aver tendist  
 A Symund Frisel ke là ne moresist.  
 Fresel ly regarde, Fresel ly redist,<sup>12</sup>  
 " Tu as le roy trahy ke tresorer te fist,  
 " Et moi et mulz des autres, dunt nes un est quit<sup>13</sup>  
 " Des gages ke tu dait<sup>14</sup> par tayle et par escrit;  
 " Ore es-tu cy trové sanz albe et sans amy,<sup>15</sup>  
 " En hauberke de fere, ke n'est pas habit  
 " As clers<sup>16</sup> de sainte eglise par kanke chant et lit;  
 " Tu averas jugement solum toen merit."<sup>17</sup>

The Scots  
rise again.

Death of  
Ralph the  
Cofferer.

<sup>1</sup> *Johan de Hastings*, B. *sire Johan de Hastings*, C. *Jon de Hastings*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *Emery de Brette*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *noun pas*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *tut*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *de treu avaunt dit*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *peschele*, C.

<sup>7</sup> *al melz*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *pert*, C. D.

<sup>9</sup> The scribe of C. has skipped from this word to the word *Escoz* in the next line, and omitted the words which intervene.

<sup>10</sup> *Segrave son chemin reprist*, B. C. D. "The Segrave myght not stand, sir John tok the gayn stie," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>11</sup> *Chivalers sezze des granz*, B. *chevalers ces*, C. *ceez*, D.

<sup>12</sup> *rendist*, B.

<sup>13</sup> This and the following line are transposed in D.

<sup>14</sup> *daies*, C.

<sup>15</sup> *saunz arbe ou amy*, D.

<sup>16</sup> *A clerk*, C.

<sup>17</sup> This and the two following lines are omitted in C.



That John de Hastings, a knight of choice,  
 And Emery de la Brette, no little baron,  
 Should go into Gascony immediately without contra-  
 diction,

To wait the term of the aforesaid truce.

We English believe that negligence is accursed;  
 For when we have most pleasure in striking well,  
 Dishonour comes upon us and loss by delay.

I speak for the Scot who the other day attacked  
 Our English in Scotland by a sudden onset;

Sir John de Segrave took to flight,  
 His son and his brother, after rising from bed,  
 And sixteen knights undressed, [the Scot] took by  
 surprise,

Sergeants as many as thirty, of whom all surrendered;  
 He there slew sir Thomas de Nevile, knight,  
 And Ralph the cofferer, who offered much money  
 To Simon Fresel that he should not die there.

Fresel looks at him, Fresel replies to him,

“Thou hast betrayed the king who made thee trea-  
 surer,

“And me and many others, of whom not one is ac-  
 quitted

“Of the wages which thou owest by reckoning and by  
 writing;

“Now art thou found here without alb and without  
 amice,

“In hauberk of iron, which is not a habit

“For clergy of holy church in which he chants and  
 reads;

“Thou shalt have judgment according to thy merit.”

Ly rybaud des prez, ke tant tresoyst,<sup>1</sup>  
 Ly chaitif coferer maintenan[t]<sup>2</sup> saisyst,  
 Les meyns luy cospeit,<sup>3</sup> la teste ly partist ;  
 A tel feor de guere cungé des armes prist.

Quarrel  
 between  
 the king of  
 France and  
 the pope.

Entre ces aferes graunt controversye  
 Entre luy rey de Fraunce, sire de Seynt Dinye,  
 Et Boniface la pape, s'en<sup>4</sup> leva par hatye.

Luy roys vers l'apostoylle surmist heresyie,  
 Pecché sodomyen, usure,<sup>5</sup> et simonye,  
 Errour et mescreaunce en ydolatrie,<sup>6</sup>  
 Ravine de seynte eglise, fraude, et bugerie,  
 Moryne pardurable de alme com de vye.  
 De tele mescreaunce Phelippe la pape escrye ;  
 Pecché plus horrible, ne greygnur vileynie,  
 De chef de seynte eglise fut unkes mès oye.

The quarrel  
 temporarily  
 appeased.

Boniface s'avise par sen et par clergye ;  
 Maunder fet les mestres de theologie,  
 Cil parlent et purveyent la noyse seyt sopye,  
 Et ke luy rey Phelippe sur ceo se<sup>7</sup> chastye,  
 Et face les amendes de sa reverye  
 A Deu et seynte eglise ; si noun, la pape otrie  
 Ke pur la mesprise Fraunce seyt honye  
 Par comune entredit et par croyserye,  
 Com terre renayé, la quele Deu defye.  
 En temps après orrez fyn de la folye ;  
 Repayroms à la geste, ke ele ne seit ublie.

<sup>1</sup> *de près qi tant tresdit*, B. This line is omitted in D. Robert of Brunne has here,—

“ A boye fulle pautenere he had  
 “ a suerd that bote,  
 “ He stirte unto the cofrere, his  
 “ handes first of smote,  
 “ And fro the body his heved a  
 “ dynt than did the cleve,  
 “ His werryng so he leved, at  
 “ armes he tok leve.”

*Le cofrere un ribaud mainte-  
 nant*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *li coupeit*, B. C. *copait*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *s'en* omitted in B. *se leva*, C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *user*, C.

<sup>6</sup> “ Errid mislyving, haunted Ma-  
 “ humetrie,

“ Wastid kirkis thing. and lyved  
 “ in bugerie,

“ And was worthi to schende  
 “ bothe soule and lyf.” Ro-  
 bert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *soit*, B. *seit*, C. *sait*, D.

A ribald near at hand, who heard it all so well,  
Now seized the wretched cofferer,  
Cut off his hands, his head departed from him ;  
By such manner of war he took leave of arms.

Amidst these affairs, great quarrel  
Between the king of France, lord of St. Denis,  
And Boniface the pope, arose through hastiness of  
temper.

The king laid to the charge of the pope heresy,  
The sin of Sodom, usury, and simony,  
Error and misbelief in idolatry,  
Robbery of holy church, fraud, and heretical tenets,  
Fatal for ever to soul as well as to life.  
Of such misbelief Philip accuses the pope ;  
Crime more horrible, or greater disgrace,  
Was never heard of the head of holy church.  
Boniface takes counsel by wisdom and by clergy ;  
Causes to be assembled the masters in theology,  
These talk and provide that the quarrel be appeased,  
And that king Philip correct himself in that,  
And make amends for his offence  
To God and holy church ; if not, the pope grants  
That for the error France be punished  
By common interdict and by crusade,  
As land renegade, which sets God at defiance.  
In time afterwards you will hear the end of this  
madness ;  
Let us return to the history, that it be not forgotten.

*Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>. CCC<sup>o</sup>. tertio.*

Edward  
leads his  
army into  
Scotland.

En les estez<sup>1</sup> après, sauntz plus demorer,  
Luy reys sire Edward Escoz va waster ;  
Par loement des uns, avaunt fist carpenter  
Nefs, batels, et barges, des clayes traverser,<sup>2</sup>  
A foer<sup>3</sup> de pount, par chaunce mès i<sup>4</sup> n'avait mester,  
Passez est la rive<sup>5</sup> sauntz nef et mariner.  
L'Escot le vait venir, li tourn soen derer,  
Vers mores et monteyns refuaunt<sup>6</sup> com ler.  
Ly reys en parties son host fet tayller ;  
Les uns des barouns, le count de Hulvester,  
Vount vers le occident la tere despuyller ;  
Ly reys vers le orient entreprennent soen aler.  
Hameletz et viles, graunges et gerner,  
Et pleynes et voydes, par tut fet arder ;  
Ausi fet le prince, sauntz reen<sup>7</sup> esparnier.  
Ly reys si loynce en north va l'Escot chacer,  
Où unkes reys<sup>8</sup> Engleis avaunt portait baner.<sup>9</sup>  
Les foreyns des ylles en oyent<sup>10</sup> parler,  
Les countes enzaynes<sup>11</sup> en vount conseyller,  
Se rendent à la pees, et<sup>12</sup> vount al rey jurer  
Ke leals li serrount par tere et par mer.  
Le temps après se change, et survent le yver ;  
A Dounfermelyn ly reys va reposer.  
La rayne i veent, li reys la fist maunder.  
Ly sire de Badenaghe s'en va gupyller,<sup>13</sup>

Advances  
farther  
north than  
any king  
before him.

<sup>1</sup> *l'esté*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *transverser*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Al foer*, C.

<sup>4</sup> *il*, B. C. D.

<sup>5</sup> *la mer*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *deffuant*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *nul*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *reys* omitted in C. D.

<sup>9</sup> *Engleis ne porta baner*, B.

Robert of Brunne adds,

“ Save kyng Athelstan, that  
“ wastid alle Catenesse.”

<sup>10</sup> *des viles en oiount*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *e maynes*, B. The word in the text is unknown to me.

<sup>12</sup> *et* omitted in D.

<sup>13</sup> *gopiller*, D. Robert of Brunne translates these lines as follows :—

“ The lord of Badenauh, Freselle,  
“ and Waleis,

“ Lyved at theves lauh, ever  
“ robband alle weis.

“ Thei had no sustenance the  
“ werre to mayntene,

“ Bot skulked opon chance, and  
“ robbed ay bituene.”

*Anno Domini 1303.*

In the summer after, without more delaying,  
The king sir Edward goes to lay Scotland waste ;  
By the advice of some, he first causes to be built of  
timber  
Ships, boats, and barges, and crossed with hurdles,  
In manner of a bridge, by chance there was no need  
of it,  
The shore is passed without ship and mariner.  
The Scot sees him come, turns his behind upon him,  
Flying back towards moors and mountains like a thief.  
The king causes his army to be divided in parts :  
Some of the barons, with the earl of Ulster,  
Go towards the west to despoil the land ;  
The king undertakes his expedition towards the east.  
Hamlets and towns, granges and barns,  
Both full and empty, he burns everywhere ;  
So does the prince, without sparing anything.  
The king goes so far to the north pursuing the Scot,  
Where never English king carried banner before.  
The aliens of the isles hear talk of it,  
Their earls go to hold counsel on it,  
They submit to peace, and go to the king to swear  
That they will be loyal to him by land and by sea.  
The weather afterwards changes, and winter comes on ;  
The king goes to take rest at Dumfermlin.  
The queen comes thither, the king causes her to be  
sent for.  
The lord of Badenagh goes skulking about,

Fresel et Walays ove li vount rober.  
 Desore n'i ont ke frire, ne boiver,<sup>1</sup> ne manger,  
 Ne poer à rester dount guer gouverner ;  
 Venuz sunt au reys de sa pees prier.  
 Ly reys sur la demaunde les fet ajourner,  
 Dount durement me doute ke curteysye de quer  
 Nous fra la nove<sup>2</sup> sause pire du primer.  
 Afiance en feloun<sup>3</sup> poet nul home aver.

Quarrel  
 between  
 pope Boni-  
 face and  
 the Colon-  
 nas.

Ore oyez<sup>4</sup> coment, en l'an avaunt dit,  
 A nostre apostoylle fu fet graunt despit<sup>5</sup>  
 Par les Columnyns, du lyn de Rome elit  
 Cardinals estayent, ne say par que merit.  
 La pape les hostayt<sup>6</sup> et privait de l'habit ;  
 Lour teres destruit, lour chastels abatit,  
 Lour dignités donait, en exylle les mist.  
 La parenté fu graunt, g[r]evé<sup>7</sup> se sentit,  
 As altres en Cezyllle alaynt saunz respit ;  
 Phelippe rey de Fraunce aide les tramist.  
 Cil alaint vers Anayne, où Boniface nasquit ;  
 La cité entraynt, ly citayne assentit.  
 Li Columnyne<sup>8</sup> pur veyr ilok la pape prist,  
 Et son tresor tut meyntenaunt seysist.

Death of  
 pope Boni-  
 face.

La pape sauntz viaund fu ij. jurs en subit ;  
 Par aide survenaunt le terce jour issist ;  
 De tut le graunt tresor k'en son temps conquist  
 Ne aveit plus ke Jop<sup>9</sup> ou femer kaunt i[l] sist.<sup>10</sup>  
 La soume de l'aver ke Boniface perdist,  
 Ne combeen arer homme ly rendist,  
 Ne de feez de coust uncore ne fu parfist ;

<sup>1</sup> *Des n'ount ke frire, ne boire, B.*  
*Des ore ne out qe fere ne beyver,*  
 C.

<sup>2</sup> *novel, C.*

<sup>3</sup> *en felounye, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *oyez, omitted in B.*

<sup>5</sup> *fet par despit, B.*

<sup>6</sup> *ousteit, B.*

<sup>7</sup> *e grevé, B. grevé, C. D.*

<sup>8</sup> *Columpne, B. Columpnyne, C.*  
*Columyne, D.*

<sup>9</sup> *qe Job, B. C. D.*

<sup>10</sup> *quant il sist, B. C. en femer*  
*quant il sist, D.*

Fresel and Wallace go with him robbing.  
Henceforth they have nothing to fry, or drink, or eat,  
Nor power remaining wherewith to manage war ;  
They are come to the king to solicit his peace.  
The king on the demand gives them a day,  
Whereby I fear me much that courtesy of heart  
Will make for us the new sauce worse than the first.  
Trust in a felon may no man have.

Now listen how, in the year beforesaid,  
To our pope was done great despite  
By the Colonnas, of the lineage of Rome elected  
Cardinals they were, I know not by what merit.  
The pope deposed them and deprived them of the habit ;  
Destroyed their lands, threw down their castles,  
Gave their dignities away, sent them into exile.  
Their kindred was large, felt itself aggrieved,  
They went without delay to the others in Sicily ;  
Philip king of France sent them aid.  
They went to Anagni, where Boniface was born ;  
They entered the city, the citizen joined them.  
The Colonnas in truth captured there the pope,  
And then seized the whole of his treasure.  
The pope was two days in confinement without  
meat ;  
He got out on the third day through aid which  
arrived ;  
Of all the great treasure which he amassed in his time,  
He had no more left than Job when he sat on the  
dunghill.  
The sum of money which Boniface lost,  
Nor how much they returned him back,  
Nor of fees of cost, it was never known ;

Mez conuz ai de veir affraé s'empartist  
 Maintenaunt vers Rome, où iij. jours vesquit,  
 Mortz i est sauntz faylle, et à Seynt Pere gist.<sup>1</sup>  
 Election of pope Benedict. Bulle avoms novele, le noun Benet escrit,  
 Ke partye repele ke Boniface purvist.  
 Ly robbers est asous avaunt ke taunt<sup>2</sup> mefist.  
 Molt est sors et fols<sup>3</sup> en Rome ke se fist.<sup>4</sup>  
 Pro quante<sup>5</sup> posse dare à graunt et à petit  
 Par fare et par defare<sup>6</sup> Rome nous derit.  
 Hola ! de choses par de ceà<sup>7</sup> dayller nous suffist.  
 Resoun nous rechace revertir à la gest,  
 Treter ove les Escoz<sup>8</sup> de peez saunz molest,  
 De William le Walays,<sup>9</sup> ki gist en la forest.  
 Wallace demands conditions of the king. A Dounfermelyn, après la seynte feste  
 Du Nowel, par amys au reis ad fet request,  
 Ke rendre se puyssse<sup>10</sup> à sa pees<sup>11</sup> honest,  
 Saunz en sa manaye<sup>12</sup> mettre cors ou test ;  
 Mès ke li reys ly graunt de doune, ne pas de prest,  
 Baylye honorable de boyse et de<sup>13</sup> beste,  
 Et par son escrit li seys<sup>14</sup> et li vest  
 Pur li et pur ses heyrns en teres<sup>15</sup> de conquest.  
 Edward's anger. Ly reys pur la demaunde irrez se tempest,  
 A maufé li comaund, et kaunt ke sur ly creste,<sup>16</sup>  
 Treys centz mars promet à homme ke ly detest.  
 Walays à fuyr tapisaut se prest  
 En mores et<sup>17</sup> montaygnes, de roberie se pest.

<sup>1</sup> *e à Saint Pere i gist, C.*<sup>2</sup> *assoutz qe tant avant, B.*<sup>3</sup> *sotz e fous, B. C. D.*<sup>4</sup> *qe ceo fist, C. D.*<sup>5</sup> *Pur quange, B.*<sup>6</sup> *e defare, B.*<sup>7</sup> *Od la chose de cea, B. des choses par de sa, C.*<sup>8</sup> *ove l'Escot, D.*<sup>9</sup> *William Waleis, B.*<sup>10</sup> *pense, C.*<sup>11</sup> *à la pees, D.*<sup>12</sup> *manye, C. maneye, D.*<sup>13</sup> *ou de, B.*<sup>14</sup> *saise, C. D.*<sup>15</sup> *en tere, C.*<sup>16</sup> *This line is omitted in D.*<sup>17</sup> *en, B. e en, D.*



But I have learnt for truth that he went away terrified  
Thereupon towards Rome, where he lived three days,  
He is dead there without fail, and lies at St. Peter's.  
We have a new bull, the name written Benedict,  
Which repeals part of what Boniface provided.  
The robber is absolved who before did so much wrong.  
He is very foolish and mad who puts his trust in  
Rome.

For however much he may give to great and to little,  
Rome mocks us by doing and undoing.  
No more! we have sufficiently dwelt upon matters  
abroad.

Our subject compels us to return to the history,  
To treating with the Scots for peace without molestation,  
To William Wallace who lies in the forest.  
At Dunfermlin, after the holy festival  
Of Christmas, through friends he has made request to  
the king,  
That he may submit to his honest peace,  
Without surrendering into his hands body or head;  
But that the king grant him, of his gift, not as a loan,  
An honourable allowance of woods and cattle,  
And by his writing the seisure and investment  
For him and for his heirs in purchased land.  
The king, angered at this demand, breaks into a rage,  
Commends him to the devil, and all that grows on him,  
Promises three hundred marks to the man who makes  
him headless.

Wallace makes ready to seek concealment by flight  
Into moors and mountains, he lives by robbery.

*Anno Domini M<sup>o</sup>CCC<sup>o</sup>IIII<sup>o</sup>.*

Terms on which the Scottish prisoners were liberated.

Peace proclaimed.

Ore oyez<sup>1</sup> la fourme ke ly reys otrye  
 De [pe]s à les Escoz<sup>2</sup> ke sunt en sa mercye,  
 Et ajournez estayent sur lour reverye,  
 Jugement receyver, ke nul le countredye.  
 Ly reys les<sup>3</sup> ad graunté par sa curtasye  
 Tere et tenement et membre et vie,  
 Sauve de tote partz<sup>4</sup> à sa genturye  
 Raunceoun de chescun solum sa folye.  
 Sire Symon Fresel, forpris en la partye,  
 En exylle est jugez pur sa felonye  
 En realme estraunge, où il n'i ait<sup>5</sup> amy. •  
 Deus aunz i fra demore, la terce, si seit<sup>6</sup> en vye,  
 En pees repairira à sa manauntye.  
 En Quarreme après ceste afere finye,  
 Li reys à Seynt Andreu s'en va,<sup>7</sup> sa pees i crye.  
 L'eveske de Glascu il veent, of la<sup>8</sup> clergye<sup>9</sup>  
 Du realme d'Escoz,<sup>10</sup> et là chescun se lye  
 A la pees le rey, ly reys à ceo se plye,  
 Save les amendes à sa seynurye,  
 Com serrount ordinez, saunz altre escaumpye,<sup>11</sup>  
 Par ly et la comune de sa<sup>12</sup> baronye.

*De captione castri de Strivelin.*<sup>13</sup>

Ly reys après la Paschek enprent<sup>14</sup> son aler,  
 Of sa chevalerye, Estrivelyn<sup>15</sup> asseger.

<sup>1</sup> orrez, B.

<sup>2</sup> *De pes as Escoz*, B. *De peez à les Escoz*, C. D.

<sup>3</sup> les omitted in B.

<sup>4</sup> *de tote parte*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *où n'i ait*, B. *où il ne ait*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *s'il seit*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *i va*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *i vient od sa*, B. *i vint ouf sa*, C. *i veent*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *crergye*, A.

<sup>10</sup> *des Escoce*, D.

<sup>11</sup> In place of this and the next line, D. has,—*Cum ordiné serra par ly et sa baronye.*

<sup>12</sup> *de la*, C.

<sup>13</sup> This rubric is found in B. C. D., but omitted in A.

<sup>14</sup> *prent*, D.

<sup>15</sup> *Strivelin*, B. *Estryvelyn*, C.

*Anno Domini 1304.*

Now hear the form which the king grants  
 Of peace to the Scots who are at his mercy,  
 And who were adjourned for their outrage,  
 To receive judgment, that no one find fault with it.  
 The king has granted them by his courtesy,  
 Land and domain and limb and life,  
 Except on all parts to his lordship  
 Ransom of each according to his folly.  
 Sir Simon Fresel, excepted in the party,  
 Is condemned to exile for his felony  
 Into a foreign kingdom, where he has no friend.  
 He shall make his dwelling there two years, the third,  
     if he be alive,  
 He shall repair in peace to his lordship.  
 In Lent after this affair finished,  
 The king proceeds to St. Andrews, proclaims his  
     peace there.  
 The bishop of Glasgow comes there, with the clergy  
 Of the realm of Scotland, and each binds himself  
 To the king's peace, the king yields to that,  
 Excepted the amends to his lordship,  
 As they shall be ordered, without other escape,  
 By him and the communalty of his barony.

*Of the taking of the castle of Stirling.*

The king after Easter takes his departure,  
 With his knighthood, to besiege Stirling.

Siege of  
Stirling  
castle.

Kaunt là sount venuz, le lu vount visiter,<sup>1</sup>  
Et trez<sup>2</sup> graunz engines i fount adrescer.  
Chevalers ij. avaint le chastel à garder,  
Sire William Olifarde estait ly primer,  
Sire William de Dypplyn ly altre oy<sup>3</sup> nomer,  
Et xx. gentilshoms, saunz pages et porter,  
Un frere Jacobyn, un moygne conseyller,  
Et xiiij. gentils femmes<sup>4</sup> of lour lavender;  
Noun pluys des persones<sup>5</sup> i fount à noumbrer.  
Une engine avaynt, le proferent<sup>6</sup> à getter,  
La verge debrusait,<sup>7</sup> après ne pout aider.  
Les engines defors<sup>8</sup> sunt mys al mester,  
Et mures et turels les peers fount passer,  
Les kirkels enviroun i fount trebucher,  
Et mesouns dedence à tere cravaunter.

King Ed-  
ward's  
great  
engine.

Entre ses aferes ly reys fet carpenter  
Une engine horrible, et Ludgar apeler,<sup>9</sup>  
Et cel à son hurtir crevant<sup>10</sup> le mur enter.  
Treys mayes et viij. jours,<sup>11</sup> en journez acounter,  
Dura la tempest, dure fu l'endurer  
A chaytifs<sup>12</sup> dedeynce, ke n'avaint à manger.  
De nule part lour vint socour ne poer,  
Par out la pees le rey desirent molt aver ;<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *venuz sont la leu va v.*, C.

<sup>2</sup> *E trezze*, B. "Thrittene grete  
"engynes, of alle the reame the  
"best," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>3</sup> *oit*, B.

<sup>4</sup> A. has *homes*, erroneously  
repeated from the line just before.  
Robert of Brunne translates,—

"Ther was within thrittene may-  
"dens and ladies,

"And no men to mene that felle  
"to telle of pris."

Of course Robert of Brunne un-  
derstood that the numbers given in  
the text only included the men of  
account, not the common fighting  
men.

<sup>5</sup> *Nent plus de persones*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *profrent*, C. *profrerent*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *La verge debrisoit*, B. "The  
"zerde brast in tuyn, to help mot  
"it not last," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> *dehors*, B. C. *de force*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *e ludgare l'apeller*, B. Robert  
of Brunne has here,—

"The kyng did mak right zare  
"an hidous engyn,

"The name thei cald Ludgare or  
"Lurdare of Strivelyn."

<sup>10</sup> *creveit*, B. *creva*, C. *crevayt*,  
D.

<sup>11</sup> *e treis jours*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *As cheitifs*, B. C.

<sup>13</sup> This line is omitted in B.

When they are come there, they go and examine the  
place,  
And cause to be raised there thirteen great engines.  
Two knights had the castle in ward,  
Sir William Olifard was the first,  
I heard the other named sir William of Dipplyn,  
And twenty gentlemen, besides pages and porter,  
A Jacobin friar, a monk as counsellor,  
And thirteen gentlewomen with their laundress ;  
No more persons they numbered there.  
They had an engine, and brought it out to cast ;  
The rod broke, afterwards it was of no use.  
The engines without are put to work,  
And cause the stones to pass walls and towers ;  
They overthrow the battlements around,  
And throw down to the ground the houses inside.  
In the midst of these doings the king causes to be  
built of timber  
A terrible engine, and to be called Ludgar ;  
And this at its stroke broke down the entire wall.  
Three months and eight days, reckoning by days,  
Lasted the storm ; the endurance was hard  
To wretches within, who had nothing to eat.  
From no side came to them succour or power,  
Wherefore they desire much to have the king's peace ;

Par entreenveyez sovent le fount prier.  
 Ly reys lour demaund si toste ne voet graunter.  
 Taunt fust la trayne longe de la pees parler,  
 Ke jeo ne sey ne peus la maité<sup>1</sup> recorder ;  
 Mès been ay entendu ke,<sup>2</sup> au paraler,  
 Le chastel fu rendu au rey à soen voler,  
 Issi ke cels dedeynz, chevaler, esquier,<sup>3</sup>  
 Et tretut li altre, saunz<sup>4</sup> covenaunt tayller,  
 Se mistrent en sa grace pitousement de quoer.  
 Le chastel est seysi, li rey fet ordiner  
 Gardayns parmy la tere le pople justicer ;  
 En tere si destrute ne voet demorer,<sup>5</sup>  
 Repaire of la victoyre en Engleterre arer.

Surrender  
of Stirling  
castle.

*Coment Strivelin fu rendu.<sup>6</sup>*

En Septembre après Estrivelyn est rendu ;  
 Ly reys<sup>7</sup> sir Edward ses travayls ad sentu,  
 Vers Brustewik sur Humbre son chemyn ad tenu,<sup>8</sup>  
 Sugiour une pece i prist pur sa salu.  
 Sire Jon de Warene,<sup>9</sup> count been conu,  
 Mortz fu lors, et prest à mett[r]e<sup>10</sup> en sarcu.  
 Ly reys, ke Deu garde ! en alaunt vers le su  
 Parmy Lendesei,<sup>11</sup> enquist de lu en lu,  
 Taunt com en Escoz en sa guere fu,  
 Ky ont sa pees enfraynt, ki ont sa pees tenu ;<sup>12</sup>  
 Pur taunt com il volait<sup>13</sup> remede fu purveu  
 Sur cil ke fust ataynt de sa pees rumpu.

Death of  
earl John  
de Wa-  
renne.

<sup>1</sup> *ne pusse la meité*, B. C. D.  
<sup>2</sup> The words *ke au p. Le ch. fu rendu*, are omitted in B.  
<sup>3</sup> *e esquier*, B.  
<sup>4</sup> *E trestouz les autres fount*, C. D.  
<sup>5</sup> This line is omitted in D.  
<sup>6</sup> This rubric is found only in B.  
<sup>7</sup> *Au rei*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *en son chemin est meu*, B. C. est mu, D.  
<sup>9</sup> *de Guarenne*, B. *de Garenne*, D.  
<sup>10</sup> *mettre*, B. C. D.  
<sup>11</sup> *Parmi de Lindeseie*, B.  
<sup>12</sup> *e qi l'ount tenu*, B.  
<sup>13</sup> *Par tant cum avoleit*, B. *Par taunt*, C.

By intermessengers they often solicit him.  
 The king sends them word that he will not grant it  
 so soon.  
 So long the conference for peace dragged out,  
 That I know not nor can I record the half of it ;  
 But I have heard well that, in the sequel,  
 The castle was surrendered to the king at his will,  
 So that those within, knight, squire,  
 And all the others, without making conditions,  
 Put themselves in his pardon with piteousness of heart.  
 The castle is taken possession of ; the king causes to  
 be appointed  
 Wardens throughout the land to judge the people ;  
 He will not dwell in a land so wasted,  
 Returns with victory back into England.

*How Stirling was surrendered.*

In September following, Stirling is surrendered ;  
 The king sir Edward has felt his labours.  
 He has taken his way towards Brustwick-on-Humber ;  
 Takes there his sojourn a while for his health.  
 Sir John de Warenne, an earl well known,  
 Was then dead, and ready to put in his coffin.  
 The king, whom God preserve ! in going towards the  
 south  
 Through Lindsey, inquires from place to place,  
 While he was in his war in Scotland,  
 Who have broken his peace, who have held his peace ;  
 In order that according to his will remedy might be  
 provided  
 For him who was convicted of his peace broken.

The Trail-  
bastons,  
and their  
turbulent  
proceed-  
ings.

Respouns ount fet au reys gentz de been<sup>1</sup> voyllance,  
Coment parmy la tere fet est<sup>2</sup> graunt grevaunce  
Par comune contekours, ke sunt par fianunce  
Obligez ensemble à une purviaunce;  
Traylbastouns sunt nomez de cel retenaunce.  
En fayres et marchez<sup>3</sup> se proferent<sup>4</sup> fere covaunce,  
Pur treys souz ou iiij.,<sup>5</sup> ou pur la valiaunce,  
Batre un prodomme ke unk fist nosaunce<sup>6</sup>  
A cors Cristiene, par nuli temoygnaunce.<sup>7</sup>  
Si homme countredye à nul de l'aliaunce,  
Ou marchaund de ses merz li vee fere creaunce,<sup>8</sup>  
En sa mesoun demene, sauntz altre daliaunce,  
Batuz serrait been, ou pur l'acordaunce  
Dora de ses deners, et prendre<sup>9</sup> aquitaunce.  
Si en la riot ne seit<sup>10</sup> fet disturbaunce,  
Une commune guere se levera par chaunce.  
Entendu ad ly reys la plaint et la parlaunce;  
Escutez ore coment purveu est la vengauce.

*Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo quinto.*<sup>11</sup>

Punish-  
ment of the  
Trailbas-  
tons.

Parmy Engleterre gentz de graunz resouns  
Assignez sunt justizes sur les traylbastouns.  
Les uns par enquest sunt jugez à prisouns,  
Li altre<sup>12</sup> alez à fourches à pendre enviroins;  
Plusours sunt privez de possessiouns;<sup>13</sup>  
Ke meyns mesfesaynt sunt passez par raunsouns.  
Si chastiment ne fust de ribaldes et bricouns,<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *de bon*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *est fet*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *e en marchez*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *profrent*, C. *profrent*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *ou pur iiij.*, C. "Thei profere  
" a man to bete for tuo schilynges  
" or thre," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *qe unqes ne fist nusance*, B. C.

<sup>7</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *li vee de creance*, B. *les vee*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *e prendra*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *la riote sait*, C.

<sup>11</sup> This rubric is taken from B.  
and D.

<sup>12</sup> *Les altres*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *de lour p.*, B. *des possessiouns*,  
D.

<sup>14</sup> *des ribaus e b.*, B.



People of good will have made reply to the king,  
How throughout the land is made a great grievance  
By common quarrellers, who are by oath  
Bound together to a compact;  
Those of that company are named Trailbastons.  
In fairs and markets they offer themselves to make an  
engagement,  
For three shillings or four, or for the worth,  
To beat a freeman who never did injury  
To Christian body, by any evidence.  
If a man offends any one of the confederacy,  
Or a merchant refuses to give him credit with his  
wares,  
In his own house, without other dealing,  
He should be well beaten, or to make it up  
He shall give of his money, and take acquittance.  
If there be not some stop put to this turbulence,  
A war of the commons will arise by chance.  
The king has heard the complaint and the talk;  
Now hear how the vengeance is provided.

*Anno Domini 1305.*

Through England people of great judgment  
Are appointed judges upon the Trailbastons.  
Some by trial are condemned to imprisonment,  
Others gone to hang about on gallows;  
Several are deprived of their property;  
Who offended least are allowed to escape by fines.  
If there were no chastisement of ribalds and rogues,

Capture  
and exe-  
cution of  
William  
Wallace.

Osé ne serrait homme vivre en mesouns.  
 O cum Deus est bons de drayturels<sup>1</sup> guerdouns!  
 Ke taunt sovent nous ad vengé de felouns.  
 Novel avoms oy, entre<sup>2</sup> compaygnouns,  
 De William le Walays,<sup>3</sup> mestre de larouns;<sup>4</sup>  
 Sir Jon de Menetest li suist à talouns,  
 En près<sup>5</sup> de sa puteyne li prist en tapisouns;  
 A Loundres le menait en ferges et laççouns,<sup>6</sup>  
 Oû jugez esteit sur cels condiciouns,  
 En primer à fourches<sup>7</sup> fut treyné pur tresouns,  
 Pendu pur robberyes et pur occisiouns,  
 Et pur ceo k'il avait ennenty<sup>8</sup> par arsouns  
 Viles et eglises et religiouns,  
 Avalez est de fourches,<sup>9</sup> et overt les ventrouns,  
 Le quoer et la bowel brullez en carbouns,  
 Et copé la teste par tels mesprisiouns,  
 Pur ceo ke il avait par ces havyllouns  
 Maintenez la guere, doné protecciouns,  
 Seysye seygnurye<sup>10</sup> en ses subjecciouns  
 De altri realme par ses entrusiouns.  
 Copé li fust le cors en quatre porciouns;  
 Chescun pende par say, en memor de ses nouns,  
 En lu de sa banere<sup>11</sup> cels sunt ces<sup>12</sup> gunfanouns.

<sup>1</sup> *est draiturels e de bone g.*, C. This and the line following are omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *A cel tens la novele entre*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *Wiliam Waleis*, B. D.

<sup>4</sup> *des barouns*, C. *des larouns*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *S'emprès*, B. Robert of Brunne has made the following additions here:—

“ He tok him whan he wend lest,  
 “ on nyght his leman bi.

“ That was thorght treson of  
 “ Jak Schort, his man,

“ He was the encheson that sir  
 “ Jon so him nam.

“ Jak brother had he slayn, the  
 “ Waleis that is said,

“ The more Jak was fayn to do  
 “ William that braid.”

<sup>6</sup> *e lasçouns*, C. *laçouns*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *as furches*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *anenti*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *des fourches*, B. C.

<sup>10</sup> *seignurs*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *de banere*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *les*, C.

A man would not dare to live in house.  
O how God is good in his righteous rewards !  
Who so often has revenged us on felons.  
We have heard news, among companions,  
Of William Wallace, the master of thieves ;  
Sir John de Meneteith followed him at his heels,  
Took him in hiding by the side of his concubine ;  
Carried him to London in shackles and bonds,  
Where he was judged on the following conditions :  
In the first place to the gallows he was drawn for  
    treasons,  
Hanged for robberies and slaughters ;  
And because he had annihilated by burnings,  
Towns and churches and monasteries,  
He is taken down from the gallows, his belly opened,  
His heart and his bowels burnt to cinders,  
And his head cut off for such treasons as follow :  
Because he had by his assumptions of authority  
Maintained the war, given protections,  
Seized into his subjection the lordship  
Of another's kingdom by his usurpations.  
His body was cut into four parts ;  
Each one hangs by itself, in memory of his name,  
In place of his banner these are his gonfanons.

Popular  
verses on  
Wallace.

Pur finir sa geste,  
A Loundres est sa teste,<sup>1</sup>  
Du cors est fet<sup>2</sup> partye  
En iiij. bones viles,  
Dount honurer les ylles  
Ke sunt en Albanye.  
And tus may you here<sup>3</sup>  
A ladde to lere<sup>4</sup>  
To bigken<sup>5</sup> in pais;  
It falles in his eghe<sup>6</sup>  
That hackes ovre heghe,<sup>7</sup>  
Wit at Walays.<sup>8</sup>

Par la morte<sup>9</sup> Walays poet home remembrer  
Quel gwerdoun apent à traitour et à ler,<sup>10</sup>  
Et pur divers trespas quel divers lower.  
Du quens<sup>11</sup> Robert de Breus nous estoet counter,  
En Quarem après coment il fist prier  
Luy sire de Badenaghe<sup>12</sup> venir ove luy parler,

Murder  
of John  
Comyn by  
Bruce.

<sup>1</sup> *en sa teste* B. In Robert of Brunne's translation, the six French lines of rhyme *cowée* are expanded into twelve, as follows:—

“ At London is his heved,  
“ His quarters ere leved,  
“ In Scotland spred,  
“ To wirschip ther iles,  
“ And lere of his wiles,  
“ How wele that he sped.  
“ It is not to drede,  
“ Traytour salle spede  
“ Als he is worthi;  
“ His lif salle he tyne,  
“ And die thorgh pyne,  
“ Withouten merci.”

<sup>2</sup> *au cors fet*, B. *de cors*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *And thus mai men here*, B. And, omitted in Robert of Brunne, who reads, *may men*.

<sup>4</sup> *forto lere*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>5</sup> *biggin*, B. *biggen*, C., and Robert of Brunne.

<sup>6</sup> *ize*, B., and Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *hakkis over hie*, B. *haggis over heghe*, C. *hewes over hie*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>8</sup> *With that Waleis*, B. *With the Walays*, Robert of Brunne.

<sup>9</sup> *Pur la mort*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *e ler*, B.

<sup>11</sup> *Du quel*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *de Banagh*, C. Robert of Brunne translates this,—

“ Now of kyng Roberd to telle  
“ *ȝow* his trespas,  
“ Als Lententide com in Cristen  
“ mans lauh,  
“ He sent for Jon Comyn, the  
“ lord of Badenauh,  
“ To Dounfres suld he come,  
“ unto the Minours kirke,  
“ A spekyng ther thei nome, the  
“ Comyn wild not wirke  
“ Ne do after the sawe of Roberd  
“ the Brus.

To finish his history,  
His head is at London,  
Of the body is made partition  
In four good towns,  
Wherewith to honour the isles  
Which are in Albany.  
And thus may you hear  
To teach a lad  
To build in peace;  
It falls in his eye,  
Who hacks over high,  
Take example of Wallace.

By the death of Wallace may one bear in mind  
What reward belongs to traitor and to thief,  
And what divers wages to divers trespasses.  
Of earl Robert de Brus we must now relate,  
In the Lent following how he invited  
The lord of Badenagh to come and talk with him,

A Dounfrès en l'eglise du frere Cordeler ;  
 Oû luy quens Robert, suppoant sur l'auter,  
 Tua le Badenagh par feloni de quoer,  
 Pur taunt<sup>1</sup> com il ne vout à luy<sup>2</sup> acorder  
 Sur le reys Edward la gwere susciter,  
 Et par coup d'espeye le regne desrener  
 Pur luy, qe lors se dist illoques de dreit regner.<sup>3</sup>  
 Après la felonye, saunz gweres demorer,  
 Un sé novel à Scone fist reparayller ;  
 Et la<sup>4</sup> gerlaund i prist qe reys solait porter,  
 En signe de seygnurye, à son encorouer.<sup>5</sup>  
 Mayntenaunt après par tut fist crier,<sup>6</sup>  
 Citez, burgs, et viles des Engleys voyder.  
 Eveques deus estoyent primaz al dubber,<sup>7</sup>  
 Ove l'abbé de Scone, qe puy l'achata cher,  
 Countes et barouns, chivaler et esquier,<sup>8</sup>  
 Du realme d'Escoce estoyent conseyller,  
 Jurez en eyde al Brus par terre et par mer,  
 Les nouns orrez après en parlaunt du venger.  
 Luy Brus s'en va cum roys ses gweres ordiner.  
 Luy roys Edward l'oit dire, i maund<sup>9</sup> sir Emer,<sup>10</sup>  
 Counte de Penebrok, le fol à refrener.  
 Des barouns Engleys le fet associer,  
 Ke bieu ount, mercy Deus ! par là fet lour dever.

Bruce pro-  
claims  
himself  
king of  
Scotland.

The earl of  
Pembroke  
sent against  
him.

" Away he gan him drawe his  
 " conseil to refus.  
 " Roberd with a knyve the  
 " Comyn ther he smote,  
 " Thorgh whilk wounde his lyve  
 " he lost, wele I wote.  
 " He zede to the hie autere, and  
 " stode and restid him thore ;  
 " Com Roberdes squiere, and  
 " wonded him wele more."

<sup>1</sup> *Par tant*, B. C.

<sup>2</sup> *ouf ly*, C.

<sup>3</sup> *illoqe dreit regner*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *sa*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *à sa coroner*, B. This line is omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> This line is omitted in B. *E mayntenaunt*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *à dubber*, C. *au dubber*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *chivaler, esquier*, D.

<sup>9</sup> *e maunde*, C.

<sup>10</sup> *sire Eymer*, B.

At Dumfries in the church of the Friars Minors;  
Where earl Robert, leaning upon the altar,  
Slew the Badenagh through felony of heart,  
Because he would not agree with him  
To raise war against king Edward,  
And by dint of sword obtain the kingdom  
For him, who then said he was the right king.  
After the felony, without remaining long,  
He caused to be re-erected a new seat at Scone,  
And he took there the garland which the king used  
to wear,  
In sign of lordship, at his coronation.  
Now after he caused everywhere to be proclaimed  
To voyd cities, boroughs, and towns of the English.  
Two bishops were primates at the investment,  
With the abbot of Scone, who afterwards paid it  
dear,  
Earls and barons, knights and squires,  
Were councillors of the kingdom of Scotland,  
Sworn to aid the Bruce by land and by sea,  
Their names you will hear afterwards in talking of the  
vengeance.  
The Bruce goes as king to order his wars.  
King Edward hears tell of it, sends thither sir Aymer,  
Earl of Pembroke, to check the madman.  
He causes him to be accompanied with English barons,  
Who, thank God! have done their duty well over  
there.

*Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo vj<sup>o</sup>.<sup>1</sup>*

Après la feste de Pasche en l'an desouz tochez,  
 Sa feste de Pentecost ad luy rey maunde  
 Tenir a Westmoustre, ove clers et ove barnez,  
 Où, ove graunt noblaye, à son fiz aynez,  
 Edward prince de Gales, les armes ad donez.  
 Treys centz pur veir<sup>2</sup> chivalers acountez  
 A couz<sup>3</sup> le reys Edwarde estaynt adubbez.  
 Plusours de[s] plus nobles i furent mariez.  
 Luy quens de Warenne, en ses noveltez,  
 Esposa la fylle luy quens de Bars nomez.  
 Le count de Arundel, seisy de ses fez,  
 I prist la damoysele qi pere fut clamez  
 William de Warenne, à Dieu comaunde.  
 Sir Huge le fiz Hug, Despenser appellez,<sup>4</sup>  
 I prist la pucele de gentil parentez,  
 Quele Gilbert de Clare avoit engendrez  
 Sur Jone la countesse de Acres surnomez.<sup>5</sup>  
 Nule ame<sup>6</sup> se mervale de jeu et joe assez,  
 Où feste fu ferrue<sup>7</sup> de tels solempnetez.  
 Unkes en Bretaygne puy qe Dieu fu nez  
 N'estoyt tel nobleye en viles<sup>8</sup> n'en citez,  
 Forpris Karleoun en antiquitez,  
 Qaunt sire Arthur luy reis i fust corounez.  
 Luy prince, qi Dieu sauve ! de qi avoms parlez,  
 Après la dite feste pris ad ses congez  
 Ove compaygnye jolifs, envers le north<sup>9</sup> alez,

The prince  
of Wales  
knighted.

Noble mar-  
riages at  
the great  
feast of  
Whitsun-  
tide at  
Westmin-  
ster.

<sup>1</sup> This rubric is furnished by B. C. and D.

<sup>2</sup> *ccc. pur veire*, B. *et xv.*, C. *pur voir et xv.*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *As coutz*, B. *A touz*, D. "It was the kynges costage, for ilk a knyght was gest," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>4</sup> *nomez*, C.

<sup>5</sup> *appelez*, C.

<sup>6</sup> *Nul aume*, B.

<sup>7</sup> Robert of Brunne translates these two lines as follows:—

"It is not to wene, bot certeynly

"to witen,

"Joye inouh is sene ther suilk a

"fest is smyten."

<sup>8</sup> *en vile*, C.

<sup>9</sup> *envers north*, C.



*Anno Domini 1306.*

After the festival of Easter in the year here named,  
 The king has proclaimed his feast of Whitsuntide  
 To be held at Westminster, with clergy and with barons,  
 Where, with great nobleness, to his eldest son,  
 Edward prince of Wales, he has given arms.  
 Three hundred knights of account in truth  
 Were dubbed at the cost of king Edward.  
 Several of the most noble were married on that occa-  
 sion.

The earl of Warenne, with his newly received title,  
 Espoused the daughter of the count de Barre.  
 The earl of Arundel, in possession of his fees,  
 Took there the damsel whose father was named  
 William de Warenne, who had departed to God.  
 Sir Hugh son of Hugh, called Despenser,  
 Took there the maiden of noble kindred,  
 Whom Gilbert de Clare had begotten  
 On Joan the countess surnamed of Acres.  
 No soul wonders there was game and joy enough,  
 Where a feast was held with such ceremonies.  
 Never in Britain, since God was born,  
 Was there such nobleness in towns nor in cities,  
 Except Caerleon in ancient times,  
 When sir Arthur the king was crowned there.  
 The prince, whom God preserve! of whom we have  
 spoken,  
 After the said feast has taken his leave  
 With joyous company, and gone towards the north,

Pur quer le rey Robyn où qe seit trovez.  
 King Edward at Lanercost. Luy reys Edward son pere après fist ses jornez  
 Joqes à Lanercost,<sup>1</sup> où malade est cochez,  
 Taunt com Dieu là seus l'ad revigourez.<sup>2</sup>  
 Mayntenaunt après surdrent<sup>3</sup> les dolours  
 As abbés, as esvesques, à clers, à lays<sup>4</sup> plusours,  
 De la terre d'Escoce, à gentz<sup>5</sup> sovent parjours.  
 Bruce's attempt on Perth. Sir Emer<sup>6</sup> de Valence, ove ses chivauchours,  
 Denz<sup>7</sup> la vyle Seint Jon pris avoit sojours;  
 De[s] barouns d'Escoce i avoynt les meyllours.  
 Luy rey Robyn l'oit dire, parle ove ses fautours,  
 Maunde à sir Emer par ses bassatours  
 Rendre luy la vile, deliverer les traitours  
 Ke wayvez luy avoyent à lour deshonnours.  
 Au matyn lendemayn Robyn en erreurs,  
 Des rochesz et chemises cover<sup>8</sup> ses armours,  
 Se profre à combatre, esprover voet ses cours.  
 Sir Emer de Valence issist hors de murs;  
 Robyn sa mounture tuait al primours,<sup>9</sup>  
 His flight. Luy quens est remountez, de soens avoit socurs;  
 Robyn le dos luy tourne, s'en fuist<sup>10</sup> aliours.  
 Lors comencea la chace, et dura taunt des hours,  
 Ke Robyn n'avoyt<sup>11</sup> ne chastels ne tours,  
 Ne refute à vile ne à recettours.  
 Fresel taken and executed. Fresel, ne say coment, eschapait des estours;<sup>12</sup>  
 Pris est, menez à Loundres, traynez, penduz à fourz,<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Jesqe à Lanercost, B. Laver-*  
*tost, C.*

<sup>2</sup> *reingez, C.*

<sup>3</sup> *surdrint, C.*

<sup>4</sup> *as clers, as lays, C.*

<sup>5</sup> *as gens, B.*

<sup>6</sup> *Sire Eymmer, B.*

<sup>7</sup> *Dedenz, B.*

<sup>8</sup> *coverer, C.*

<sup>9</sup> *à primours, D.*

<sup>10</sup> *et s'en fuist, D.*

<sup>11</sup> *Ke Robin ne auit, C. Robin,*  
*D.*

<sup>12</sup> *eschapa de estour, C. eschapa,*  
*D.*

<sup>13</sup> *traynez et fourez, C.*

To seek king Robin wherever he may be found.  
 King Edward, his father, afterwards made his progress  
 As far as Lanercost, where he is laid down ill,  
 Until God above has restored his strength.

Now after spring up the griefs  
 For abbots, for bishops, and for the clergy, for many  
 of the laity,  
 Of the land of Scotland, for people often perjured.  
 Sir Aymer de Valence, with his cavalry,  
 Had taken his residence within St. John's Town  
 (Perth);  
 There were there the best of the barons of Scotland.  
 King Robin receives information of it, consults with  
 his adherents,  
 Summons sir Aymer by his ambassadors  
 To give up to him the town, to deliver the traitors  
 Who had deserted him to their dishonour.  
 On the morning of the morrow, Robin in his wanderings,  
 His armour covered with surplices and skirts,  
 Offers battle, he will try his courage.  
 Sir Aymer de Valence sallies out of the walls;  
 Robin slew his steed at the first attack,  
 The earl is remounted, he has succour from his own  
 people;  
 Robin turns his back upon him, flies elsewhere.  
 Then began the chace, and lasted so many hours,  
 Till Robert had neither castles nor towers,  
 Nor refuge in town or among receivers.  
 Fresel, I know not how, escaped from the battle;  
 He is taken, carried to London, drawn, and hanged  
 on gallows,

Sa teste fu copé, et saunz chapel de flours  
 Enhaucé<sup>1</sup> sur le pount, le cors fust ars de jours.  
 En luy par sa fausine perirent grauntz valours.  
 Ore oyez quel hounte à clers<sup>2</sup> est avenu  
 De la terre d'Escoce, par la gwere mu.  
 L'evesqe de Seint Andreu honor ad perdu,  
 Et l'abbé de Scone, l'evesqe de Glascu,  
 Fergez sur hakenayes sunt maunde vers le su ;  
 En divers prisoun chescun est tenu,  
 Taunt cum l'apostoylle le fet ad meuz conu.  
 A clers et lays saunz noumbre<sup>3</sup> la gwere ount main-  
 tenu,  
 Autel cum à ler<sup>4</sup> est jugement rendu.  
 Cristofore de Setoun, noun pas desconu,  
 Pur Jon de Badenagh est trainez et pendu ;  
 Et luy quens de Ascetle<sup>5</sup> ad jugement resceu,  
 Tel com luy Fresel, et en meme le lu,  
 Par comaundement le rey forpris<sup>6</sup> la trayné fu.  
 Allas ! le gentyl saunk ensint<sup>7</sup> espaundu !  
 Du boyvere dam Waryn luy rey Robyn ad bu,  
 Ke citez et viles perdist par l'escu,<sup>8</sup>  
 Après en la forest, forsenez et nu,<sup>9</sup>  
 Se pesceit ove la beste de cel herbe cru.  
 Son livre le temoyne luyquels de luy est lu.<sup>10</sup>  
 Taunt cum le rey Robyn court et fet utrage,  
 Sir Arthur de Bretaygne, duk de haut parage,  
 Veent en Engleterre pur quer son heritage,

Scottish  
 prelates  
 taken.

Christopher  
 de Seaton  
 and the  
 earl of  
 Asketil  
 executed.

The duke  
 of Britany  
 claims  
 Richmond-  
 shire.

<sup>1</sup> *En haute*, C. *E haucé*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *as clers*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *saunz noumbre*, omitted in D.

<sup>4</sup> *A cels cum à lers est jugement*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *Assetle*, C., in which the words between this and *en meme le lu* (in the next line) are omitted. *Ascecle*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *horspris*, B. "Save he was not

"drawen, that poynt was forgyven," Robert of Brunne.

<sup>7</sup> *issint*, B. C. This and the two lines following are omitted in D.

<sup>8</sup> *par escu*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *ly Breus s'en fu*, D.

<sup>10</sup> *testimoigne, qe de li est lu*, B. *Son liver est temoygne*, D. The reference, of course, is to the history of Fulk fitz Warine, the celebrated outlaw under king John.

His head was cut off, and without chaplet of flowers,  
 Raised up on the bridge, the body was burnt.  
 In him, through his falseness, perished much worth.

Now hear what disgrace is come upon the clergy  
 Of the land of Scotland, disturbed by the war.  
 The bishop of St. Andrews has lost honour,  
 And the abbot of Scone, and the bishop of Glasgow,  
 Are sent in fetters on hackneys towards the south ;  
 Each is held in a separate prison,  
 Until the pope has become better acquainted with the  
 fact.

To clergy and laymen without number who have  
 maintained the war,

Equally as to a robber is judgment rendered.

Christopher de Seaton, not unknown,

Is drawn and hanged on account of John of Bade-  
 nagh ;

And the earl of Asketil has received judgment

Similar to that of the Fresel, and in the same place,

By command of the king the drawing was omitted.

Alas ! the noble blood which was thus spilt !

King Robin has drunk of the drink of dan Warin,

Who lost cities and towns by the shield,

Afterwards in the forest, mad and naked,

He fed with the cattle on the raw grass.

His book bears witness of it, which is read concerning  
 him.

While king Robin is running about and committing  
 violence,

Sir Arthur of Britany, a duke of high kindred,

Comes into England to seek his inheritance,

Richemundchire, ove rentes et waygnage,  
 Ove wardes et releves, forest et pounage,<sup>1</sup>  
 Du rey sir Edwarde à tenir par homage.  
 Curtement à dire, respouns avait volage.  
 Luy duk Arthur repair,<sup>2</sup> ove pesaunt corage;  
 A sir Jon son frere de plus joven age  
 Est doné la<sup>3</sup> countée, saunz novel servage,  
 A tenir en fé par auncien usage  
 Du rey sire Edward et de son lignage.  
 Luy rey de roys,<sup>4</sup> par qi tempeste de mere se asswage,<sup>5</sup>  
 Preste qe ne aveygne perde ne<sup>6</sup> damage!

Le duk vers Bretaygne repassez est la mer;  
 Du fols rey Robyn qe voet plus parler,  
 De sir Thomas de Breus se poet amentiner,  
 Et de sir Alexander, de qi me dout le quoer,<sup>7</sup>  
 Haut den<sup>8</sup> de Glascu et riche provender;  
 Par le rey Robyn à lour encumbrier,  
 Qi freres els estoyent,<sup>9</sup> alayent espier,  
 Les Engleys destrure saunz nul esparnier.  
 Un sergeaunt Galwaleys,<sup>10</sup> Magdowel<sup>11</sup> oy nomer,  
 Le mescredy de Cendres en venaunt du muster,  
 A sursaut les prist et les fist lyer,<sup>12</sup>  
 Et al reys Edward à Kardoyl envoyer.  
 Kaunt luy reys l'oit dire, fet justices assigner,  
 Et Thomas de Breus pendre et trainer,  
 Et sir Alexander à fourches<sup>13</sup> comaunder,  
 Et après le pendre les deus decoler.  
 Le pape Boniface fist determiner,  
 En son sime livre qe il fist ordiner,<sup>14</sup>

Thomas  
 and Alex-  
 ander  
 Bruce  
 seized and  
 executed.

<sup>1</sup> This line is omitted in D.

<sup>2</sup> *retourne*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Et donée la*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *des reis*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *de mer assuage*, B. *de meer*  
*savage*, C. *swage*, D.

<sup>6</sup> *perde n'eit ne damage*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *me dout quer*, C.

<sup>8</sup> *Haud dian*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Qi freres estoient*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *Gallawais*, C.

<sup>11</sup> *Makdowel*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *le prist et la fist lier*, C.

<sup>13</sup> *al fourches*, C.

<sup>14</sup> MS. C. ends with this line  
 imperfect.

Richmondshire, with the rents and profit,  
With wards and reliefs, forest and pannage,  
To hold by homage of the king sir Edward.  
To speak briefly, he had a light answer.  
Duke Arthur returns with heavy spirit ;  
To sir John his brother, of younger age,  
Is given the county, without new services,  
To hold in fee by ancient usage  
Of the king sir Edward and of his lineage.  
The King of kings, through whom storm of sea becomes  
calmed,  
Grant there arrive neither loss nor damage !

The duke is repassed the sea to Britany ;  
Who would discourse further of the mad king Robin,  
He may make mention of sir Thomas de Bruce,  
And of sir Alexander, of whom my heart doubts,  
High dean of Glasgow and rich beneficiary ;  
By appointment of king Robin, to their trouble,  
Whose friends they were, they went to spy,  
In order to destroy the English without sparing any.  
A sergeant of Galloway, I heard him named Macdowel,  
On Ash Wednesday, as they were coming from the  
minster,  
Took them by surprise, and caused them to be bound,  
And to be sent to Carlisle to king Edward.  
When the king was informed of it, he caused judges  
to be appointed,  
And Thomas de Bruce to be hanged and drawn,  
And sir Alexander to be sent to the gallows,  
And after the hanging the two to be beheaded.  
Pope Boniface caused to be determined,  
In the sixth book which he had compiled,

Quels clers en quel cas home dait sauver,  
 Et quels en quel habit homme dait dampner,  
 Attaintz de felounye, cum roubbur et leer.<sup>1</sup>  
 Ne fust l'estatute fet en tyel maner,  
 Plus osez serraint clers la pees Dieu violer.

*Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo VIJ<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>2</sup>

The Parlia-  
 ment at  
 Carlisle.

A la Paske après à Kardoille ouf sa gent  
 Ly rai sire Edward tyent<sup>3</sup> son parlement;  
 Un cardinal de Rome i veent<sup>4</sup> sollempnement,  
 Pur ceo mariage dount fu parlé sovent,  
 Entre ly prince de Gales et la pucel gent  
 Feille ad ray de Fraunce, si home bonement<sup>5</sup>  
 Lors peust fere acorde de ceo daliement.  
 Des plosurs choses tretaint ensemment.  
 Par clers de saint eglise assez honestement  
 Estatute fu fet repellez saunz assent;  
 Ly count e ly baroun l'empaise<sup>6</sup> malement.  
 De tut le graunt consaille estait le finement  
 Ke ly rois Edward, saunz daliement,<sup>7</sup>  
 Frait maunder à Loundres gentz de avisement,  
 Pur veer et feere entendre al ray Phelippe<sup>8</sup> coment  
 Le dit mariage purra profitement  
 Estre affermé, saunz plus parler ent.  
 Ore doigne qe been sait ly Deus<sup>9</sup> omnipotent!

Capture of  
 sir John  
 Wallace.

Ly reis Robin uncore en mores et marais  
 Court en sa riote, sire Johan le Waleis  
 Pris est en la plaine purseut des<sup>10</sup> Norais,  
 E maundez à Loundres fergez sur hakenais.

<sup>1</sup> *cum robbour ou leer*, B. D.

<sup>2</sup> The rubric is given from B. D.

<sup>3</sup> *tint*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *de Rome vint*, B. *i vint*, D.

<sup>5</sup> *bonaient*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *l'empeisent*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *delaiement*, B. *delayment*, D.

<sup>8</sup> *au rei Philip*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *soit*, *Dieus*, B.

<sup>10</sup> *en une pleine par sute de N.*, B.  
*par assent des Norais*, D.



What clerks in what case one ought to save,  
 And what clerks in what habit one ought to condemn,  
 As robbers and thieves, when attainted of felony.  
 Were it not for the statute made in such manner,  
 The clergy would be more daring to violate God's  
 peace.

*Anno Domini 1307.*

At the Easter following, at Carlisle with his people  
 The king sir Edward holds his parliament ;  
 A cardinal from Rome comes there solemnly,  
 For that marriage of which was often speech,  
 Between the prince of Wales and the fair maiden  
 Daughter of the king of France, if one successfully  
 Could then make an arrangement of that treaty.  
 Of several things they treated likewise.  
 By clerks of holy church fairly enough  
 A statute was made, repelled without assent.  
 The earl and the baron reject it unjustly.  
 Of all the great counsel the end was  
 That king Edward, without delay,  
 Should cause to be sent to London people of wisdom,  
 To see and explain to king Philip how  
 The said marriage will be able profitably  
 To be confirmed, without further negotiation about it.  
 Now may God Almighty grant it be well!

King Robin still in moors and marshes  
 Wanders in his turbulence, sir John Wallace  
 Is taken in the plain pursued by the northerners,  
 And sent to London fettered on a hackney.

Execution of sir John Wallace. A Westmouster quant vint entre les sorais,  
 Solom ses desertz fu jugez par les lais.  
 Sa paine fu taillé par penaunces trays;  
 Avalez est<sup>1</sup> des fourchez e[n] chemyns<sup>2</sup> e brays,  
 La teste après copé e porté par Loundrais  
 Sur le pount de Loundres, et levez par hutais  
 Près du chef son frere<sup>3</sup> William le malvais,<sup>4</sup>  
 Qe unques n'out pité de Cristien Englais.  
 Chevaler e persoun, cytain e burgays,<sup>5</sup>  
 E chanoigne e moygne, e freres des abbais,  
 Fist passer par l'esspeiz<sup>6</sup> sanz avoir de pais.  
 Par tot seit honurez ly haut Deus verrais,  
 Par qi seint grace Edward<sup>7</sup> nostre rays  
 Ly leers ad hutrayé e tot sun liné punays.

*De morte illustris regis Edwardi.*<sup>8</sup>

All man-kind sub-ject to death. O Sire<sup>9</sup> tutpuissant ke Cristien ahure,  
 Ton overe est chescon terrene creature,  
 En fesaunt le mounde fu taillé<sup>10</sup> la figure,  
 Qe homme, femme, e beste deit morir par nature.  
 [Belin e Brennius, Bretons par baudure,  
 Pristrent Rome à force, e treu là mustrent sure;  
 Li rei Arthur après, sanz plaie e sanz blemure,  
 Conquist tote France, com à se tere pare.  
 Wawein et Angusele de sa noreture  
 En gueres e batailles Arthur soleient sure.  
 Home deit bien, entre reis qe unt regnez pus cel  
 heure,

<sup>1</sup> *Avalé fu*, B. *de fourches*, D.

<sup>2</sup> *en chemise*, B. *en chemys*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *son pere*, B.

*le Waleis*, B.

<sup>5</sup> This and the two following lines are omitted in D.

<sup>6</sup> *par espeie*, B.

<sup>7</sup> *sire Edward*, B.

<sup>8</sup> This rubric is taken from B. and D.

<sup>9</sup> *O Pere*, B. D.

<sup>10</sup> *fu fet*, B. D.

When he came to Westminster among the south-  
 erners,  
 According to his deserts he was judged by the laws. .  
 His punishment was divided into three punishments ;  
 He was let down from the gallows in shirt and  
 breeches,  
 His head afterwards cut off and carried by the  
 Londoners  
 On the bridge of London, and raised with shouts  
 Near the head of his brother William the wicked,  
 Who never had pity on an English Christian,  
 Knight and parson, citizen and burgher,  
 And canon and monk, and brothers of abbeys,  
 He put them all to the sword without having peace.  
 May everywhere be honoured the high true God,  
 By whose holy grace Edward our king  
 Has destroyed the thief and all his puny line.

*Of the death of the illustrious king Edward.*

O Lord Almighty, whom the Christian adores,  
 Every earthly creature is thy work,  
 In making the world was formed the law,  
 That man, woman, and beast must die by nature.  
 Belinus and Brennius, Britons in their pride,  
 Took Rome by force, and put a truce upon it ;  
 King Arthur afterwards, without wound and without  
 blemish,  
 Conquered all France, and took possession as his own.  
 Gawain and Angusele, of his nourishing,  
 In wars and battles used to follow Arthur.  
 One must well, among kings who have reigned since  
 that time,

Character  
of king  
Edward.

Parler du rei Edward e de sa menure,  
Com de meuz vanez combatant sur mounture.]<sup>1</sup>  
Pus le tens Adam unques fut nul hure<sup>2</sup>  
Ke prince pur nobley, ne baroun pur baudoure,  
Ne marchaund pur avoyr, ne clerk pur lettrure,  
Par art ne par engine la mort peut<sup>3</sup> eschure.  
De chevalerye, après ly reis<sup>4</sup> Arthure,  
Estait ly reis Edward des Cristiens la flure;  
Tant fu beals e grantz, tant pussant en armoure,<sup>5</sup>  
De ly poet homme parler<sup>6</sup> tant cum le secle dure .  
[Qar par nul avoit chivaler en armure  
De vigour e value, ne present ne future.  
Novele avoms de li dolerouse e dure;]<sup>7</sup>  
Mort l'ad pris, allas ! desore qe fra draiture  
Pur<sup>8</sup> Johan de Badenaghe, fors cyl qe ad la cure,  
Edward le fitz Edward, ray de la tenure<sup>9</sup>  
Qe tenuz est par vowe le rei Robin destrure.

*De die et morte regis Edwardi prædicti.*

*Anno Domini millesimo tricentesimo septimo.*<sup>10</sup>

Death of  
king Ed-  
ward.

En l'an avant nomé, com nous avoms oye,  
Le jur setyme de Jule,<sup>11</sup> pur veir vous certifye  
Ke nostre reys Edward, qe alme Dieu beneye!  
A Burgh sur les Sabluns, alant vers Albanye,  
En verray creaunce son secle ad finye.  
Maintenant après sa mort estait<sup>12</sup> publye,  
Translatez est le corps par barnez e par clergie<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The nine foregoing lines are found only in B. They are translated by Robert of Brunne.

<sup>2</sup> *unques ne fu nul joure*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *puit la mort*, B. *pust la mort*, D.

<sup>4</sup> *après la mort*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *pussant en chivachure*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *chaunter*, B.

<sup>7</sup> These three lines are found only in B.

<sup>8</sup> *De*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Edward fitz Edward le rei de la tenure*, B. D.

<sup>10</sup> The rubrics are given from B.

<sup>11</sup> *La setime jour de Juli*, B.

<sup>12</sup> *est*, B.

<sup>13</sup> *e clergie*, B.

Speak of king Edward and of his memory  
 As of the most renowned combatant on steed.  
 Since the time of Adam never was any time  
 That prince for nobility, or baron for splendour,  
 Or merchant for wealth, or clerk for learning,  
 By art or by genius could escape death.  
 Of chivalry, after king Arthur,  
 Was king Edward the flower of Christendom.  
 He was so handsome and great, so powerful in arms,  
 That of him may one speak as long as the world  
     lasts.  
 For he had no equal as a knight in armour  
 For vigour and valour, neither present nor future.  
 We have of him news dolourous and hard ;  
 Death has taken him, alas ! henceforth who will do  
     justice  
 Upon John of Badenagh, except him who has the care,  
 Edward the son of Edward, king of the tenure  
 Which is held by vow to destroy king Robin.

*Of the day and death of king Edward aforesaid.*

*Anno Domini 1307.*

In the year just named, as we have heard,  
 The seventh day of July, for truth we certify you,  
 That our king Edward, whose soul may God bless !  
 At Burgh-upon-the-Sands, on his way to Albany,  
 In true faith has ended his life.  
 Now after his death was made public,  
 The body is transported by barons and by clergy

Burial of  
king Ed-  
ward.

A Waltham près de Loundres, sa demene<sup>1</sup> abbeye,  
 Quatre mais enters sollempnement servye.  
 Baumez juste sur bere<sup>2</sup> saunz avoir esparnye,  
 Partysaunt as povers<sup>3</sup> qe pur cel alme prie.  
 Xxx. et iiij. aunz, viij. mays, v. jours, vous dye,<sup>4</sup>  
 Regnait sur Engleterre par lay establye,  
 Par resoun e draït maintynt la monarchye ;  
 De vigour e value, de sen replenye,  
 Pere nul avait dount gwier<sup>5</sup> seignurye.  
 En près<sup>6</sup> de son linage ore est le corps sevelye,  
 A Westmouster, en tounge de marbre ben polye.  
 Ly prince ke pur nous suz Pilate<sup>7</sup> fu punye  
 Ly reis sire Edward resceive en sa mercye ;  
 Relese à l'alme face de[s] forfetez en sa vie,  
 En regal mansion là mene à compaignye,  
 Oû servise n'i ad fors joye et melodye.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *en sa demein*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Bannez i eust bere*, B. *Bannez just sure bere*, D.

<sup>3</sup> *à povers*, D.

<sup>4</sup> In Robert of Brunne's translation it is,—

“ Four and twenty zere, auht  
 “ monethes, and five daies,

“ Noblie regned he here bi profe  
 “ and gode assaies.”

<sup>5</sup> *avoit à guier*, B.

<sup>6</sup> *E après*, B. *En près de son*, D.

<sup>7</sup> *sutz Pilat*, B.

<sup>8</sup> The scribe of MS. D. has added the following lines upon his own labours :—

“ Cy finist Peres son liver en  
 “ honour,

“ Et Jon qe l'escrit parfet ad son  
 “ labour.

“ Al terme de sa vie Dieu luy  
 “ face socour,

“ Et mette s'alme en repose oue  
 “ seintz en doçour.

“ Jon, qe l'escrit, ordre porte de  
 “ prestre ;

“ Le vikere de Atlyngflete, sire  
 “ Jon, qe fu son mestre,

“ Le pria de l'escriver par sa  
 “ mayne destre ;

“ Dieus i mene lour almes en la  
 “ joye celestre !”

Robert of Brunne adds the following lines to his translation :—

“ Now must I nede leve here of  
 “ Inglis forto write,

“ I had no more matere of kynges  
 “ lif in scrite.

“ If I had haved more, blithly  
 “ I wild haf writen,

“ What tyme I left this lore the  
 “ day is for to witen ;

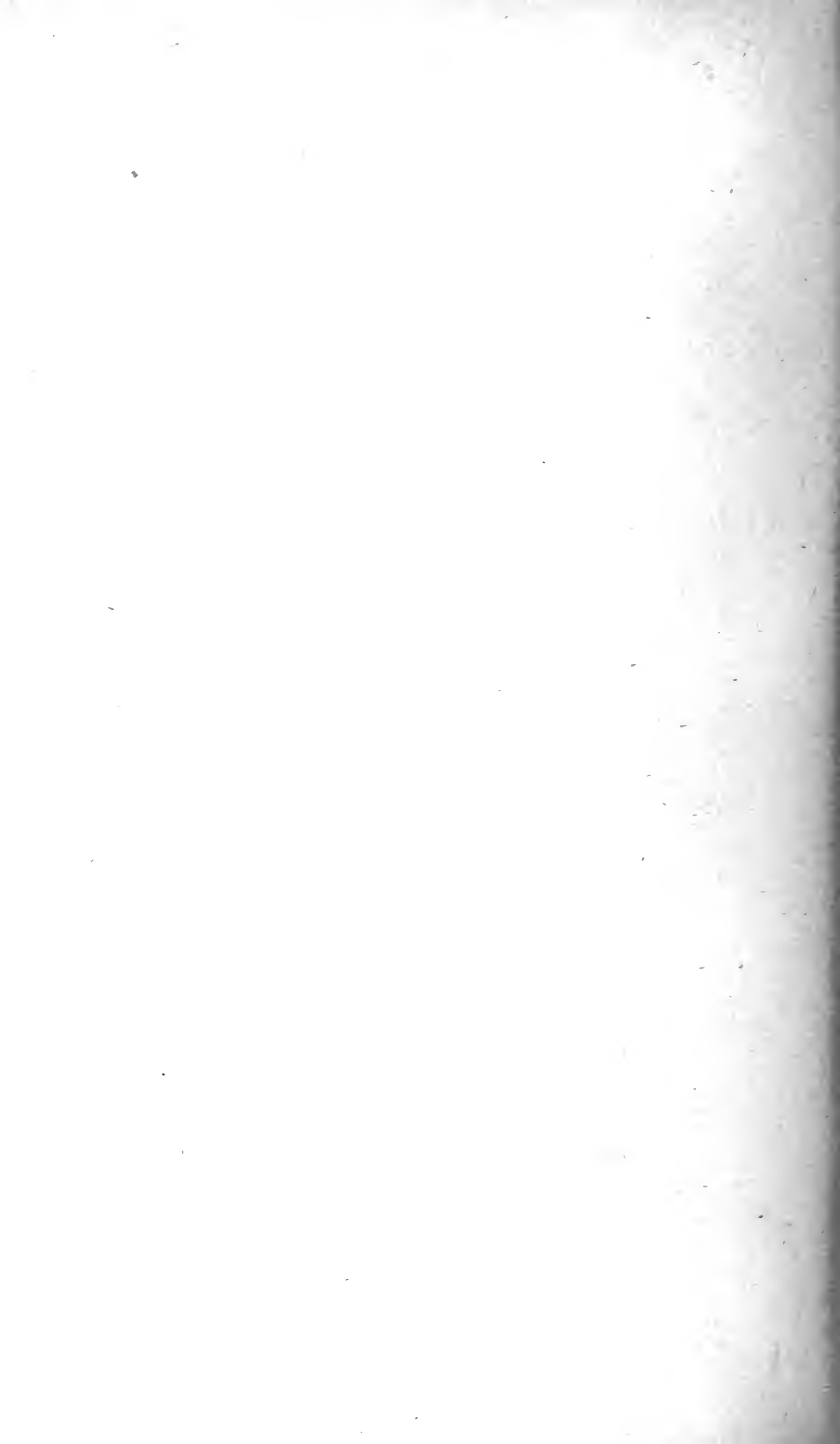
“ Idus that is of May left I to  
 “ write this ryme,

“ B letter and Friday bi ix. that  
 “ zere zede prime.”

Hearne corrects the beginning of this last line to *D letter*.

To Waltham near London, his own abbey,  
Four months entire served with solemn service.  
It lay embalmed on the bier, without sparing of  
wealth .  
Distributing to the poor who pray for that soul.  
Thirty-four years, eight months, and five days, I tell  
you,  
He reigned over England by established law,  
By reason and right he maintained the monarchy ;  
Of vigour and worth, and full of understanding,  
He had no equal in ruling a lordship.  
Beside his kindred now is the body buried,  
At Westminster, in tomb of marble well polished.  
May the Prince who for us was punished under  
Pilate  
Receive king Edward into his mercy ;  
Give remission to his soul of the sins committed in  
his life,  
Take him to his company there into regal mansion,  
Where there is no service except joy and melody.

---





---

APPENDICES.

---

## APPENDIX I. - - - -

## SUPPLEMENTARY MATTER WHICH FOLLOWS

Mult fu de grant reson le primer qe purvit  
 Les ovères des ancestres mettre en escrit,  
 Du siecle les merveiles, des sages les dités,  
 E les prophecies qe furent nunciez.  
 Ne fust l'escripture qe home list e voit,  
 Des gestes aunciens memorie perireit.  
 Pur nostre rei Edward puit home vere coment  
 Testmoigne d'escripture puit valer sovent.  
 Ceo paruint quant le pape par bulle li maundeit,  
 E qe son reaume de li tenir deveit,  
 E à la court de Rome par homage obeier,<sup>1</sup>

Noun pas au rei Engleis pur tiel tenement,  
 Si noun par poer e par abatement.  
 Li rei Edward avisez estoit  
 Des gestes Engleis, à Rome remandoit  
 Respons assez convenable, par commun assent  
 Des countes e barons, des clers ensement,  
 A Nichole sur Withine, en l'an entillée,  
 Oû lue fust la bulle, escotez la ditée.

---

<sup>1</sup> A line is here omitted in the MS., and a blank left for it ; more than one line seems necessary to give the meaning intended.

- - - - - APPENDIX I.

---

THE TEXT OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT IN MS. B.

---

He was a man of great judgment who first provided  
 To put in writing the works of our ancestors,  
 The wonders of the age, the sayings of the wise men,  
 And the prophecies which were made public.  
 Were it not for the writing which man reads and  
       sees,

The memory of the ancient history would perish.  
 In the case of our king Edward may be seen how  
 Testimony of writing may often be of worth.  
 That appeared when the pope sent to him by bull,  
 And that he ought to hold his kingdom of him,  
 And be obedient to the court of Rome by homage,

\*           \*           \*           \*           \*

Not to the English king for such lordship,  
 Unless by force and by seizure.  
 King Edward was well informed  
 Of English history, he sent back to Rome  
 A very proper reply, by common assent  
 Of earls and barons, of the clergy likewise,  
 At Lincoln on the Witham, in the year given in the  
       title,  
 Where the bull was first read, listen to its terms.

*Bulla domini papæ Bonifacii octavi regi Edwardo  
transmissa.*

Boniface, evesqe, serfs de serfs nomez,  
 Au noble rei Edward, des Engleis clamez,  
 Salutz cum à fitz trescher en Dieu amez,  
 E grace e beneisçon en noun de Trinité.  
 Sir, dit l'apostoile, nous savoms verraidement,  
 E avoms de grant temps conu provablement,  
 Par tes bons meriz, e par tes fez sovent,  
 Coment tu as esté à nous obedient,  
 De nostre seé de Rome resceu le maundement,  
 Parfete la tenure sanz contrariement,  
 Ta mere eglise seinte Pere amée devoutement,  
 Cum fitz deit sa mere en amour fervent,  
 En fey, en reverence, cum à li apent  
 Que l'eglise de Rome support e defent.  
 Par quei, dit Boniface, entendoms-nous pur veir  
 De tei, fitz trescher, aver bon espeir,  
 Fei e fiancée bon e pleneir  
 De ta regalté, dount nous n'avoms despeir,  
 Nos ditz et nos fetz, au matin e au seir,  
 Et coment receiveras sanz respons contrair,  
 Examiner le fras cum fitz debonair,  
 Le portour espleiter avant son repeir.

Par quei seinement deit estre demonstré  
 A la celsitude de ta regalté,  
 En ta memorie noun pas ublié,  
 Coment la tere d'Escoce de grant antiquité  
 Estoit e estre doit tenue de nostre sé,  
 Noun pas de tes ancestres, en service ne en feé,  
 Ne feodal estoit à ta parenté,

*Bull of the lord pope Boniface VIII. sent to king Edward.*

Boniface, bishop, named servant of servants,  
 To the noble king Edward, proclaimed of the English,  
 Salutations as to a very dear son beloved in God,  
 And grace and benediction in the name of the Trinity.  
 Sire, said the pope, we know truly,  
 And have for a long time been acquainted with it  
 provably,  
 By thy good merits, and by thy deeds often,  
 How thou hast been obedient to us,  
 Hast received the mandate of our see of Rome,  
 Performed the tenor of it without contradiction,  
 Loved devoutly thy mother church of St. Peter,  
 In fervent love as a son ought to love his mother,  
 In faith, in reverence, as behoves him  
 Who supports and defends the church of Rome.  
 Wherefore, said Boniface, we understand for truth  
 Of thee, very dear son, to have good hope,  
 Faith and trust good and full  
 Of thy royalty, of which we have no despair,  
 Our sayings and our deeds, in the morning and in the  
 evening,  
 And how thou wilt receive them without reply in the  
 contrary  
 Thou wilt as an obedient son cause it to be examined,  
 And satisfy the bearer before his return.  
 Wherefore it is to be substantially shown  
 To the highness of thy royalty,  
 Not forgotten in thy memory,  
 How the land of Scotland of great antiquity  
 Was and ought to be held of our see,  
 Not of thy ancestors, in service or in fee,  
 Nor was it feudal to thy family,

A nul de tes auncestres de service obligé,  
 En temps de pes e guere, encountre volenté,  
 Ne à ton pere Henri, en l'adverseté  
 Que li quens Symon de Mounfort nomé  
 Avant avoit en Engleterre encountre le levé.  
 Qar ton pere Henri cel heure, pur verité,  
 Au rei Alexandre, qe avoit esposé  
 Ta soer Margarete, par lettre ad prié  
 Au rei d'Escoce de aide en amisté,  
 E noun pas de dette, fors tut de son gré,  
 E, q'en prejudice à li ne fust tourné,  
 Ou service ou custom, chartre ad doné,  
 Confermé de son seal, le fet tesmoigné,  
 Coment à cel foiz cel aide fu granté  
 Au rei Alexandre, q'en amour ad presté.

Estre ces affaires à ton coroner,  
 Pur la sollempneté le plus honorer,  
 Fis-tu le rei d'Escoce devouement prier  
 Que par sa presence deignast avancer  
 La feste de ta corone, e sanz chalenger  
 Coustomes ou services à toi par son dever.  
 E par tant en ta lettre feistes nuncier  
 Que sa venue par dette ne poez demander,  
 Feauté ne purquant vous deveit-il jurer,  
 Mès pur la terre d'Escoce ne service ne dener  
 Vous deveit-il conustre, ne ne fist son per.

E com li rei d'Escoce feauté te feseit  
 Pur Tyndale e Penereth, qe de toit tenoit,  
 En fesant la feauté overtement disoit,  
 Devant trestut le pople qe là lors estoit,  
 Que pur la terre d'Escoce nul service ferroit,  
 Nul rien de son reaume de toi tenir clamoit,  
 Ne cum ton suget à toit se pliereit,  
 Si noun pur les terres dount avant parloit.

Bound by service to none of thy ancestors,  
In time of peace and war, against will,  
Nor to thy father Henry, in the adversity  
Which the earl named Simon de Monfort  
Had before stirred up against him in England.  
For thy father Henry at that time, for truth,  
To king Alexander, who had married  
Thy sister Margaret, has prayed by letter  
To the king of Scotland for aid in friendship,  
And not as a duty, but entirely of his will,  
And, that it should not be turned into prejudice to him,  
Or service or custom, has given a charter,  
Confirmed with his seal, bearing witness to the fact,  
How on that occasion that aid was granted  
By king Alexander, which he has lent in love.

In the ceremonies at thy coronation,  
To give greater honour to the solemnity,  
Thou causedst the king of Scotland to be devoutly prayed  
That by his presence he would deign to celebrate  
The festival of thy crown, and without claiming  
Customs or services belonging to thee by his duty.  
And therefore in thy letter thou causedst it to be stated  
to him  
That thou couldst not demand his attendance as a  
duty,

Fealty nevertheless he ought to swear to you,  
But for the land of Scotland neither service nor money  
Ought he to acknowledge to you, nor did his father.

And as the king of Scotland did thee fealty  
For Tyndale and Penrith, which he held of thee,  
In performing the fealty he said openly,  
Before all the people who were then there,  
That for the land of Scotland he would do no service,  
He acknowledged to holding of thee no part of his  
kingdom,  
Nor would bend to thee as thy subject,  
Except for the land of which he spoke before.

Sire, en ta memorie deis-tu remembrer,  
 Quant le rei d'Escoce cesseit de son regner,  
 Sa fidle Margarete, qe deveit gouverner  
 La reaume d'Escoce, cum dame de l'enteer  
 E de la seignorie cum dreit heir son pere,  
 Fust de meindre age e de noun poer,  
 La garde de son corps, ne de son aver,  
 Ne de son heritage, par terre ne par mer,  
 Ne de son reaume la value de un denier,  
 Cel heure par reson ne poiez clamer.  
 Par lettre de notarie tut puit home prover,  
 Coment en cel temps se fesoient assembler  
 Eleccion fesoient les nobles assigner  
 La terre e la pucele à sauver e garder.

La verité conustre devez par reson,  
 Quant pur ton fitz Edward tes messengeres par nouu  
 A nostre seé mandastes pur dispensacion  
 Qe la pucele d'Escoce li prist en baron,  
 Nous oimes ta priere de bon affection ;  
 Par quei nous grantames ta peticion.  
 Oil si la comune de cel region  
 Vousist le mariage, fors par condicion  
 Qe la tere d'Escoce en lour possession  
 Franche demorast, sanz subjection,  
 E usent e tenissent parmi la nacion  
 Lour leis et lour usages, sanz recoupison,  
 Bailliffs et justices par election,  
 Customes anciens de gaole e prison,  
 De tut ceo par ta lettre fis tu confection ;  
 E lors reconustes qe sanz tribucion  
 Estoit la tere d'Escoce, franche de rauçon,  
 Cum cele qe fu pure de submission  
 A nul autre tere, par droit action,  
 Usant dedenz ses marches la cognicion  
 Des causes e querels sur transgression.  
 Ta lettre ensealé de tut fet mencion.



Sire, in thy memory ought thou to remember,  
When the king of Scotland ended his reign,  
His daughter Margaret, who ought to rule  
The kingdom of Scotland, as lady of the whole  
And of the lordship as direct heir of her father,  
Was of minor age and incompetent,  
The ward of her body, nor of her goods,  
Nor of her heritage, by land or by water,  
Or of her realm the value of a penny,  
At that time couldst thou rightfully claim.  
By letter of notary it could all be proved,  
How at that time assembled together  
And made election the nobles to appoint  
To preserve and guard the land and the maiden.

You ought rightly to know the truth,  
When for thy son Edward thy messengers by name  
Thou sendest to our see for dispensation  
That the maiden of Scotland should take him for her  
    husband,  
We listened to thy prayer with good affection ;  
Wherefore we granted thy petition.  
But if the commonalty of that kingdom  
Had wished the marriage, except by condition  
That the land of Scotland in their possession  
Should remain free, without subjection,  
And they to use and hold throughout the nation  
Their laws and their usages, without diminution,  
Bailiffs and justices by election,  
Ancient customs of gaol and prison,  
Of all that by thy letter thou makedst allowance ;  
And then thou didst acknowledge that without tribute  
Was the land of Scotland, free from taxation,  
As that which was free from dependance  
Upon any other land, by just procedure,  
Using within its marches the cognizance  
Of causes and quarrels on transgression.  
Thy letter under seal makes mention of all.

Cum, après la grace qe à tei fu granté,  
 Morust la pucele dount estoit parlé,  
 Par pere ne par mere heir ne fust lessé,  
 Loyntaigne du sanc ke dreit unt clamé  
 A toi declineient en grant amisté,  
 Pur doute q'il aveient de contek e medlé ;  
 A lour venir à toi unt-il prononcé  
 Qe la venue estoit conceu tut de gré,  
 E noun pas de dette pur tere ne pur fee,  
 Qe tu par ta lettre les as confirmé,  
 Ton seal en testmoigne i pent pur verité.

E mes que cele gent, qe sanz chief estoient,  
 E sanz rectour e dustre, od tei counsaillent,  
 Par quei tes ministres, qi les leis saveient,  
 La seignorie d'Escoce à un fous doneient,  
 Par quei multz des autres à tei enclineient,  
 E ceaus du regne d'Escoce tort cel heure feseient.  
 Les nobles de la tere ore grever ne deient,  
 Ne casser le dreit qe les noz aveient.

Nul home pur verité sur ceo deit duter,  
 Où fet apertement puit certefier.  
 Escotez ore coment e en quel maner  
 Escoce ne deit estre à home tributer,  
 Si noun à l'apostoile en le noun seinte Per.  
 Car quant l'apostoile legat doit maunder  
 Au regne d'Engleterre l'estat examiner  
 Des clers e des lais, e du rei li primer,  
 Tiel legat vers Escoce unques ne passa mer.  
 Dunques semble par reson e par dit de quoe,  
 Qe la tere d'Escoce à tei ne deit plier.  
 Sur ceo pur ta salue te voloms remembrer  
 Des choses qe nous veoms e savoms recorder,  
 En temps Adrian, li honorable bier,  
 A qi nous esteimes jadis familier,  
 Quant fust en Engleterre en le temps ton per

When, after the grace which was granted to thee,  
 The maiden of whom we spoke died,  
 No heir was left by father or mother,  
 Those who have claimed the right by distance of blood  
 Submitted to thee in great friendship,  
 For fear there might be strife and contest;  
 On their coming to thee have they declared  
 That their coming was conceived entirely of their will,  
 And not by duty for land or for fee,  
 Which thou hast confirmed to them by thy letter,  
 Thy seal hangs to it as a witness for truth.

And more that that people, who were without head,  
 And without rector and leader, took counsel with thee,  
 Whereby thy ministers, who knew the laws,  
 Gave the lordship of Scotland to a madman,  
 Whereby many of the others inclined to thee,  
 And those of the kingdom of Scotland did wrong at  
 that time.

They ought not now to oppress the nobles of the land,  
 Or cancel the right which ours had.

No man for truth upon this ought to doubt  
 Where the fact can be openly certified.  
 Listen now how and in what manner]  
 Scotland ought not to be tributary to any one,  
 Except to the pope in the name of St. Peter.  
 For when the pope has to send a legate  
 To the kingdom of England to examine the state  
 Of the clergy and laity, and of the king first of all,  
 Such legate towards Scotland never passed the sea.  
 Then it seems by reason and by decree of the heart,  
 That the land of Scotland ought not to be subject to thee.  
 Thereupon for thy salvation we will remind thee  
 Of the things which we see and can record from know-  
 ledge,

In the time of Adrian, the honourable baron,  
 With whom we were formerly intimate,  
 When he was in England in the time of thy father

Legat l'apostoile, fésant son mester,  
 E fust à Kenilworthe les barons acorder ;  
 Après hors du North comenceit aler  
 Vers la terre d'Escoce les pleyntes terminer,  
 Cum fist en Engleterre, le regne visiter.  
 Le rei Alexaundre disturba son entrer  
 Par son privelege, qe li fist moustrer,  
 E fust la tenure, qe nul fitz de mere  
 Deit la tere d'Escoce cum legat justicer,  
 Si noun par sa licence qe là deit regner.  
 Rei, sur teles resons te deis bien aviser,  
 E nuli services à tort chalenger.

Estre ces affères, ton regal noblie  
 Deit bien conustre la grant tresorie  
 De seint Andreu l'apostle, qe verrai Die amie  
 Est nomez et wowé de tut Albanie ;  
 Le pape ses reliques doneit en douwerie  
 Avant qe la province, ou nul de la partie,  
 Convertuz estoit à droite creauncie.  
 E sur ceo ton regal deit estre garnie,  
 Coment un ercevesqe d'Everwik jadie  
 Visiter voleit, par sa surquiderie,  
 Cum metropolitan, Escoce e la clergie.  
 Les clers appelleient en grant controverisie  
 En nostre court de Rome, la cause fust sopie  
 Par un des esvesques, qi dit en sa veidie :  
 " Remembre tei, sir pape, de ta grant baillie,  
 " Nous sumes touz le toens, ne nous guepés mie ;  
 " Le honeur de ton noun, ne l' donez à autrie."  
 Pur voir, la parole assetz signifie  
 Qe Albanie deit estre à nostre awouwerie,  
 Par les evidences qe tu as ore oie.

E qe large estil, ne lounge document,  
 Te soit ennuiose noun pas à ton talent,  
 Edward, fitz trescher en Dieu omnipotent,  
 Te dioms dereschief, cum dire à fitz covient,

The pope's legate, performing his duty,  
 And was at Kenilworth to bring the barons to accord;  
 Afterwards out of the North he began to go  
 Towards the land of Scotland to decide the complaints,  
 As he did in England, to visit the kingdom.

King Alexander prevented his entry,  
 By his privilege, which he caused to be shown to him,  
 And the tenor was, that no son of mother  
 Ought to judge the kingdom of Scotland as legate,  
 Except by his licence who ought to reign there.  
 King, upon such reasons thou shouldst advise thee  
 well,

And claim wrongfully nobody's services.

Besides these affairs, thy regal nobility  
 Ought well to know the great treasury  
 Of St. Andrew the apostle, who true friend of God  
 Is named and worshipped by all Albanie;

The pope gave his relics in gift  
 Before the province, or any one of the country,  
 Was converted to the right belief.

And thereupon thy royalty ought to be warned,  
 How an archbishop of York formerly

Sought to visit, through his presumption,  
 As metropolitan, Scotland and the clergy.

The clergy appealed in strong contradiction

In our court of Rome, the cause was settled

By one of the bishops, who said in his subtlety:

“ Remember thee, sir pope, of thy great trust,

“ We are all thine, do not desert us;

“ The honour of thy name, give it not to another.’

In truth this statement shows sufficiently

That Albanie ought to be in our lordship,

By the evidences which thou hast now heard.

And that large style or long document

Be not wearisome to thy mind,

Edward, son very dear in God Almighty,

We tell thee again, as one ought to tell a son,

Ton sen examinez, ton quoer enterement,  
 Qe à nul estut duter, ne penser autrement,  
 Qe la seignorie d'Escoce pleinement  
 A nous e nostre sé par lei e dreit apent,  
 Par les evidences dount nes un ne ment.  
 Cil qe autre die, e fet destourbement,  
 A Dieu e seinte Pere trop durement mesprent.  
 La tere est malmené par toi e par ta gent,  
 Countre ton deveir, torcenousement.  
 Qar tu n'as dreit à tere ne tenement  
 Qe li rei d'Escoce ad tenu par descent  
 De nous e nostre seé, puis le comencement  
 Qe foi en Albanie vint par prechement.

Come par dit de leaus à nous est moustrez  
 De comune fame parmi les regnez,  
 Crioise en comune des tiels adversitez,  
 Les dites evidences as-tu mis suth pés ;  
 A nous et multz des autres, par fole voluntez,  
 Tort apertement as-tu comencez,  
 E fet en grant partie, à tes regautez,  
 Conqueraunt par force les teres e les feez  
 Qe sunt appendanz à nous e à nos seez ;  
 Destrut la tere d'Escoce parmi les cuntrez,  
 E nos dous evesques as-tu enprisonez ;  
 Clers e lais sans nombre en fer as-tu liez,  
 Dount les uns sunt mortz par tes iniquitez ;  
 Les chastels as-tu pris, le pople malmenez,  
 Tant cum la tere estoit sanz her confermez ;  
 Plusours autres choses qe ci ne sunt nomez,  
 En le offence de Dieu e sez majestez,  
 En despit de nous e nos dignetez,  
 En hounte e reproce du rei corounez,  
 En tort de chescun dreit e des equitez,  
 Au pople en esclaundre, qe veit veritez.

Pur les dites choses te voloms prier,  
 E cum pere dei fere, desore amonester,

Examine thy mind and thy heart entirely,  
 That none ought to doubt, or think otherwise,  
 That the lordship of Scotland fully  
 Belongs by law and right to us and our see,  
 By the evidences of which not one is false.  
 He who says differently, and labours to the contrary,  
 Offends very seriously against God and St. Peter.  
 The land is oppressed by thee and by thy people,  
 Contrary to thy duty, by violence.  
 For thou hast no right to land or lordship  
 Which the king of Scotland has held by descent  
 Of us and our see, since the beginning  
 That the faith came into Albany through preaching.

As by report of loyal men is shown to us  
 As of common fame through the kingdoms,  
 Sufferers in common by these adversities,  
 The said evidences hast thou trodden under foot ;  
 To us and many others, by mad wilfulness,  
 Wrong openly hast thou begun,  
 And in great part done, to thy royalties,  
 Conquering by force the lands and the fees  
 Which are appendant to us and to our see,  
 Laid waste the land of Scotland through the countries,  
 And our two bishops hast thou imprisoned;  
 Clergy and laity without number hast thou bound in  
 fetters,

Of whom some are dead through thy injustice ;  
 The castles hast thou taken, tyrannized over the people,  
 As long as the land was confirmed without heir ;  
 Many other things which are not named here,  
 In offence of God and of his majesty,  
 In despite of us and our dignities,  
 In shame and reproach of the crowned king,  
 In wrong of every right and of equity,  
 In slander to the people, who see the truth.

For the said things we will pray thee,  
 And, as a father ought to do, henceforth admonish,

Ton erreur retrere, ton trespas amender,  
 Nos clers e nos evesques de prison deliverer,  
 A counte e baron, e à chivaler,  
 Citain e burgeis, sergant e esquier,  
 Leur teres e leur rentes quites rebailier,  
 Rendre les chastels, e meson e maner,  
 A ces qe de dreit le deivent gouverner,  
 E à la comune quitement clamer  
 Totes les fraunchises quele soleit aver,  
 Balifs e ministres de tut facez ouster  
 Qi sunt en les offices mis par ton poer.  
 E si tu en Escoce as dreit à chalenger,  
 Homage, ou service, qe te sunt arer,  
 Venez ou maunde ce certain messenger  
 A Rome devant nous, en la court seint Pere,  
 Qe à nul fitz de mere dreiture deit vier,  
 E averez jugement, sanz plus appeller.  
 En ceo mandement te voillez si porter,  
 Qe Dieu pur tes meritiz te pusse gré saver,  
 E la court de Rome te seit tenu valer.  
 Purveiez nous meyntement, qe tu face maunder  
 A nous dedenz vj. mois qe fesoms nuncier  
 A toi cest mandement, e facez nous moustrer  
 Totes vos evidences, qe purrunt testmoigner  
 Si tu as nul dreit Escoce approprier.

E nous les quereles e pleez ensement,  
 E par toi e toens, sentence e jugement  
 A nous e nostre seé remenomes pleinement  
 E quassoms desore qe fet est autrement.  
 E sur ceo serroms prest fere à tote gent  
 Quanqe à dreiture e à reson apent.  
 La kalende quinte de Julii doneé,  
 A Vienne, en l'an quinte de nostre evesché.



To retract thine error, to amend thy offence,  
 To deliver from prison our clergy and our bishops,  
 To earl and baron, and to knight,  
 Citizen and burgess, serjeant and esquire,  
 To restore quit their lands and their rents,  
 Give back their castles, and house and manor,  
 To those who by right ought to govern it,  
 And to the commons quit claim  
 All the liberties which they used to have,  
 To cause to be withdrawn everywhere the bailiffs and  
 officers

Who are in the offices established by thy authority.  
 And if thou hast right to claim in Scotland  
 Homage, or service, which are in arrear to thee,  
 Come or send authenticated messengers  
 To Rome before us, in the court of St. Peter,  
 Which ought to deny right to no son of mother,  
 And you shall have judgment without further appeal.  
 In this message conduct yourself in such manner,  
 That God may be thankful to thee for thy merits,  
 And the court of Rome may hold thee in esteem.  
 Provide for us now, that thou cause to be sent  
 To us within six months after we cause to be delivered  
 To thee this command, and cause to be shown to us  
 All your evidences, that they shall show  
 If thou hast any right to appropriate Scotland.

And we of the quarrels and pleadings equally,  
 Both by thee and thine, sentence and judgment  
 Take back fully to us and our see,  
 And annul from this time what is done otherwise.  
 And thereupon we shall be ready to do to all people  
 Whatever belongs to right and reason.  
 Given on the fifth kalend of July,  
 At Vienne, in the fifth year of our episcopacy.

*Rescriptio regis Edwardi, ad dominum Bonifacium  
papam transmissa,*

Au pere tresseint en Dieu le pape sire Boniface,  
Evesqe plus sovereign desoutz Dieu par grace,  
Li rei Engleis Edward, par la grace de Dé,  
Salutz e bouche as piez de sa seinteté.  
Sire, n'en figure n'en fourme de jugement  
Vous mandoms ceste lettre, qe nul mot ne ment,  
Sur vos mandemenz à nostre dreit defendre  
Par nos evidences, sanz jugement attendre.  
Li surveour de tut, en qi rien est ublie,  
A nous e nostre pople part fet certefie,  
Qe nous e nos auncestres le regne de Albanie  
Tut temps avoms hieu en garde e baillie,  
Cum seigneur sovereign, sanz chescon countredit,  
Tut temps de rei en rei, cum nous trouvoms escrit,  
Homages e services resceu benignement  
De touz les reis d'Escoce pur lour tenement,  
E feauté des countes, des barons ensement,  
Od tote la liaunce qe fet est par serment,  
E reis remuez, e donez à talent,  
Countes e barons forfet par jugement.  
Car en le temps Helye e Samuel jadis,  
Quant propheter aleient à gent du pais,  
Un sire renomé du sank Eneas,  
Qe Troien estoit, ariva par cas  
En l'isle de Albion, qe Brutus fu nomé ;  
Qe ore est region e nostre herité,  
Bretaigne fu jadis, de Brut le noun avoit.  
Les geauns qe le tindrent Brutus touz tueit.  
En lung un braz de mer un cité fundeit,  
E Trinovant par noun Brutus l'apelloit,

*Rescript of king Edward, transmitted to the lord  
pope Boniface.*

To the very holy father in God lord Boniface the  
pope,  
By grace the most sovereign bishop under God,  
The English king Edward, by the grace of God,  
Salutations, and mouth at the feet of his holiness.  
Sire, neither in figure nor in form of judgment  
Do we send you this letter, which is false in no word,  
Upon your commands to defend our right  
By our evidences, without waiting judgment.  
The Surveyor of all, in whom nothing is forgotten,  
Certifies by fact to us and our people,  
That we and our ancestors the kingdom of Albany  
Have always had in ward and power,  
As sovereign lord, without any contradiction,  
At all times from king to king, as we find it written,  
Received homages and services benignly  
Of all the kings of Scotland for their lordship,  
And fealty of the earls, of the barons likewise,  
With all the liance (right over vassals) which is made  
by oath,  
And the kings removed, and given at will,  
Earls and barons forfeited by judgment.  
For in the time of Ely and Samuel formerly,  
When they went to prophecy to people of the country,  
A lord of renown of the blood of Æneas,  
Who was a Trojan, arrived by chance  
In the isle of Albion, who was named Brutus,  
Which is now a kingdom and our inheritance,  
It was formerly Britain, had the name from Brut.  
Brutus slew all the giants who held it.  
Along an arm of the sea he founded a city,  
And Brutus called it by name Trinovant,

Qe Loundres est ore dit, de Lond le noun aveit,  
 Qe de Bretaigne jadis reis estoit,  
 Après qe Breton mansion aveit.  
 Sire Brut e ses enfanz sa tere deviseit,  
 A Loqerin Engleterre, qe lors fu Bretaigne ;  
 Escoce à Albanak, qe dit fu Albanie ;  
 A Kamber dona Gales pur sa porcion,  
 Qe dit fu Kambria, du Kamber prist-il noun.  
 A ses enfaunz pusneés dona son tenement  
 De Guals e d'Escoce heritablement,  
 Solunc la lei de Troie, à tenir en feé  
 Pur homage e service de lour frere eyné.  
 En l'an secunde après, Brutus de Bretanie  
 Mort estoit à Loundres en sa seignorie.  
 Humbert rei de Hunes vint en Albanie,  
 E Albanak en champ occist par espeie.  
 Quant Lokerin l'oit, sur li fist sa sute ;  
 Humbert li vit venir, se prist à la fute  
 A un braz de mer, où il fust naeé,  
 Qe pus cel heure en sça Humber est nomé ;  
 Par quei tut Albanie en possession  
 A Lokerins et à ces heirs reverti par reson.  
 Vers Dounewal, rei jadis de Bretaigne, mesprit  
 Stater, rei d'Escoce, qe son service desdit.  
 Dunwal en bataille le rei Stater occist,  
 Et la tere d'Escoce en sa mein seisist.  
 Belin fitz Dunwal, après la mort son pere,  
 Dona la tere d'Escoce à Brennius son frere,  
 Par la lei de Troie à tenir en feé,  
 Par homage e service, cum de frere ayné.  
 De Tuede jesque à Doverre tote la grant tere  
 Tint Belyns cum seigneur en temps de pes e guere.  
 E li rei Arthur, prince renomé,  
 Destruoit Albanie pur lour adverseté.  
 A sire Augusele Escoce après doneit,

Which is now called London, it had the name from  
Lond,

Who was formerly king of Britain,  
After the Briton had his dwelling here.  
Sir Brut to his children bequeathed his land,  
To Lochrine England, which was then Britain;  
Scotland to Albanac, which was called Albany;  
To Camber he gave Wales for his portion,  
Which was called Cambria, from Camber it took its  
name.

To his younger children he gave his lordship  
Of Wales and Scotland by inheritance,  
According to the law of Troy, to hold in fee  
By homage and service of their elder brother.  
In the second year after, Brutus of Britain  
Died at London in his lordship.  
Humbert, king of the Huns, came into Albany,  
And slew Albanac with sword in the field.  
When Lochrine heard it, he made his pursuit upon him;  
Humbert saw him come, took to flight  
To an arm of the sea, where he was drowned,  
Which from that time to this is named Humber;  
Whereby all Albany in possession  
Reverted by right to Lochrine and to his heirs.  
Towards Dunwal, formerly king of Britain, offended  
Stater, king of Scotland, who refused his service.  
Dunwal slew king Stater in battle,  
And seized the land of Scotland into his hand.  
Belin son of Dunwal, after the death of his father,  
Gave the land of Scotland to Brennius his brother,  
To hold in fee by the law of Troy,  
By homage and service, as of his elder brother.  
All the great land from Tweed to Dover  
Belin held as lord in time of peace and war.  
And king Arthur, a prince of nown,  
Destroyed Albany for their rebellion.  
Afterwards he gave Scotland to sir Augusele,

E qe les services au rei Arthur feseit.  
 A Kerlion après Arthur tint sa feste,  
 Oû tretouz ses reis lour services aveit presté;  
 Le rei Auguisele l'espeie Arthur porteit,  
 Pur le service d'Escoce, qe à li deveit.  
 Puis cel houre en sceà le reis de Albanie  
 Unt touz esté suget au reis de Bretanie.  
 Edward le veuz, après prince des Bretons,  
 Fist mander le reitels de ses regions,  
 De Comberland, d'Escoce, e touz les Norreis,  
 Qe fei li deveient, ovesqe les Westreis;  
 Il rescut les homage e les services en soun,  
 Cum seignour sovereign de chescone regioun.  
 Le rei Athelstan après Edward regneit,  
 Constantin d'Escoce rei south li feseit,  
 E dit plus est glorie e plus est honeur  
 Rei fere qe rei estre en tere de valour.  
 Avint après par cas desdit li esteit  
 Le service d'Escoce q'il aver soleit.  
 Sa guere sur Escoce le plus tost comenceit,  
 Saint Johan de Beverlé en eide requereit,  
 E passeit en Escoce, le pople outreieit,  
 De touz enemis la mestrie aveit,  
 Empriant de consail saint Johan de Beverlie,  
 Feseit sa volunté parmi tut Albanie.  
 Cil ferist espeie en la roche dure  
 Une aune profound, par miracle pure;  
 Emprès du Dunbar puit home ver coment  
 Le rei Athelstan ferist si noblement.  
 Ensint en l'eglise Johan de Beverlé  
 Par verrai escripture le fet est testmoigné.  
 Constantin d'Escoce, e Eugene ensement  
 Rei de Comberland, od tere e tenement,  
 Au rei Athelstan se rendeient après.  
 Le rei Athelstan les granta sa pes.  
 Le fitz Constantin, en signe de pardoun.

And who performed the services to king Arthur.  
At Caerleon, subsequently, Arthur held his feast,  
Where all his kings had yielded their services ;  
King Augusele carried Arthur's sword,  
For the service of Scotland, which he owed to him.  
Since that time to the present the kings of Scotland  
Have all been subject to the king of Britain.  
Edward the Elder, afterwards prince of the Britons,  
Sent his summons to the kinglets of his kingdoms,  
Of Cumberland, of Scotland, and all the Northerns,  
Who owed him fidelity, with the Westerns ;  
He received the homages and the services together,  
As sovereign lord of each kingdom.  
King Athelstan reigned after Edward,  
He made Constantine king of Scotland under him,  
And said it is more glory and more honour  
To make a king than to be a king in land of worth.  
It happened afterwards, as it fell out, was denied him  
The service of Scotland that he used to have.  
He immediately began war against Scotland,  
Asked John of Beverley to be in aid to him,  
And passed into Scotland, reduced the people,  
Had the mastery over all his enemies,  
Beseeching the counsel of St. John of Beverley,  
Did his will through all Albany.  
It was he who struck his sword into the hard rock  
A yard deep, by pure miracle ;  
Near Dunbar you may see how  
King Athelstan struck so nobly.  
Thus in the church of John of Beverley  
The fact is testified by true writing.  
Constantine of Scotland, and likewise Eugenius  
King of Cumberland, with land and lordship,  
Submitted afterwards to king Athelstan.  
King Athelstan granted them his peace.  
The son of Constantine, in token of pardon,

Lors leva de founte e dona son noun.  
 Edred, frere Athelstan, en Engleterre regneit,  
 Herice rei d'Escoce service qe li doneit<sup>1</sup>

E touz ceaus d'Escoce fesoient sanz desceit.  
 Rei Engleis après, Edgar, frere Edrede,  
 Rei south li avoit Kynaid delà Tuede,  
 E vj. altres des isles rei south li nomé,  
 De Comberland, de Wenté, de Galeweie clamez,  
 De Man, de Fritherhide, e de Loudenie,  
 Qe au rei Edgar aleient à grant noblie,  
 A rendre lour homage qe à li deveient ;  
 En la rivere de Dee en nief li troveient.  
 Edgar les regard, e dit en son langage,  
 " Mult fet à preiser prince de parage,  
 " E ses successours se purrunt loer,  
 " Qe de tanz de reis service deit aver."  
 En divers cronicles le dit est testmoyné,  
 Qe par le rei Edgar illoques estoit parlé.

Après la mort Edgar regneit en Engleterre  
 Chescon après autre iiij. reis sanz guere ;  
 Edward le martir estoit le primer,  
 Elred le secunde, le tierz oi nomer  
 Edmon Irenside, le quarte appeller  
 Knout, pere Hardknout, à queus lour regner  
 Touz les reis d'Escoce feseient lour dever,  
 Forpris le quinzime an ke Knout fu corouné,  
 Malcolme rei d'Escoce encountre li fu levé.  
 Quant Knout la pursut, tost sur li aloit,  
 E parmi Escoce sa volunté fesoit.  
 Harald e Hardknoud les fitz Knout esteient,  
 A queus le rei d'Escoce, tant cum ele regneient,  
 Assetz sollempnement obligez jureient  
 A fere lour services sicum ils deveient.

---

<sup>1</sup> A line is omitted, and a blank left, in the manuscript.



He then raised from the font, and gave him his name.  
 Edred, brother of Athelstan, reigned in England,  
 Eric king of Scotland the service which he owed him

And all those of Scotland performed without deceit.  
 The king of England next, Edgar, brother of Edred,  
 Had Kynaid king under him beyond Tweed,  
 And six others of the isles named kings under him,  
 Of Cumberland, of Went, of Galloway proclaimed,  
 Of Man, of Fritherhide [? Hebrides], and of Lothian,  
 Who went to king Edgar with great nobility,  
 To render their homage which they owed to him ;  
 Thy found him in a ship in the river of Dee.  
 Edgar contemplates them, and says in his language,  
 " Much cause to be praised has a prince of kindred,  
 " And his successors can take glory from it,  
 " Who claims the service of so many kings."  
 The saying is recorded in divers chronicles,  
 Which was there spoken by king Edgar.

After the death of Edgar reigned in England  
 Each after other four kings without war ;  
 Edward the martyr was the first,  
 Elred the second, the third I heard named  
 Edmund Ironside, the fourth called  
 Cnut, the father of Hardacnut, to whom during their  
 reigns

All the kings of Scotland performed their duty,  
 Except the fifth year after Cnut was crowned,  
 Malcolm king of Scotland rose against him.  
 When Cnut was aware of it, he immediately went  
 against him,  
 And did his will throughout Scotland.  
 Harald and Hardacnut were the sons of Cnut,  
 To whom the kings of Scotland, as long as they reigned,  
 Very solemnly swore to their obligations  
 To do their services as they owed.

Après la mort Harald e Hardknoud son frere,  
 Resceut seint Edward la monarchie entere.  
 Tant cum il regneit en grant humilité,  
 Morust le rei d'Escoce sanz fitz en herité.  
 Le rei de Comberland, Malcolme, un fitz avoit,  
 A qi le regne d'Escoce seint Edward doneit,  
 De li e ses heirs à tenir en feé,  
 Fesaunt les services dues e les coustomé.

En Engleterre regneit après seint Edward  
 Un son cosin Normand, Wiliam le bastard,  
 A ki le rei Malcolme vint e dit de greé  
 Pur la tere d'Escoce homage e feauté;  
 E à Wiliam le rous son fitz après li  
 Fist Malcolme homage pur tut Albani.  
 Wiliam le rous après housteit de son seé  
 Dunwal, rei d'Escoce, pur sa iniquité,  
 E Dunkan fitz Malcolme rei d'Escoce fist;  
 De li pur son reaume homage e feauté prist.  
 Dunkan après estoit par treson tué,  
 E Dunwal en la tere par poer fu entré.  
 Le rei Wiliam le rous le rei Dunwal ousteit,  
 Edgar fitz Malcolme rei d'Escoce feseit.  
 Son frere Alexandre après Edgar regneit,<sup>1</sup>  
 Le rei Henri son frere, à qi de gré feseit  
 Le rei Alexandre quanqe fere deveit.

Maud l'emperice fu fidle e fitz Henri;<sup>2</sup>  
 David rei d'Escoce fist homage à li;  
 E quant le rei Estevene en Engleterre regneit,  
 Henri le fitz David homage à li feseit.  
 Henri fitz l'emperice coronez estoit,  
 Escoce e Engleterre en pes gouverneit;  
 Chivaler pruz e sage un fitz Henri avoit,  
 Qe rei de son reaume à Loundres coroneit;  
 Wiliam rei d'Escoce, e David son frere,

<sup>1</sup> There is perhaps a line wanting here, which stated that William Rufus was succeeded by his brother.

<sup>2</sup> This line is apparently corrupt or imperfect.

After the death of Harald and Hardacnut his brother,  
St. Edward received the entire monarchy.

While he reigned in great humility,  
The king of Scotland died without son to inherit.  
The king of Cumberland, Malcolm, had a son,  
To whom St. Edward gave the kingdom of Scotland,  
To hold in fee of him and his heirs,  
Doing the services due and the customs.

In England reigned after St. Edward  
A Norman cousin of his, William the bastard,  
To whom king Malcolm came and said voluntarily  
Homage and fealty for the land of Scotland ;  
And to William Rufus, his son, after him  
Malcolm did homage for all Albany.  
William Rufus afterwards expelled from his throne  
Dunwal, king of Scotland, for his iniquity,  
And made Duncan son of Malcolm king of Scotland ;  
He took of him homage and fealty for his kingdom.  
Duncan afterwards was slain by treason,  
And Dunwal was entered into the land by force.  
King William Rufus expelled king Dunwal,  
Made Edgar son of Malcolm king of Scotland.  
His brother Alexander reigned after Edgar,  
King Henry his brother, to whom voluntarily per-  
formed

King Alexander all that he ought to perform.

Maud the empress was daughter and Henry the son ;  
David king of Scotland did homage to him ;  
And when king Stephen reigned in England,  
Henry son of David did homage to him.  
Henry son of the empress was crowned,  
Scotland and England he governed in peace ;  
He had a son Henry, a gallant and wise knight,  
Whom he crowned at London king of his kingdom ;  
William king of Scotland, and David his brother,

Les hautz homes d'Escoce, uncle, fitz, e pere,  
 A li feseient homage, e ceo li jureient,  
 Sauve la feauté qe à son pere deveient.  
 Le fitz morust après, cum Dieu out ordiné,  
 E survesquit le pere en sa regauté.

En l'an vintisme après Henri fitz l'emperice,  
 Le rei William d'Escoce, par mult grant malice,  
 Encontre son serment, od son fole sute,  
 Hast par coup d'espeie Northumberland destrute.  
 Les Norreis de sçà countre li combateient,  
 A Alnewike li pristrent, au rei Henri meneient.  
 L'an après, en Marce, par condicion,  
 Estoit le rei William deliveré de prison.  
 En cel an en Septembre plus prochein après  
 Vint li rei Wiliam en bon amour e pes  
 En la mere eglise à Everwik nomé,  
 Par sa patente lettre se obliga de greé,  
 Pur li e pur ses heirs, à touz les reis Engleis  
 Qe après vendrunt, e testmoignance de treis,  
 La chapel de sa teste, sa seal, e sa leaunce,  
 Sunt en cel eglise pur verraie remembrance.  
 La comune d'Escoce au rei Henri assure,  
 Si ceste covenant ne teigne, le rei Wiliam destrure.  
 E Gregorie la pape, qe none est nomé,  
 Conferma la liaunce par lettre enbullé.  
 En Engle[te]re e Escoce par divers escrit  
 Put home ver e lire la verité parfit.  
 E al dit Henri Clement le pape escrit  
 Pur Johan l'esvesqe de Saint Andreu, dit  
 Qe le rei d'Escoce l'aveit engeté,  
 E qe le rei Henri par sa regauté  
 Wiliam amonesteit restorer de greé  
 Au dit Johan evesqe la dite evescheé.  
 Le mandement le pape par tant certefie

The high men of Scotland, uncle, son, and father.  
 Did homage to him, and swore it to him,  
 Save the fealty which they owed to his father.  
 The son died afterwards, as God had ordered it,  
 And the father survived in his royalty.

In the twentieth year after Henry son of the em-  
 press,  
 King William of Scotland, through very great malice,  
 Against his oath, with his mad followers,  
 Has destroyed Northumberland with the sword.  
 The northerners on this side fought against him,  
 They took him at Alnwick, and carried him to king  
 Henry.

The year following, in March, by treaty,  
 Was king William delivered from prison.  
 In that year in September nearest following  
 Came king William in good love and peace  
 Into the mother church at York,  
 Bound himself voluntarily by his letter patent,  
 For himself and for his heirs, to all the English kings  
 Who shall come after, in witness of three things,  
 The hat from his head, his seal, and his spear,  
 Are in that church for true remembrance.  
 The commonalty of Scotland made assurance to king  
 Edward

To destroy king William, if he hold not this covenant.  
 And Gregory the pope, who is called ninth,  
 Confirmed the sovereignty by his letter with bull,  
 In England and Scotland by divers writings  
 May a man see and read the perfect truth.

And Clement the pope wrote to the said Henry  
 For John bishop of St. Andrews, said  
 That the king of Scotland had expelled him,  
 And that king Henry by his royalty  
 Should admonish William to restore voluntarily  
 The said bishopric to the said bishop John.  
 The pope's mandate therefore certifies

Qe au reis Engleis estoit la seignorie.  
 En la dit eglise vindrout autre feez  
 A Henri e Wiliam, reis avant nomez,  
 De la tere d'Escoce countes e barons,  
 Evesques e gardeins de religiouns,  
 E cum au seigneur lige illoques li feseient  
 Homage e feauté, sicome il deveient.  
 Le rei Wiliam après, od mesmes cel gent,  
 A Norhamptoun au rei vint à parlement,  
 Autre foiz aillours à son mandement.

E au rei Richard, après Henri son pere,  
 Wiliam le rei d'Escoce, pur sa tere entiere,  
 Tut dreit à Caunterbire son homage fist,  
 E le rei Richard sollempnement le prist.  
 Après le rei Richard, son frere Johan regneit,  
 A ki son homage li dit Wiliam feseit  
 A Nichole sur un mount hors de la cité.  
 Sur la croice Hubert, ercevesqe sacrée  
 Au sé de Canterbire, Wiliam là jureit  
 Au rei Johan e ses heirs qe leaus li serreit.

Après le rei Wiliam, desutz nous regneit  
 Son fitz Alexandre, ke nostre sorour esteit;  
 Homage à nostre pere e à nous ensemment  
 Pur le regne d'Escoce fist devoutement.  
 Morust Alexandre, un soul soer aveit,  
 Par noun Margarete, qe nostre niece estoit,  
 Cele sanz heir de sei sa vie quant finist,  
 Escoce sanz gardein lors south nous remist.  
 En cel vacacion, à nous vindrent de greé  
 Les hautz homes d'Escoce, nes un accepté,  
 Come à chief seigneur e guiour souverain,  
 Citez, burgs, e viles, cum à leur gardein,  
 Chastels, tours, e teres, sanz retenement,  
 A nus e à nos gens rendirent pleinement,  
 Feauté nous fesoient sur livere par serement,  
 E par leur seals pendanz, dount testmoigne ne ment,

That the sovereignty belonged to the English king.  
In the said church came another time  
To Henry and William, the kings before named,  
Earls and barons of the land of Scotland,  
Bishops and wardens of abbeys,  
And, as to their liege lord, there performed to him  
Homage and fealty, as they ought.  
King William afterwards, with those same people,  
Came to the king at Northampton to the parliament,  
At another time elsewhere at his summons.  
And to king Richard, after his father Henry,  
William king of Scotland, for his entire land,  
All the way at Canterbury did his homage,  
And king Richard took it in ceremonious form.  
After king Richard, his brother John reigned,  
To whom king William performed his homage  
At Lincoln on a hill outside the city,  
On the cross of Hubert, consecrated archbishop  
To the see of Canterbury, William there swore  
That he would be loyal to king John and his heirs.  
After king William, under us reigned  
His son Alexander, who was our brother-in-law ;  
Homage to our father and to us likewise  
He performed devoutly for the kingdom of Scotland.  
Alexander died, he had an only sister,  
By name Margaret, who was our niece,  
When she ended her life without heir of her body,  
Scotland without ruler then remained under us.  
In this vacancy, came to us voluntarily  
The high men of Scotland, not one excepted,  
As to their chief lord and sovereign ruler,  
Cities, boroughs, and towns, as to their keeper,  
Castles, towers, and lands, without reservation,  
They fully surrendered to us and to our people,  
Did fealty to us on book by oath,  
And by their seals attached, of which witness lies not,

Nous mesmes e nos ministres la tere qe gardeient,  
 A queus les Escoz tretouz enclineient ;  
 E nous cum seigneur e dustre honoreient,  
 E sanz countredire pleinement feseient  
 Quance à seigneur lige en tel temps deveient.

Après tiels afferes sourda contencion  
 En la tere d'Escoce pur la region,  
 Par quei les parties à nous cum à seigneur  
 Vindrent e se mistrent de lour grant clamour  
 En certaines persones e trier lour descent,  
 E sur ceo resceivere nostre jugement.  
 En cele enqueste prise, le triour troveit  
 Qe Johan de Bailliol heir plus près esteit.  
 Nous, par la vertue de nostre seignorie,  
 Al dit Johan donames le regne d'Albanie,  
 E là li vestimes de la regauté,  
 A tenir par homage de nous e noz enfeez,  
 Fesaunt les services à nos mandemenz,  
 Venir en Engleterre à noz parlemenz  
 A nous e nos heirs, sanz collusion,  
 E leaument receiver la subjection.  
 Le rei Johan de Bailliol, un poi de temps après,  
 Enfreint son serment, debrusa nostre pees,  
 E ausint feseient countes e barons  
 Qe odvesqe li leveient en conspiracioun,  
 Tindrent nos ministres cum fous e felouns,  
 A nous e nos heirs en desheritisoun.

Nous par la pleint oie maintenant alames  
 En la marche d'Escoce, au rei Johan mandames  
 Qe à nous venist en fei qe nous deveit,  
 E trette des choses qe nous e li tocheit.  
 Responant nous redist en rien fu tenuz,  
 Mès son service à tort avoit-il conuz.  
 Sanz plus fere à nous, cil e ses felons  
 Curunt sur nos teres e nos possessions,



Our selves and our officers who had charge of the  
land,

To whom all the Scots submitted ;  
And honoured us as lord and leader,  
And without contradiction performed fully  
What they owed to a liege lord on such an occasion,

After these affairs arose contention  
In the land of Scotland for the kingdom,  
Wherefore the parties to us as to the lord  
Came and placed themselves with their great claims  
In certain persons, and to try their descent,  
And upon that receive our judgment.

In this inquest taken, the trier found  
That John de Bailiol was the nearest heir.

We, by virtue of our seignory,  
Gave to the said John the kingdom of Albany,  
And there we invested him with the royalty,  
To hold by homage of us and ours in fee,  
Performing the services at our summons,  
To come into England to our parliaments  
To us and to our heirs, without deceit,  
And loyally receive the subjection.

King John de Bailiol, a little time afterwards,  
Broke his oath, transgressed our peace,  
And so did earls and barons  
Who rose in conspiracy with him,  
And held our officers like madmen and felons,  
In disinheritance of us and our heirs.

We, on hearing the complaint, went now  
Into the March of Scotland, we summoned king John  
To come to us on the fidelity which he owed us,  
To treat of matters which touched us and him.  
He returned us a reply that he was bound in nothing,  
But he had wrongfully acknowledged his service.  
Without more ado with us, he and his felons  
Invaded our lands and our possessions,

Abbeies, burgs, e viles, manoirs, en Engleterre  
 Ardrent, destrurent, trop dure fu la guere,  
 Qar femmes e enfanz mistrent à l'espeie,  
 Ne grant ne petit suffreient aver vie.  
 Tant fu li rei devez, tant fu sa route fole,  
 Qe dous cenz des clergeons arderent en l'escole.  
 Nos niefs sur la rive en furent arivez  
 Ardeient, e tueient les genz dedenz trovez.  
 Treis de nos countez wasteient pleinement.  
 Homages e feautés pur eaus comunement  
 Qe avant nous feseient, lors à nous rendirent,  
 E nous defieient, cum fous qe plus ne virent.  
 E, sire, quant nous veimes sur nous tiel damage,  
 E sur nostre pople tiel tortz e tiel outrage,  
 Tielz fetz de felons, e tiel diffiaunce,  
 Sur nous e nos heirs en desheritaunce,  
 Reson nous chasça refrener la folie  
 De ces qe si blemeient nostre seignorie,  
 E par les leys usez touz jours sça en arere,  
 Tant nous despiseient, sanz eus joustisere  
 Le reaume d'Escoce, qe tant fu plein de mal,  
 E come avant est dit nostre feodal,  
 Par counsail de nos clers, nos countes, e barons,  
 Par poer chastiames tiels mesprisons  
 Du dit rei Johan e de sa compagnie,  
 Qi feimentuz feseient treson e trecherie.

Escoce fu perdu e forjugé de dreit  
 Par la prodicion qe li rei Johan feseit.  
 Nous lors reseisimes la tere pleinement,  
 Od citez, burgs, e viles, sanz retenement.  
 Li dit Johan Bailliol à nous approcheit,  
 E à nous e noz de grée conoisseit  
 Trestut son trespas, quitement clameit  
 A nous e nos heirs tut le cleim e dreit  
 Q'en le dit reaume en nul temps avoit,  
 Nous rendi son homage qe avant nous fist;

Abbeys, burghs, and towns, and manors, in England  
 They burn and destroy, very cruel was the war,  
 For they put to the sword women and children,  
 Suffered neither great nor little to have life.  
 So insane was the king, so mad was his army,  
 That they burnt two hundred little scholars in their  
 school.

Our ships which were arrived on the coast  
 They burnt, and slew the people found in them.  
 They completely laid waste three of our counties.  
 The homages and fealties generally by them  
 Which before they performed to us, they gave back to us,  
 And defied us, like madmen who saw no further.  
 And, sire, when we saw such damage upon us.  
 And upon our people such wrongs and such injury,  
 Such felons' acts, and such hostility,  
 In disinheritance upon us and our heirs,  
 Justice drove us to put a check to the folly  
 Of those who thus mutilated our lordship,  
 And by the laws used always down to the present,  
 They despised us so much, without them to govern  
 The kingdom of Scotland, which was so full of evil,  
 And as before is said our fief,  
 By counsel of our clergy, our earls, and barons,  
 By force we chastised such offences  
 Of the said king John and of his company,  
 Who breaking their faith did treason and treachery.

Scotland was lost and confiscated rightly  
 Through the treason which king John did.  
 We then resumed the land fully,  
 With cities, burghs, and towns, without reserve.  
 The said John Bailiol came to us,  
 And to us and ours voluntarily acknowledged  
 All his trespass, quit-claimed  
 To us and our heirs all the claim and right  
 Which he had at any time in the said kingdom,  
 And rendered us his homage as he did before ;

Son fet est testmoigné par verrai escrit.  
 Nos hautz homes de la tere touz communement  
 Homages nous feseient pur lour tenement,  
 Cum de seigneur lige, sanz mené à tenir,  
 A nous e nos heirs duement servir.  
 Leur fet est escrit qe ne puit faillir ;  
 Chescon seal i pent, qe ne puit mentir.

Sire, ta sentence prioms devoutement,  
 Le dreit de nous e nos, recordé tant sovent,  
 Cum tu as oie en ceste escripture.  
 Toun quoyer enfourmer voillez par figure  
 En voie de verité, ke hors de dreit ne veit,  
 Ne à ditz contraries legerement otreit,  
 Ne à nos enemis, sire, ne voillez crere,  
 Qe volent nous e nos desheriter de tere.  
 Mès voillez pur Dieu, come à pere apent,  
 Nous e nos reaumes, od l'apurteinement,  
 Sauver sanz blemure pardurablement.  
 Ta vie sauve e garde Dieus omnipotent.  
*Done à Kelleseie, par commun agard,  
 En l'an xxix. de nostre regne, Edward.*

*Mandatum communitatis Angliæ domino papæ trans-  
 missum pro jure regis Angliæ, factum per viij.  
 comites, et xiiij<sup>or</sup>. barones, et xv. vexillares, per  
 verba Gallica quæ immediate sequantur.*

Sire Boniface, par Dieu e sa grace pape consecrez,  
 Li counte a li baroun d'Engleterre par noun, salutz  
 e bouche à peez,  
 La seinte mere eglise de Rome renomé,  
 Par qi nostre fei deit estre governé,  
 Tiel est en ses feez, cum avoms entendu,  
 Qe nuli droit par li deit estre perdu ;

His act is witnessed by true writing.  
 Our magnates of the land all commonly  
 Performed homage to us for their lordship  
 As to the liege lord, without summons to hold,  
 To serve duly us and our heirs.  
 Their deed is put in writing that it cannot fail ;  
 The seal of each hangs to it, that it cannot be false.  
 Sire, we devoutly pray thy judgment,  
 The right of us and ours, recorded so often,  
 As thou hast heard in this writing.  
 Be willing to inform thy heart by figure  
 In way of truth, that it go not away from right,  
 Nor yield lightly to contrary statements,  
 Nor, sire, be willing to believe our enemies,  
 Who seek to disinherit us and our heirs of land.  
 But be willing, for God's sake, as becomes a father,  
 Us and our kingdoms, with the appurtenance,  
 To save without mutilation for ever.  
 May God Almighty save and guard thy life.  
 Given at Kelsoe, by common award,  
 In the year twenty-nine of our reign, Edward.

*Message of the commonalty of England sent to the lord  
 the pope for the right of the king of England, made  
 by eight earls, and twenty-four barons, and fifteen  
 bannerets, in French words which immediately  
 follow.*

To sir Boniface, by God and his grace consecrated  
 pope,  
 The earls and barons of England by name, salutations  
 and mouth to foot.  
 The holy mother church of Rome renowned,  
 By whom our faith ought to be governed,  
 Is such in her acts, as we have heard,  
 That nobody's right ought to be lost by her ;

Mès cum chief de touz fère deit equité  
 A touz, cum à li mesmes, par voie de verité.  
 Nostre sire Edward n'ad guers plus pleinement  
 A Nichole sa cité tint son parlement,  
 Oû nous touz venimes par comun assent,  
 E là à tres oimes vostre mandement  
 Sur choses qe touchent nostre rei Engleis,  
 Pur les genz d'Escoce, qe sount hors de peez.  
 Ton mandement oi e bien escouté,  
 Chescon de nous estoit mult emerveilé.  
 En temps de nos ancestres unqe ne fu parlé  
 Qe au rei Edward par toi fust nuncié,  
 Qe querele oie ne plainte ne clamour,  
 De la seignorie dount il est seignour.

Beau pere, nous savoms assez certainement  
 De la tere d'Escoce, e quanqe à li apent ;  
 En temps des Bretons, des Engleis ensement,  
 Ad tut temps esté soutz le gouvernement  
 De touz les auncestres nostre rei Edward,  
 En lour seignorie, quites sanz reward,  
 Sire, jesqe l'autreher, qe tu as nous chalengé,  
 A tort, qar tu n'as dreit, ne nul autre estrange.  
 Qar unqes en nul temps pus le comencement  
 Qe Escoce fu doné pur tere e tenement  
 Au rei Albanac, dount Albanie fu dit,  
 N'aveit home en vie qe sovereign se fist  
 Sur la tere d'Escoce, les genz justiser,  
 Si noun les reis Engleis, parmi lour poer ;  
 Ne les reis Engleis aillours pledeient  
 Pur choses qe d'Escoce à eus appendeient,  
 Ne de temporals aillours respundirent  
 Pur chose qe soutz eaus lour subjetz mesfirent  
 Ne à l'eglise de Rome ren apurteneit ;  
 Mès touz jours à nos reis feodal esteit.

Sire, pur tiel chose en vostre mandement  
 Continue estoit, en nostre parlement

But as chief of all she ought to do equity  
 To all, as to herself, by way of truth.  
 Our lord Edward not long ago very fully  
 At Lincoln his city held his parliament,  
 Where we all came by common assent,  
 And there we heard attentively your message  
 On things which touched our English king,  
 For the people of Scotland, who are out of peace.  
 Thy message heard and well listened to,  
 Each of us was much astonished.  
 In time of our ancestors never was said  
 What to king Edward was announced by thee,  
 Nor claim heard, nor complaint, nor clamour,  
 Of the sovereignty of which he is lord.

Fair father, we know certainly enough  
 Of the land of Scotland, and all that belongs to it;  
 In times of the Britons, of the English likewise,  
 It has always been under the government  
 Of all the ancestors of our king Edward,  
 In their lordship, quit without fee,  
 Sir, till the other day, when thou hast challenged us,  
 Wrongfully, for thou hast no right, nor no other  
 foreigner.

For never at any time since the beginning  
 When Scotland was given for land and lordship  
 To king Albanac, from whom it was called Albany,  
 Was there a man alive who made himself sovereign  
 Over the land of Scotland, to judge the people,  
 Except the English kings, as part of their power;  
 Nor did the English kings plead elsewhere  
 For affairs of Scotland which belonged to them.  
 Nor of temporals were responsible elsewhere  
 For thing in which under them their subjects erred,  
 Nor did anything belong to the church of Rome;  
 But it was always feudal to our kings.

Sire, for such thing as in your message  
 Was contained, in our parliament

Esteimes e serroms trestouz d'un assent,  
 Par aide e conseil de Dieu omnipotent,  
 Eider à nostre rei en sa regauté,  
 Q'en balaunce ne mette seignorie ne fée,  
 Ne avant toi ne altre mette en jugement  
 Que à sa coroune de tant temps appent ;  
 Ne procuratour i mande à toi ne à ton sée,  
 Par quei sa coroune soit desherité,  
 Encountre vieuz usages e leis des auncestres,  
 En citez, viles, e burgs, e teres champestres.  
 Queles leis e quel usages du rei e sa coroune  
 Nous jurez à defendre, qi unques cointresoune.  
 Mès que li rei Edward de tiel chose n'eit cure,  
 Defendre le voloms tantqe vie nous dure.  
 A nous serroit esclaundre e notarie huntage,  
 Que nostre reis Edward perdesist homage  
 Que nous pussums defendre e sauver par espeie,  
 Assez serroms digne de Dieu aver maugré.

Par quei ta sentence prioms devoutement,  
 Que nostre rei Edward voillez benignement  
 Sustenir en son droit sanz desturbement,  
 Cum un des reis du monde que plus sollempnement  
 Se porte e se meine vers Dieu omnipotent ;  
 E pur la bounté voillez sanz blemure  
 Ses teres e ses feez sauver sanz destrure.  
 Si tu seiez son pere, tiel estre deit ta cure.  
 Te comandoms à Dieu, fitz la Virge pure.  
 En testmoigne à ceste lettre penduz sunt nos seals,  
 Pur nous avant nomez e pur touz iceaus  
 Que sunt de la tere dount nous sumes neez.  
 Doné à Nichole devant noz parentez,  
 En meis de Februaire, le jour pur veir duzisme,  
 En l'an le fitz Marie mil e trescentisme.

---



We were and shall be all of one assent,  
By aid and counsel of God Almighty,  
To assist our king in his royalty,  
That he put in risk neither lordship nor fee,  
Nor before thee nor other put in judgment  
What belongs to his crown since so long a time ;  
Nor send proctor to thee or to thy see,  
Whereby his crown may be deprived of heritage,  
Contrary to old usages and laws of our ancestors,  
In cities, towns, and burghs, and country lands.  
Which laws and which usages of the king and his crown  
We are sworn to defend, whoever may attack them.  
But that king Edward may have no fear of such thing,  
We will defend him as long as our lives last.  
It would be scandal and notable shame to us,  
That our king Edward should lose homage  
Which we could defend and save with the sword,  
We shall be very worthy to have God's enmity.

Wherefore we pray thee devoutly thy sentence,  
That thou wilt benignly our king Edward  
Sustain in his right without impediment,  
As one of the kings of the world who most solemnly  
Bears and conducts himself towards God Almighty ;  
And for goodness, do thou decide without diminution  
To save his lands and his fees from destruction.  
If thou be his father, such ought to be thy care.  
We commend thee to God, the son of the pure Virgin.  
In witness our seals are hanged to this letter,  
For us before named and for all those  
Who are of the land of which we are born.  
Given at Lincoln in presence of our kindred,  
In the month of February, the day for truth the  
twelfth,  
In the year of the son of Mary one thousand and  
three hundred.

---

## APPENDIX II. - - -

*Poems ascribed to Pierre de Langtoft, im-*

## AN ALLEGORICAL ROMANCE ON

Un rois jadis estait qe avait un amye,  
 Laquele plus ama qe ne fist sa vie.  
 Ceo apparust bien quant par gelusye  
 La mort en prist pur lye à seison establye.  
 S'amie out close en un chaustel fort,  
 Oû ele out assetz de solace e de confort.  
 Là vint un traitour, et par un acord  
 Ouf ly la mena, si fist al roy grant tort.  
 Ly rois, qe fust geluse de sa chier amye,  
 Sout qe par descort ust fet la folye;  
 De ly se vout venger qe fist la gylerye,  
 E cele remener qe estoit de ly fuié.  
 Par power de son host ust hu sa volunté,  
 Saunz venir à bataille à chivale ou à pée,  
 Mès pur attreer le quer de cele alopé,  
 Par soi vout desrener son drait en ly clamé  
 Tant fu de pruesce son noun renomé,  
 Qe sa chevalerie de tyrant fut doté;  
 Dont jà ne ust en chaumpe al rois encontré,  
 Si le roy ses armes en bataille ust porté.  
 Mès cointement le fist li vaillaunt chevaler;  
 Kar il prist les armes un son bacheler,  
 Qe Adam out à noun, si les fitz rouler,  
 E par un damoisele ce fist de ceaux armer.  
 Il entra en la chaumbre cele damoisele,

## - - - APPENDIX II.

*mediately following the Chronicle in MS. A.*

THE DEATH OF CHRIST. (fol. 172 r<sup>o</sup>.)

There was formerly a king who had a love,  
Whom he loved more than he did his life.  
That appeared clearly when through jealousy  
He took death for her at the season ordained.  
He had shut up his love in a strong castle,  
Where she had enough of solace and comfort.  
There came a traitor, and by an agreement  
Led her away with him, and did great wrong to the  
king.

The king, who was jealous of his dear love,  
Knew that through discord she had done the folly ;  
Sought to avenge himself upon him who did the deceit,  
And bring her back who had fled from him.  
By power of his army he would have had his will,  
Without coming to battle on horseback or on foot,  
But to draw the heart of that eloped one  
He would prove by himself his right claim in her.  
His name was so renowned for prowess,  
That his chivalry was feared by the tyrant ;  
Wherefore he would never have met the king in the  
field,

If the king had carried his arms in battle.  
But cunningly the valiant knight did it ;  
For he took the arms of a bachelor of his,  
Whose name was Adam, and caused them to be rolled,  
And caused himself to be armed with them by a damsel.  
He entered into the chamber of that damsel,

Qe de totes altres estoit la plus bele.  
 Il entra si suef, saunz noise e favele,  
 Qe nul homme le sout, fors qe soul cele.  
 La damoisele l'arma de mut estraunge armure ;  
 Pur aketoun li bailla blaundre chare e pure ;  
 Pur cadace e cotoun, saunk mist en cochure ;  
 Pur quissocz e mustilers, ly dona la furchure ;  
 Pur chauces de fere, de nerfs mist la jointure.  
 Ses plates furent de os, qe sisterent à-mesure ;  
 La gaumbeyson de say, la pele par desure.  
 De tot partz assist les veynes pur urlure ;  
 Pur bacyn à la test, li planta anapele ;  
 Pur la tour de bacin, dedeinz mist la cervele.  
 La ventaile de l'hauberk estoit la face bele,  
 Qe privément en chaumbre lascea la pucele.  
 Quant li rei fust armé, de chambre s'en issist,  
 De combatre al tyrant fraunchement se profrit.  
 Le tyrant bien l'avisa, si le out en despit,  
 E par grant engrès devers ly roy se mist.  
 Maint dure assout le tyrant dunc ly fist,  
 Et le duz chevaler un poy de temps suffrit.  
 L'autre fu egre, et tant le surquist,  
 Qe homage e service du chevaler enquist.  
 " Avay, sire Belial, tu queres grant utrage,"  
 Dist le chevaler, ke fut de fere curage ;  
 " Unques ne fust oye qe serfs de seignurage  
 " Par poer demandast servise e homage."  
 " Oû est ta seignurie ?" dist ly feal tyrant,  
 " Unques ne vis roy aler pain querant,  
 " Mès i pert qe sortz de linage graunt.  
 " Par ma curtoisie, si vous frei taunt,  
 " Rendez vous ore à moy, et jeo vous seiseroy  
 " De teres e tenementz q'en ma bailli ay,  
 " E mes en ceste vie ne vous greveroy,  
 " Par si qe vous facez ceo qe dist vous ay."  
 " Uncore di, Belial, uncore vous difi ;

Who was the most handsome of all others.  
He entered so softly, without noise and talk,  
That no man knew it except her alone.  
The damsel armed him with very strange armour ;  
For acketon she gave him very white and pure flesh ;  
For worsted and cotton, she put blood in layers ;  
For cuisses and mustilers, she gave him the fourchure ;  
For iron chausses, she put the juncture of the nerves.  
His plates were of bone, which fitted him exactly ;  
The gambeson of silk, the skin over it.  
On all sides she laid the veins for hemming ;  
For bacinet on the head, she placed him a skull ;  
For the round of the bacinet, she put the brain within.  
The ventaille of the hauberk was the fair face,  
Which privately in the chamber the maiden laced.  
When the king was armed, he issued from the chamber,  
Freely offered himself to combat the tyrant.  
The tyrant looked at him well, and held him in contempt,  
And with great insolence took his place against the  
king.

Many a hard blow the tyrant then gave him,  
And the gentle knight suffered it a little while.  
The other was fierce, and treated him so disdainfully,  
That he demanded of the knight homage and service.  
“ Aha, sir Belial, thou seekest great wrong,”  
Said the knight, who was of high courage ;  
“ It was never heard that serfs from lordship  
“ By force demanded service and homage.”  
“ Where is thy lordship ?” said the wicked tyrant,  
“ I never saw a king go begging his bread,  
“ But it appears that you are sprung from great lineage.  
“ By my courtesy, I will do so much for you,  
“ Yield you now to me, and I will give you seisure  
“ Of lands and lordships which I have in my power,  
“ And I will no more grieve you in this life,  
“ On condition that you do what I have told you.”  
“ Again I say it, Belial, again I defy you ;

“ De tere ne tenement rien ne vous pri.  
 “ Pur ma chier amye su-jeo venu ci,  
 “ Qe vous malepastes, dont jeo vous defi.”  
 “ M’avez ore defié?” dist sire Belial,  
 “ De ceo jour en avant vous garderay par male.  
 “ Asseetz ore un jour, où pople comunal  
 “ Poés veer la bataille en montaigne u en vale.”  
 Le jour fu assis par un Venderdi,  
 Et leu fu pris en un mount auxi,  
 Où le chevaler de soen enemy  
 Desrener dust s’amie, cum promis out à ly.  
 Au roi fust amené un cheval sojorné,  
 De quatre manere de pail si estoit veiré,  
 De cypresce fu le corps, de cedre le pée,  
 L’eschine fu de olive, de palme haut cryné.  
 E ly rois mounta tout à son ayn degré,  
 Pur moustre q’il out drait en chose chalengé.  
 Sa sele fu trop dure, et mout l’ad anguisé,  
 Mès pur l’amour s’amye la payne ad ublyé.  
 Ly tyraunt enviroune le roi de son host;  
 Le roi ben aperceut lour bobauce e lour bost;  
 La baner de ces braz en encountre eaux desclost,  
 E boute avant l’escu qe ahai tot cel host.  
 Son esku fu blaunk, estencellé de goules;  
 En chef sa coroune de verges espinouses;  
 Blieue la bordure, ouf quatre signes custuses,  
 En un leu la fountayne, of les veines e woses:  
 Un heaume out à la teste de chevus rubrichez;  
 Un hauberk endosé d’escorges maellez;  
 Un espei en poigne de un clow de fere forgez;  
 E un launce de pacience fort e ben ferrez.  
 Ly tyrant le regard, si out grant dedeigne.  
 E le roi le suffrit travailler en vaine,  
 Ben attendist heure de lever la mayne.

“ Neither of land nor tenement do I ask you anything.

“ I am come here for my dear love,

“ Whom you illtreated, for which I defy you,”

“ Have you now defied me?” said sir Belial,

“ From this day forward I will hold you in ill-will.

“ Fix now a day, where people of the commonalty

“ Can see the battle on mountain or in vale,”

The day was fixed on a Friday,

And the place also was chosen on a mount,

Where the knight from his enemy

Was to rescue his love, as he had promised.

To the king was brought a war-horse,

And it was vairy with four sorts of hair,

The body was of cypress, of cedar the foot,

The back was of olive, high maned with palm,

And the king mounted all at his own will

To show that he had right in the thing claimed.

His saddle was very hard, and has caused him much  
suffering,

But for the love of his lady he has ignored the pain.

The tyrant surrounds the king with his army;

The king perceives well their pride and their boast,

He displays the banner of his arms against them,

And thrusts forward the shield which that army  
hates.

His shield was white, stencilled with gules;

In chief his crown of thorny rods;

The bordure blue, with four costly signs,

In one place the fountain, with the veins and . . . .;

A helmet he had on his head of red hairs;

A hauberk on his back enamelled with scourges;

A sword in his hand forged from an iron nail;

And a lance of patience strong and well pointed with  
iron.

The tyrant looks at him, and had great disdain.

And the king suffered him to labour in vain,

He waited patiently the time for raising his hand.

L'autre le surquert de malencolye pleine,  
 Si donn au roi du launce, e perce ses escu ;  
 Le coupe fu si fort dont ad le roi feru,  
 Qe sink lues de corps saunk en espandu.  
 Lors quide l'autre avoir le roi venku.  
 Fort fu cel estour quant si assemblerent,  
 Qe la tere trembla, e peers debruserent.  
 La gent de tot partz le roi tant surquerent,  
 Qe tot à la mort en chaumpe le lesserent.  
 Cy poet l'em dire où estoit son host,  
 Qe dust au rois entendre encontre l'autre host ?  
 Là vous respondrai brevement en un mot,  
 Il out si ordené qe nul luy fust de cost,  
 Kar soul volait avoir l'amur de s'amyé,  
 Qe soul emprist pur ly tel mescheve sanz aye ;  
 Si altre li ust aidé, lors fust departye  
 L'amur antre plusours, qe soul ad deservye.  
 Par tant se mist soul le rois encontre touz ;  
 Et pur ceo qe soul se mist encontre multz,  
 Le tyraunt quide veindre le chevaler pruz ;  
 Mès il par sa pruesce si les venquist touz.  
 Il leva sa launce qe suffraunce est dist,  
 L'un main au tyraunt plainement tollist,  
 L'autre mayn par vaidie se mist en respit  
 Tant q'il ust parfait ceo qe il establist.  
 Par tant ne lessa mie cy tremalvais leer,  
 Tot drait par la cote prist le chevaler,  
 Trestot la descire devant e derere ;  
 Jà pur ceo ly rois ne chaunga sa chere.  
 Quant la cote estrange du roi degisé  
 Par la main au tyrant fu ci desciré,  
 Lors estoit ly rois desuz bien armé  
 En sa armour demayne, qe ensi est devisé ;  
 De joye e de vie tutdroit quartilé,



The other looks fierce at him, full of choler,  
Then strikes the king with his lance, and pierces his  
shield ;

The blow was so great with which he has struck the  
king,

That it has shed blood in five places of his body.

Then the other thinks he has vanquished the king.

Hard was the battle when they thus came together,

That the earth quaked, and the rocks were broken.

The people from all sides pressed so upon the king,

That they left him in the field on the point of death.

Here one might say where was his army

Which ought for the king to contend against the other  
army ?

There I will reply to you briefly in a word,

He had so ordered that none should be with him,

For he sought to have alone the love of his lady,

Who alone undertook for her the danger without aid ;

If another had aided him, then would have been divided

The love between several, which he alone had earned.

Therefore the king offered himself alone against them all ;

And because he placed himself alone against many,

The tyrant thinks to vanquish the brave knight ;

And yet he by his prowess vanquished them all.

He raised his lance which is called suffrance,

Took from the tyrant one hand fully,

The other hand by subtleness waited its time

Until he had completed that which he designed.

Then the very wicked thief hesitated not,

Straightway he seized the knight by the coat,

Tears it all before and behind ;

Never for that did the king change his countenance.

When the foreign coat of the disguised king

Was thus torn by the hand of the tyrant,

Then was the king underneath well armed

In his own armour, which is thus devised ;

Entirely quartered with joy and with life,

De puissance e de saver e de draiture fretté,  
 En le chef un saicture de haut dignité,  
 Une bende en belif de immortalité.  
 Quant ly tyrant le vist qe ceo fu ly rois,  
 Lors out le corage trop à malehis ;  
 Il le out vu avant en son grant palais,  
 Et conisçoit son power, e les droit lais.  
 Luy chaitif s'en fuist à grant confusioun,  
 E ly roi descendist en un bas dongoun,  
 Là trova s'amie en grant chaitivesoum,  
 Qe mercy li requist de sa mesprisioun.  
 " Sire," dist-ele, " mercy, chevaler allosé,  
 " De cest lase cheitif prenge toi pité ;  
 " Jeo ai tant meffait encontre vostre grée,  
 " Ne vous ose regarder, de hounte enfrounté.  
 " Vous me faistez riche, là où pover estoi,  
 " De robe me vestites qe valust qe sai ;  
 " La curtoisi fu vostre, la vilanie fu moy,  
 " Quant ouf le tyrant alai de vous ma vai.  
 " Sire, en vostre verger, où jadis m'en juai,  
 " Par un fause clef le tyraunt quist sa pray,  
 " Entra en parole, e tant me donay,  
 " Qe à ly me senty par promesse de nobleye.  
 " Ouf ly m'en aloi à malhoure le mien,  
 " Qe, si tost cum entroi la tere qe claime soen,  
 " En prison si me mist, si com vous veez bien.  
 " Unques pus ne avoi solace ne joye de nul rien.  
 " Genty l quer de roi, mercy vous requer,  
 " De ma fole emprise me volez pardonner."  
 Doucement respount ly curtoise chevaler,  
 " E jeo le vous pardoune fraunchement de qoer.  
 " Vous me avez costé mut chier huy ceo jour ;  
 " Unks fitz pur peer entra teel estour.  
 " Puis qe vous ai conquis par saunk e suour,  
 " Ne vous poies refuser, en aietez de moi socour.

Fretty with power and with knowledge, and with  
righteousness.

In the chief a fillet of high dignity,  
A bend in belief of immortality. (?)

When the tyrant saw that it was the king,  
Then he had his courage very much abated,  
He had seen him before in his great palace,  
And knew his power and the just laws.  
The wretch fled thence in great confusion,  
And the king descended into a low dungeon,  
There he found his love in great captivity,  
Who sought pardon of him for her offence.

“ Sire,” she said “ mercy, noble knight,  
“ On this wretched captive take pity ;  
“ I have so much misdome against your will,  
“ I dare not look on you, overwhelmed with shame.  
“ You made me rich, there where I was poor,  
“ You clothed me with a robe which was better than silk ;  
“ The courtesy was yours, the wickedness was mine,  
“ When I went with the tyrant away from you.  
“ Sir, in your garden, where formerly I solaced myself  
“ The tyrant sought his prey with a false key,  
“ He entered into talk, and gave me so much,  
“ That he drew me to him by promise of nobility.  
“ With him I went to my misfortune,  
“ Who, as soon as he entered the land which he claims  
“ as his,  
“ Threw me into prison, as you see well.  
“ Never after had I solace or joy of anything.  
“ Gentle heart of a king, I solicit your mercy,  
“ Deign to pardon my mad conduct.”

The courteous knight replies gently,

“ And I pardon you freely from my heart.  
“ You have cost me very dear this day ;  
“ Never did son for father undertake such a battle.  
“ Since I have won you by blood and sweat,  
“ I cannot refuse you, have succour of me.

“ Si vous avez hount de auncien folye,  
 “ Ore vous afiez en ma gelousie,  
 “ Quant pur l’amour de vous abaundona ma vie,  
 “ Pur vous remener, qe estaitz de moy fuie.  
 “ Regardez ma face com est demaglé,  
 “ Regardez mon corps, cum est pur vous plaié,  
 “ Avisetz mon esku cum est deberdisé,  
 “ E ne quidez jà qe soiez refusé.  
 “ Jadis vous donay fiance en privé,  
 “ Seulement ma amye fustes dunk nomée ;  
 “ Mès ore ma espouse serrez appellé  
 “ De touz qe sevent e saveront de la sollempneté.”  
 Lors prent ly roi sa espouse de prisoun,  
 Si la meigne ouf ly en bon salvacioun,  
 “ Demorir,” dist-il, “ cy une bref seisoun,  
 “ Tant com jeo rethorne pur mener vous à mesoun.  
 “ E qe soiez plus sure encountre li adverser,  
 “ Vers vous retenez, en lu de baner,  
 “ Ma chemis de chartres et ma mort amer,  
 “ E ceo vous sauvera du diable encombrer.  
 “ A l’entré de la port mon destrer allowez,  
 “ A l’entré de la chaumbre mon escu pendez,  
 “ Enprès de vostre lit ma launce fichez,  
 “ Si n’avez garde de nul adversitez.  
 “ E si vous gardez bien ceo qe ci vous doun,  
 “ E me volez amer sicum voet resoun,  
 “ Jeo vous fra rayne, e porterez corun  
 “ En ma riche tere, qe tut vous abandoun.  
 “ E quant vostre mené ert tot assemblé,  
 “ A vous revendroi en tens bien saisoné,  
 “ Si vous ameneroy à ma grant cité,  
 “ Où vous troverez solace et tot biens à plenté.”  
 Jeo pri Dieus, nostre roys, chevaler alosée,  
 Qe conquist en bataille tot humayne ligné,  
 Nous garde nuit e jour du tyraunt et maufée,  
 E nous meigne en joye entre sa mesné.

Amen

" If you have shame of your old folly,  
 " Now put your trust in my jealousy,  
 " Since for love of you I gave up my life,  
 " To bring you back, who was fled from me.  
 " Look at my face, how it is bruised ;  
 " Look at my body, how it is wounded for you ;  
 " Regard my shield how it is bruised,  
 " And no longer suppose that you are refused.  
 " Formerly I gave you my faith in private,  
 " You were then only named my lover ;  
 " But now you shall be called my spouse  
 " By all who know and shall know of the solemnity."

Then the king takes his spouse from prison,  
 And leads her with him into a good place of safety,  
 " To remain," says he, " here a short season,  
 " Until I return to take you home.  
 " And that you may be more safe against the enemy,  
 " Keep with you, in place of banner,  
 " My shirt of prison (?) and my cruel death,  
 " And that will protect you from the devil's persecution.  
 " Leave my steed at the entrance of the gate,  
 " At the entrance of the chamber hang my shield,  
 " Fix my lance near your bed,  
 " And then you will have no fear of any adversity.  
 " And if you keep well what I here give you,  
 " And will love me as reason requires,  
 " I will make you queen, and you shall carry a crown  
 " In my rich land, which I give up entirely to you.  
 " And when your household shall be all assembled,  
 " I will return to you in time convenient,  
 " And I will lead you to my great city,  
 " Where you will find solace and all good in plenty."  
 I pray God, our king, the noble knight,  
 Who won in battle the whole human race,  
 That he guard us night and day from the tyrant and  
 fiend,  
 And lead us in joy among his household.

Amen.

THE LAMENT OF THE VIRGIN MARY.  
(fol. 174, v°.)

Dame corouné, floure de Parays,  
De haut chose emprendre me fu entremys,  
Quant paroge ouf ma dame qe fu tant chaitifs;  
Mès un fole baudure m'ad le goer suppris.  
Dame, jeo vous pri, pur vostre grant genterise,  
Si ma parole seit de folie enprise,  
Escotez ma folie e grantez seint eglise  
Qe la chose qe pri par vous nous soit aprise.  
Mustrez nous la processe cum Jhesu fu peiné,  
Quant la mort emprist pur humaigne ligné,  
E quel fust la dolure dont fu ton quere percé,  
Quant vaistez vostre fitz à la mort liveré.  
Vous empernez, dist-ele, mult grant hardement,  
Qe me priez ore rehercer cel torment,  
Pus qe fu en joye et nul mal ne sent;  
Assets avez oye par escrit sovent.  
Dame, bien ay trové ceo q'est escrit,  
Qe de tuz ses privez ton fitz Jhesu Crist  
Nul ne vist la fine, car chescon s'en fuist,  
Fors seulement vous e Johan l'Ewangelist.  
E si tot le mound ust esté present,  
Bien soi qe vous soule maistes plus de entent  
De savoir qe l'em fait à cel innocent;  
Pur ceo countez nous le processe bonement.  
Volunters, fet la dame, e bien le puis faire,  
Kar ore me torne à joye trestut cel afaire,  
E fra tregrant bien à plusours gentz en tere,  
E lour dorra matere de pechez eaux retrere.  
Le jour ke mon fitz fu jugez à la mort,  
Jeo fu en la cité, et ceo me fut mut fort,  
Quant jeo oy sa crie qe amené fust à mort;  
Jeo suy après com cele ke n'out confort.  
Lors vi mon fitz cum laron amené,

Lady with the crown, flower of Paradise,  
I had undertaken to interfere in high things,  
When I who was such a wretch conversed with my  
lady ;  
But a wild joy had taken my heart by surprise.  
Lady, I pray you, for your great gentleness,  
If my talk be presumptuous,  
Listen to my folly, and grant holy church  
That the thing I ask may be taught us by you.  
Show us the proceeding how Christ was tormented,  
When he took upon him death for the human race,  
And what was the pain with which thy heart was  
pierced,  
When you saw your son delivered to death.  
You assume, she said, very great boldness,  
Who pray me now to repeat that suffering,  
Since I was in joy and feel no hurt ;  
You have heard enough often by writing.  
Lady, I have learnt well that which is written,  
That of all his private friends, of thy son Jesus Christ  
No one saw the end, for every one fled away,  
Except only you and John the Evangelist.  
And if all the world had been present,  
I know that you alone gave more attention  
To know what they did to that innocent ;  
Therefore relate to us the proceedings exactly.  
Willingly, says the lady, and I can well do it,  
For now all that affair turns to me to joy,  
And it will do very great good to many people on earth,  
And will give them matter to withdraw them from sin.  
The day that my son was condemned to death,  
I was in the city, and it was very grievous to me.  
When I heard his cry as he was led to death ;  
I follow after as one whom nothing comforts.  
Then I saw my son led like a thief,

E pur cel amour q'en lui oi ficché,  
 Ne ne me sovent pas q'il out ordené  
 De mettre soi à mort pur humayne ligné.  
 Tiel doel me prist qe rien ne pou penser,  
 Fors ceo qe vi mon fitz si vilement treter.  
 Jeo ne soi qe fere ne quel part tourner ;  
 Vers ly m'adrescai, mès ne poai aider.  
 Mult gentz ly suirent, et les uns plorauntz ;  
 Vers euz se tourna, e dit en suspiraunz,  
 " Ne plorez pas pur moy, mès pur vos enfauntz,  
 " Qe comprennent ma mort après ceo jour c. aunz."

Les uns par la voie avant li saquerent,  
 Ly altre de lour mayns vilement boterent ;  
 Plusours de la bowe en sa face getterent,  
 E, qe plus me greva, en ly eschacherent.  
 Qi est ore en vie qe purra ceo pas lire,  
 Qu'il des ouez ne plorge ou de quer suspire,  
 Quant sa bele face, dont tut le cele se mire,  
 Si dejetté estoit com fondrez est de cire.  
 La croice, ke fust sa mort, ne fu pas donk à quere,  
 Devant ly fu mys sur la nue tere ;  
 A ren qe l'em ly fet jà ne fu contreire,  
 Einz estoit pliaunt à quanqe volaint fere.  
 E cyl saunz pité ount pris mon fitz Jhesu,  
 Si l'ount despullié le corps tretut nue,  
 E sur la croice coherent mon duz fitz estendu.  
 Ha! dolur q'en mon quer à cel heure fu !  
 Le corps avait grant, de beel estature,  
 Dont il avaint percé la croice fors de mesure,  
 E sament donc le cors estendu par desure,  
 Pur feer à mayns et pées acorder la parçure.  
 De trois clowes de fere trop demesuretz  
 Li doune[n]t donk parmy les mains et le peez,  
 E pus ount la croice of son cors levez,  
 E en la ferme tere mult tresferme ficchez.



And for the love I had fixed in him,  
I did not bear in mind that he had ordained  
To give himself to death for mankind;  
Such grief seized me that I can think of nothing,  
Except that I saw my son so vilely treated.  
I know not what to do or to what side to turn;  
I addressed myself towards him, but could not aid.  
Many people followed him, and some weeping;  
Towards them he turned, and said sighing,  
“ Weep not for me, but for your children,  
“ Whom my death includes a hundred years after  
to-day.”

Some pulled him forwards along the way,  
Others pushed him rudely with their hands;  
Many threw mud into his face,  
And, what grieved me most, they spat upon him.  
Who is now alive who can read that passage,  
That he does not plunge into tears or groan from  
his heart,

When his handsome face, which all heaven reflects,  
Was all disfigured like melted wax.  
The cross, which was his death, was not then to seek,  
It was laid before him on the bare ground;  
He made no resistance to whatever was done to him,  
But was yielding to whatever they would do.  
And they without pity have taken my son Jesus,  
And have stripped his body entirely naked,  
And they laid my gentle son down stretched on the cross.  
Ah! the grief that was at that time in my heart!  
He had a large body, of handsome stature,  
For which they had pierced the cross out of proportion,  
And therefore stretch the body extended upon it,  
To make the holes fit to the hands and feet.  
With three iron nails of very great size  
They then strike him through the hands and feet,  
And afterwards they have raised the cross with his body,  
And fixed it very firmly in the solid earth.

Quant la croice leverent, par charge de son corps  
 Les vaines se debrisaient et se launcent hors,  
 Les neerfs poet homme et numbrer touz les os ;  
 Nul ne seet la paine qe Jhesu suffry lors.  
 Unqes chare en tere ne suffrit payne greindre  
 Qe ne fist son corps, qe tant fu duz e taindre.  
 Jeo pri la mort qe me vousist prendre ;  
 Mès ceo me fu pur ren, ne vout à moy entendre.  
 Jeo regard mon fitz en la croice pendaunt,  
 Et vi de ses plaies le saunk tot boillaunt  
 Descendre par ses coustes en la tere rovaunt ;  
 De si riche tresour mist largement avant.  
 Ha ! sa bele chare, qe fu si blaunk e pure,  
 Jà devient si blef cum la marbre dure ;  
 La vow qe out si clere, jà devient oscure ;  
 La chalur de son cors chaunga en froidure.  
 La payn de mon fitz me peerça tot le qoer,  
 Quant jeo vi sa chare si ferment refraider.  
 Ore chai avale, e ore vou relever,  
 Mès ne avay pée qe me poet porter.  
 Allas ! jeo doloureuse, qe avendra de moy !  
 Pendre en la croice pur tortinuy l'ai,  
 Qe de ren mesfait, entre larons voi.  
 Allas ! desconfit ! où devendroi ?  
 Tretut mun solace ore perdu ai ;  
 Ma vie si est langour, jeo mais en assai  
 Tantost demorir saunz mettre en delay.  
 La mort me serra duz, la vie m'est amere ;  
 Jeo pierk cy mà joie qe tant me fu chere.  
 Pur qoi estes, mort, si cruel e fiere ?  
 Qe ne pernez ouf le fiz cele dolent mere ?  
 Allas ! vous chaitifs, trop cruel gentz,  
 Quele chose vous mist encontre le innocent,  
 Qe tantz des biens ad fait à plosure gentz ?  
 Ceaus qe furent malades, il les sana ;

When they raised the cross, by weight of his body  
The veins broke and fly out,  
The muscles may man count and all the bones ;  
No man knows the pain which Jesus suffered then.  
Never did flesh on earth suffer greater pain  
Than did his body, which was so soft and tender.  
I prayed death that he would take me ;  
But it was to no purpose, he would not listen to me.  
I look at my son hanging on the cross,  
And saw from his wounds the blood all boiling  
Descend along his sides, running to the ground ;  
Of such rich treasure he made large display.  
Ah ! his fair flesh, which was so white and pure,  
Already became as blue as the hard marble ;  
The countenance which he had so clear, now became  
dark ;  
The heat of his body changed to cold.  
The suffering of my son pierced all my heart,  
When I saw his flesh become so entirely cold.  
Now I fall down, and now I will rise,  
But I had not a foot which would carry me.  
Alas ! me unhappy, what will become of me !  
I have seen him wrongfully hang on the cross,  
Him who sinned in nothing, between robbers.  
Alas ! disconsolate ! what will become of me ?  
All my solace I have now lost ;  
My life now is suffering, I seek earnestly  
To die soon without making delay in it.  
Death will be sweet to me, life is to me bitter ;  
I lose here my joy which was so very dear to me.  
Wherefore are you, death, so cruel and so savage ?  
Why do you not take with the son this sorrowful  
mother ?  
Alas ! you wretches, too cruel people,  
What thing set you against the innocent,  
Who has done so many benefits to many people ?  
Those who were ill, he cured them ;

Ceuz qe furent dolentz, il les conforta ;  
 Ceaux qe furent mort, il les resuscita ;  
 E male encountre bien vous ly rendez jà.  
 Si nul soit ici q'ait le qoer pitous,  
 Abreggetz ma dolure entre vous touz,  
 Aracez mon qoer du corps dolour[u]s,  
 Si me lessez paizer ouf mon fitz si douz.  
 Allas ! jeo gwerpi ! ha ! jeo dolorus !  
 Tiel amur me lye à chose precieuse,  
 Qe ceste departye m'est si anguissouse,  
 Qe mort me serrait vie sur tot rien joyouse.  
 Beaus tredouz fitz, q'en la croice pendez,  
 Mettez ore consaille qe soi confortez ;  
 Pur la joie qe avoy quant vous fustez neez,  
 Ne suffrez ore qe soi si ferement esgaretz.  
 Nul ne seet la joye q'en mon quer conqu,  
 Quant vostre deité deinz mon cors rescu ;  
 Ne nul ne seet le doloure dont jeo su esmu,  
 Quant si noble fitz par mort ay perdu.  
 Ma joie fu mult grant tant cum vous portoi,  
 Mès uncore greignoure tant com vous letoi,  
 Et touz jours me crust tant com vous aloi,  
 Mès ore est ma joie tornez en affray.  
 Mon fitz me regard de mout pitous oille,  
 E pus ly grieve al queor qe jeo face tel doel,  
 Qe ne fet la peyne q'il suffre en tel toelle ;  
 " Suffrez," dist-il, " mere ; pur homme morir voille.  
 " Bele mere," dit-il, " tout seiez-vous mout nett,  
 " Vous avez mester qe la mort me met ;  
 " Il n'i ad nul autre q'aquiter poet la dett  
 " De cele forfeiture qe Dieuz à homme arett.  
 " E si ne soit aquité, jà bounté n'avera lu,  
 " Q'en la joie de ciel homme soit resceu,  
 " Mès tretouz s'en irront en cel obscure lu  
 " Oû jeo ne vendra ne Dieu ne serra veu.

Those who were in grief, he comforted them ;  
 Those who were dead, he restored them to life ;  
 And now you render him evil in return for good.  
 If there be any one here who has a compassionate heart,  
 Abridge my grief among you all,  
 Tear my heart from the dolorous body,  
 And let me pass away with my so gentle son.  
 Alas ! me abandoned ! ah ! me filled with grief !  
 Such love binds me to a precious object,  
 That this separation is so painful to me,  
 That death would be to me life above everything joyful.  
 Fair and very gentle son, who hang on the cross,  
 Take now counsel that I be comforted ;  
 For the joy which I had when you were born,  
 Suffer not now that I be so cruelly tormented.  
 No one knows the joy which I conceived in my heart,  
 When I received your godship in my body ;  
 Nor no one knows the grief with which I am agitated,  
 When I have lost by death so noble a son.  
 My joy was great while I bore you,  
 But still greater while I gave you milk,  
 And always it increased as long as I nourished you,  
 But now my joy is turned into terror.  
 My son regards me with very compassionate eye,  
 And then it grieves him to the heart that I make such  
     lament,  
 More than does the pain he suffers in such torment ;  
 “ Bear with it,” he said, “ mother ; it is my will to die  
     for man.  
 “ Fair mother,” said he, “ though you be altogether  
     “ very sinless,  
 “ You have need that death take me ;  
 “ There is no other who can pay off the debt  
 “ Of that forfeit with which God charges man.  
 “ And if it be not paid, goodness will never have place,  
 “ That man be received into the joy of heaven,  
 “ But they will all depart into that dark place  
 “ Where I shall not come nor God be seen.

" Pur ceo, bele mere, ne seez pas esmu ;  
 " Kar ceo l'acheson pur quo vous eslu,  
 " Qe par cest chare qe de vous rescu  
 " Homme soit reformé, qe fut corrupu."  
 Lors chai paumé quant oy mon fitz parler,  
 De qi la voice fu quasé q'avant fut si cler :  
 E de ceo si pris si grant doel en quoyer,  
 Ke langue ne seet dire, ne homme deviser.  
 Quant jeo recovery mon entendement,  
 Vers mount regardoi, e plorou tendrement ;  
 Gettai les suspires trope pitousement,  
 Et rechai à tere et là geu longement.  
 De ceo out mon fitz mout tregrant pitée,  
 E dist à soen disciple qe Johane es apellé,  
 " Veez cy vostre miere, la servez tot à grée,  
 " E vous, beele mere, pur fitz vous soit counté."  
 E pus devant sa mort à haute voice si dist,  
 " Ore ai-jeo parfait quanqe reison dist,  
 " E si ai amendé ceo qe Adam forfist,"  
 Et jetta donke un cry, si rendist l'espirit.  
 Mon douz gardain Johan garde emprist de moy ;  
 Mès si ne feust espraunce q'avoit bon en moy,  
 Qe mon fitz releveroit par vertu de soi,  
 Jeo fuse mort à l'heure de fin doel, jeo croy.  
 Mès le terce jour après mon fitz releva,  
 Si m'a parust vif et me conforta,  
 Qu'il out la victoire me dist e moustra ;  
 Lors me torne à joye q'avant me greva.  
 Prioms cely Dieus qe seet en trinité,  
 Qe suffrist tiel peyne pur humayne ligné,  
 Q'il nous garde et sauve de mortel pecché,  
 E pur l'amour Marie nous meigne en sauveté.

AMEN.

*Artus scriptoris careant gravitate doloris.  
 Sermo de Bruto fit sub dictamine tuto ;  
 Culpa datur Petro deficiente metro.*

“ Therefore, fair mother, be not distressed;  
“ For this is the reason for which I chose you,  
“ That through this flesh which I received from you  
“ Man may be reformed, who was corrupted.”  
Then I fell in a swoon when I heard my son talk,  
Whose voice was broken which before was so clear:  
And of that I took so great grief in heart,  
That neither tongue can tell nor man devise.  
When I recovered my understanding,  
I looked towards the mount, and wept tenderly;  
I uttered sighs very piteously,  
And fell to the ground again and lay there long.  
Of that my son had very great pity,  
And said to his disciple who is named John,  
“ See there your mother, serve her all at her will,  
“ And you, fair mother, let him be counted for your  
“ son.”

And then before his death he said with a loud voice,  
“ Now have I completed all that reason required,  
“ And so have I made the amend for Adam’s sin;”  
And then he uttered a cry, and gave up the ghost.  
My gentle guardian John took charge of me;  
But had it not been the hope I had good within me,  
That my son would rise again by virtue of himself,  
I should have been dead at the time of extreme grief,  
I believe.

But the third day after my son rose again,  
And has appeared alive to me and comforted me,  
That he had the victory he told and showed me;  
Then turned to joy for me what before grieved me.  
Let us pray that God who sits in trinity,  
Who suffered such pain for mankind,  
That he keep and save us from mortal sin,  
And for the love of Mary lead us into salvation.

AMEN.

## APPENDIX III.

*Latin verses on the Scots from MS. B.*  
(fol. 139, r<sup>o</sup>.)

Regnum Scotorum fuit inter cætera regna  
Terrarum quondam nobile, forte, potens.  
Reges magnifici Bruti de stirpe regebant  
Fortiter egregie Scotia regna prius.  
Ex Albanacto trinepote fortis Eneæ  
Dicitur Albania, litera prisca probat.  
A Scota nata Pharaonis regis Egypti,  
Ut veteres tradunt, Scotia nomen habet.  
Post Britones, Danatos, Dacos, Piscosque repulsos,  
Nobiliter Scoti jus tenuere suum.  
Fata ducis celebris super omnia Scotia flebit,  
Qui loca septa sato viget ubique sibi.

*Mès sur toutes choses Escoce plora la destinée du  
noble prince le rei Edward, qi altre bounde ne pren-  
dra fors le mer pur joindre tut à li.*

Principe magnifico tellus viduata vacabit  
Annis bis trinis mensibus atque novem.

*C'est à dire qe la terre d'Escoce serra vefve après la  
mort le rei Alexandre vj. anz e ix. mois.*

Antiquos reges, justos, largos, locupletes,  
Formosos, fortes, Scotia mœsta luget.  
Ut Merlinus ait, post reges victoriosos,  
Regis more carens regia sceptra geret.  
Serviet Anglini regi per tempora quædam.

*Merlin dit qe, après le reis victorious avant nomez,  
un rei serra en Escoce qe ne savera mie estre rei, e  
celi fust Johan Bailliol, e il servira au rei Engleis  
par ascon temps.*



Pro dolor! Albania fraude subacta sua.

*Ceo est à dire, Allas! Escoce, cum vous estes destruz pur vostre fet-demeine.*

Quod respirabit post funus regis avari.

*Ceo est à dire, qe vous averterez à recoverer après la mort le rei avers.*

*Versus Sibilla.*

Cum fuerint anni completi mille ducenti  
 Et decies deni, post partum virginis almæ,  
 Bis sex et bini, navigabunt æquora remi,  
 Inter saxosum fontem castrumque nodosum  
 Corruet Anglorum gens perfida fraude suorum,  
 Vix erit in terra binis annis sine guerra,  
 Versibus antiquis prisca Sibylla canit.

*Sibylla dicit.*

Rex borialis erit numerosa classe potitus,  
 Affligens Scotos ense, furore, fame.

*C'est à dire, q'il avera un rei norreis qe avera multitude des niefs, e il turmentra les Escoz par espeie, deverie, e faim.*

Extra gens tandem Scotorum fraude peribit,

*C'est à dire, gens aliens qe sunt en Escoce perirount par fraude d'Escoce.*

In bello princeps notus ipse vel ense cadet,  
 Gallica quem genuit, qui gaxis regna replebit,  
 Proh dolor! o gemitus! fratris ab ense cadet.

*C'est à dire, qe li rei surreis charra par espeie en bataille; lequel Fraunce engendra, allas! qe unqes fu née, qe par l'espeie son frere charra, e tut par malice son frere.*

Candidus Albanus, patriotis causa ruinæ,

Traditione sua Scotia regna teret

*C'est à dire, blanche Albanie, as gens de vostre pais à garder de ruine, e par ceaus serrez tenuz soutz pez.*

Bruti posteritas, Albanis associata,  
 Anglica regna teret peste, labore, nece.  
 Regnabunt Britones, Albaniae gentis amici,  
 Antiquum nomen insula tota feret.  
 Ut profert aquila, veteri de terra locuta,  
 Cum Scotis Britones regna paterna gerent.  
 Regnabunt pariter in prosperitate quieta,  
 Hostibus expulsis iudicis usque diem.

Gallorum levitas Germanos justificabit ;  
 Italiae gravitas Gallos confusa necabit ;  
 Succumbet Gallus, aquilae victricia regna  
 Mundus adorabit, erit urbs vix praesule digna,  
 Milleque ducentis, nonaginta sub tribus annis,  
 Merlini dictis consurget aquila grandis.  
 Terræmotus erunt, quos non procul auguror esse,  
 Constantini caedes, et equi de marmore facti,  
 Et lapis erectus, et multa palatia Romæ.  
 Papa cito moritur, Cæsar regnabit ubique,  
 Sub quo tunc vana cessabit gloria cleri.

Isti versus immediate præcedentes inventi fuerint in ecclesia Petri et Pauli sub petra marmorea.

*Versus de Prophetiis Merlini.*<sup>1</sup>

Ecce dies veniunt, Scoti sine principe fiunt,  
 Regnum Balliolus perdit, transit mare solus.  
 Defendi bello Scotus mucrone novello<sup>2</sup>  
 Sperans Gallorum, vires expectat eorum.  
 De guerra tuti Gallorum viribus uti,  
 Congaudent Scoti, currunt ad prælia moti.  
 Gallia de parvo Scotus profecit in arvo,<sup>3</sup>  
 Cur in conflictu Scotus ter corrui ictu ?

<sup>1</sup> A more correct text of the following lines is given in MS. A. (fol. 2 r°.), from which I have corrected the text here.

<sup>2</sup> *duello*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Scotus mucrone duello*, B.

Conflictu quarto Scoti ponentur in arto.  
 Quales sunt et erunt, carmina plura ferunt;  
 Carmina qui didicit,<sup>1</sup> Trojam per praelia vicit,  
 Ovidius docuit<sup>2</sup> quæ sibi causa fuit.  
 Percussis bellis, sterilis fit Troja puellis;  
 Finitis motis, sic fiet Scotia Scotis.  
 Vastantur guerra Trojani de prope terra,  
 Castrorum plena cum finibus est aliena.  
 Urbibus et villis proles dominatur<sup>3</sup> Achillis;  
 Pyrrhus vastat eas, Priamum ploravit<sup>4</sup> Eneas;  
 Merlinus scribit quod turba superba peribit.  
 Latrans exhibit canis et bos profugus ibit.  
 Tunc nemus Eutherium<sup>5</sup> pennata fronte carebit,  
 Et genus Albanium sua regna perire videbit.<sup>6</sup>  
 Scote miser, plora, tibi flendi jam venit hora,  
 Nam regnum patrum desinet<sup>7</sup> esse tuum.  
 Principe privaris, campo sic subpeditaris,  
 Quod meritis miseris semper asellus eris.  
 Vox de profundis Cambini te vocat undis,  
 Torquendum clade, quam non novit genus Adæ.  
 Illuc tende vias, et<sup>8</sup> demonis assecla fias;  
 Amplius<sup>9</sup> Andreas ducere nescit eas.

*Ces sont les countes d'Escoce.*

De Stratherne.	De Archetil.	De Anegos.
De Rosse.	De Carrik.	De Mentest.
Patrik.	De Fif.	De Sutherland.
De Bouhan.	De Mar.	De Murreve.
De Lovenaie.	De Catenesse.	

<sup>1</sup> *Quem carmen dicit*, B.

<sup>2</sup> *Quid jus docuit*, B.

<sup>3</sup> *Viribus et villis proles dominantur*, B.

<sup>4</sup> *plorabat*, B.

<sup>5</sup> *Ethereum*, B.

<sup>6</sup> This line is omitted in B.

<sup>7</sup> *desinit*, B.

<sup>8</sup> *ne*, B.

<sup>9</sup> *Implius*, B.

## APPENDIX IV. - - -

## A PROPHECY IN ENGLISH RHYMES

From MS. A.

Als y yod on ay Mounday  
 bytwene Wyltinden and Walle,  
 Me ane aftere brade waye,  
 ay litel man y mette withalle,  
 The leste that evere I, sathe to say,  
 oithere in boure oithere in halle;  
 His robe was noithere grene na gray,  
 bot alle yt was of riche palle.

On me he cald and bad me bide;  
 wel stille y stode ay litel space;  
 Fram Lanchestre the parke syde  
 y cen he come, wel faire his pase.  
 He hailed me with mikel pride,  
 ic haved wel mykel ferly wat he was;  
 I saide, "Wel mote the bityde!"  
 that litel man with large face.

I biheld that litel man  
 bi the stretes als we gon gae,  
 His berd was syde ay large span,  
 and glided als the fethere of pae;  
 His heved was wyte als any swan,  
 his hegehen ware gret and grai also;  
 Brues lange wel I the can  
 merkes it to fize inches and mae.

## APPENDIX IV.

---

 RELATING TO THE SCOTTISH WARS.
(fol. 180, r<sup>o</sup>).

---

As I went on a Monday  
 between Wiltinden and Wall,  
 Me alone along the broad way,  
 a little man I met withal  
 The least that I, to tell the truth,  
 [saw] either in chamber or in hall;  
 His robe was neither green nor grey,  
 but it was all of rich palle (*a fine cloth*).

On me he called, and bade me stay;  
 I stood quite still a little while;  
 From the parkside at Lanchester  
 I know he came, very fair his pace.  
 He saluted me with great pride,  
 I had very great wonder what he was;  
 I said, "Well may thee betide!"  
 that litle man with broad face.

I beheld that little man,  
 by the roads as we began to go,  
 His beard was a broad span wide,  
 and shone like the peacock's feather;  
 His head was white as any swan,  
 his eyes were great and grey also;  
 Brows long well I thee can  
 mark it to five inches and more.

Armes scort, for sothe I saye,  
 ay span semed thaem to bee ;  
 Handes brade, vytouten nay,  
 and fingeres lange he scheued me.  
 Ay stan he toke op thare it lay,  
 and castid forth that I mothe see.  
 Ay merke soote of large way,  
 bifor me strides he castid three.

Wel stille I stod als did the stane,  
 to loke him on thouth me nouthe lange ;  
 His robe was alle golde bigane,  
 wel craftlike maked, I understande,  
 Botones asurd everlkes ane,  
 fra his elbouthe on til his hande ;  
 Eldelike man was he nane,  
 that in myn herte icke onderstande.

Til him I sayde ful sone on ane,  
 for forthirmare I wald him fraine,  
 " Glalli wild I wit thi name,  
 " and I wist wat me mouthe gaine ;  
 " Thou ert so litel of fesse and bane,  
 " and so mikel of mithe and mayne,  
 " Ware vones thou, litel man, at hame,  
 " wit of their walde ful faine."

" Thoth I be litel and lith,  
 " amy nothe wytouten wane.  
 " Fferli frained thou wat I hith,  
 " that thou salt noth with my name.  
 " My wonige stede ful wel es dygh,  
 " nou sone thou salt se at hame."  
 Til him I sayde, " For Godes mith,  
 " lat me forth myn erand gane."

" The thar noth of thin errand lette,  
 " thouth thou come ay stonde wit me,

Arms short, for truth I say,  
    a span they seemed to be ;  
Hands broad, without denial,  
    and fingers long he showed me.  
A stone he took up where it lay,  
    and cast it forth that I might see.  
A mark . . . . of broad way  
    before me he cast three strides.

Very still I stood as the stone did,  
    to look upon him seemed to me not long ;  
His robe was all formed of gold,  
    very artistically made, I understand,  
Buttons azured every one,  
    from his elbow down to his hand ;  
Old-like man was he none,  
    that in my heart I understand.

To him I said full soon singly,  
    for furthermore I would him interrogate,  
“ Gladly would I know thy name,  
    “ if I knew what I might gain ;  
“ Thou art so small of flesh and bone,  
    “ and so great of might and main ;  
“ Where dwellest thou, little man, at home,  
    “ know of thee I would full gladly.”

“ Though I be small and supple,  
    “ am I not without dwelling.  
“ A wonder asked thou, what I am named,  
    “ that thou shalt not know my name.  
“ My dwelling place full well is arranged,  
    “ now soon thou shalt see at home.”

To him I said, “ For God’s might,  
    “ let me forth my errand go.”

“ Thou needest not fail of thy errand,  
    “ though thou come a while with me ;

" Forthere salt thou noth bisette  
 " bi miles twa noythere bi three."  
 Na linger durste I for him lette  
 bot forth ij fundid wyt that free ;  
 Stintid us broke no becke,  
 ferlicke me thouth hu so mouth bee.

He vent forth, als ij you say,  
 in at ay yate, ij understande ;  
 Intil ay yate, wundouten nay,  
 it to se south me nouth lange ;  
 The bankers on the binkes lay,  
 and fair lordes sette ij fonde ;  
 In ilke ay him ij herd ay lay,  
 and levedys south me loude sange.

Lithe, bothe yonge and alde,  
 of ay worde ij wil you saye,  
 A litel tale that me was tald,  
 erli on ay Wedenesdaye.  
 A mody barn that was ful bald,  
 my frend that ij frained aye,  
 Al my thering he me tald,  
 and y atid me als we went bi waye.

" Miri man, that es so wythe,  
 " of ay thinge gif me answeare,  
 " For him that mensked man wyt mith,  
 " wat sal worth of this were ?  
 " And eke our folke hou sal thai fare,  
 " that at ere by northen nou ?  
 " Sal thai have any contré thare,  
 " other wether hande sel ave the prou ?"

" Ay toupe," he sayde, " es redy thare,  
 " agayn him yitte es nane that don ;  
 " On yondealfe Humbre is ay bare,  
 " be he sped salsides son ;



" Further shalt thou not go  
 " by miles two nor by three."  
 No longer durst I to him object,  
 but forth I went with that man ;  
 Neither brook nor stream stopped us,  
 it seemed to me wonderful how it might be.

He went forth, as I tell you,  
 in at a gate, I understand ;  
 In at a gate, without denial,  
 in to see seemed me not long ;  
 The coverings lay on the benches,  
 and I found fair lords seated ;  
 In each a corner I heard a lay,  
 and ladies truth to me loudly sang.

Listen, both young and old,  
 of a word I will you tell,  
 A little tale that was told me,  
 early on a Wednesday.  
 A moody man that was very bald,  
 my friend whom I interrogated ever,  
 At my . . . . he told me,  
 and . . . . me by the way.

" Merry man, who art so knowing,  
 " of one thing give me answer,  
 " For him who adorned man with might,  
 " what shall become of this war ?  
 " And also our people, how shall they fare,  
 " that are now in the north ?  
 " Shall they have any country there,  
 " or which hand shall have the superiority."

" A mole," he said, " is ready there,  
 " against him yet is none that do ;  
 " On yond side Humber is a bear,  
 " be he sped . . . . soon,

“ Bi he have sped als sal thai sped,  
 “ and redi gates on to fare,  
 “ And man be mensked for his mede,  
 “ and stablestat for evermare.

“ And sethen thou fraines, ij wille the say,  
 “ and sette thi state in stabilité.  
 “ Rymitte reith als thou may,  
 “ for ay skill ij tellit the,  
 “ And warn em wel wytouten nay,  
 “ a tyme bifor the Trinité,  
 “ Thare sal deye on ay day  
 “ a folke on feld, ful fa sal flee.

“ Wa so flees sal duelle in care,  
 “ for thare may naman time tyde ;  
 “ A toupe sal stande agayn ay bare,  
 “ he es ful bald, him dar habide.”  
 “ Miri man, ij prai the, yif thou maye,  
 “ yif that thi wille ware,  
 “ Bathe thair names thou me saye,  
 “ wat hate the toupe and wat the bare?”

Am he sayde, “ Outen nay hate the tane,  
 “ trou thou my lare.

“ Ar thou may that other say,  
 “ that sal be falden wyt that fare.”  
 “ The wiser es ij noth of that, miri man,  
 “ wat may ys bee?”  
 “ Nou have ij sayde the wat thai hat,  
 “ forther wites thou nothe for me.

“ So lange the lebard loves the layke,  
 “ wit his onsped your sped ye spille,  
 “ And lates the lion have his raike,  
 “ wit werke in werdl als he wille ;

“ By the time he has sped as shall they speed,  
 “ and ready to go on the way,  
 “ And man be honoured for his desert,  
 “ and established for evermore.

“ And since thou askest, I will say to thee,  
 “ and put thy state in stability.  
 “ Remit right as thou may,  
 “ for a reason I tell it thee ;  
 “ And warn them well without contradiction,  
 “ a while before the Trinity,  
 “ There shall die on a day  
 “ a people in field, very few shall flee.

“ Whoever flees shall dwell in care,  
 “ for there may no man time wait ;  
 “ A mole shall stand against a bear,  
 “ he is full bold, he must abide.”  
 “ Merry man, I pray thee, if thou may,  
 “ if it be thy will,  
 “ Both their names, thou me tell,  
 “ What is named the mole and what the bear?”

And he said, “ Without nay, is called the one,  
 “ believe thou my teaching.  
 “ Before thou mayest say the other,  
 “ that shall be folded with that proceeding.”  
 “ The wiser am I nought of that, merry man,  
 “ What may it be ?”  
 “ Now have I said to thee what they are named,  
 “ further knowest thou not from me.

“ So long the leopard loves the game,  
 “ with his unspeed your speed ye spoil,  
 “ And let the lion have his course,  
 “ with work in world as he will ;

“ The bare es bonden hard in baite,  
 “ wit foles that wil folies fille ;  
 “ The toupe in toune your werkes wayte,  
 “ to bald his folke he bides stille.

“ Bide wa bide, he sal habide,  
 “ thar foles for thaire false fare,  
 “ Fa fra feld theen sal ride,  
 “ the land sal lene wit the bare.”  
 “ Forther mare ij wille the frein,  
 “ my frend, yif that thi wille ware,  
 “ Sal ij telle it forthe or layn,  
 “ or thou sal telle me ani mare ?”

“ Rymith reeth, als ij the sayn,  
 “ als sal thou redi findit thare,  
 “ And fel be of thi tithinges fain,  
 “ wen lives liggen on holtes hare ;  
 “ Bot oute sal ride a chivauché,  
 “ wyt febel fare on ay inche ;  
 “ So false sal thaire waytes be,  
 “ that deye sal many a dougty knythe.

“ Knythe and stother bathe sal deye,  
 “ that other moren biyond ma,  
 “ Thouche thay be never so sleeche,  
 “ wyt schrogen snetes fra lives ga.  
 “ The bare es bone to tyne the toure,  
 “ but bald sal be of bataille swa ;  
 “ Wa bides him on hard and herth,  
 “ that day sal deye and duelle in wa.

“ Wyt foles sal the fold be leest,  
 “ a poeple liest fol neghe biside,  
 “ Sal come out of the souther west  
 “ wyt reken routes ful on ride ;

“ The bear is bound hard in pasture,  
“ with fools who will perform follies ;  
“ The mole in town watches your works,  
“ to embolden his people he abides still.

“ Abide who abides, he shall abide;  
“ where fools go for their falseness ;  
“ Few from field then shall ride,  
“ the land shall remain with the bear.”  
“ Furthermore I will thee ask,  
“ my friend, if it were thy will,  
“ Shall I tell it forth or conceal it ?  
“ or shalt thou tell me any more ?”

“ Rhyme right, as I thee say,  
“ as thou shalt find it ready there,  
“ And many be of the tidings eager,  
“ when lives lie in the grey woods ;  
“ But out shall ride a cavalry expedition,  
“ with feeble progress on an island ;  
“ So false shall their watchmen be,  
“ that die shall many a doughty knight.

“ Knight and steed both shall die,  
“ the other morning beyond more,  
“ Though they be never so sly,  
“ with . . . . from lives go.  
“ The bear is ready to lose the tower,  
“ but bold shall be of battle so ;  
“ Who waits for him on hard and hearth,  
“ That day shall die and dwell in woe.

“ With fools shall the fold be left.  
“ a people lies full nigh beside,  
“ Shall come out of the south-west,  
“ With hasty routs full in riding ;

- " Thare sal the foles dreege is paine,  
 " and folie, for his false fare,  
 " Lie opon the feld slayne,  
 " and lose his live for evermare.
- " And wyt sal winne the lande agayn  
 " a day fra Clide on to Clare,  
 " And fa be of thair frendes fain,  
 " and toures stande als thai did are,  
 " And simple men, that wil have dede,  
 " thare sal thai ful redi finde,  
 " That mester affe to wynne theem mede,  
 " for faute sal nothe stande bihinde.
- " Ther bare es brouthe out of his denne,  
 " the leopard haldes hym so lange,  
 " That we wate never swa ne swenne,  
 " na wilke of them sal woldye lan . . . .  
 " Amange ay hondre no fynd ij tenne,  
 " that thai ne fald als a wande.  
 " By reson may thou know and kenne,  
 " that be ful fele has wroth alle wrange.
- " Wrangwis werkes sul men se  
 " be flemed for thaire fals willes,  
 " And after them sal wip ay be,  
 " and outemont of alle thaire wyles."
- " Miri man, ij beseke the,  
 " yif that thi wille ware, of a tything telle  
 " me mare,  
 " Hou hendes alle ys folke to there?  
 " sulke qualme no saith ij never are."
- " So comeli so men deyen here,  
 " povere na riche is nane to spare."  
 " Liche," he sayd, "ij sal the lere,  
 " have thou no ferly of that fare.

“ There shall the fool suffer his punishment,  
“ and foolishness for his false proceeding  
“ Lie opun the field slain,  
“ and lose his life for evermore.

“ And wit shall win the land again  
“ one day from Clyde unto Clare,  
“ And few be of their friends glad,  
“ and towers stand as they did before ;  
“ And mean men, who will have deeds,  
“ -there shall they full ready find,  
“ They who need have to win them reward  
“ for fault shall not stay behind.

“ The bear is brought out of his den,  
“ the leopard holds him so long,  
“ That we know never how nor when  
“ nor which of them shall . . .  
“ Among a hundred find I not ten,  
“ that they bend not as a rod.  
“ By reason may thou know and recognize  
“ there are full many who have worked all  
“ wrong.

“ Wrongous works shall men see  
“ be banished for their false wills,  
“ And after them shall weep a bee,  
“ and out them of all their wyles.”  
“ Merry man, I beseech thee,  
“ if that thy will were, of one tiding tell me  
“ more,  
“ How endes all this people to there?  
“ such slaughter saw I never before.

“ So commonly as men die here,  
“ poor nor rich is none to spare.”  
“ Like,” he said, “ I shall teach thee,  
“ have thou no wonder of that business.

" For twenti souzand mot thou say,  
 " that deyed tother day on this half Twede,  
 " Sal falle by thon on ay day,  
 " so lives lithe sal alle that lede.

" In my sathe southe ij say,  
 " herkens alle of a tyme  
 " That sal be aftere neuayers day,  
 " lat clerkes se the nexte prime  
 " The terme es werde, soethe to say,  
 " and twelve es comen after . . . .  
 " To led him forthe a lange waye,  
 " his wonyng stede es on yondalf Tyne.

" On southalf Tyne sal he wone,  
 " wyt thou wel it sal be swa.  
 " Fra suth sal blessed brether comen,  
 " and dele the lande even in twa.  
 " Wen domes es doand on his dede,  
 " sal na mercy be biside,  
 " Na naman have mercy for na mede,  
 " na in hope thair hevedes hide.

" Bot soffid sal be mani of stede,  
 " for res that thai sal after ride,  
 " And seen sal leauté falsed lede  
 " in rapes sone after that tyde.  
 " Fra twa to three the lande es liest,  
 " bot nameli sal it fra the twa ;  
 " The lion thare sal fare to fexit,  
 " the lande til the bare sal ga.

" Wel galli wald ij understande,  
 " to telle theem hou so moxiste be,  
 " Welke of theem sald weld the lande.  
 for wel thou spake of the three.



" For twenty thousand might thou see  
 " that died the other day on this side Tweed,  
 " Shall happen by them on a day,  
 " so lose their lives shall all that people.

" In my saying truth I tell,  
 " hearken all of a time  
 " That shall be after new-year's day,  
 " let clerks see the next morning,  
 " The term is fated, truth to say,  
 " and twelve is come after . . . .  
 " To lead him forth a long way ;  
 " his dwelling place is on yond side Tyne.

" On south side Tine shall he dwell,  
 " know thou well it shall be so.  
 " From south shall blessed brethren come,  
 " and share the land even in two.  
 " When judgment is doing on his deed,  
 " shall no mercy be beside,  
 " Nor no man have mercy for no bribe,  
 " Nor in hope to hide their heads.

" But cast many shall be off horse,  
 " for deeds after which they shall ride,  
 " And shall see loyalty lead falseness  
 " in ropes soon after that time.  
 " From two to three the land is left,  
 " But especially shall it from the two ;  
 " The lion there shall go to fetch it,  
 " the land to the bear shall go.

" Well gladly would I understand,  
 " to tell them how so must it be,  
 " Which of them shall govern the land,  
 " for well thou speakest of the three.

" A T. biside an L. ij fonde,  
 " chese thi selven sege and see,  
 " An Ed. the thred wyt hope and hande,  
 " the baillifs bee.

" Bot nou of theem hat loves the lede,  
 " that es so bald that dar habide,  
 " That theem ne sal reu yif ij can rede,  
 " on ay Friday on est halfe Clide ;  
 " For wel thai wen hour lande to winne.  
 " to fele that may finde biforin,  
 " Thai sal bee blonked ar thai blinne,  
 " thair folis that haves ben forthorin.

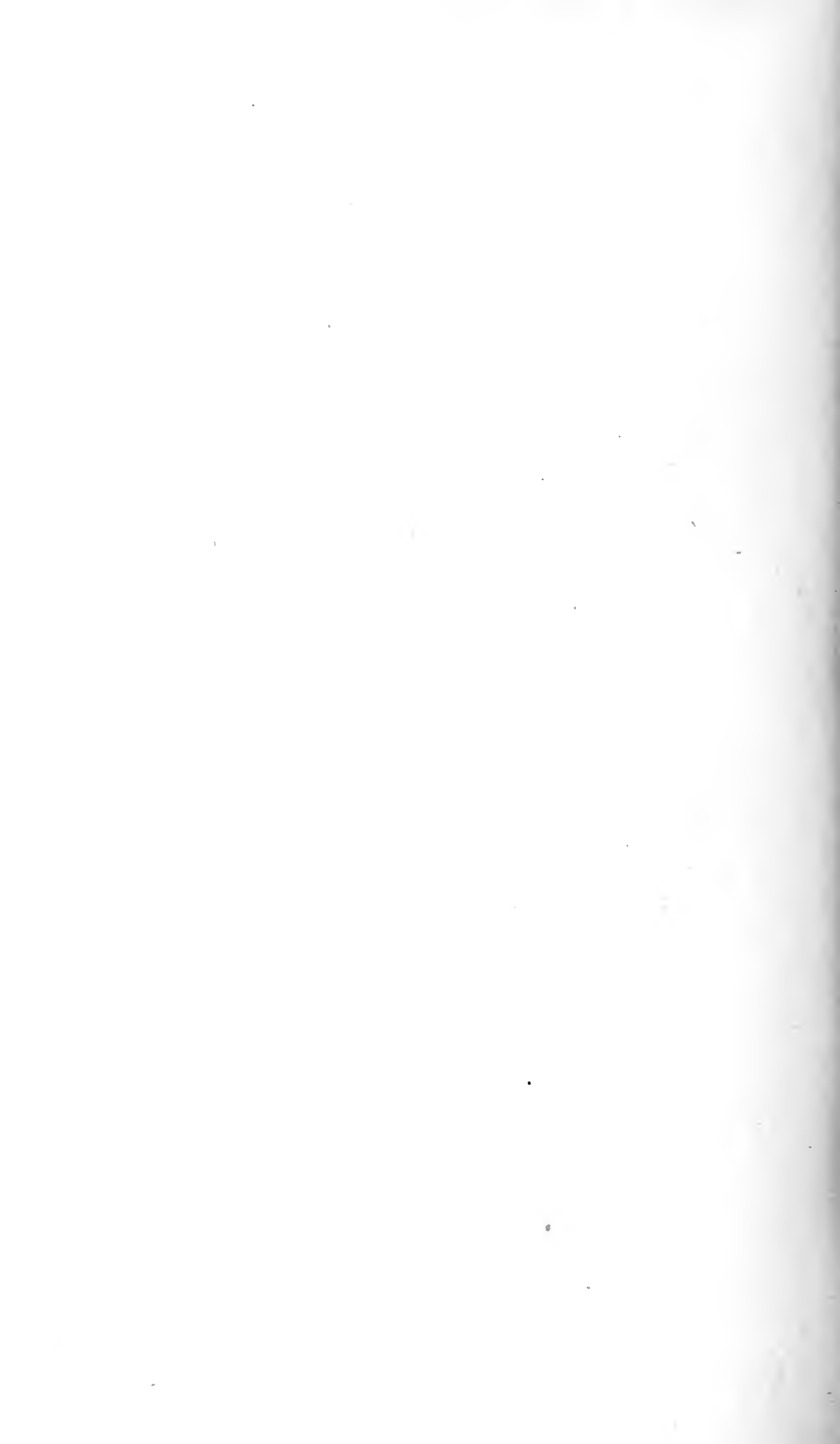
" Many be dampned to daye tharinne,  
 " that riden heck wit hond and horin,  
 " Wen yonge sal falle for ald synne,  
 " and lose the lyf and be forthorin.  
 " Wrangle werkes wil away,  
 " it sal be als God haves sette ;  
 " Of thair biginnyng can ij say,  
 " sal na frend of other reve.

" Dougty sal daye on the feld,  
 " to wyt them be never so wa,  
 " And falsed under halles held,  
 " in frith sul men the foles ta.  
 " Leauté men haves ben ful seld,  
 " it sal be sette wyt mirthes ma,  
 " And marchant have the werld to weld,  
 " and capman wyt thair packs ga.

" And than sal reson raike and ride,  
 " and wisdome be ware es best,  
 " And leauté sal gare leal habide,  
 " and sithen sal hosbondmen af reste."

---

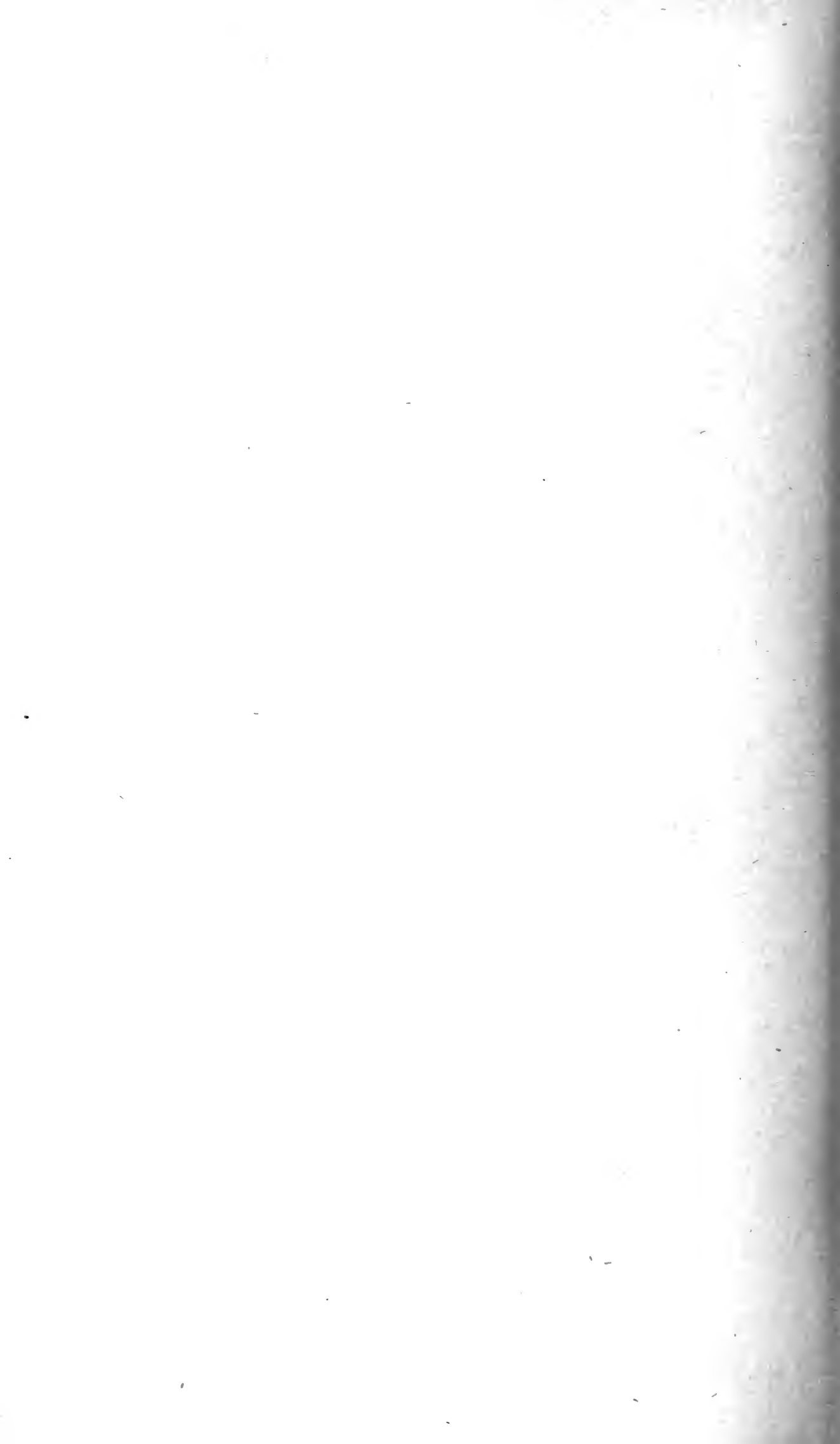
- “ A T. beside an L. I found ;  
“ chuse thyself, man, and see  
“ An Ed. the thread with hope and hand,  
“ are the bailifs.
- “ But now of them that love the people,  
“ that are so bold they dare abide,  
“ That it shall not rue them if I can telle,  
“ on a Friday on the east side Clyde ;  
“ For well they expect our land to win,  
“ to many that may find before,  
“ They shall be disappointed before they cease,  
“ their follies that have been condemned.
- “ Many are damned to-day therein,  
“ That ride high with hound and horn,  
“ When youth shall fall for old sin,  
“ and lose the life and be condemned.
- “ Wrong works will away,  
“ it shall be as God has fixed ;  
“ Of their beginning can I say  
“ shall no friend of another rob.
- “ Doughty shall die on the field,  
“ to know them be never so woe,  
“ And falsehood be held under halls,  
“ in wood shall men to the fools.
- “ Loyalty men has been full rare,  
“ it shall be set with more mirths,  
“ And merchants have the world to govern,  
“ and chapmen go with their packs.
- “ And then shall reason go about and ride  
“ and wisdom be where is best,  
“ And loyalty shall cause the loyal to abide,  
“ and afterwards shall husbandmen have rest.”



---

**I N D E X.**

---



## I N D E X.

### A.

- Acre, siege and capture of, by king Richard, ii. 78-84.  
     taken by the Saracens, ii. 188.
- Adroenus, king of Britany, i. 92.
- Alan, king of Britany, i. 262.
- Alan, Richard Fitz, ii. 12.
- Alba, built by Ascanius, i. 4.
- Alban, St., his martyrdom, i. 76.
- Albanac, first king of Scotland, i. 24.
- Albemarle, William, earl of, i. 476, 478, 480, 484.
- Albemarle, earl of, slain, ii. 340.
- Albemarle, William de, ii. 8.
- Albion, the isle of, i. 20.
- Alclud, in Scotland, built, i. 30.
- Aldred, archbishop of York, i. 410, 412.
- Aldulph, earl of Boulogne, i. 326.
- Alexander, bishop of Lincoln, i. 482, 484.
- Alfdene, i. 318.
- Alfred, made king of Wessex, i. 316.  
     his war with Gunter the Dane, i. 318.  
     his death, *ib.*
- Alfred, son of king Ethelred, murdered, i. 374.
- Algar, earl of Kent, i. 390.  
     rebels against the king, but is reconciled, i. 392.
- Allectus, the usurper, i. 72.
- Alnwick, taken by prince Edward, ii. 152.
- Ambrosius Aurelius, made king of Britain, i. 116.  
     defeats Hengist, i. 118.  
     his good works, i. 122.  
     raises Stonehenge, i. 124.  
     poisoned by Eopa, i. 128.
- Amis, duke of Guisnes, i. 466.
- Androgeus, the British king, i. 58.
- Anjou, given by king Arthur to sir Kay, i. 168.  
     war in, i. 466.
- Anjou, earl of, husband of the empress Maude, his death, i. 484.
- Anlaf, king of the Danes, i. 330.  
     elected king of Northumberland, i. 332.
- Anlaf, of Norway, invades England, i. 348, 352.
- Anlaf, bishop of London, i. 358.
- Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 450, 452, 456.
- Anthony, bishop of Durham, ii. 198.  
     Edward's adviser against the French, ii. 200.  
     his advice, ii. 202.  
     sent as one of the ambassadors to Germany, ii. 204.  
     his energy in the war against Scotland, ii. 260.  
     intercedes with the barons who refused to accompany king Edward to Flanders, ii. 292.  
     his exertions to restore peace, ii. 296.
- Aquitaine, William of, ii. 22.
- Armorica, settlement of the Britons in, i. 84.
- Arthgallo, king of Britain, deposed, i. 52.  
     restored to the crown through his brother's affection, i. 56.
- Arthur, king, his birth, i. 140.  
     made king of Britain, i. 146.  
     defeats the Saxons, i. 150, 152.  
     invades Scotland, i. 154.  
     marries Gainovere, and conquers Ireland, i. 158.  
     conquers Norway, i. 160.  
     invades France, i. 162.  
     kills Follo in single combat, i. 164, 166.

- Arthur, king—*cont.*  
 his great feast at Caerleon, i. 168.  
 his coronation, i. 172.  
 his expedition against Rome, i. 178.  
 starts for Italy, leaving his kingdom in charge of Modred, i. 184.  
 his adventure with the giant on Mont St. Michel, i. 186.  
 receives news of Modred's treason, i. 216.  
 returns to Britain, i. 218.  
 makes war upon Modred, i. 218, 220.  
 wounded and carried to the isle of Avalon, i. 224.
- Arthur, count of Britany, ii. 46.  
 his death, ii. 124.
- Artois, Charles, count of, ii. 200.
- Artois, the count of, slain in Flanders, ii. 340.
- Arundel, the earl of, his marriage, ii. 368.
- Arviragus, the British prince, i. 62.  
 becomes king of Britain; and marries a daughter of the emperor Claudius, i. 64.
- Ascalon, a river in Greece, i. 8.
- Ascanius, son of Eneas, i. 4.
- Asclepiodotus, king of Britain, i. 72, 74.  
 his death, i. 76.
- Asketil, earl of, liberated, ii. 310.  
 executed, ii. 372.
- Athelard, king of Wessex, i. 284.
- Athelmar, earl of Devonshire, i. 356.
- Athelstan, king, i. 322.  
 his wars, i. 324.  
 receives an embassy from the king of France, i. 326.  
 defeats the Scots and Danes at Brunanburgh, i. 330.  
 his death, i. 332.
- Augusele, king of Scotland, i. 158, 202, 218, 220.
- Augustine, St., comes to Britain, i. 232.  
 converts the Saxons, i. 234.
- Austria, duke of, quarrel between him and Richard I., ii. 84.  
 leaves Syria, ii. 96.
- Avennes, Jacques de, ii. 98, 100.  
 slain, ii. 102.
- B.
- Baldwin the Leper, king of Jerusalem, ii. 22.
- Baldwin, count of Flanders, receives earl Godwin and his sons, i. 384.
- Baldulf, brother of Colgrim, invades Britain, i. 148.  
 slain, i. 152.
- Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 26.
- Baldwin, a hospitaller, slain, ii. 102.
- Baliol, Guy de, slain at the battle of Lewes, ii. 146.
- Baliol, John, made king of Scotland, ii. 192.  
 his homage, *ib.*  
 throws off allegiance to king Edward, and pleads that Scotland was held of the Pope, ii. 222.
- Bangor, the number of monks in it, i. 234.  
 slaughter of them, i. 236.
- Bar, count of, ii. 295.
- Bardolf, Hugh, ii. 34.
- Basset, Ralph, ii. 146.
- Bassianus (the emperor Caracalla), i. 70.
- Bath, the city of, founded by king Bladud, i. 32.
- Beauchamp, James de, ii. 282.
- Becket, Thomas, archdeacon of Canterbury;  
 his history, ii. 4.  
 made archbishop, *ib.*  
 his quarrel with the king, ii. 4, 6.  
 slain in his church, ii. 6.
- Buckingham, Elis de, ii. 186.
- Beduer, sir, receives Normandy from king Arthur, i. 168.  
 king Arthur's butler, i. 186.  
 slain in battle, i. 206.
- Bedwer, Baldwin de, banished, i. 470.
- Belesme, Robert de, rebels against Henry I., i. 452, 458.
- Belinus, king of Britain, i. 42.  
 makes the four great roads across the island, i. 44.  
 his expedition to Italy, i. 48.



- Berald of the March, i. 304.
- Berengaria, queen of Richard I., ii. 54.  
her marriage in Cyprus, ii. 60.
- Bernard, bishop of Bayonne, accompanies  
king Richard to the Crusade, ii. 34.  
commander of the fleet, ii. 60.
- Bernewolf, king of Mercia, slain in battle,  
i. 296.
- Bertric, king of Mercia, i. 292.  
poisoned by his queen, i. 294.
- Berwick-on-Twede, taken by Edward I., ii.  
234.
- Berwick, John de, ii. 274, 334.
- Bigot, Hugh, quarrels with king Stephen,  
i. 492.
- Bigod, sir Hugh, escaped from the battle of  
Lewes, ii. 142.
- Bigod, William, i. 564.
- Billingsgate, origin of the name, i. 48.
- Bladud, king of Britain, i. 32.
- Blanemount, the lord of, ii. 278.
- Blois, Theobald of, ii. 10.
- Boemond, count of Tripoli, ii. 60, 112.
- Bohun, earl Humphrey de, ii. 246, 316.  
his death, ii. 318, 342.
- Boniface VIII., pope, his judgment on the  
question of Gascony, ii. 334.  
at enmity with the king of France,  
ii. 346.  
sequel of his history, ii. 350.
- Bouillon, Godfrey of, i. 458, 459.
- Boulogne, the count of, marries the daughter  
of William king of Scotland, ii. 130.
- Boso, earl of Oxford, i. 192, 202.
- Brabant, John duke of, ii. 280.
- Brabazon, Godfrey de, ii. 340.
- Brennius, king of Northumberland, i. 42.  
becomes duke of Burgundy, i. 44.  
makes war upon his brother Belinus,  
but they are reconciled by their  
mother, i. 46.  
their expedition to Italy, i. 48.
- Brette, Emery de la, ii. 344.
- Brian, nephew of Cadwallo, his devotion to  
his uncle, i. 244.  
sent to England to murder Pellitus,  
i. 248.
- Brain, nephew of Cadwallo—*cont.*  
gathers the army of Wales in Oxford,  
i. 250.
- Britain, origin of the name, i. 2, 20.  
Britain ravaged by the Huns and Piets,  
i. 86, 88.  
the five wounds of Britain, i. 286.
- Britany, occupied by settlers from Great  
Britain, i. 84.
- Britany, Arthur duke of, claims the earldom  
of Richmond, ii. 372.
- Britany, John of, ii. 214.
- Brunanburgh, battle of, i. 330.
- Brus, Alexander de, executed, ii. 374.
- Brus, Robert de, i. 476, 478.
- Brus, Robert de, faithful to king Edward,  
ii. 234.
- Brus, Robert de, slays John Comyn, ii.  
364.  
makes himself king of Scotland, ii. 366.  
attacks sir Aymer de Valence, ii. 370.  
his sufferings, ii. 372.
- Brus, Thomas de, executed, ii. 374.
- Brutus, circumstances of his birth, i. 4.  
he goes from Italy to Greece, i. 6.  
his voyage to Britain, i. 10, 12.  
arrives in Aquitaine, i. 14.  
arrives in Britain and destroys the  
giants, i. 20.  
his death, i. 22.
- Brutus Green-shield, king of Britain, i. 30.
- Bruyere, William de la, ii. 34.
- Burgundy, Hugh duke of, made commander  
of the French army in Syria,  
ii. 96.  
at Cæsarea, ii. 100, 104.

## C.

- Cador of Cornwall defeats Baldulf, i. 148.  
and Cerdic, i. 154.  
his speech against the Romans, i. 178.  
attacked by the Romans, i. 200.  
commands in Arthur's army, i. 202.

- Cadwallader, the last British king, i. 260.  
retires to Britany, i. 262.  
and thence to Rome, where he dies,  
i. 262, 278.
- Cadwallo, king of Northumberland, his  
story, i. 238.  
deprived of the kingdom by Edwin,  
i. 242.  
escapes to Britany, i. 244, 246.  
raises the siege of Oxford, i. 250.  
defeats and slays Edwin at Hevenfeld,  
i. 252.  
dies; his singular mode of burial,  
i. 258.
- Cadwan made king of Northumberland,  
i. 236.
- Cadwan, king of Scotland, slain, i. 252.
- Cæsar, Julius, arrives in Britain, i. 58.  
defeated by king Cassibelan, i. 60.
- Cæsarea, battle of, ii. 98-104.
- Calaphès Durin, a Saracen warrior, ii. 100.
- Caliburn, king Arthur's sword, i. 152, 166,  
190, 212, 214.
- Camber, first king of Wales, i. 24.
- Camville, Richard de, accompanies king  
Richard to the Crusade, ii. 34.
- Canterbury built by king Hadibras, i. 32.
- Canterbury, Robert archbishop of, refuses  
the aid to the Crown on the part of  
the church, ii. 270.  
consents to pay the tenth of the goods  
of the clergy, ii. 302.  
marries Edward I. to Margaret of  
France, ii. 320.
- Canute, son of Sweyn, ravages the north of  
England, i. 354.  
chosen king by the Danes, i. 360.  
he is made king of England, i. 364.  
becomes king of all England, i. 366.  
his death, i. 370.
- Caradoc, duke of Cornwall, i. 80.
- Careticus made king of Britain, i. 228.
- Carausius, his history, i. 72.
- Carlisle, built by king Leil, i. 30.
- Carlisle, bishop of, pronounces excommu-  
nication against breakers of the  
charter, ii. 308.
- Carrick, the earl of, deserts the Scots, ii. 343.
- Cassibelan, king of Britain, i. 58.
- Celestine V., pope, espouses the cause of  
Scotland, ii. 222.
- Cerdic, the Saxon, ii. 104.  
taken prisoner and put to death, i. 154.
- Cheldric, a "duke" of Germany, invades  
the north of England, i. 148.  
is defeated and flies, i. 152.  
returns to Britain to aid Modred, i.  
218.  
slain, i. 224.
- Chester, Ralph earl of, reconciled with  
king Stephen, i. 492.  
attacks Lincoln, i. 494.
- Cirencester taken and destroyed by king  
Gormound, i. 228.
- Clare, Gilbert de, joins prince Edward  
against Simon de Montfort, ii. 144.  
quarrels with the king, ii. 152, 368.
- Claudius, emperor of Rome, makes war  
upon Britain, i. 62, 64.
- Clifford, Roger de, drowned in the Welsh  
expedition, ii. 178.
- Cloten, king of Cornwall, i. 40.
- Coel, duke of Colchester, father-in-law of  
the emperor Constantine, i. 76.
- Coillus, king of Britain, i. 68.
- Coinage, reform of, by king Edward I., ii.  
172.
- Colbrand the Dane, i. 330, 332.
- Colgrim, a German "duke," invades Bri-  
tain, i. 146.  
slain, i. 152.
- Colman, king of Ireland, i. 154.
- Columnas, the, their feud with pope Boni-  
face, ii. 350.
- Compiègne, the abbot of, comes to Eng-  
land, ii. 336.
- Comyn, John, ii. 142.
- Comyn, John, lord of Badenagh, ii. 348.  
murdered by Robert de Brus, ii. 364.
- Comyn, Richard, ii. 10.
- Comyn, earl Robert, i. 412.  
killed, i. 414.
- Conan, i. 80.  
made king of Britany, i. 84.
- Conan, king of Britain, i. 226.

Coniers, Robert de, ii. 28.  
 Constans, son of Constantine, a monk at Winchester, i. 94.  
     made king of Britain, i. 96.  
 Constantine, the emperor, i. 76, 78.  
 Constantine, king of Britain, i. 94.  
     slain by Vortiger, i. 96.  
 Constantine, son of Cadur, made king of Britain, i. 224, 226.  
     slain by his nephew Conan, i. 226.  
 Conwenna, the mother of Belinus and Brennius, i. 46.  
 Coradin, lord of Damascus, ii. 100.  
 Cordelle, daughter of Leil, her story, i. 34, 36.  
     becomes queen of Britain, and is afterwards deposed, i. 38.  
 Corineus joins Brutus, i. 14.  
     defeats the Poitevins, i. 18.  
     gives his name to Cornwall, i. 20.  
     his wrestling match with Gogmagog, i. 22.  
 Cornwall, origin of the name, i. 20.  
 Cornwall, Richard de, slain, ii. 232.  
 Cospatric, earl, joins the party of William the Conqueror, i. 420.  
     deprived of his earldom, i. 424.  
 Courtrai, battle of, ii. 340.  
 Cradoc, son of Griffyth king of Wales, destroys Harold's houses, i. 396.  
 Craucombe, John de, ii. 204, 214.  
 Cressingham, Hugh de, made treasurer of Scotland, ii. 260, 298.  
     slain, ii. 300.  
 Crispin, William, i. 458.  
 Crusades of the French and Germans, and of the poor men, i. 494.  
 Cunedag, king of Britain, i. 38.  
 Cursal, earl of Chichester, i. 204.  
     slain, i. 210.  
 Cuthbert, St., his body carried away from Durham, i. 418.  
 Cuthred, king of Wessex, his wars with Mercia, i. 290.  
 Cymbeline, king of Britain, i. 60.  
 Cynewulf raised to the kingdom of Wessex, i. 290.  
     his character, i. 292.

## D.

Danegeld abolished, i. 382.  
     Henry I. swears to abolish it, i. 468.  
 Danes invade England, i. 294, 310.  
     under Justin and Guthmond, i. 344, 346.  
     massacre of the, i. 350.  
 Darius, king of Britain, i. 52.  
 Dardan, a Danish chieftain, invades Northumbria, i. 300.  
     slain, i. 304.  
 David, uncle of king Arthur, made bishop of Caerleon, i. 176.  
 David, king of Scotland, refuses his homage to king Stephen, i. 470.  
     invades Northumberland, i. 474.  
 David, prince of Wales, ii. 172.  
     rebels against king Edward, ii. 176.  
     taken and put to death, ii. 180.  
 Despenser, Hugh le, i. 146, 204, 214, 240, 274, 334.  
 Despenser, Hugh, son of Hugh, married, ii. 368.  
 Deyville, John, ii. 148.  
 Diocletian, the emperor, his persecution reaches Britain, i. 74.  
 Dinoot, abbot of Bangor, i. 234.  
 Dinotus, king of Cornwall, i. 84.  
 Dipplyn, William of, ii. 356.  
 Doldan, king of Gothland, i. 160.  
 Domesday survey made, i. 432.  
 Donald, brother of Malcolm, made king of Scotland, i. 440.  
     deposed and restored, i. 442.  
     driven out of Scotland by William Rufus, i. 444.  
 Douglas, William de, ii. 234.  
 Dover, attack upon, by the Normans, ii. 224.  
 Dublin, archbishop of, one of Edward's ambassadors, ii. 204.  
     dies, ii. 214.  
 Dubricius, bishop of Caerleon, i. 152.  
     turns hermit, i. 176.

Dunbar taken by the Scots, ii. 238.  
 battle of, ii. 246.  
 songs upon it, ii. 248, 252.  
 Duncan, king of Scotland, i. 442.  
 Dunstan crowns Edward, i. 342.  
 and Ethelred, i. 344.  
 his death, i. 346.  
 Dunstan, son of Athelneth, i. 396.  
 Dunwallo, king of Britain, i. 40.  
 his actions and death, i. 42.  
 Durham, the body of St. Cuthbert removed,  
 i. 418.  
 favour shown to the church by William  
 the Conqueror, i. 424.

## E.

Ebissa, the Saxon, i. 104.  
 Ebrac, king of Britain, built York, i. 28.  
 Ebric, "duke" of Denmark, invades Eng-  
 land, i. 294.  
 Edburga, queen of Ina, i. 282.  
 Edgar raised to the crown, i. 338.  
 his great power, i. 340.  
 Edgar Atheling, i. 408.  
 Edgar, son of king Malcolm, claims the  
 crown of Scotland, i. 444.  
 Edith, daughter of earl Godwin, queen of  
 Edward the Confessor, i. 388.  
 accused of the death of Gospatric, i.  
 396.  
 carried by Edwin and Morecar to Caer-  
 leon, i. 403.  
 Edmund, king of the East Angles, martyr-  
 dom of, i. 312.  
 Edmund, brother of Athelstan, king, i. 332.  
 his wars with the Danes, and death, i.  
 334.  
 Edmund Ironside chosen king by the Lon-  
 doners, i. 366.  
 shares the kingdom with Canute, his  
 death, *ib.*  
 Edmund, brother of Edward I., ii. 208, 218,  
 230.  
 Edred, king of England, i. 334.

Edric, the earl, his treacherous counsel to  
 king Ethelred, i. 352, 354.  
 Edmund Ironside's hostility towards  
 him, i. 362.  
 hanged by order of king Canute, i.  
 368.  
 Edward the Elder, king, his reign, i. 320.  
 his death, i. 322.  
 Edward the Martyr, king of England, i.  
 342.  
 Edward, son of Ethelred, (the Confessor),  
 sent to Normandy, i. 356.  
 sent to England as his father's mes-  
 senger, i. 360.  
 comes to England with his brother  
 Alfred, i. 372.  
 returns to Normandy, i. 374.  
 visits the court of king Hardeknut,  
 i. 380.  
 becomes king of England, i. 382.  
 is reconciled with Earl Godwin, i. 388.  
 declares his nephew Edward his suc-  
 cessor, i. 390.  
 his death, i. 398.  
 Edward, son of Edmund, adopted by Ed-  
 ward the Confessor, i. 390.  
 Edward, son of Henry III. (Edward I.), his  
 father's counsellor, ii. 136.  
 gives himself as hostage for his father,  
 after the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.  
 escapes from prison and raises an  
 army, ii. 144.  
 gains the battle of Evesham, ii. 146.  
 goes to the East, ii. 154.  
 stabbed by a Saracen assassin, ii. 158.  
 married to Eleanor, daughter of the  
 king of Spain, ii. 160.  
 crowned king of England, ii. 164, 166.  
 quarrels with Llewellyn, prince of  
 Wales, ii. 170.  
 invades Wales again, ii. 172, 176-180.  
 his expedition to Gascony, ii. 182.  
 queen Eleanor dies, ii. 190.  
 proposes to marry Blanche of France,  
 ii. 196.  
 the French obtain possession of Gas-  
 cony, ii. 198, 200.  
 Edward prepares for war, ii. 202-208.

- Edward (Edward I.)—*cont.*  
 disasters in Gascony, ii. 216.  
 insurrection in Wales, *ib.*  
 Edward subdues Wales, ii. 218.  
 negotiates with France for peace, ii. 228.  
 marches against John de Baliol, ii. 230.  
 gains the battle of Dunbar, ii. 246.  
 puts Scotland under his own ministers, ii. 258.  
 his parliament at St. Edmunds, ii. 268.  
 his quarrel with the church, ii. 270, 276.  
 negotiations for peace with France, ii. 274, 276.  
 disasters in Aquitaine, ii. 280.  
 his quarrel with his barons, ii. 286.  
 proceeds to Flanders, ii. 292.  
 is reconciled with his barons and clergy, ii. 306.  
 proceeds into Scotland, ii. 312.  
 marries Margaret of France, ii. 316.  
 enters Scotland with his army, ii. 324.  
 invades Scotland in 1303, ii. 348.  
 proclaims peace in Scotland, ii. 354.  
 his death, ii. 380.
- Edward, prince, afterwards Edward II., born, ii. 324.  
 created prince of Wales and earl of Chester, ii. 336.  
 great feast when he was knighted, ii. 368.  
 goes to the war in Scotland, ii. 370.
- Edwin, king of Northumberland, his story, i. 238, 242.  
 slain by Cadwallo, i. 252.
- Edwin, brother of king Athelstan, drowned in the Thames, i. 324.
- Edwin and Morcar attempt to make Edgar Atheling king, i. 408.  
 they take queen Edith to Caerleon, *ib.*
- Edwy made king, and then deposed, i. 336.
- Egbert, made king of Wessex, i. 294.  
 his severity to the Danes, i. 296.  
 makes war upon the Welsh, i. 298.  
 proceeds to Northumberland against the Danes, and is defeated, i. 300.  
 defeats the Danes, i. 302, 304.  
 his death, i. 306.
- Eldaldus, bishop of Gloucester, i. 120.
- Eldol, Earl of Gloucester, escapes from the slaughter at Ambresbury, i. 108.  
 defeats Hengist, i. 118.
- Eleutherius, pope, sent missionaries to convert the Britons, i. 68.
- Elidurus, king of Britain, his love to his brother, i. 54.  
 deposed and restored, i. 56.
- Ellendune, battle of, proverb relating to it, i. 296.
- Ely, isle of, taken by the army of Henry III., ii. 152.
- Eneas, his adventures, i. 2, 4.
- Eopa, the assassin of Ambrosius, i. 128.
- Eosa, the Saxon, i. 132, 134, 140, 142, 144.
- Eric of Denmark, made king of Northumberland, i. 336.
- Espec, Walter l', a great founder of Abbeys, i. 476.  
 commands Stephen's army against the Scots, i. 478.
- Estoteville, Robert de, i. 458.
- Estrilde, her story, i. 26.
- Ethelbald, king of Mercia, i. 290.
- Ethelbald, king of Wessex, i. 308.
- Ethelbert, king of Wessex, i. 308.
- Ethelbert, duke of Mercia, i. 256.
- Ethelfred, king of Northumbria, i. 236.
- Ethelred, brother of Ethelbert, made king of Wessex, i. 310.  
 slain, i. 314.
- Ethelred (the Second), king of England, i. 344.  
 he buys peace of the Danes, i. 348.  
 marries Emma, daughter of Richard duke of Normandy, i. 350.  
 orders the Danes to be massacred, *ib.*  
 sends his sons to Normandy, i. 356.  
 goes thither himself, i. 358.  
 returns to England, i. 360.  
 his death, i. 364.
- Ethelwolf, king of Wessex, i. 306.  
 the first king who gave tithes, i. 308.
- Eu, count of, slain, ii. 340.
- Eustace, son of king Stephen, marries Constance of France, i. 482.
- Eustace Fitz-John, i. 484.

Everwick (York), built by king Ebrac, i. 30.

Evesham, battle of, ii. 146.

## F.

Falkirk, battle of, ii. 312.

Fens, William de, ii. 340.

Fereres, Robert de, ii. 148.

Ferrex and Porrex, their story, i. 40.

Flanders, seized by the French, ii. 338.

the French are defeated with great loss, ii. 340.

Flanders, Guy, count of, treacherously arrested by the king of France, ii. 338.

Flanders, Philip, count of, ii. 10.

Flanders, William, count of, sends an embassy to Edward I., ii. 278.

Flollo, defeated by king Arthur, i. 162. slain, i. 164.

Flote, Pierre de, ii. 340.

Fortz, William de, lord of Oleron, ii. 36.

Fraser, Richard, ii. 234.

Fresel, Simon, ii. 344, 351.

condemned to exile, ii. 354.

taken and executed, ii. 370.

Frithebald, king of Northumbria, i. 298.

Fulgentius, duke, defeats and slays the emperor Severus, i. 70.

## G.

Gainesborough, William of, ii. 204.

Gainovere (Gwenever), queen of king Arthur, i. 158.

marries Modred, i. 218.

becomes a nun at Caerleon, i. 220.

Galloc of Salisbury, slain, i. 210.

Gallus made king of Britain by the Romans, i. 74.

Garbodian, king of Britain, i. 56.

Gaunt, Gilbert de, i. 416, 484.

Gawayn, his speech, i. 194.

kills Quintilianus, *ib.*

holds a command in Arthur's army, i. 202.

his exertions in the great battle with the Romans i. 212.

slain by the Saxons, i. 218.

Genevile, Geoffrey de, ii. 290.

Genuissa, daughter of the emperor Claudius, married to the British king Arviragus, i. 66.

Geoffrey, count of Britany, ii, 12, 122.

Gerard, archbishop of Auxienne, ii. 34.

Germanus, St., preaches in Britain, i. 104.

Gervaux, the abbey, founded, i. 426.

Geta, the son of the emperor Severus, i. 70.

Gilloman, an Irish king, i. 126, 128, 158.

Ginderius, king of Britain, i. 62.

Glasgow, the bishop of, i. 354.

imprisoned, i. 372.

Gloucester, named from the emperor Claudius, i. 64.

Gloucester, earl of, ii. 218.

Gobion, Randolph, i. 460.

Godbold, king of Orkney, i. 252.

Godfrey, duke of Louvaine, i. 464.

Godwin, earl of Kent, i. 372.

accused of the murder of prince Alfred, i. 374.

reconciled with king Hardeknut, i. 378.

rebels against king Edward, and is banished, i. 384.

returns, i. 386.

is reconciled with the king, i. 388.

Goffore, king of Poitiers, defeated by Corineus, i. 14, 16.

Gogmagog, the giant, i. 20.

his wrestling match with Corineus, i. 22.

Gontais, Walter de, i. 476.

Gorargon, king of Kent, i. 104.

Gorbodian, king of Britain, i. 54.

Gorlois, duke of Cornwall, i. 118, 134, 138.

Gormound, king of Africa, comes to Britain, i. 228.

forms the Heptarchy, i. 230.

returns to France, i. 232.

Gospatric, i. 396.  
 Graham, Patrick de, slain at Dunbar, ii. 246.  
 Grauntsoun, Otho de, ii. 238.  
 Griffiez, Fulke de, ii. 120.  
 Griffyth, son of Griffyth king of Wales, i. 390.  
 Griffyth, king of Wales, invades the border, i. 392.  
     subdued by earl Harold, and banished, i. 394.  
 Guanius, king of the Huns, i. 86, 88.  
 Guendolene, the wife of king Loerin, i. 26.  
 Guerin, earl of Chartres, i. 180, 192, 202.  
 Guethelin, archbishop of London, exerts himself to protect Britain against the invasions of the Piets, i. 90, 92.  
 Guitard, king of Aquitaine, i. 166, 200, 204.  
 Gunfasius, king of Orkney, i. 160.  
 Gunter the Dane invades England, but submits and is baptized, i. 318.  
 Gurbodud, king of Britain, i. 40.  
 Gurgunt, king of Britain, i. 50.  
 Guthelin, king of Britain, i. 52.  
 Guy, of Warwick, i. 332.  
 Guy, king of Jerusalem, ii. 60, 62, 104, 112.

## H.

Hacon Fitz-Hervey, i. 428.  
 Haldan of Doncaster, i. 302, 304.  
 Hamo, chief counsellor in Britain of the emperor Claudius, i. 62.  
 Hampton (Southampton), origin of the name, i. 62.  
 Hamundesham, Walter, made chancellor of Scotland, ii. 260.  
 Hardeknut, son of Canute, made king of Denmark, i. 370.  
     opposes his brother, i. 372.  
     comes to England, i. 374.  
     becomes king, i. 376.  
     is reconciled with Godwin, i. 378.  
 Hardeknut, son of Canute—*cont.*  
     his quarrel with the people of Worcester, i. 380.  
     his death, *ib.*  
 Harold of Donnesmore, i. 304.  
 Harold, son of Canute, becomes king of England, i. 370.  
     opposed by his brother Hardeknut, i. 372.  
     they are reconciled and share the kingdom between them, *ib.*  
     his death, i. 374.  
 Harold, son of Godwin, carries away the abbess Elgiva, i. 382.  
     retires to Ireland, i. 384.  
     returns and plunders Dorset and Somerset, i. 386.  
     sent with an army into Wales, i. 394.  
     becomes king of England, i. 398.  
     the battle of Stanford Bridge, i. 400.  
     his visit and engagement to William of Normandy, i. 402.  
     is slain at Hastings, i. 408.  
 Harold Harfaager, king of Norway, invades Northumberland, i. 400.  
     is slain, i. 402.  
 Hastings, battle of, i. 406.  
 Hastings, Henry de, ii. 150.  
 Helenus, son of Priam, flies from Troy to Greece, i. 2.  
     is found there by Brutus, i. 6.  
     his transactions with king Pandrasus, i. 8.  
 Heli, king of Britain, i. 58.  
 Helis de St. Omer, i. 490.  
 Helys of Lindsey, i. 422.  
 Henault, the count of, ii. 280.  
 Hengham, Ralph de, ii. 186.  
 Hengist arrives in Britain with Horsus, i. 98.  
     assists in defeating the Scots, and is rewarded with lands, i. 100.  
     obtains the whole of Kent, i. 104.  
     his treason, i. 106, 108.  
     becomes chief ruler in Britain, i. 110.  
     defeated by Ambrosius and Eldol, i. 116.  
     put to death, i. 120.

- Henry I. crowned, i. 448.  
 marries Maude of Scotland, i. 450.  
 invades Normandy, i. 454.  
 his son drowned, i. 464.  
 marries Adelaide of Louvain, *ib.*  
 his death, i. 466.
- Henry II., king of England, crowned, ii. 2.  
 his quarrel with Thomas Becket, ii. 4, 6.  
 makes his son Henry king, ii. 6.  
 pardons him, ii. 12.  
 his will, ii. 14.  
 visits the shrine of Thomas Becket, ii. 24.  
 his death, ii. 26.
- Henry, son of Henry II., crowned king, ii. 6.  
 marries the sister of the king of France, ii, 10.  
 makes war on his father, *ib.*  
 reconciled with him, ii. 12.  
 his death, ii. 22.
- Henry III. crowned, ii. 134.  
 marries Eleanor, daughter of the count of Provence, *ib.*  
 commencement of the baronial wars, ii. 140.  
 the quarrel submitted to the judgment of the king of France, *ib.*  
 battle of Lewes, ii. 142.  
 his death, ii. 160.
- Henry, king of Scotland, performs his homage to king Stephen, i. 470.  
 his courage in battle, i. 482.
- Henry of Almaine, ii. 144.
- Heptarchy of the Anglo Saxons, i. 230.
- Hereford, Humphrey, earl of, i. 306.
- Hiderus, son of Noun, i. 198.
- Hirelgas, nephew of Beduer, i. 208.
- Hilda, daughter of king Athelstan, married to king Charles of France, i. 328.
- Hoel, king of Amoric, i. 148, 154, 166, 202, 218.
- Holdin of Flanders, i. 204.  
 slain, i. 210.
- Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 124, 126.
- Hudibras, king of Britain, i. 30.
- Hugh Fitz-Baldric, ii. 426.
- Hugh, bishop of Durham, ii. 32.
- Humber, king, slew Alvanac, king of Scotland, i. 24.  
 drowned in the river Humber, which was named after him, *ib.*
- Huntingdon, David, earl of, ii. 190.
- Huntingdon, Henry of, the historian, i. 286.

## I.

- Igerne, the wife of duke Gorlois, i. 124.  
 king Uther's intrigue with her, i. 138.  
 Uther marries her, i. 140.
- Imbert, an Aquitanian chieftain, i. 16.
- Ina, king of Wessex, i. 278.  
 chosen leader of the Saxons in the war against the Britons, under Ivor and Ini, i. 280.
- Ingant, earl of Leicester, i. 204.
- Inguar, the Dane, his invasions, i. 312.  
 slain, i. 318.
- Ini, nephew of Cadwallader, i. 262, 278.
- Innogen, the wife of Brutus, i. 10.
- Irish, origin of the, i. 66.
- Isaac, king of Cyprus (the emperor), his behaviour to the crusaders, ii. 54.  
 defeated by king Richard, ii. 60.  
 resides in the temple at Jerusalem, ii. 112
- Ivor, son of Cadwallader, i. 262, 278.
- Iwayn, nephew of Augusele, made king of Scotland, i. 218, 220.

## J.

- Jai, Brian de, a Templar, slain at Falkirk, ii. 314.
- Jews, ill-treated at Lincoln, ii. 150.  
 proceedings against them in the time of Edward I., ii. 186.



- Joan, queen of Sicily, sister of Richard  
Coeur de Lion, ii. 40, 44
- John, son of Henry II., his conduct during  
the absence of Richard Coeur de Lion,  
ii. 114.  
crowned king of England, ii. 122, 124.  
his quarrel with the clergy, ii. 126-132.  
his death, ii. 134.
- Jonathal, earl of Dorchester, i. 204.
- Judith, queen of king Ethelwolf, i. 308.  
marries her stepson, king Ethelbald, i.  
308.

## K.

- Kay, sir, receives Anjou from king Arthur,  
i. 168.  
king Arthur's seneschal, i. 186.  
wounded, i. 208.
- Kenilworth, besieged and taken by prince  
Edward, ii. 150.
- Kew, the lord of, ii. 278.
- Kilwardby, Robert de, archbishop of  
Canterbury, ii. 164.
- Kimar, king of Britain, i. 52.
- Kimarcoz of Trigeria, i. 210.
- Kinmark, king of Britain, i. 40.

## L.

- Lago, king of Britain, i. 38.
- Langton, Stephen, archbishop of Canter-  
bury, ii. 128.  
*See* Stephen.
- Langton, Walter de, ii. 274.
- Lavinia, daughter of king Latinus, married  
to Eneas, i. 4.
- Leicester, built by king Leir, i. 32.
- Leil, king of Britain, i. 30.
- Leir, king of Britain, i. 32.  
story of Leir and his daughters, i. 34, 36.

VOL. II.

- Leo, the duke, ii. 60, 112.
- Leofwin, son of earl Godwin, banished, i.  
384.
- Leogecia, the island of, i. 10.
- Lewes, battle of, ii. 142.
- Lincoln, taken by the disinherited under  
Henry III., ii. 150.
- Lincoln, Henry de Lacy, earl of, ii. 214,  
218, 282, 334.
- Lindsay, William de, drowned in the Welsh  
expedition, ii. 178.
- Linlf, earl of Caunce, i. 430.
- Llewellyn, prince of Wales, origin of his  
war with Edward III., ii. 170.  
rises against the king, ii. 176.  
taken and beheaded, ii. 180.
- Locrin, king of Britain after Brutus, i. 24,  
his death, i. 26.
- London, founded by Brutus, i. 22.  
took its name from king Lud, *ib.*  
by whom it was rebuilt, i. 58.  
besieged by the Britons under Ascle-  
piodotus, i. 74.
- Lot of Lindsay, i. 142.  
Lothian given to him by king Arthur,  
i. 156.  
made king of Norway, i. 160.  
commands a division of Arthur's army,  
i. 202.
- Louis VI. of France makes war upon Henry  
I., i. 460.
- Louis, St., king of France, his crusade and  
death, ii. 154.
- Lovel, Robert, dean of Exeter, i. 486.
- Lucius, king of Britain, the first who was  
baptized, i. 68.
- Lucius, emperor of Rome, sends a challenge  
to king Arthur, i. 176.  
opposes him at the river Aube, i. 192  
is defeated, i. 198.  
falls in battle, i. 216.
- Lucy, Lucas de, ii. 28.
- Lud, king, i. 22, 58.
- Ludgate, origin of the name, i. 22, 58.

H H

## M.

- Macbeth, king of Scotland, i. 370, 388.  
is dethroned, i. 390.
- Macdowel, a serjeant of Galloway, arrests  
Thomas and Alexander de Brus, ii.  
374.
- Maddan, king of Britain, i. 28.
- Madoc, the Welsh prince, taken, ii. 218.
- Magadud, king of the Devonshire men, i.  
254.
- Malcolm, king of Scotland, dies, i. 370.
- Malcolm of Cumberland, made king of  
Scotland by Edward the Confessor,  
i. 390.  
invades Northumberland, i. 392.  
harbours earl Tosti, i. 398.  
invades Cumberland, i. 422.  
made prisoner, i. 424.  
suspicions against him, i. 432.  
rebels against William Rufus, i. 438.  
slain, i. 440.
- Malet, Robert, i. 422.
- Malet, William, i. 416.
- Malgo, king of Britain, i. 228.
- Manchester, Hugh of, ii. 206.
- Mankael, Roger, ii. 54.
- Mandeville, Geoffrey de, plunders the abbey  
of Ramsey, and his punishment, i.  
490.
- March, Patrick, earl of, i. 234.
- Marchadès, the French joker and warrior,  
ii. 120.
- Margan, king of Britain, i. 58.
- Margan, slain by Cunedag, i. 38.
- Margaret, queen of Edward I., arrives in  
England, i. 318.  
proceeds to the North, i. 322.
- Margaret, daughter of Geoffrey, count of  
Britany, ii. 124.
- Margaret, the heiress of Scotland, dies, ii.  
190.
- Marius, king of Britain, i. 66.
- Marmion, Robert, plunders the church of  
Coventry, i. 490.
- Marshal, Roger earl, deprived of his office,  
ii. 290.  
goes to serve the king, ii. 306, 316.  
discouraged, ii. 322.
- Marshal, William, ii. 34.
- Martel, William, ii. 488.
- Maude, daughter of Henry I., married to  
the emperor Henry, i. 462.  
marries Henry of Anjou, i. 465.  
arrives in England to oppose king  
Stephen, i. 482.  
has king Stephen as her prisoner,  
486.  
escapes to Oxford, *ib.*  
thence to Wallingford, i. 488.  
her death, i. 494.
- Maude of Scotland, queen of Henry I.,  
dies, i. 462.
- Mauduit, Robert, i. 464.
- Maunsel, John, ii. 136, 146.
- Maurice, son of Caradoc, i. 80, 82.
- Maurice, bishop of London, crowns king  
Henry I., i. 448.
- Maxentius, the emperor, slain by Con-  
stantine, i. 78.
- Maximian, sent into Britain by Diocletian,  
i. 74, 80, 82.  
obtains the kingdom of Britain, i. 84.  
his death, i. 88.
- Melchin, lord of Baudas, a Saracen com-  
mander in Saladin's army, ii. 100.
- Melga, king of the Picts, i. 80, 88.
- Mempricius, king of Britain, i. 28.
- Menteith, earl of, liberated, ii. 310.
- Menteith, sir John de, arrests William  
Wallace, ii. 362.
- Merlin, his history, i. 110.  
exhibits his knowledge before Vor-  
tigern, i. 112.  
his prophecies, i. 114.  
employed in removing the dance of  
the giants to Stonehenge, i. 124.  
explains the vision of the great star, i.  
130.  
assists Uther in his intrigue with  
Igerne, i. 138.  
the text of his prophecies, i. 266-267.  
his prophecy of Scotland, ii. 264.

Methyfasin, lord of Galilee, ii. 100.  
 Metingham, John de, ii. 186.  
 Modred, cousin of king Arthur, i. 184.  
   his treason, i. 216, 218.  
   retreats before king Arthur, i. 220.  
 Montfort, Simon de, called to command  
   the barons against Henry III., ii.  
   138.  
   gains the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.  
   slain at Evesham, ii. 146.  
 Montfort, Pierre de, slain at Lewes, ii. 146.  
 Montfort, Almeric de, ii. 147, 170.  
 Monthermer, Ralph de, ii. 306.  
 Morcar, son of Rikere, i. 396.  
 Morgan, the Welsh prince, ii. 218.  
 Mortagne, William earl of, i. 454, 458.  
 Mortimer, Roger de, ii. 136.  
 Mortmain, statute of, ii. 174.  
 Morvid of Gloucester, i. 214.  
 Morvidus, king of Britain, i. 52.  
 Morville, Richard de, ii. 10.  
 Mount Morice, Mathy de, ii. 120.  
 Mowbray, Robert de, rebels against William  
   Rufus, i. 442.

## N.

Navarre, the king of, dies in Sicily, ii.  
   158.  
 Nele, the two lords of, ii. 340.  
 Nevile, Thomas de, slain, ii. 344.  
 Newcastle-on Tyne, the castle built, i. 432.  
 Norfolk, Roger earl of, imprisoned by  
   William the Conqueror, i. 430.  
 Normandy, given by king Arthur to sir  
   Beduer, i. 168.  
   subdued by the Northmen under Rollo,  
   i. 316.  
 Normans, war between them and the Cinque  
   Ports, ii. 196.

## O.

Octa, the Saxon, i. 104.  
   permitted to settle with his cousin Eosa  
   on the Scottish border, i. 122.  
   excites war against king Uther, i. 132.  
   defeated and captured, i. 134.  
   escapes with his cousin Eosa, i. 140.  
   they make war upon Uther Pendragon,  
   and are slain, i. 142, 144.  
 Octavius, i. 78, 80, 82.  
 Odo, bishop of Winchester, i. 446.  
 Offrid, son of king Edwin, i. 252.  
 Olifard, sir William, ii. 356.  
 Oliver, bishop of Lincoln, ii. 276.  
 Oseg, king of Denmark, i. 312.  
 Osrie, cousin of king Edwin, i. 252.  
 Oswald made king of Northumbria, i. 252.  
   put to death by king Penda, i. 254.  
 Oswy, king of Northumberland, i. 254.  
 Ottoboni, the papal legate, ii. 146, 150,  
   152.

## P.

Partholoim, the leader of the exiles from  
   Spain who colonized Ireland, i. 50.  
 Pascentius enters Britain, i. 128.  
   slain, i. 130.  
 Paulin, count, ii. 102.  
 Pecché, Hugh, ii. 151.  
 Pellitus, the augurer, i. 242.  
   murdered, i. 250.  
 Pembroke, Aymer, earl of, sent against  
   Robert Bruce, ii. 366, 370.  
 Penda, king of Mercia, besieges the Bri-  
   tons in Oxford, i. 250.  
   is defeated and taken prisoner by Cad-  
   wallo, *ib.*  
   slays king Oswald, i. 254.  
   his treachery, *ib.*  
   is slain by Oswald, i. 256.

- Perambulation, statute of, ii. 320, 322, 328.  
 Percy, Henry de, ii. 258.  
 Peter, Geoffry Fitz, ii. 34.  
 Peverell, William, i. 476.  
 Philip I., king of France, arbiter between William Rufus and Robert Courthouse, i. 436.  
 Philip II. (Auguste), king of France, accompanies Richard Cœur de Lion to the Crusade, ii. 30.  
   starts, ii. 38.  
   disagreement between him and king Richard, ii. 92, 94.  
   returns to France, ii. 96.  
   defeated by king Richard at the bridge of Gisors, ii. 120.  
   seizes Normandy from king John, ii. 124.  
 Philip IV., king of France, obtains possession of Gascony, ii. 198.  
   retains it falsely, ii. 200.  
   his reply to king Edward's ambassadors, ii. 210.  
   at enmity with pope Boniface, ii. 346.  
 Poitiers, Gerard of, i. 466.  
 Porrex, king of Britain, his history, i. 40.  
 Priam, his death, i. 2.  
 Pyngwers, king of Loegria, i. 40.
- R.
- Rainald, the marquis, ii. 104.  
 Rainer, duke of Burgundy, i. 326, 328.  
 Rainer of Picardy, one of the plunderers in Stephen's time, i. 492.  
 Ralph, bishop of Orkney, i. 474, 476, 480.  
 Ralph the cofferer slain, ii. 344.  
 Randolph, bishop of Durham, i. 450.  
 Raymond, prince of Antioch, ii. 60, 112.  
 Raymond, count of St. Giles, marries the sister of Richard Coeur de Lion, ii. 112.  
 Rees ap Meredith makes war upon Edward I., ii. 184.  
   taken and executed, ii. 188.
- Richard I. (Coeur de Lion), crowned, ii. 26.  
   prepares for the Crusade, ii. 28.  
   starts for the East, ii. 36.  
   his proceedings in Sicily, ii. 40-52.  
   his doings in Cyprus, ii. 54-70.  
   arrives at Acre, ii. 74.  
   quarrels with the duke of Austria, ii. 84.  
   disagreement with the king of France, ii. 92, 94.  
   his personal encounter with Saladin in the battle of Cæsarea, ii. 102.  
   agrees to a truce with Saladin and leaves Syria, ii. 110, 112.  
   made a prisoner in Austria, ii. 114.  
   makes war upon the king of France, ii. 116, 118.  
   dies of his wounds, ii. 122.  
 Richard, king of Almaine, son of king John, ii. 132.  
   taken prisoner at the battle of Lewes, ii. 142.  
 Richarius of Pountif, i. 198.  
 Richmond, archdeacon of, ii. 214.  
 Riculf of Norway, i. 162.  
 Ridel, Geoffrey, i. 464.  
 Rival, king of Britain, i. 38.  
 Robert, duke of Normandy, dies, i. 372.  
 Robert Courthose, i. 432.  
   becomes duke of Normandy, i. 434.  
   comes to England, i. 438.  
   returns from the Holy Land, i. 448.  
   invades England, i. 450.  
   reconciled with king Henry I., i. 456.  
   taken prisoner and dies in Corfe castle, i. 458.  
 Robert de Kilwardby, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 164.  
 Robert, John Fitz. drowned in the Welsh expedition, ii. 178.  
 Roderic, king of the Picts, i. 66.  
 Roger, archbishop of York, ii. 6.  
 Rollo, the Northman, arrives in England, and then conquers Normandy, i. 316.  
 Ros, Robert de, of Wark, ii. 232.  
 Rouland, lord of Galway, ii. 21.  
 Rowena, daughter of Hengist, her story, i. 102-106.

Rucy, Alan de, ii. 120.  
 Rudauc, king of Wales, i. 40.  
 Rupin of the Mountain, ii. 60.

## S.

- Sabul, Robert de, ii. 34.  
 Sadberg, bought from the Crown by the bishop of Durham, ii. 30.  
 Saffadin, the Saracen prince, ii. 100, 109.  
 St. Andrews, the bishop of, negotiates a marriage between the daughter of king John Baliol and the brother of the king of France, ii. 252.  
     thrown into prison, ii. 372.  
 St. John, John de, ii. 214.  
     taken prisoner at Belgarde, ii. 282.  
 Saladin, king Richard marches against him, ii. 96.  
     defeated in the battle of Cæsarea, ii. 98-104.  
     negotiates with king Richard, ii. 106.  
     obtains a truce for seven years, ii. 110, 112.  
 Salisbury, a castle built there by king Huldibras, i. 32.  
 Saloman, king of Britany, i. 228, 242.  
 Savoy, Earl Amery of, ii. 238.  
 Savoy, the Earl of, ii. 334.  
 Savoy, Laurence de, ii. 214.  
 Saxons, arrival of the, i. 98.  
     different branches of the race who settled in Britain, i. 232.  
 Say, Gilbert de la, i. 476.  
 Scaffeld, patron of Pierre de Langtoft, ii. 164.  
 Scone, the abbot of, imprisoned, ii. 372.  
 Scotland, disputed claim to the succession of, ii. 190.  
     decided in favour of John Baliol, ii. 192.  
 Seaton, Christopher de, hanged, ii. 372.  
 Segrave, John de, ii. 322.  
     surprised by the Scots, ii. 344.  
 Seguin, duke of Burgundy, i. 44.  
 Severn, origin of the name of this river, i. 28.  
 Severus, the emperor, comes to Britain, and is slain there, i. 70.  
 Sibert, King of Essex, i. 280, 282.  
 Sibert, king of Wessex, i. 290.  
     slain dishonourably, i. 292.  
 Sisilius, king of Britain, i. 38.  
 Sisilius, son of Marcia, king of Britain, i. 52.  
 Siward, i. 16.  
 Siward, Richard, his deceit, ii. 240, 242, 244.  
 Somerville, Robert de, ii. 298.  
 Spoleto, the bishop of, comes on a mission to England, ii. 336.  
 Stater, king of Scotland, i. 40.  
 Statin le Nasé, ii. 66, 68.  
     king Richard gives him the government of Cyprus, ii. 70.  
     rebellion against him, ii. 74.  
 Stephen of Blois, the successor of Henry I., i. 466.  
     crowned king of England, i. 468.  
     breaks his oath, i. 470.  
     makes war upon David, king of Scotland, i. 472.  
     proceeds to the Welsh border, *ib.*  
     taken prisoner, i. 484.  
     his accord with duke Henry, the son of the empress, i. 496.  
     death of king Stephen, *ib.*  
 Stephen Langton made archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 128.  
     reconciled with king John, ii. 132.  
     crowns king Henry III., ii. 134.  
 Stigand, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 410.  
 Stirling Castle, siege and capture of, ii. 356, 358.  
 Stonehenge, the legend of, i. 124.  
 Stretton, Adam de, ii. 186.  
 Surrey, John, earl of, ii. 306.  
 Sweyn, king of Denmark, invades England, ii. 348.  
     returns to England, ii. 350.  
     ravages the south of England, ii. 354.

- Sweyn, king of Denmark—*cont.*  
 his oppressive tyranny, ii. 358.  
 his death, ii. 360.  
 Sweyn, son of Canute, made king of Norway, i. 371.

## T.

- Tancred, king of Sicily, ii. 40-48.  
 Tannye, Lucas de, drowned in the Welsh expedition, ii. 178.  
 Tenuancius, king of Cornwall, i. 58.  
 becomes king of Britain, i. 60.  
 Thadioc, archbishop of York, i. 230.  
 Thangcaster, origin of the name, i. 102.  
 Theobald, brother of king Stephen, i. 460.  
 Theobald, archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 2.  
 Theon, archbishop of London, i. 230.  
 Thurston, archbishop of York, i. 474.  
 Thweng, Marmaduke de, his bravery in Scotland, ii. 300.  
 treacherously captured by the Scots, ii. 304.  
 Tintagel, castle of, i. 134.  
 besieged and destroyed by Uther Pendragon, i. 136, 138, 140.  
 Tiptoft, Robert de, ii. 214.  
 Tosti, earl of Northumberland, i. 396.  
 invades England on Harold's accession, i. 398.  
 invades Northumberland, i. 400.  
 is slain at Stanford Bridge, i. 402.  
 Tours, from whom named, i. 20.  
 Tours, Amfrid de, ii. 60, 112.  
 Trahern, the British prince, i. 78.  
 slain, i. 80.  
 Trailbastons, the proceedings against them, ii. 360.  
 Troy, destruction of, i. 2.  
 Turbeville, Thomas de, history of his treason, ii. 226.  
 his punishment, ii. 228.  
 Turnham, Robert de, ii. 64, 66, 70.  
 ft justiciary of Cyprus, ii. 72.

- Turnus, king of Tuscany, slain by Eneas, i. 4.  
 Turnus, nephew of Brutus, slain in Poitou, i. 18.  
 Tyrel, Walter, kills William Rufus, i. 448.

## U.

- Ubba, the companion of Inguar, i. 312.  
 Uctred, lord of Cirencester, slain, i. 304.  
 Umfravile, Gilbert de, ii. 234.  
 Urbigen of Bath, i. 204.  
 slain, i. 210.  
 Urian receives Moray from king Arthur, i. 158.  
 Ursula, St., the legend of, i. 84.  
 Uther Pendragon, i. 98.  
 sent with Merlin to Ireland, i. 126.  
 made king of Britain, i. 130.  
 falls in love with the lady Igerne, i. 134.  
 his intrigue with Igerne, i. 138.  
 defeats the Saxons, i. 142, 144.  
 is murdered, i. 144.

## V.

- Valence, Aymer de, ii. 370.  
*See* Pembroke.  
 Valence, William de, ii. 136.  
 Vavasor, Baldwin the, ii. 148.  
 Vesci, John de, ii. 152, 180.  
 Vesci, William de, ii. 230.  
 Vespasian, one of the officers of the emperor Claudius, i. 64.  
 Vortiger, usurps the crown of Britain, i. 96, 98.  
 receives Hengist and Horsus, i. 98.  
 marries Hengist's daughter, i. 102.  
 carried prisoner to London, i. 108.  
 his castle in Wales, i. 110.

Vortiger—*cont.*

conquered and slain by Ambrosius and Uther, i. 116.

Vortimer, made king in place of his father

Vortiger, i. 104.

murdered, i. 106.

Vortiporius, made king of Britain, i. 226.

## W.

Walcher, bishop of Durham, murdered, i. 430.

Wales, invaded by earl Harold, i. 394.

rises against king Edward, ii. 216.

Edward's error in regard to Wales, *ib.*

Wallace, John, taken and executed, ii. 378.

Wallace, William, surprises and defeats the earl of Warenne, ii. 298.

goes about robbing, ii. 350.

offers terms of surrender to king

Edward, which are refused, ii. 352.

taken and executed, ii. 362.

Waltheof beheaded, i. 430.

Walwayn, son of Lot, i. 162.

*See* Gawayn.

Warren, John, earl of, ii. 240, 258.

his death, ii. 360.

Warren, John, earl of, his marriage, ii. 368.

Warren, Hugh, earl of, ii. 136, 142.

Warren, William, earl of, ii. 368.

Warwick, earl of, ii. 240.

Westminster, statutes of, ii. 172.

Weyland, Thomas de, ii. 186.

Whitby abbey founded, i. 428.

Wiglaf, king of Mercia, i. 298.

slain, i. 302.

William the Bastard becomes duke of Normandy, i. 372.

visits England, i. 386.

obtains a promise from Harold to secure to him the crown of England, i. 402.

William the Bastard—*cont.*

invades England, i. 406.

gains the battle of Hastings, and becomes king, i. 408.

his coronation, i, 410.

invades the north country, i. 414-424.

his war in France, i. 428.

devises his domains to his children, i. 432.

his death, i. 434.

William Rufus, commencement of his reign, i. 434.

suppresses the rebellion of Robert de Mowbray, i. 442.

invades Wales and Scotland, i. 444.

circumstances of his death, i. 446, 448.

William, king of Scotland, invades England, and is taken prisoner, ii. 10.

assists the young king Henry against his father, *ib.*

makes his submission to king Henry, ii. 12.

performs his homage at York, ii. 18.

performs his homage to king Richard at Canterbury, ii. 82.

and to king John at Lincoln, ii. 126.

marries his daughter to the count of Boulogne, ii. 130.

William, bishop of Ely, ii. 34.

Winchester, founded by king Hudibras, i. 32.

Wollerton, Robert de, ii. 148.

Worcester, ravaged by king Hardeknut, i. 378.

Wounds of Britain, five, according to Henry of Huntingdon, i. 286.

Wulfred, king of Mercia, i. 256.

## Y.

York, built by Brutus Green-shield, i. 30.

rebuilt by king Arthur, i. 156.

the abbey founded, i. 428.

LONDON:

Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,  
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty.  
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

[ .—750.—6/68.]

(2)

H 66-50









